



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

McMILLAN

SHAKESPEARE LIBRARY.

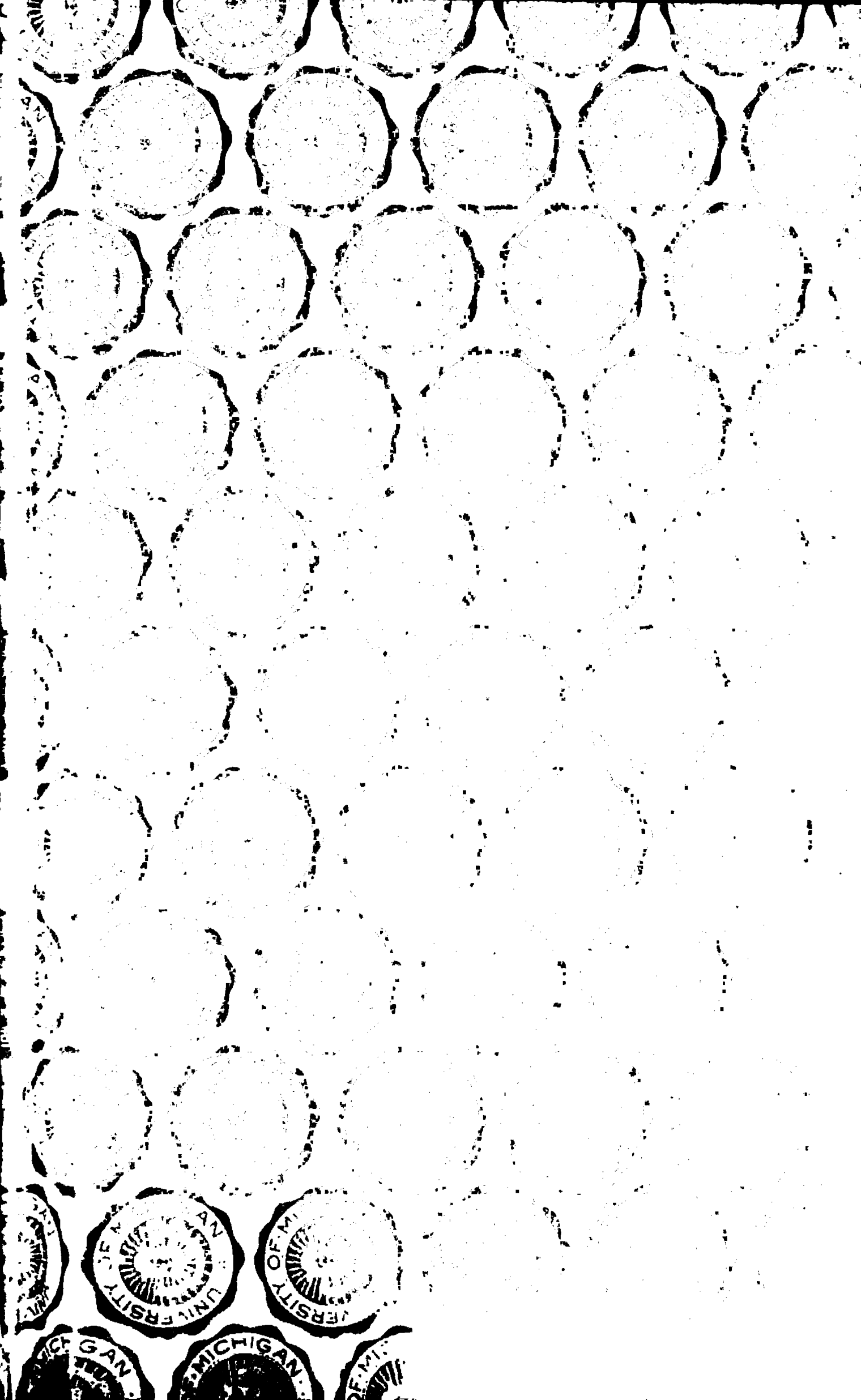
PRESENTED TO THE

UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,

BY

JAMES McMILLAN,

OF DETROIT.







822.8

S53

1867

K



THE  
**Stratford Shakspeare.**

EDITED BY  
**CHARLES KNIGHT.**

“In thy green lap was Nature's darling laid,  
What time, where lucid Avon stray'd,  
To Him the mighty mother did unvell  
Her awful face.”

GRAY.



VOL. II.

HISTORIES.

KING HENRY V.

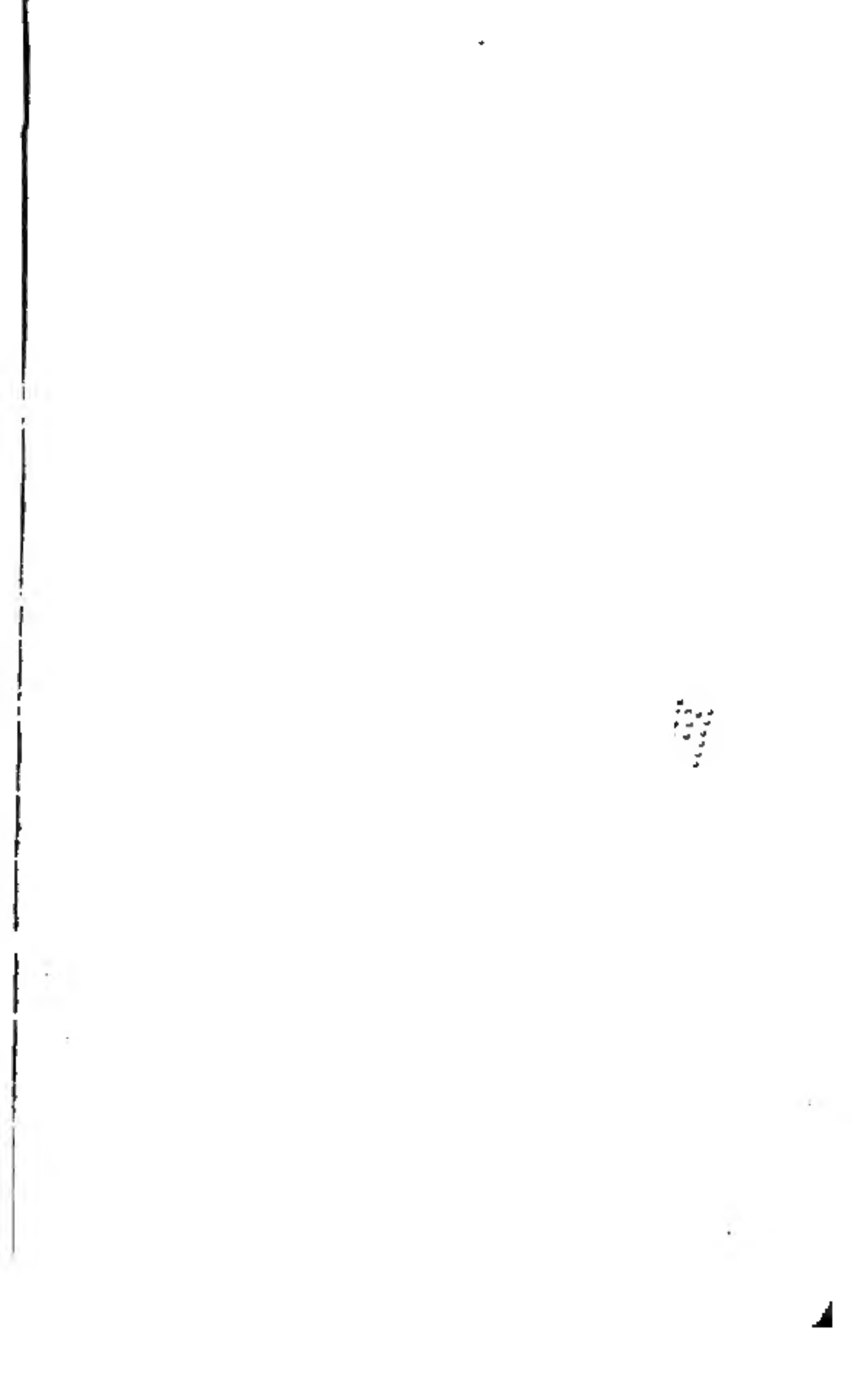
KING HENRY VI. PARTS I. II. III.

KING RICHARD III.

KING HENRY VIII.

LONDON:  
**CHARLES GRIFFIN AND COMPANY,**  
10, STATIONERS' HALL COURT.  
1867.





**McMILLAN**

**SHAKESPEARE LIBRARY.**

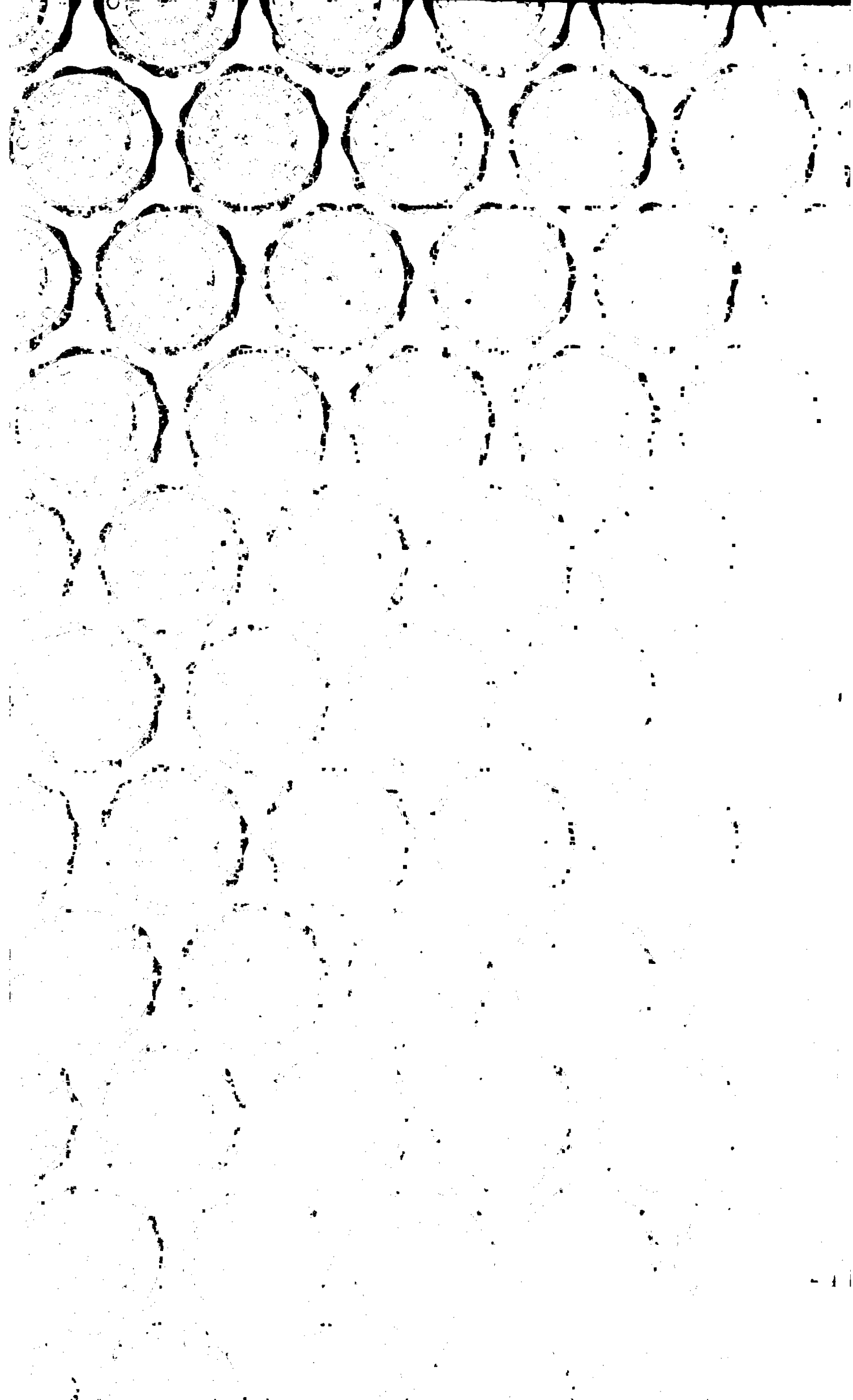
**PRESENTED TO THE**

**UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN,**

**BY**

**JAMES McMILLAN,**

**OF DETROIT.**







822.8

S53

1867

K

Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth:  
For 't is your thoughts that now must deck our kings,  
Carry them here and there; jumping o'er times;  
Turning the accomplishment of many years  
Into an hour-glass; For the which supply,  
Admit me chorus to this history;  
Who, prologue-like, your humble patience pray,  
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *An Ante-chamber in the King's Palace.*

*Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY and BISHOP OF ELY.*

CANT. My lord, I 'll tell you,—that self bill is urg'd,  
Which, in the eleventh year of the last king's reign,  
Was like, and had indeed against us pass'd,  
But that the scrambling and unquiet time  
Did push it out of further question.

ELY. But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

CANT. It must be thought on. If it pass against us,  
We lose the better half of our possession:  
For all the temporal lands, which men devout  
By testament have given to the church,  
Would they strip from us; being valued thus,—  
As much as would maintain, to the king's honour,  
Full fifteen earls, and fifteen hundred knights;  
Six thousand and two hundred good esquires;  
And, to relief of lazars, and weak age,  
Of indigent faint souls, past corporal toil,  
A hundred almshouses, right well supplied;  
And to the coffers of the king beside  
A thousand pounds by the year: Thus runs the bill.

ELY. This would drink deep.

CANT. 'T would drink the cup and all

ELY. But what prevention?

CANT. The king is full of grace and fair regard.

ELY. And a true lover of the holy church.

CANT. The courses of his youth promis'd it not.

The breath no sooner left his father's body,  
But that his wildness, mortified in him,  
Seem'd to die too: yea, at that very moment,  
Consideration like an angel came,  
And whipp'd the offending Adam out of him;  
Leaving his body as a paradise,  
To envelop and contain celestial spirits.  
Never was such a sudden scholar made:  
Never came reformation in a flood,  
With such a heady currance, scouring faults;  
Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness  
So soon did lose his seat, and all at once,  
As in this king.

ELY. We are blessed in the change.

CANT. Hear him but reason in divinity,  
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish  
You would desire the king were made a prelate:  
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,  
You would say,—it hath been all-in-all his study:  
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear  
A fearful battle render'd you in music:  
Turn him to any cause of policy,  
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,  
Familiar as his garter; that, when he speaks,  
The air, a charter'd libertine, is still,  
And the mute wonder lurketh in men's ears,  
To steal his sweet and honey'd sentences;  
So that the art and practic part of life  
Must be the mistress to this theoric:  
Which is a wonder, how his grace should glean it,  
Since his addiction was to courses vain:  
His companies unletter'd, rude, and shallow;  
His hours fill'd up with riots, banquets, sports;  
And never noted in him any study,

Any retirement, any sequestration  
From open haunts and popularity.

ELY. The strawberry grows underneath the nettle;  
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best  
Neighbour'd by fruit of baser quality:  
And so the prince obscur'd his contemplation  
Under the veil of wildness; which, no doubt,  
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,  
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.

CANT. It must be so; for miracles are ceas'd;  
And therefore we must needs admit the means  
How things are perfected.

ELY. But, my good lord,  
How now for mitigation of this bill  
Urg'd by the commons? Doth his majesty  
Incline to it, or no?

CANT. He seems indifferent;  
Or, rather, swaying more upon our part,  
Than cherishing the exhibitors against us:  
For I have made an offer to his majesty,—  
Upon our spiritual convocation;  
And in regard of causes now in hand,  
Which I have open'd to his grace at large,  
As touching France,—to give a greater sum  
Than ever at one time the clergy yet  
Did to his predecessors part withal.

ELY. How did this offer seem receiv'd, my lord?

CANT. With good acceptance of his majesty;  
Save, that there was not time enough to hear  
(As I perceiv'd his grace would fain have done)  
The severals, and unhidden passages,  
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms;  
And, generally, to the crown and seat of France,  
Deriv'd from Edward, his great-grandfather.

ELY. What was the impediment that broke this off?

CANT. The French ambassador, upon that instant,  
Crav'd audience: and the hour, I think, is come  
To give him hearing: Is it four o'clock?

ELY. It is.

CANT. Then go we in, to know his embassy;

Which I could, with a ready guess, declare,  
Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

ELY. I'll wait upon you; and I long to hear it.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*The same. A Room of State in the same.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER, WARWICK,  
WESTMORELAND, and Attendants.

K. HEN. Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury?

EXE. Not here in presence.

K. HEN. Send for him, good uncle.

WEST. Shall we call in the ambassador, my liege?

K. HEN. Not yet, my cousin; we would be resolv'd,  
Before we hear him, of some things of weight  
That task our thoughts, concerning us and France.

*Enter the* ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY *and* BISHOP OF ELY.

CANT. God and his angels guard your sacred throne,  
And make you long become it!

K. HEN. Sure, we thank you.

My learned lord, we pray you to proceed:

And justly and religiously unfold,

Why the law Salique, that they have in France,

Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.

And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,

That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,

Or nicely charge your understanding soul

With opening titles miscreate, whose right

Suits not in native colours with the truth;

For God doth know, how many, now in health,

Shall drop their blood in approbation

Of what your reverence shall incite us to:

Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,

How you awake our sleeping sword of war:

We charge you, in the name of God, take heed:

For never two such kingdoms did contend

Without much fall of blood; whose guiltless drops

Are every one a woe, a sore complaint,

'Gainst him whose wrongs give edge unto the swords

That make such waste in brief mortality.  
Under this conjuration, speak, my lord:  
For we will hear, note, and believe in heart,  
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd  
As pure as sin with baptism.

CANT. Then hear me, gracious sovereign; and you peers  
That owe yourselves, your lives, and services,  
To this imperial throne:—There is no bar  
To make against your highness' claim to France,  
But this, which they produce from Pharamond,—  
“In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant,”  
“No woman shall succeed in Salique land:”  
Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze  
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond  
The founder of this law and female bar.  
Yet their own authors faithfully affirm  
That the land Salique is in Germany,  
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe  
Where Charles the great, having subdued the Saxons,  
There left behind and settled certain French;  
Who, holding in disdain the German women,  
For some dishonest manners of their life,  
Establish'd then this law,—to wit, no female  
Should be inheritrix in Salique land;  
Which Salique, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,  
Is at this day in Germany called Meisen.  
Then doth it well appear, the Salique law  
Was not devised for the realm of France;  
Nor did the French possess the Salique land  
Until four hundred one-and-twenty years  
After defunction of king Pharamond,  
Idly suppos'd the founder of this law;  
Who died within the year of our redemption  
Four hundred twenty-six; and Charles the great  
Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French  
Beyond the river Sala, in the year  
Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say,  
King Pepin, which deposed Childerick,  
Did, as heir general, being descended  
Of Blithild, which was daughter to king Clothair,

Make claim and title to the crown of France.  
Hugh Capet also,—who usurp'd the crown  
Of Charles the duke of Loraine, sole heir male  
Of the true line and stock of Charles the great,—  
To find his title, with some shows of truth,  
(Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught,)  
Convey'd himself as th' heir to th' lady Lingare,  
Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son  
To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son  
Of Charles the great: Also king Lewis the tenth,  
Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet,  
Could not keep quiet in his conscience,  
Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied  
That fair queen Isabel, his grandmother,  
Was lineal of the lady Ermengare,  
Daughter to Charles the foresaid duke of Loraine:  
By the which marriage, the line of Charles the great  
Was re-united to the crown of France.  
So that, as clear as is the summer's sun,  
King Pepin's title, and Hugh Capet's claim,  
King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear  
To hold in right and title of the female:  
So do the kings of France unto this day.  
Howbeit they would hold up this Salique law,  
To bar your highness claiming from the female;  
And rather choose to hide them in a net,  
Than amply to imbar their crooked titles  
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

K. HEN. May I, with right and conscience, make this claim?

CANT. The sin upon my head, dread sovereign!  
For in the book of Numbers is it writ,—  
When the man dies, let the inheritance  
Descend unto the daughter. Gracious lord,  
Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;  
Look back into your mighty ancestors:  
Go, my dread lord, to your great-grandsire's tomb,  
From whom you claim; invoke his warlike spirit,  
And your great-uncle's, Edward the black prince;  
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,

Making defeat on the full power of France;  
Whiles his most mighty father on a hill  
Stood smiling, to behold his lion's whelp  
Forage in blood of French nobility.  
O noble English, that could entertain  
With half their forces the full pride of France;  
And let another half stand laughing by,  
All out of work, and cold for action!

ELY. Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,  
And with your puissant arm renew their feats;  
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;  
The blood and courage, that renowned them,  
Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege  
Is in the very May-morn of his youth,  
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprises.

EXE. Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth  
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,  
As did the former lions of your blood.

WEST. They know your grace hath cause, and means, and  
might:  
So hath your highness; never king of England  
Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects;  
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England,  
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

CANT. O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,  
With blood, and sword, and fire, to win your right;  
In aid whereof, we of the spirituality  
Will raise your highness such a mighty sum,  
As never did the clergy at one time  
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

K. HEN. We must not only arm to invade the French,  
But lay down our proportions to defend  
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us  
With all advantages.

CANT. They of those marches, gracious sovereign,  
Shall be a wall sufficient to defend  
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

K. HEN. We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,  
But fear the main intendment of the Scot,  
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us;



For you shall read, that my great-grandfather  
Never went with his forces into France,  
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom  
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,  
With ample and brim fulness of his force;  
Galling the gleaned land with hot essays;  
Girding with grievous siege castles and towns:  
That England, being empty of defence,  
Hath shook and trembled at th' ill neighbourhood.

CANT. She hath been then more fear'd than harm'd, my  
liege:

For hear her but exempl'd by herself,—  
When all her chivalry hath been in France,  
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,  
She hath herself not only well defended,  
But taken, and impounded as a stray,  
The king of Scots; whom she did send to France,  
To fill king Edward's fame with prisoner kings;  
And make your chronicles as rich with praise  
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea  
With sunken wrack and sumless treasures.

WEST. But there's a saying, very old and true,—

“If that you will France win,  
Then with Scotland first begin;”

For once the eagle England being in prey,  
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot  
Comes sneaking, and so sucks her princely eggs;  
Playing the mouse, in absence of the cat,  
To spoil and havoc more than she can eat.

EXE. It follows, then, the cat must stay at home:  
Yet that is but a crush'd necessity;  
Since we have locks to safeguard necessities,  
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.  
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad,  
The advised head defends itself at home:  
For government, through high, and low, and lower,  
Put into parts, doth keep in one concent;  
Congreeing in a full and natural close,  
Like music.

CANT. Therefore doth Heaven divide  
The state of man in divers functions,  
Setting endeavour in continual motion;  
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,  
Obedience: for so work the honey-bees;  
Creatures, that, by a rule in nature, teach  
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.  
They have a king, and officers of sorts:  
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home;  
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad;  
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,  
Make boot upon the summer's velvet buds;  
Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
To the tent-royal of their emperor:  
Who, busied in his majesties, surveys  
The singing masons building roofs of gold;  
The civil citizens kneading up the honey;  
The poor mechanic porters crowding in  
Their heavy burthens at his narrow gate;  
The sad-ey'd justice, with his surly hum,  
Delivering o'er to executors pale  
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,—  
That many things, having full reference  
To one concent, may work contrariously;  
As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
Come to one mark; as many ways meet in one town;  
As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea;  
As many lines close in the dial's centre;  
So may a thousand actions, once afoot,  
End in one purpose, and be all well borne  
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.  
Divide your happy England into four;  
Whereof take you one quarter into France,  
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.  
If we, with thrice such powers left at home,  
Cannot defend our own doors from the dog,  
Let us be worried; and our nation lose  
The name of hardiness, and policy.

K. HEN. Call in the messengers sent from the dauphin.

[*Exit an Attendant. The KING ascends his throne.*]

Now are we well resolv'd: and, by God's help,  
And yours, the noble sinews of our power,  
France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe,  
Or break it all to pieces: Or there we'll sit,  
Ruling, in large and ample empery,  
O'er France and all her almost kingly dukedoms,  
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,  
Tombless, with no remembrance over them:  
Either our history shall with full mouth  
Speak freely of our acts; or else our grave,  
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,  
Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph.

*Enter Ambassadors of France.*

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure  
Of our fair cousin dauphin; for, we hear,  
Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

AMB. May't please your majesty to give us leave  
Freely to render what we have in charge;  
Or shall we sparingly show you far off  
The dauphin's meaning, and our embassy?

K. HEN. We are no tyrant, but a Christian king;  
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject,  
As are our wretches fetter'd in our prisons:  
Therefore, with frank and with uncurbed plainness  
Tell us the dauphin's mind.

AMB. Thus, then, in few.  
Your highness, lately sending into France,  
Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right  
Of your great predecessor, king Edward the third.  
In answer of which claim, the prince our master  
Says, that you savour too much of your youth;  
And bids you be advis'd, there's nought in France  
That can be with a nimble galliard won:  
You cannot revel into dukedoms there.  
He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,  
This tun of treasure; and, in lieu of this,  
Desires you, let the dukedoms that you claim  
Hear no more of you. This the dauphin speaks.

K. HEN. What treasure, uncle?

EXE.

Tennis-balls, my liege.

K. HEN. We are glad the dauphin is so pleasant with us.  
His present, and your pains, we thank you for:  
When we have match'd our rackets to these balls,  
We will in France, by God's grace, play a set  
Shall strike his father's crown into the hazard:  
Tell him, he hath made a match with such a wrangler,  
That all the courts of France will be disturb'd  
With chaces. And we understand him well,  
How he comes o'er us with our wilder days,  
Not measuring what use we made of them.  
We never valued this poor seat of England;  
And therefore, living hence, did give ourself  
To barbarous licence; as 't is ever common,  
That men are merriest when they are from home.  
But tell the dauphin,—I will keep my state;  
Be like a king, and show my sail of greatness,  
When I do rouse me in my throne of France:  
For that I have laid by my majesty,  
And plodded like a man for working-days;  
But I will rise there with so full a glory,  
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,  
Yea, strike the dauphin blind to look on us.  
And tell the pleasant prince, this mock of his  
Hath turn'd his balls to gun-stones; and his soul  
Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance  
That shall fly with them: for many a thousand widows  
Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands;  
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down:  
And some are yet ungotten and unborn,  
That shall have cause to curse the dauphin's scorn.  
But this lies all within the will of God,  
To whom I do appeal; and in whose name,  
Tell you the dauphin, I am coming on  
To venge me as I may, and to put forth  
My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.  
So, get you hence in peace; and tell the dauphin,  
His jest will savour but of shallow wit,  
When thousands weep, more than did laugh at it.

Convey them with safe conduct.—Fare you well.

[*Exeunt Ambassadors.*

EXE. This was a merry message.

K. HEN. We hope to make the sender blush at it.

[*Descends from his throne.*

Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour,  
That may give furtherance to our expedition:  
For we have now no thought in us but France;  
Save those to God, that run before our business.  
Therefore, let our proportions for these wars  
Be soon collected; and all things thought upon,  
That may, with reasonable swiftness, add  
More feathers to our wings; for, God before,  
We'll chide this dauphin at his father's door.  
Therefore, let every man now task his thought,  
That this fair action may on foot be brought.

[*Exeunt.*

---

## ACT II.

### CHORUS.

Now all the youth of England are on fire,  
And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies;  
Now thrive the armourers, and honour's thought  
Reigns solely in the breast of every man:  
They sell the pasture now, to buy the horse;  
Following the mirror of all Christian kings,  
With winged heels, as English Mercuries.  
For now sits Expectation in the air;  
And hides a sword, from hilts unto the point,  
With crowns imperial, crowns and coronets,  
Promis'd to Harry and his followers.  
The French, advis'd by good intelligence  
Of this most dreadful preparation,  
Shake in their fear; and with pale policy  
Seek to divert the English purposes.

O England! model to thy inward greatness,  
Like little body with a mighty heart,  
What mightst thou do, that honour would thee do,  
Were all thy children kind and natural!  
But see thy fault! France hath in thee found out  
A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills  
With treacherous crowns; and three corrupted men,—  
One, Richard earl of Cambridge; and the second,  
Henry lord Scroop of Masham; and the third,  
Sir Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland,—  
Have, for the gilt of France, (O guilt, indeed!)  
Confirm'd conspiracy with fearful France;  
And by their hands this grace of kings must die,  
(If hell and treason hold their promises,)  
Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.  
Linger your patience on, and we'll digest  
The abuse of distance; force a play.  
The sum is paid; the traitors are agreed;  
The king is set from London; and the scene  
Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton:  
There is the playhouse now, there must you sit:  
And thence to France shall we convey you safe,  
And bring you back, charming the narrow seas  
To give you gentle pass; for, if we may,  
We'll not offend one stomach with our play.  
But, till the king come forth, and not till then,  
Unto Southampton do we shift our scene.

SCENE I.—Eastcheap.

*Enter Nym and BARDOLPH.*

BARD. Well met, corporal Nym.

NYM. Good morrow, lieutenant Bardolph.

BARD. What, are ancient Pistol and you friends yet?

NYM. For my part, I care not: I say little; but when time shall serve, there shall be smiles; but that shall be as it may. I dare not fight; but I will wink, and hold out mine iron. It is a simple one; but what though? It will toast cheese; and it will endure cold as another man's sword will: and there's an end.

BARD. I will bestow a breakfast to make you friends; and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France; let it be so, good corporal Nym.

NYM. 'Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may: that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it.

BARD. It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly: and, certainly, she did you wrong; for you were troth-plight to her.

NYM. I cannot tell; things must be as they may; men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and, some say, knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

*Enter PISTOL and Mrs. QUICKLY.*

BARD. Here comes ancient Pistol and his wife:—good corporal, be patient here.—How now, mine host Pistol?

PIST. Base tike, call'st thou me host?  
Now, by this hand I swear, I scorn the term;  
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

QUICK. No, by my troth, not long: for we cannot lodge and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen, that live honestly by the prick of their needles, but it will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight. [NYM *draws his sword.*] O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not drawn! Now we shall see wilful adultery and murther committed. Good lieutenant Bardolph—

BARD. Good corporal, offer nothing here.

NYM. Pish!

PIST. Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-eared cur of Iceland.

QUICK. Good corporal Nym, show thy valour, and put up thy sword.

NYM. Will you shog off? I would have you *solus*.

*[Sheathing his sword.]*

PIST. *Solus*, egregious dog? O viper vile!  
The *solus* in thy most marvellous face;  
The *solus* in thy teeth, and in thy throat,  
And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy;

And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth!  
 I do retort the *solus* in thy bowels;  
 For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up,  
 And flashing fire will follow.

NYM. I am not Barbason, you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well: If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may say, in fair terms: if you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may say; and that's the humour of it.

PIST. O braggard vile, and damned furious wight!  
 The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;  
 Therefore exhale.

[PISTOL and NYM draw.

BARD. Hear me, hear me what I say:—he that strikes the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilts, as I am a soldier.

[Draws.

PIST. An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.  
 Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give;  
 Thy spirits are most tall.

NYM. I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair terms; that is the humour of it.

PIST. *Coupe le gorge*, that's the word!—I defy thee again.  
 O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?  
 No; to the spital go,  
 And from the powdering tub of infamy  
 Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,  
 Doll Tear-sheet she by name, and her espouse:  
 I have, and I will hold the *quondam* Quickly  
 For the only she: and—*Pauca*, there's enough. Go to.

*Enter the Boy.*

BOY. Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master,—and you, hostess;—he is very sick, and would to bed.—Good Bardolph, put thy face between his sheets, and do the office of a warming-pan; 'faith, he's very ill.

BARD. Away, you rogue.

QUICK. By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one of these days; the king has killed his heart.—Good husband, come home presently.

[*Exeunt Mrs. QUICKLY and Boy.*



BARD. Come, shall I make you two friends? We must to France together. Why the devil should we keep knives to cut one another's throats?

PIST. Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on!

NYM. You 'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you at betting?

PIST. Base is the slave that pays.

NYM. That now I will have; that's the humour of it.

PIST. As manhood shall compound: push home.

BARD. By this sword, he that makes the first thrust I 'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

PIST. Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.

BARD. Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends: an thou wilt not, why, then be enemies with me too. Prithee, put up.

PIST. A noble shalt thou have, and present pay;  
And liquor likewise will I give to thee,  
And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood:  
I 'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me;—  
Is not this just?—for I shall sutler be  
Unto the camp, and profits will accrue.  
Give me thy hand.

NYM. I shall have my noble?

PIST. In cash most justly paid.

NYM. Well, then, that's the humour of it.

*Re-enter Mrs. QUICKLY.*

QUICK. As ever you come of women, come in quickly to sir John: Ah, poor heart! he is so shaken of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.

NYM. The king hath run bad humours on the knight, that's the even of it.

PIST. Nym, thou hast spoke the right;  
His heart is fracted, and corroborate.

NYM. The king is a good king: but it must be as it may; he passes some humours, and careers.

PIST. Let us condole the knight; for, lambkins, we will live.  
[*Eaeunt.*]

SCENE II.—Southampton. *A Council Chamber.*

*Enter EXETER, BEDFORD, and WESTMORELAND.*

BED. 'Fore God, his grace is bold, to trust these traitors.

EXE. They shall be apprehended by and by.

WEST. How smooth and even they do bear themselves!  
As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,  
Crowned with faith and constant loyalty.

BED. The king hath note of all that they intend,  
By interception which they dream not of.

EXE. Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,  
Whom he hath dull'd and cloy'd with gracious favours,—  
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell  
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

*Trumpet sounds. Enter KING HENRY, SCROOP, CAMBRIDGE,  
GREY, Lords, and Attendants.*

K. HEN. Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard.  
My lord of Cambridge, and my kind lord of Masham,  
And you, my gentle knight, give me your thoughts;  
Think you not, that the powers we bear with us  
Will cut their passage through the force of France;  
Doing the execution, and the act,  
For which we have in head assembled them?

SCROOP. No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

K. HEN. I doubt not that: since we are well persuaded,  
We carry not a heart with us from hence  
That grows not in a fair concent with ours;  
Nor leave not one behind, that doth not wish  
Success and conquest to attend on us.

CAM. Never was monarch better fear'd and lov'd  
Than is your majesty; there's not, I think, a subject  
That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness  
Under the sweet shade of your government.

GREY. True: those that were your father's enemies  
Have steep'd their galls in honey; and do serve you  
With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

K. HEN. We therefore have great cause of thankfulness;  
And shall forget the office of our hand  
Sooner than quittance of desert and merit,  
According to the weight and worthiness.

SCROOP. So service shall with steeled sinews toil,  
And labour shall refresh itself with hope,  
To do your grace incessant services.

K. HEN. We judge no less.—Uncle of Exeter,  
Enlarge the man committed yesterday,  
That rail'd against our person: we consider  
It was excess of wine that set him on;  
And, on his more advice, we pardon him.

SCROOP. That's mercy, but too much security:  
Let him be punish'd, sovereign; lest example  
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

K. HEN. O, let us yet be merciful.

CAM. So may your highness, and yet punish too.

GREY. Sir, you show great mercy if you give him life,  
After the taste of much correction.

K. HEN. Alas, your too much love and care of me  
Are heavy orisons 'gainst this poor wretch.  
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,  
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye  
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,  
Appear before us?—We'll yet enlarge that man,  
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, in their dear care  
And tender preservation of our person,  
Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes;  
Who are the late commissioners?

CAM. I one, my lord;  
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

SCROOP. So did you me, my liege.

GREY. And I, my royal sovereign.

K. HEN. Then, Richard, earl of Cambridge, there is yours;  
There yours, lord Scroop of Masham; and, sir knight,  
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours:  
Read them; and know, I know your worthiness.  
My lord of Westmoreland, and uncle Exeter,  
We will aboard to-night.—Why, how now, gentlemen?  
What see you in those papers, that you lose

So much complexion?—look ye, how they change!  
Their cheeks are paper.—Why, what read you there,  
That hath so cowarded and chas'd your blood  
Out of appearance?

CAM. I do confess my fault;  
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

GREY, SCROOP. To which we all appeal.

K. HEN. The mercy, that was quick in us but late,  
By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd:  
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy;  
For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,  
As dogs upon their masters, worrying you.  
See you, my princes, and my noble peers,  
These English monsters! My lord of Cambridge here,—  
You know how apt our love was, to accord  
To furnish him with all appertinents  
Belonging to his honour; and this man  
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,  
And sworn unto the practices of France,  
To kill us here in Hampton: to the which,  
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us  
Than Cambridge is, hath likewise sworn. But O!  
What shall I say to thee, lord Scroop? thou cruel,  
Ingrateful, savage, and inhuman creature!  
Thou, that didst bear the key of all my counsels,  
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,  
That almost mightst have coin'd me into gold,  
Wouldst thou have practis'd on me for thy use;  
May it be possible, that foreign hire  
Could out of thee extract one spark of evil,  
That might annoy my finger? 't is so strange,  
That, though the truth of it stands off as gross  
As black from white, my eye will scarcely see it.  
Treason, and murther, ever kept together,  
As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,  
Working so grossly in a natural cause,  
That admiration did not whoop at them:  
But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in  
Wonder, to wait on treason, and on murther:  
And whatsoever cunning fiend it was

That wrought upon thee so preposterously,  
Hath got the voice in hell for excellence:  
And other devils, that suggest by treasons,  
Do botch and bungle up damnation  
With patches, colours, and with forms being fetch'd  
From glistening semblances of piety;  
But he that temper'd thee bade thee stand up,  
Gave thee no instance why thou shouldst do treason,  
Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.  
If that same demon, that hath gull'd thee thus,  
Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,  
He might return to vasty Tartar back,  
And tell the legions, I can never win  
A soul so easy as that Englishman's.  
O, how hast thou with jealousy infected  
The sweetness of affiancement! Show men dutiful?  
Why, so didst thou: Seem they grave and learned?  
Why, so didst thou: Come they of noble family?  
Why, so didst thou: Seem they religious?  
Why, so didst thou: Or are they spare in diet;  
Free from gross passion, or of mirth or anger;  
Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood;  
Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement:  
Not working with the eye, without the ear,  
And, but in purged judgment, trusting neither—  
Such, and so finely bolted, didst thou seem:  
And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,  
To mark the full-fraught man and best indued,  
With some suspicion. I will weep for thee;  
For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like  
Another fall of man.—Their faults are open.  
Arrest them to the answer of the law;  
And God acquit them of their practices!

EXE. I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Richard  
earl of Cambridge.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry lord  
Scroop of Masham.

I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas Grey  
knight, of Northumberland.

SCROOP. Our purposes God justly hath discover'd;

And I repent my fault more than my death;  
Which I beseech your highness to forgive,  
Although my body pay the price of it.

CAM. For me,—the gold of France did not seduce;  
Although I did admit it as a motive,  
The sooner to effect what I intended:  
But God be thanked for prevention;  
Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,  
Beseeching God, and you, to pardon me.

GREY. Never did faithful subject more rejoice  
At the discovery of most dangerous treason,  
Than I do at this hour joy o'er myself,  
Prevented from a damned enterprise:  
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

K. HEN. God quit you in his mercy! Hear your sentence.  
You have conspir'd against our royal person,  
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers  
Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death;  
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,  
His princes and his peers to servitude,  
His subjects to oppression and contempt,  
And his whole kingdom into desolation.  
Touching our person, seek we no revenge;  
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,  
Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws  
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,  
Poor miserable wretches, to your death:  
The taste whereof, God, of his mercy, give you  
Patience to endure, and true repentance  
Of all your dear offences!—Bear them hence.

[*Exeunt Conspirators, guarded.*]

Now, lords, for France; the enterprise whereof  
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.  
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war;  
Since God so graciously hath brought to light  
This dangerous treason, lurking in our way,  
To hinder our beginnings;—we doubt not now  
But every rub is smoothed on our way.  
Then, forth, dear countrymen; let us deliver  
Our puissance into the hand of God,

Putting it straight in expedition.

Cheerly to sea; the signs of war advance:

No king of England, if not king of France. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—London. *Mrs. Quickly's House in Eastcheap.*

*Enter* PISTOL, *Mrs. QUICKLY*, NYM, BARDOLPH, and Boy.

QUICK. Prithee, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee to Staines.

PIST. No; for my manly heart doth yearn.

Bardolph, be blithe;—Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins;

Boy, bristle thy courage up; for Falstaff he is dead,

And we must yearn therefore.

BARD. Would I were with him, wheresome'er he is, either in heaven, or in hell!

QUICK. Nay, sure, he's not in hell; he's in Arthur's bosom, if ever man went to Arthur's bosom. 'A made a finer end, and went away, an it had been any christom child; 'a parted even just between twelve and one, e'en at the turning o' the tide: for after I saw him fumble with the sheets, and play with flowers, and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a babbled of green fields. How now, sir John? quoth I: what, man! be of good cheer. So 'a cried out—God, God, God! three or four times: now I, to comfort him, bid him 'a should not think of God; I hoped there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet: So, 'a bade me lay more clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed, and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and so upward, and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

NYM. They say, he cried out of sack.

QUICK. Ay, that 'a did.

BARD. And of women.

QUICK. Nay, that 'a did not.

BOY. Yes, that 'a did; and said they were devils incarnate.

QUICK. 'A could never abide carnation; 't was a colour he never liked.

BOY. 'A said once the devil would have him about women.

QUICK. 'A did in some sort, indeed, handle women: but then he was rheumatic; and talked of the whore of Babylon.

BOY. Do you not remember, 'a saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose; and 'a said it was a black soul burning in hell?

BARD. Well, the fuel is gone that maintained that fire: that 's all the riches I got in his service.

NYM. Shall we shog? the king will be gone from Southampton.

PIST. Come, let 's away.—My love, give me thy lips.  
Look to my chattels, and my moveables:  
Let senses rule; the word is, "Pitch and pay;"  
Trust none:

For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,  
And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck;  
Therefore, *caveto* be thy counsellor.  
Go, clear thy crystals.—Yoke-fellows in arms,  
Let us to France! like horse-leeches, my boys;  
To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!

BOY. And that is but unwholesome food, they say.

PIST. Touch her soft mouth, and march.

BARD. Farewell, hostess.

[*Kissing her.*]

NYM. I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but, adieu.

PIST. Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thee command.

QUICK. Farewell: adieu.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—France. *A Room in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter the French KING attended; the DAUPHIN, the DUKE OF BURGUNDY, the CONSTABLE, and others.*

FR. KING. Thus come the English with full power upon us  
And more than carefully it us concerns,  
To answer royally in our defences.  
Therefore the dukes of Berry, and of Bretagne,  
Of Brabant, and of Orleans, shall make forth,  
And you, prince dauphin,—with all swift despatch,  
To line and new repair our towns of war,  
With men of courage, and with means defendant:  
For England his approaches makes as fierce  
As waters to the sucking of a gulf.



It fits us then to be as provident  
As fear may teach us, out of late examples  
Left by the fatal and neglected English  
Upon our fields.

DAU. My most redoubted father,  
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe:  
For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,  
(Though war nor no known quarrel were in question,)   
But that defences, musters, preparations,  
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,  
As were a war in expectation.  
Therefore, I say, 't is meet we all go forth,  
To view the sick and feeble parts of France;  
And let us do it with no show of fear;  
No, with no more, than if we heard that England  
Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance:  
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd,  
Her sceptre so fantastically borne  
By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,  
That fear attends her not.

CON. O peace, prince dauphin!  
You are too much mistaken in this king:  
Question, your grace, the late ambassadors,—  
With what great state he heard their embassy,  
How well supplied with noble counsellors,  
How modest in exception, and withal  
How terrible in constant resolution,—  
And you shall find his vanities fore-spent  
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,  
Covering discretion with a coat of folly;  
As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots  
That shall first spring and be most delicate.

DAU. Well, 't is not so, my lord high constable,  
But though we think it so, it is no matter:  
In cases of defence, 't is best to weigh  
The enemy more mighty than he seems:  
So the proportions of defence are fill'd;  
Which, of a weak and niggardly projection,  
Doth like a miser spoil his coat with scanting  
A little cloth.

FR. KING. Think we king Harry strong;  
And, princes, look you strongly arm to meet him.  
The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us;  
And he is bred out of that bloody strain,  
That haunted us in our familiar paths;  
Witness our too much memorable shame,  
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,  
And all our princes captiv'd, by the hand  
Of that black name, Edward black prince of Wales;  
Whiles that his mountain sire,—on mountain standing  
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,—  
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him  
Mangle the work of nature, and deface  
The patterns that by God and by French fathers  
Had twenty years been made. This is a stem  
Of that victorious stock; and let us fear  
The native mightiness and fate of him.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. Ambassadors from Harry king of England  
Do crave admittance to your majesty.

FR. KING. We'll give them present audience. Go, and  
bring them. [*Exeunt Mess. and certain Lords.*]  
You see, this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

DAU. Turn head, and stop pursuit: for coward dogs  
Most spend their mouths, when what they seem to threaten  
Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,  
Take up the English short; and let them know  
Of what a monarchy you are the head:  
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin  
As self-neglecting.

*Re-enter Lords, with EXETER and Train.*

FR. KING. From our brother of England?

EXE. From him; and thus he greets your majesty.  
He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,  
That you divest yourself and lay apart  
The borrow'd glories, that, by gift of Heaven,  
By law of nature, and of nations, 'long  
To him, and to his heirs; namely, the crown,

And all wide-stretched honours that pertain,  
By custom and the ordinance of times,  
Unto the crown of France. That you may know  
'T is no sinister nor no awkward claim,  
Pick'd from the worm-holes of long-vanish'd days,  
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak'd,  
He sends you this most memorable line, [Gives a paper.  
In every branch truly demonstrative;  
Willing you, overlook this pedigree:  
And, when you find him evenly deriv'd  
From his most fam'd of famous ancestors,  
Edward the third, he bids you then resign  
Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held  
From him the native and true challenger.

FR. KING. Or else what follows?

EXE. Bloody constraint; for if you hide the crown  
Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it:  
Therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,  
In thunder, and in earthquake, like a Jove,  
That, if requiring fail, he will compel;  
And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
Deliver up the crown; and to take mercy  
On the poor souls for whom this hungry war  
Opens his vasty jaws: and on your head  
Turning the widows' tears, the orphans' cries,  
The dead men's blood, the pining maidens' groans,  
For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,  
That shall be swallow'd in this controversy.  
This is his claim, his threat'ning, and my message:  
Unless the dauphin be in presence here,  
To whom expressly I bring greeting too.

FR. KING. For us, we will consider of this further:  
To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
Back to our brother of England.

DAU. For the dauphin,  
I stand here for him: What to him from England?

EXE. Scorn and defiance; slight regard, contempt,  
And anything that may not misbecome  
The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
Thus says my king: and, if your father's highness

Do not, in grant of all demands at large,  
Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,  
He 'll call you to so hot an answer of it,  
That caves and womby vaultages of France  
Shall chide your trespass, and return your mock  
In second accent of his ordnance.

DAU. Say, if my father render fair return,  
It is against my will: for I desire  
Nothing but odds with England; to that end,  
As matching to his youth and vanity,  
I did present him with the Paris balls.

EXE. He 'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,  
Were it the mistress court of mighty Europe:  
And, be assur'd, you 'll find a difference  
(As we, his subjects, have in wonder found)  
Between the promise of his greener days,  
And these he masters now; now he weighs time,  
Even to the utmost grain; that you shall read  
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

FR. KING. To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

EXE. Despatch us with all speed, lest that our king  
Come here himself to question our delay;  
For he is footed in this land already.

FR. KING. You shall be soon despatch'd, with fair conditions:

A night is but small breath, and little pause,  
To answer matters of this consequence.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT III.

### CHORUS

Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies,  
In motion of no less celerity  
Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen  
The well-appointed king at Hampton pier

Embark his royalty; and his brave fleet  
With silken streamers the young Phœbus fanning.  
Play with your fancies; and in them behold,  
Upon the hempen tackle ship-boys climbing:  
Hear the shrill whistle which doth order give  
To sounds confus'd: behold the threaden sails,  
Borne with the invisible and creeping wind,  
Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,  
Breasting the lofty surge: O, do but think  
You stand upon the rivage, and behold  
A city on the inconstant billows dancing;  
For so appears this fleet majestic,  
Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow!  
Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy;  
And leave your England, as dead midnight still,  
Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women,  
Either past, or not arriv'd to, pith and puissance:  
For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd  
With one appearing hair, that will not follow  
These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France?  
Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege:  
Behold the ordnance on their carriages,  
With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur.  
Suppose, the ambassador from the French comes back;  
Tells Harry, that the king doth offer him  
Katharine his daughter; and with her, to dowry,  
Some petty and unprofitable dukedom.  
The offer likes not: and the nimble gunner  
With linstock now the devilish cannon touches,  
*[Alarum; and chambers (small cannon) go off.]*  
And down goes all before them. Still be kind,  
And eke out our performance with your mind. *[Exit.]*

SCENE I.—*The same. Before Harfleur.*

*Alarums. Enter KING HENRY, EXETER, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, and Soldiers, with scaling ladders.*

K. HEN. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once  
more;  
Or close the wall up with our English dead!

In peace, there's nothing so becomes a man  
As modest stillness and humility:  
But when the blast of war blows in our ears,  
Then imitate the action of the tiger;  
Stiffen the sinews, summon up the blood,  
Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage:  
Then lend the eye a terrible aspect;  
Let it pry through the portage of the head,  
Like the brass cannon; let the brow o'erwhelm it,  
As fearfully as doth a galled rock  
O'erhang and jutty his confounded base,  
Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean.  
Now set the teeth, and stretch the nostril wide;  
Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit  
To his full height!—On, on, you nobless English,  
Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof!  
Fathers that, like so many Alexanders,  
Have in these parts from morn till even fought,  
And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument.  
Dishonour not your mothers; now attest  
That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you!  
Be copy now to men of grosser blood,  
And teach them how to war!—And you, good yeomen,  
Whose limbs were made in England, show us here  
The mettle of your pasture; let us swear  
That you are worth your breeding: which I doubt not;  
For there is none of you so mean and base  
That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.  
I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips,  
Straining upon the start. The game's afoot;  
Follow your spirit: and, upon this charge,  
Cry—God for Harry! England! and Saint George!  
[*Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off.*]

SCENE II.—*The same.*

*Forces pass over; then enter Nym, Bardolph, Pistol,  
and Boy.*

BARD. On, on, on, on, on! to the breach, to the breach!  
Nym. 'Pray thee, corporal, stay; the knocks are too hot;

and, for mine own part, I have not a case of lives: the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

PIST. The plain-song is most just; for humours do abound;  
Knocks go and come; God's vassals drop and die;

And sword and shield,  
In bloody field,  
Doth win immortal fame.

BOY. 'Would' I were in an alehouse in London! I would give all my fame for a pot of ale and safety.

PIST. And I:

If wishes would prevail with me,  
My purpose should not fail with me,  
But thither would I hie.

BOY. As duly, but not as truly,  
As bird doth sing on bough.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

FLU. Up to the preach, you dogs! avaunt, you cullions.

*[Driving them forward]*

PIST. Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould!

Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage!

Abate thy rage, great duke!

Good bawcock, bate thy rage! use lenity, sweet chuck!

NYM. These be good humours!—your honour wins bad humours.

*[Exeunt NYM, PISTOL, and BARDOLPH,  
followed by FLUELLEN.]*

BOY. As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three: but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me; for, indeed, three such antics do not amount to a man. For Bardolph,—he is white-livered, and red-faced; by the means whereof 'a faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol,—he hath a killing tongue and a quiet sword; by the means whereof 'a breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym,—he hath heard that men of few words are the best men; and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest 'a should be thought a coward: but his few bad words are match'd with as few good deeds; for 'a never broke any man's head but

his own, and that was against a post, when he was drunk. They will steal anything, and call it—purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case; bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three half-pence. Nym and Bardolph are sworn brothers in filching, and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel: I knew, by that piece of service, the men would carry coals. They would have me as familiar with men's pockets, as their gloves or their handkerchers: which makes much against my manhood, if I should take from another's pocket, to put into mine; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them, and seek some better service: their villainy goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up. [*Exit Boy.*]

*Re-enter FLUELLEN, GOWER following.*

Gow. Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the duke of Gloster would speak with you.

FLU. To the mines! tell you the duke, it is not so good to come to the mines: For, look you, the mines is not according to the disciplines of the war; the concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you, th' athversary (you may discuss unto the duke, look you) is digged himself four yards under the countermines; by Cheshu, I think 'a will plow up all, if there is not better directions.

Gow. The duke of Gloster, to whom the order of the siege is given, is altogether directed by an Irishman; a very valiant gentleman, i' faith.

FLU. It is captain Macmorris, is it not?

Gow. I think it be.

FLU. By Cheshu, he is an ass as in the 'orld: I will verify as much in his peard: he has no more directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

*Enter MACMORRIS and JAMY, at a distance.*

Gow. Here 'a comes; and the Scots captain, captain Jamy, with him.

FLU. Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman, that is certain; and of great expedition, and knowledge, in



the ancient wars, upon my particular knowledge of his directions: by Cheshu, he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the 'orld, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

JAMY. I say, gud-day, captain Fluellen.

FLU. God-den, to your worship, goot captain Jamy.

GOW. How now, captain Macmorris? have you quit the mines? have the pioneers given o'er?

MAC. By Chrish la, tish ill done: the work ish give over, the trumpet sound the retreat. By my hand I swear, and my father's soul, the work ish ill done; it ish give over; I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la, in an hour. O, tish ill done, tish ill done; by my hand, tish ill done!

FLU. Captain Macmorris, I peseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you, as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication; partly to satisfy my opinion, and partly for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline? that is the point.

JAMY. It sall be vary gud, gud feith, gud captains bath; and I sall quit you with gud leve, as I may pick occasion, that sall I, marry.

MAC. It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me; the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes: it is no time to discourse. The town is beseeched, and the trumpet calls us to the breach; and we talk, and, by Chrish, do nothing: 't is shame for us all: so God sa' me, 't is shame to stand still; it is shame, by my hand: and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa' me, la.

JAMY. By the mess, ere these eyes of mine take themselves to slumber, aile do gude service, or aile ligge i' the grund for it; ay, or go to death; and aile pay it as valorously as I may, that sal I surely do, that is the breff and the long: Mary, I wad full fain heard some question 'tween you tway.

FLU. Captain Macmorris, I think, look you, under your correction, there is not many of your nation——

MAC. Of my nation? What ish my nation? What ish my nation? Who talks of my nation, ish a villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal.

FLU. Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, captain Macmorris, peradventure I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in discretion you ought to use me, look you; being as goot a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of wars, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other particularities.

MAC. I do not know you so good a man as myself: so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

Gow. Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

JAMY. Au! that's a foul fault. *[A parley sounded.]*

Gow. The town sounds a parley.

FLU. Captain Macmorris, when there is more better opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so bold as to tell you, I know the disciplines of war; and there is an end.

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE III.—*The same. Before the gates of Harfleur.*

*The Governor and some Citizens on the walls; the English Forces below. Enter KING HENRY and his Train.*

K. HEN. How yet resolves the governor of the town?  
This is the latest parle we will admit:  
Therefore, to our best mercy give yourselves;  
Or, like to men proud of destruction,  
Defy us to our worst: for, as I am a soldier,  
(A name that, in my thoughts, becomes me best,)  
If I begin the battery once again,  
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur  
Till in her ashes she lie buried.  
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up;  
And the flesh'd soldier, rough and hard of heart,  
In liberty of bloody hand shall range  
With conscience wide as flax; mowing like grass  
Your fresh-fair virgins and your flowering infants.  
What is it then to me, if impious war,  
Array'd in flames, like to the prince of fiends,

Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats  
Enlink'd to waste and desolation?  
What is 't to me, when you yourselves are cause,  
If your pure maidens fall into the hand  
Of hot and forcing violation?  
What rein can hold licentious wickedness  
When down the hill he holds his fierce career?  
We may as bootless spend our vain command  
Upon the enraged soldiers in their spoil,  
As send precepts to the Leviathan  
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,  
Take pity of your town, and of your people,  
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command;  
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace  
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds  
Of headly murder, spoil, and villainy.  
If not, why, in a moment, look to see  
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand  
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters;  
Your fathers taken by the silver beards,  
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;  
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes;  
Whiles the mad mothers with their howls confus'd  
Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry  
At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.  
What say you? will you yield, and this avoid?  
Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

Gov. Our expectation hath this day an end:  
The dauphin, whom of succours we entreated,  
Returns us—that his powers are yet not ready  
To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great king,  
We yield our town and lives to thy soft mercy:  
Enter our gates; dispose of us and ours;  
For we no longer are defensible.

K. HEN. Open your gates.—Come, uncle Exeter,  
Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,  
And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French:  
Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,—  
The winter coming on, and sickness growing  
Upon our soldiers,—we will retire to Calais.

To-night in Harfleur will we be your guest;  
To-morrow for the march are we address'd.

[*Flourish.* The KING, &c., enter the town.

SCENE IV.—Rouen. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter KATHARINE and ALICE.*

KATH. *Alice, tu as esté en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le language.*

ALICE. *Un peu, madame.*

KATH. *Je te prie, m'enseignez; il faut que j'apprenne à parler. Comment appelez vous la main, en Anglois?*

ALICE. *La main? elle est appelée, de hand.*

KATH. *De hand. Et les doigts?*

ALICE. *Les doigts? may foy, je oublie les doigts; mais je me souviendray. Les doigts? je pense qu'ils sont appelés de fingres; ouy, de fingres.*

KATH. *La main, de hand; les doigts, de fingres. Je pense que je suis le bon escolier. J'ay gagné deux mots d'Anglois vistement. Comment appelez vous les ongles?*

ALICE. *Les ongles? les appellons, de nails.*

KATH. *De nails. Escoutez; dites moy si je parle bien: de hand, de fingres, de nails.*

ALICE. *C'est bien dit, madame; il est fort bon Anglois.*

KATH. *Dites moy l'Anglois pour le bras.*

ALICE. *De arm, madame.*

KATH. *Et le coude?*

ALICE. *De elbow.*

KATH. *De elbow. Je m'en faitz la répétition de tous les mots que vous m'avez appris dès à present.*

ALICE. *Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.*

KATH. *Excusez moy, Alice; escoutez: De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de bilbow.*

ALICE. *De elbow, madame.*

KATH. *O Seigneur Dieu! je m'en oublie; De elbow. Comment appelez vous le col?*

ALICE. *De nick, madame.*

KATH. *De nick: Et le menton?*

ALICE. *De chin.*

KATH. *De sin. Le col, de nick; le menton, de sin.*

ALICE. *Ouy. Sauf vostre honneur; en vérité, vous prononcez les mots aussi droict que les natifs d'Angleterre.*

KATH. *Je ne doute point d'apprendre par la grâce de Dieu; et en peu de temps.*

ALICE. *N'avez vous pas déjà oublié ce que je vous ay enseignée?*

KATH. *Non, je reciteray à vous promptement. De hand, de fingre, de mails,—*

ALICE. *De nails, madame.*

KATH. *De nails, de arme, de ilbow.*

ALICE. *Sauf vostre honneur, de elbow.*

KATH. *Ainsi dis je; de elbow, de nick, et de sin: Comment appelez vous le pied et la robe?*

ALICE. *De foot, madame; et de coun.*

KATH. *De foot, et de coun? O Seigneur Dieu! ces sont mots de son mauvais, corruptible, grosse, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user: Je ne voudrois prononcer ces mots devant les seigneurs de France, pour tout le monde. Il faut de foot et de coun neantmoins. Je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble: De hand, de fingre, de nails, de arm, de elbow, de nick, de sin, de foot, de coun.*

ALICE. *Excellent, madame!*

KATH. *C'est assez pour une fois; allons nous à disner.*

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE V.—*The same. Another Room in the same.*

*Enter the French KING, the DAUPHIN, DUKE OF BOURBON, the CONSTABLE of France, and others.*

FR. KING. 'Tis certain he hath pass'd the river Somme.

CON. And if he be not fought withal, my lord,  
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,  
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

DAU. *O Dieu vivant!* shall a few sprays of us,—  
The emptying of our father's luxury,  
Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,  
Spurt up so suddenly into the clouds,  
And overlook their grafters?

BOUR. Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bastards!  
*Mort de ma vie!* if they march along

Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,  
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm  
In that nook-shotten isle of Albion.

CON. *Dieu de batailles!* where have they this mettle?  
Is not their climate foggy, raw, and dull?  
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,  
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water,  
A drench for sur-rein'd jades, their barley broth,  
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?  
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,  
Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,  
Let us not hang like roping icicles  
Upon our houses' thatch, whiles a more frosty people  
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields;  
Poor, we may call them in their native lords.

DAU. By faith and honour,  
Our madams mock at us; and plainly say  
Our mettle is bred out; and they will give  
Their bodies to the lust of English youth,  
To new-store France with bastard warriors.

BOUR. They bid us—to the English dancing-schools,  
And teach lavoltas high, and swift corantos;  
Saying, our grace is only in our heels,  
And that we are most lofty runaways.

FR. KING. Where is Montjoy, the herald? speed him  
hence;  
Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.  
Up, princes; and, with spirit of honour edg'd,  
More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:  
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;  
You dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berry,  
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;  
Jaques Chatillion, Rambures, Vaudemont,  
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Fauconberg,  
Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolois;  
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,  
For your great seats, now quit you of great shames;  
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land  
With pennons painted in the blood of Harfleur:  
Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow

Upon the valleys; whose low vassal seat  
The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon:  
Go down upon him,—you have power enough,—  
And in a captive chariot into Rouen  
Bring him our prisoner.

CON. This becomes the great.

Sorry am I his numbers are so few,  
His soldiers sick and famish'd in their march;  
For, I am sure, when he shall see our army,  
He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,  
And, for achievement, offer us his ransom.

FR. KING. Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjoy;  
And let him say to England, that we send  
To know what willing ransom he will give.  
Prince dauphin, you shall stay with us in Rouen.

DAU. Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

FR. KING. Be patient, for you shall remain with us.  
Now, forth, lord constable, and princes all;  
And quickly bring us word of England's fall. [Exeunt.]

SCENE VI.—*The English Camp in Picardy.*

*Enter GOWER and FLUELLEN.*

GOW How now, captain Fluellen? come you from the bridge?

FLU. I assure you, there is very excellent services committed at the pridge.

GOW. Is the duke of Exeter safe?

FLU. The duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my living, and my uttermost power: he is not (God be praised and plessed!) any hurt in the 'orld; but keeps the pridge most valiantly, with excellent disciplines. There is an ancient there at the pridge,—I think, in my very conscience, he is as valiant a man as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the 'orld: but I did see him do as gallant service.

GOW. What do you call him?

FLU. He is called ancient Pistol.

GOW. I know him not.

*Enter PISTOL.*

FLU. Here is the man.

PIST. Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours:  
The duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

FLU. Ay, I praise Got; and I have merited some love at his hands.

PIST. Bardolph, a soldier firm and sound of heart,  
And of buxom valour, hath,—by cruel fate,  
And giddy fortune's furious fickle wheel,  
That goddess blind,  
That stands upon the rolling restless stone,—

FLU. By your patience, ancient Pistol. Fortune is painted plind, with a muffler before her eyes, to signify to you that fortune is plind: And she is painted also with a wheel; to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and mutability, and variation: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls;—In good truth, the poet makes a most excellent description of it: fortune is an excellent moral.

PIST. Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him;  
For he hath stol'n a pax, and hanged must 'a be.  
A damned death!

Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free,  
And let not hemp his windpipe suffocate:  
But Exeter hath given the doom of death,  
For pax of little price.  
Therefore, go speak, the duke will hear thy voice;  
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut  
With edge of penny cord, and vile reproach:  
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

FLU. Ancient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

PIST. Why, then rejoice therefore.

FLU. Certainly, ancient, it is not a thing to rejoice at: for if, look you, he were my brother, I would desire the duke to use his goot pleasure, and put him to executions; for disciplines ought to be used.

PIST. Die and be damn'd; and *figo* for thy friendship.

FLU. It is well.



PIST. The fig of Spain!

[*Exit* PISTOL.]

FLU. Very good.

Gow. Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal; I remember him now; a bawd; a cutpurse.

FLU. I'll assure you, 'a uttered as prave 'ords at the pridge, as you shall see in a summer's day: But it is very well; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

Gow. Why, 't is a gull, a fool, a rogue; that now and then goes to the wars, to grace himself, at his return into London, under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in the great commanders' names: and they will learn you by rote where services were done;—at such and such a sconce, at such a breach, at such a convoy; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on; and this they con perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths: And what a beard of the general's cut, and a horrid suit of the camp, will do among foaming bottles and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on! But you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellously mistook.

FLU. I tell you what, captain Gower,—I do perceive he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the 'orld he is; if I find a hole in his coat, I will tell him my mind. [*Drum heard.*] Hark you, the king is coming; and I must speak with him from the pridge.

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, and Soldiers.

FLU. Got pless your majesty!

K. HEN. How now, Fluellen? camest thou from the bridge?

FLU. Ay, so please your majesty. The duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge: the French is gone off, look you; and there is gallant and most prave passages: Marry, th' athversary was have possession of the pridge; but he is enforced to retire, and the duke of Exeter is master of the pridge: I can tell your majesty, the duke is a prave man.

K. HEN. What men have you lost, Fluellen?

FLU. The perdition of th' athversary hath been very great,

reasonable great: marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man, but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church, one Bardolph, if your majesty knows the man: his face is all bubukles, and welks, and knobs, and flames of fire; and his lips plows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue, and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire's out.

K. HEN. We would have all such offenders so cut off:—and we give express charge, that, in our marches through the country, there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for, none of the French upbraided or abused in disdainful language; For when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

*Tucket sounds. Enter MONTJOY.*

MONT. You know me by my habit.

K. HEN. Well, then, I know thee; What shall I know of thee?

MONT. My master's mind.

K. HEN. Unfold it.

MONT. Thus says my king;—Say thou to Harry of England, Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep: Advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him, we could have rebuked him at Harfleur: but that we thought not good to bruise an injury till it were full ripe:—now we speak upon our cue, and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him, therefore, consider of his ransom: which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which, in weight to reanswer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add—defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master, so much my office.

K. HEN. What is thy name? I know thy quality.

MONT. Montjoy.

K. HEN. Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back,  
And tell thy king,—I do not seek him now;  
But could be willing to march on to Calais  
Without impeachment: for, to say the sooth,  
(Though 't is no wisdom to confess so much  
Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,)  
My people are with sickness much enfeebled;  
My numbers lessen'd; and those few I have  
Almost no better than so many French,  
Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,  
I thought upon one pair of English legs  
Did march three Frenchmen.—Yet, forgive me, God,  
That I do brag thus!—this your air of France  
Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent.  
Go, therefore, tell thy master here I am;  
My ransom is this frail and worthless trunk;  
My army but a weak and sickly guard;  
Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,  
Though France himself, and such another neighbour,  
Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy.  
Go bid thy master well advise himself:  
If we may pass, we will; if we be hinder'd,  
We shall your tawny ground with your red blood  
Discolour: and so, Montjoy, fare you well.  
The sum of all our answer is but this:  
We would not seek a battle as we are:  
Nor as we are, we say we will not shun it;  
So tell your master.

MONT. I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness.

[*Exit MONTJOY.*]

CLLO. I hope they will not come upon us now.

K. HEN. We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs.  
March to the bridge; it now draws toward night,—  
Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves;  
And on to-morrow bid them march away.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VII.—*The French Camp, near Agincourt.*

*Enter the CONSTABLE of France, the LORD RAMBURES, the DUKE OF ORLEANS, DAUPHIN, and others.*

CON. Tut! I have the best armour of the world.—'Would it were day!

ORL. You have an excellent armour; but let my horse have his due.

CON. It is the best horse of Europe.

ORL. Will it never be morning?

DAU. My lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable, you talk of horse and armour.

ORL. You are as well provided of both as any prince in the world.

DAU. What a long night is this!—I will not change my horse with any that treads but on four pasterns:—*ça, ha!* He bounds from the earth as if his entrails were hairs; *le cheval volant*, the Pegasus, *qui a les narines de feu!* When I bestride him I soar, I am a hawk: he trots the air; the earth sings when he touches it; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

ORL. He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

DAU. And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus: he is pure air and fire; and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness, while his rider mounts him: he is, indeed, a horse; and all other jades you may call beasts.

CON. Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

DAU. It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

ORL. No more, cousin.

DAU. Nay, the man hath no wit that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey: it is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all: 't is a subject for a sovereign to reason on, and

for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on: and for the world (familiar to us, and unknown) to lay apart their particular functions, and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise, and began thus:—"Wonder of nature,"—

ORL. I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

DAU. Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser; for my horse is my mistress.

ORL. Your mistress bears well.

DAU. Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

CON. Nay, for methought, yesterday, your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

DAU. So, perhaps, did yours.

CON. Mine was not bridled.

DAU. O! then, belike, she was old and gentle; and you rode, like a kerne of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your straight trossers.

CON. You have good judgment in horsemanship.

DAU. Be warned by me, then: they that ride so, and ride not warily, fall into foul bogs; I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

CON. I had as lief have my mistress a jade.

DAU. I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears her own hair.

CON. I could make as true a boast as that, if I had a sow to my mistress.

DAU. *Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au boubier*: thou makest use of anything.

CON. Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress; or any such proverb, so little kin to the purpose.

RAM. My lord constable, the armour that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars, or suns, upon it?

CON. Stars, my lord.

DAU. Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

CON. And yet my sky shall not want.

DAU. That may be, for you bear a many superfluously; and 't were more honour some were away.

CON. E'en as your horse bears your praises; who would trot as well were some of your brags dismounted.

DAU. 'Would I were able to load him with his desert!

Will it never be day? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

CON. I will not say so, for fear I should be faced out of my way: But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

RAM. Who will go to hazard with me for twenty prisoners?

CON. You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

DAU. 'T is midnight, I'll go arm myself. [Exit.]

ORL. The dauphin longs for morning.

RAM. He longs to eat the English.

CON. I think he will eat all he kills.

ORL. By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince.

CON. Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

ORL. He is, simply, the most active gentleman of France.

CON. Doing is activity; and he will still be doing.

ORL. He never did harm, that I heard of.

CON. Nor will do none to-morrow: he will keep that good name still.

ORL. I know him to be valiant.

CON. I was told that, by one that knows him better than you.

ORL. What's he?

CON. Marry, he told me so himself; and he said, he cared not who knew it.

ORL. He needs not, it is no hidden virtue in him.

CON. By my faith, sir, but it is; never anybody saw it, but his lackey: 't is a hooded valour; and, when it appears, it will bate.

ORL. Ill will never said well.

CON. I will cap that proverb with—There is flattery in friendship.

ORL. And I will take up that with—Give the devil his due.

CON. Well placed: there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb, with—A pox of the devil.

ORL. You are the better at proverbs, by how much—A fool's bolt is soon shot.

CON. You have shot over.

ORL. 'T is not the first time you were overshot.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tents.

CON. Who hath measured the ground?

MESS. The lord Grandpré.

CON. A valiant and most expert gentleman.—Would it were day!—Alas, poor Harry of England! he longs not for the dawning, as we do.

ORL. What a wretched and peevish fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

CON. If the English had any apprehension they would run away.

ORL. That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

RAM. That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.

ORL. Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear, and have their heads crushed like rotten apples: You may as well say,—that's a valiant flea, that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

CON. Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs, in robustious and rough coming-on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef, and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves, and fight like devils.

ORL. Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

CON. Then shall we find to-morrow, they have only stomachs to eat and none to fight. Now is it time to arm: Come, shall we about it?

ORL. It is now two o'clock: but, let me see,—by ten, We shall have each a hundred Englishmen.

## ACT IV.

## CHORUS.

Now entertain conjecture of a time,  
When creeping murmur, and the poring dark,  
Fills the wide vessel of the universe.  
From camp to camp, through the foul womb of night,  
The hum of either army stilly sounds,  
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive  
The secret whispers of each other's watch:  
Fire answers fire: and through their paly flames  
Each battle sees the other's umber'd face:  
Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs  
Piercing the night's dull ear; and from the tents,  
The armourers, accomplishing the knights,  
With busy hammers closing rivets up,  
Give dreadful note of preparation.  
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,  
And the third hour of drowsy morning name.  
Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,  
The confident and over-lusty French  
Do the low-rated English play at dice;  
And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night,  
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp  
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,  
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires  
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate  
The morning's danger; and their gesture sad  
Investing lank-lean cheeks, and war-worn coats,  
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon  
So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will behold  
The royal captain of this ruin'd band,  
Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,  
Let him cry—Praise and glory on his head!  
For forth he goes, and visits all his host;  
Bids them good morrow, with a modest smile:  
And calls them—brothers, friends, and countrymen.  
Upon his royal face there is no note



How dread an army hath enrounded him;  
Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour  
Unto the weary and all-watched night:  
But freshly looks, and overbears attaint  
With cheerful semblance and sweet majesty;  
That every wretch, pining and pale before  
Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks:  
A largess universal, like the sun,  
His liberal eye doth give to every one,  
Thawing cold fear, that mean and gentle all  
Behold (as may unworthiness define)  
A little touch of Harry in the night:  
And so our scene must to the battle fly;  
Where (O for pity!) we shall much disgrace—  
With four or five most vile and ragged foils,  
Right ill-dispos'd in brawl ridiculous—  
The name of Agincourt: Yet, sit and see;  
Minding true things by what their mockeries be.

SCENE I.—*The English Camp at Agincourt.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, BEDFORD, and GLOSTER.

K. HEN. Gloster, 't is true that we are in great danger;  
The greater therefore should our courage be.  
Good morrow, brother Bedford.—God Almighty!  
There is some soul of goodness in things evil,  
Would men observingly distil it out;  
For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers,  
Which is both healthful and good husbandry:  
Besides, they are our outward consciences,  
And preachers to us all; admonishing  
That we should dress us fairly for our end.  
Thus may we gather honey from the weed,  
And make a moral of the devil himself.

*Enter* ERPINGHAM.

Good morrow, old sir Thomas Erpingham:  
A good soft pillow for that good white head  
Were better than a churlish turf of France.

ERP. Not so, my liege; this lodging likes me better,

Since I may say, now lie I like a king.

K. HEN. 'T is good for men to love their present pains,  
Upon example; so the spirit is eas'd:

And, when the mind is quicken'd, out of doubt,  
The organs, though defunct and dead before,  
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move  
With casted slough and fresh legerity.

Lend me thy cloak, sir Thomas.—Brothers both,  
Commend me to the princes in our camp;  
Do my good morrow to them; and, anon,  
Desire them all to my pavilion.

GLO. We shall, my liege.

[*Exeunt GLO. and BED.*]

ERP. Shall I attend your grace?

K. HEN.

No, my good knight;

Go with my brothers to my lords of England:  
I and my bosom must debate awhile,  
And then I would no other company.

ERP. The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble Harry!

[*Exit ERPINGHAM.*]

K. HEN. God-a-mercy, old heart! thou speak'st cheer-  
fully.

*Enter PISTOL.*

PIST. *Qui va là?*

K. HEN. A friend.

PIST. Discuss unto me; Art thou officer?  
Or art thou base, common, and popular?

K. HEN. I am a gentleman of a company.

PIST. Trail'st thou the puissant pike?

K. HEN. Even so: What are you?

PIST. As good a gentleman as the emperor.

K. HEN. Then you are a better than the king.

PIST. The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,  
A lad of life, an imp of fame;  
Of parents good, of fist most valiant:  
I kiss his dirty shoe, and from my heart-strings  
I love the lovely bully. What's thy name?

K. HEN. Harry *le Roy*.

PIST. *Le Roy!* a Cornish name; art thou of Cornish  
crew?

K. HEN. No, I am a Welshman.

PIST. Knowest thou Fluellen?

K. HEN. Yes.

PIST. Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate,  
Upon Saint Davy's day.

K. HEN. Do not you wear your dagger in your cap that  
day, lest he knock that about yours.

PIST. Art thou his friend?

K. HEN. And his kinsman too.

PIST. The *figo* for thee, then.

K. HEN. I thank you: God be with you!

PIST. My name is Pistol called.

[*Exit.*

K. HEN. It sorts well with your fierceness.

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER, severally.*

Gow. Captain Fluellen!

FLU. So! in the name of Cheshu Christ, speak fewer. It  
is the greatest admiration in the universal 'orld, when the  
true and auncient prerogatives and laws of the wars is not  
kept: if you would take the pains but to examine the wars  
of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that  
there is no tittle tattle, nor pibble pabble, in Pompey's camp;  
I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars,  
and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of  
it, and the modesty of it, to be otherwise.

Gow. Why, the enemy is loud; you hear him all night.

FLU. If the enemy is an ass, and a fool, and a prating  
coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look  
you, be an ass, and a fool, and a prating coxcomb; in your  
conscience now?

Gow. I will speak lower.

FLU. I pray you, and beseech you, that you will.

[*Exeunt GOWER and FLUELLEN.*

K. HEN. Though it appear a little out of fashion,  
There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

*Enter three soldiers, JOHN BATES, ALEXANDER COURT, and  
MICHAEL WILLIAMS.*

COURT. Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which  
breaks yonder?

BATES. I think it be: but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.

WILL. We see yonder the beginning of the day, but, I think, we shall never see the end of it.—Who goes there?

K. HEN. A friend.

WILL. Under what captain serve you?

K. HEN. Under sir Thomas Erpingham.

WILL. A good old commander and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?

K. HEN. Even as men wracked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.

BATES. He hath not told his thought to the king?

K. HEN. No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am; the violet smells to him as it doth to me; the element shows to him as it doth to me; all his senses have but human conditions; his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet, when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing; therefore, when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: Yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

BATES. He may show what outward courage he will: but, I believe, as cold a night as 't is, he could wish himself in Thames up to the neck; and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

K. HEN. By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king; I think he would not wish himself anywhere but where he is.

BATES. Then I would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

K. HEN. I dare say you love him not so ill to wish him here alone, howsoever you speak this to feel other men's minds: Methinks, I could not die anywhere so contented as in the king's company; his cause being just, and his quarrel honourable.

WILL. That's more than we know.

BATES. Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we

know enough if we know we are the king's subjects; if his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

WILL. But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make; when all those legs, and arms, and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all—We died at such a place; some, swearing; some, crying for a surgeon; some, upon their wives left poor behind them; some, upon the debts they owe; some, upon their children rawly left. I am afraid there are few die well that die in a battle; for how can they charitably dispose of anything when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it; whom to disobey were against all proportion of subjection.

K. HEN. So, if a son, that is by his father sent about merchandise, do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command, transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers, and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation:—But this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his son, nor the master of his servant; for they purpose not their death when they purpose their services. Besides, there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law, and outrun native punishment, though they can outstrip men they have no wings to fly from God: war is his beadle, war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished, for before-breach of the king's laws, in now the king's quarrel: where they feared the death they have borne life away; and where they would be safe they perish: Then if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their

damnation, than he was before guilty of those impieties for the which they are now visited. Every subject's duty is the king's; but every subject's soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every mote out of his conscience; and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost, wherein such preparation was gained: and in him that escapes it were not sin to think that making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

WILL. 'T is certain, every man that dies ill the ill is upon his own head, the king is not to answer it.

BATES. I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

K. HEN. I myself heard the king say he would not be ransomed.

WILL. Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully: but, when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

K. HEN. If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

WILL. You pay him then! That's a perilous shot out of an elder gun, that a poor and a private displeasure can do against a monarch! you may as well go about to turn the sun to ice, with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after! come, 't is a foolish saying.

K. HEN. Your reproof is something too round; I should be angry with you, if the time were convenient.

WILL. Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

K. HEN. I embrace it.

WILL. How shall I know thee again?

K. HEN. Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet: then, if ever thou darest acknowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

WILL. Here's my glove; give me another of thine.

K. HEN. There.

WILL. This will I also wear in my cap; if ever thou come to me and say, after to-morrow, "This is my glove," by this hand, I will take thee a box on the ear.

K. HEN. If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

WILL. Thou darrest as well be hanged.

K. HEN. Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the king's company.

WILL. Keep thy word: fare thee well.

BATES. Be friends, you English fools, be friends; we have French quarrels enow, if you could tell how to reckon.

K. HEN. Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one they will beat us; for they bear them on their shoulders: But it is no English treason to cut French crowns; and, to-morrow, the king himself will be a clipper.

*[Exeunt Soldiers.]*

Upon the king! let us our lives, our souls,  
Our debts, our careful wives,  
Our children, and our sins, lay on the king:  
We must bear all.

O hard condition! twin-born with greatness,  
Subject to the breath of every fool, whose sense  
No more can feel but his own wringing!

What infinite heart's ease must kings neglect,  
That private men enjoy?

And what have kings that privates have not too,  
Save ceremony, save general ceremony?

And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?

What kind of god art thou, that suffer'st more  
Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers?

What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?

O ceremony, show me but thy worth!

What is thy soul of adoration?

Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,  
Creating awe and fear in other men?

Wherein thou art less happy being fear'd  
Than they in fearing.

What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,  
But poison'd flattery? O, be sick, great greatness,  
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!

Think'st thou, the fiery fever will go out  
With titles blown from adulation?

Will it give place to flexure and low bending?

Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,

Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream,  
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;  
I am a king that find thee; and I know,  
'T is not the balm, the sceptre, and the ball,  
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,  
The inter-tissued robe of gold and pearl,  
The farced title running 'fore the king,  
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp  
That beats upon the high shore of this world,  
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,  
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,  
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave;  
Who, with a body fill'd, and vacant mind,  
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread:  
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell;  
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set,  
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night  
Sleeps in Elysium; next day, after dawn,  
Doth rise, and help Hyperion to his horse;  
And follows so the ever-running year,  
With profitable labour, to his grave:  
And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,  
Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,  
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.  
The slave, a member of the country's peace,  
Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots  
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,  
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.

*Enter ERPINGHAM.*

ERP. My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,  
Seek through your camp to find you.

K. HEN. Good old knight,  
Collect them all together at my tent:  
I'll be before thee.

ERP. I shall do 't, my lord. [Exit]

K. HEN. O God of battles! steel my soldiers' hearts!  
Possess them not with fear! Take from them now  
The sense of reckoning of the opposed numbers!  
Pluck their hearts from them not to-day, O Lord,



O not to-day! Think not upon the fault  
My father made in compassing the crown!  
I Richard's body have interred new;  
And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears  
Than from it issued forced drops of blood.  
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,  
Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up  
Toward heaven, to pardon blood; and I have built  
Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests  
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do;  
Though all that I can do is nothing worth;  
Since that my penitence comes after all,  
Imploring pardon.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. My liege!

K. HEN. My brother Gloster's voice?—Ay;  
I know thy errand, I will go with thee:—  
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*The French Camp.*

*Enter DAUPHIN, ORLEANS, RAMBURES, and others.*

ORL. The sun doth gild our armour; up, my lords.

DAU. *Montez à cheval*:—My horse! *valet!* *lacquay!* ha!

ORL. O brave spirit!

DAU. *Via!*—*les eaux et la terre*—

ORL. *Rien puis? l'air et la feu*—

DAU. *Ciel!* cousin Orleans.—

*Enter CONSTABLE.*

Now, my lord constable!

CON. Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh.

DAU. Mount them, and make incision in their hides;  
That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,  
And doubt them with superfluous courage: Ha!

RAM. What, will you have them weep our horses' blood?  
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

*Enter a Messenger.*

**MESS.** The English are embattled, you French peers.

**CON.** To horse, you gallant princes! straight to horse!  
Do but behold yon poor and starved band,  
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,  
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.  
There is not work enough for all our hands;  
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins,  
To give each naked curtle-axe a stain,  
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,  
And sheathe for lack of sport: let us but blow on them,  
The vapour of our valour will o'erturn them.  
'T is positive 'gainst all exceptions, lords,  
That our superfluous lackeys, and our peasants,—  
Who, in unnecessary action, swarm  
About our squares of battle,—were enow  
To purge this field of such a hilding foe:  
Though we upon this mountain's basis by,  
Took stand for idle speculation:  
But that our honours must not. What's to say?  
A very little little let us do,  
And all is done. Then let the trumpet sound  
The tucket-sonaunce and the note to mount:  
For our approach shall so much dare the field,  
That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

*Enter GRANDPRÉ.*

**GRAND.** Why do you stay so long, my lords of France?  
Yon island carrions, desperate of their bones,  
Ill-favour'dly become the morning field:  
Their ragged curtains poorly are let loose,  
And our air shakes them passing scornfully.  
Big Mars seems bankrout in their beggar'd host,  
And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps.  
The horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks,  
With torch-staves in their hand; and their poor jades  
Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips;  
The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes;

And in their pale dull mouths the gimmel bit  
Lies foul with chaw'd grass, still and motionless;  
And their executors, the knavish crows,  
Fly o'er them all, impatient for their hour.  
Description cannot suit itself in words,  
To demonstrate the life of such a battle  
In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

CON. They have said their prayers, and they stay for death.

DAU. Shall we go send them dinners, and fresh suits,  
And give their fasting horses provender,  
And after fight with them?

CON. I stay but for my guidon. To the field:  
I will the banner from a trumpet take,  
And use it for my haste. Come, come away!  
The sun is high, and we outwear the day.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*The English Camp.*

*Enter the English Host; GLOSTER, BEDFORD, EXETER,  
SALISBURY, and WESTMORELAND.*

GLO. Where is the king?

BED. The king himself is rode to view their battle.

WEST. Of fighting men they have full threescore thousand.

EXE. There's five to one; besides, they all are fresh.

SAL. God's arm strike with us! 't is a fearful odds.

God be wi' you, princes all; I'll to my charge:

If we no more meet till we meet in heaven,

Then, joyfully;—my noble lord of Bedford,

My dear lord Gloster, and my good lord Exeter,

And my kind kinsman, warriors all—adieu!

BED. Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!

EXE. Farewell, kind lord, fight valiantly to-day;

And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it,

For thou art fram'd of the firm truth of valour.

[*Exit SALISBURY.*]

BED. He is as full of valour as of kindness;  
Princely in both.

WEST. O that we now had here

*Enter* KING HENRY.

But one ten thousand of those men in England  
That do no work to-day!

K. HEN.                      What 's he that wishes so?  
My cousin Westmoreland?—No, my fair cousin:  
If we are mark'd to die, we are enow  
To do our country loss; and if to live,  
The fewer men the greater share of honour.  
God's will! I pray thee, wish not one man more.  
By Jove, I am not covetous for gold;  
Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost;  
It yearns me not if men my garments wear;  
Such outward things dwell not in my desires:  
But if it be a sin to covet honour  
I am the most offending soul alive.  
No, 'faith, my coz, wish not a man from England:  
God's peace! I would not lose so great an honour,  
As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
For the best hope I have. O, do not wish one more:  
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
That he which hath no stomach to this fight  
Let him depart; his passport shall be made,  
And crowns for convoy put into his purse:  
We would not die in that man's company  
That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
This day is call'd the feast of Crispian:  
He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
And rouse him at the name of Crispian.  
He that shall see this day, and live old age,  
Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours,  
And say, To-morrow is saint Crispian:  
Then will he strip his sleeve, and show his scars;  
Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot,  
But he'll remember, with advantages,  
What feats he did that day: Then shall our names,  
Familiar in his mouth as household words,—  
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,  
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloster,—

Be in their flowing cups freshly remember'd:  
This story shall the good man teach his son;  
And Crispin Crispian shall ne'er go by,  
From this day to the ending of the world,  
But we in it shall be remembered:  
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;  
For he to-day that sheds his blood with me  
Shall be my brother; be he ne'er so vile,  
This day shall gentle his condition:  
And gentlemen in England, now a-bed,  
Shall think themselves accurs'd they were not here;  
And hold their manhoods cheap, whiles any speaks  
That fought with us upon St. Crispin's day.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

SAL. My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed:  
The French are bravely in their battles set,  
And will with all expedience charge on us.

K. HEN. All things are ready, if our minds be so.

WEST. Perish the man whose mind is backward now!

K. HEN. Thou dost not wish more help from England, coz?

WEST. God's will, my liege, 'would you and I alone,  
Without more help, could fight this royal battle!

K. HEN. Why, now thou hast unwish'd five thousand men;  
Which likes me better than to wish us one.—  
You know your places: God be with you all!

*Tucket. Enter MONTJOY.*

MONT. Once more I come to know of thee, king Harry,  
If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound,  
Before thy most assured overthrow:  
For, certainly, thou art so near the gulf  
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,  
The Constable desires thee—thou wilt mind  
Thy followers of repentance; that their souls  
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire  
From off these fields, where (wretches) their poor bodies  
Must lie and fester.

K. HEN. Who hath sent thee now?

MONT. The Constable of France.

K. HEN. I pray thee bear my former answer back;  
Bid them achieve me, and then sell my bones.  
Good God! why should they mock poor fellows thus?  
The man that once did sell the lion's skin  
While the beast liv'd, was kill'd with hunting him.  
A many of our bodies shall, no doubt,  
Find native graves; upon the which, I trust,  
Shall witness live in brass of this day's work:  
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,  
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,  
They shall be fam'd; for there the sun shall greet them,  
And draw their honours reeking up to heaven;  
Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,  
The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.  
Mark then abounding valour in our English;  
That, being dead, like to the bullet's grazing,  
Break out into a second course of mischief,  
Killing in relapse of mortality.  
Let me speak proudly:—Tell the Constable,  
We are but warriors for the working-day:  
Our gayness, and our gilt, are all besmirch'd  
With rainy marching in the painful field;  
There's not a piece of feather in our host,  
(Good argument, I hope, we will not fly,)  
And time hath worn us into slovenry:  
But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim:  
And my poor soldiers tell me, yet ere night  
They'll be in fresher robes; or they will pluck  
The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,  
And turn them out of service. If they do this,  
(As, if God please, they shall,) my ransom then  
Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;  
Come thou no more for ransom, gentle herald;  
They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints:  
Which if they have as I will leave 'em them,  
Shall yield them little, tell the Constable.

MONT. I shall, king Harry. And so fare thee well:  
Thou never shalt hear herald any more.

[*Exit.*

K. HEN. I fear, thou wilt once more come again for a  
ransom.

*Enter the DUKE OF YORK.*

YORK. My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg  
The leading of the vaward.

K. HEN. Take it, brave York.—Now, soldiers, march  
away:—  
And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day! [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—*The Field of Battle.*

*Alarums; Excursions. Enter French Soldier, PISTOL,  
and Boy.*

PIST. Yield, cur.

FR. SOL. *Je pense que vous estes le gentilhomme de bonne  
qualité.*

PIST. Quality! Calen o Custure me. Art thou a gentleman?  
What is thy name? discuss.

FR. SOL. *O Seigneur Dieu!*

PIST. O, signieur Dew should be a gentleman:—  
Perpend my words, O signieur Dew, and mark;—  
O signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,  
Except, O signieur, thou do give to me  
Egregious ransom.

FR. SOL. *O, prenez misericorde! ayez pitié de moy!*

PIST. Moy shall not serve, I will have forty moys;  
For I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat,  
In drops of crimson blood.

FR. SOL. *Est il impossible d'eschapper la force de ton bras?*

PIST. Brass, cur!  
Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat,  
Offer'st me brass?

FR. SOL. *O pardonnez moy.*

PIST. Say'st thou me so? is that a ton of moys?  
Come hither, boy: Ask me this slave in French,  
What is his name.

BOY. *Escoutez; Comment estes vous appelé?*

FR. SOL. *Monsieur le Fer.*

BOY. He says his name is master Fer.

PIST. Master Fer! I'll fer him, and firke him, and ferret  
him:—discuss the same in French unto him.

Boy. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and firr.

Pist. Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

FR. SOL. *Que dit-il, monsieur?*

Boy. *Il me commande de vous dire que vous faites vous prest; car ce soldat icy est disposé tout à cette heure de couper vostre gorge.*

Pist. Ouy, couper gorge, par ma foy, pesant,  
Unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;  
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

FR. SOL. *O, je vous supplie, pour l'amour de Dieu, me pardonner! Je suis gentilhomme de bonne maison; gardez ma vie, et je vous donneray deux cent escus.*

Pist. What are his words?

Boy. He prays you to save his life: he is a gentleman of a good house; and for his ransom he will give you two hundred crowns.

Pist. Tell him,—my fury shall abate, and I  
The crowns will take.

FR. SOL. *Petit monsieur, que dit-il?*

Boy. *Encore qu'il est contre son jurement de pardonner aucun prisonnier; neantmoins, pour les escus que vous l'avez promis, il est content de vous donner la liberté, le franchise-ment.*

FR. SOL. *Sur mes genoux je vous donne mille remerciemens: et je m'estime heureux que je suis tombé entre les mains d'un chevalier, je pense, le plus brave, valiant, et très distingué seigneur d'Angleterre.*

Pist. Expound unto me, boy.

Boy. He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks: and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen into the hands of one (as he thinks) the most brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of England.

Pist. As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.—  
Follow me.

[Exit PISTOL.]

Boy. *Suivez vous le grand capitaine.* [Exit French Soldier.]  
I did never know so full a voice issue from so empty a heart: but the saying is true,—the empty vessel makes the greatest sound. Bardolph and Nym had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i' the old play, that every one may pare his



nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be, if he durst steal anything adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp: the French might have a good prey of us, if he knew of it; for there is none to guard it but boys. *[Exit.]*

SCENE V.—*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter* DAUPHIN, ORLEANS, BOURBON, CONSTABLE, RAMBURES, *and others.*

CON. *O diable!*

ORL. *O seigneur!—le jour est perdu, tout est perdu!*

DAU. *Mort de ma vie!*—all is confounded, all!

Reproach and everlasting shame

Sits mocking in our plumes.—*O meschante fortune!*—

Do not run away. *[A short alarum.]*

CON. Why, all our ranks are broke.

DAU. O perdurable shame!—let's stab ourselves.

Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?

ORL. Is this the king we sent to for his ransom?

BOUR. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame!

Let's die in honour: Once more back again;

And he that will not follow Bourbon now,

Let him go hence, and, with his cap in hand,

Like a base pander, hold the chamber-door,

Whilst by a slave, no gentler than my dog,

His fairest daughter is contaminated.

CON. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now!

Let us, on heaps, go offer up our lives.

ORL. We are enow, yet living in the field,

To smother up the English in our throngs,

If any order might be thought upon.

BOUR. The devil take order now! I'll to the throng;

Let life be short; else shame will be too long. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE VI.—*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter KING HENRY and Forces; EXETER, and others, with prisoners.*

K. HEN. Well have we done, thrice valiant countrymen:  
But all's not done, yet keep the French the field.

EXE. The Duke of York commends him to your majesty

K. HEN. Lives he, good uncle? thrice within this hour  
I saw him down; thrice up again, and fighting;  
From helmet to the spur, all blood he was.

EXE. In which array (brave soldier!) doth he lie,  
Larding the plain: and by his bloody side  
(Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds)

The noble earl of Suffolk also lies.

Suffolk first died: and York, all haggled over,  
Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep'd,  
And takes him by the beard; kisses the gashes,  
That bloodily did yawn upon his face;

And cries aloud,—“Tarry, my cousin Suffolk!  
My soul shall thine keep company to heaven:  
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly a-breast;  
As, in this glorious and well-foughten field,  
We kept together in our chivalry!”

Upon these words I came, and cheer'd him up:  
He smil'd me in the face, raught me his hand,  
And with a feeble gripe, says,—“Dear my lord,  
Commend my service to my sovereign.”

So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck  
He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips;  
And so, espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd  
A testament of noble-ending love.

The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd  
Those waters from me, which I would have stopp'd;  
But I had not so much of man in me,  
And all my mother came into mine eyes,  
And gave me up to tears.

K. KEN. I blame you not;  
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound  
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too.—

[*Alarum.*

But, hark! what new alarum is this same?—  
The French have reforc'd their scatter'd men:—  
Then every soldier kill his prisoners;  
Give the word through.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VII.—*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarums. Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

FLU. Kill the poys and the luggage! 't is expressly against the law of arms: 't is as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can be offered. In your conscience now, is it not?

Gow. 'T is certain there's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals that ran from the battle have done this slaughter: besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; wherefore the king, most worthily, hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 't is a gallant king!

FLU. Ay, he was porn at Monmouth, captain Gower: What call you the town's name where Alexander the pig was porn?

Gow. Alexander the great.

FLU. Why, I pray you, is not pig, great? The pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

Gow. I think Alexander the great was born in Macedon; his father was called Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

FLU. I think it is in Macedon where Alexander is porn. I tell you, captain,—If you look in the maps of the 'orld, I warrant you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon; and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye, at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains what is the name of the other river; but 't is all one, 't is alike as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander (God knows, and you know), in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains,

did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his pest friend, Clytus.

Gow. Our king is not like him in that; he never killed any of his friends.

FLU. It is not well done, mark you now, to take the tales out of my mouth, ere it is made and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: As Alexander killed his friend Clytus, being in his ales and his cups; so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his goot judgments, turned away the fat knight with the great pelly-doublet: he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I have forgot his name.

Gow. Sir John Falstaff.

FLU. That is he: I'll tell you, there is goot men porn at Monmouth.

Gow. Here comes his majesty.

*Alarum. Enter KING HENRY with a part of the English Forces; WARWICK, GLOSTER, EXETER, and others.*

K. HEN. I was not angry since I came to France  
Until this instant.—Take a trumpet, herald;  
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill;  
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,  
Or void the field; they do offend our sight:  
If they 'll do neither, we will come to them;  
And make them skirr away, as swift as stones  
Enforced from the old Assyrian slings:  
Besides, we 'll cut the throats of those we have;  
And not a man of them, that we shall take,  
Shall taste our mercy:—Go, and tell them so.

*Enter MONTJOY.*

EXE. Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

GLO. His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

K. HEN. How now! what means this, herald? know'st  
thou not

That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransom?  
Com'st thou again for ransom?

MONT. No, great king,  
I come to thee for charitable licence,

That we may wander o'er this bloody field,  
To book our dead, and then to bury them;  
To sort our nobles from our common men:  
For many of our princes (woe the while!)  
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood;  
(So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs  
In blood of princes;) and their wounded steeds  
Fret fetlock deep in gore, and, with wild rage,  
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,  
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,  
To view the field in safety, and dispose  
Of their dead bodies.

K. HEN. I tell thee truly, herald,  
I know not if the day be ours, or no;  
For yet a many of your horsemen peer,  
And gallop o'er the field.

MONT. The day is yours.

K. HEN. Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!  
What is this castle call'd that stands hard by?

MONT. They call it Agincourt.

K. HEN. Then call we this the field of Agincourt,  
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

FLU. Your grandfather of famous memory, an't please  
your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the plack prince  
of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought a most  
prave pattle here in France.

K. HEN. They did, Fluellen.

FLU. Your majesty says very true: if your majesties is  
remembered of it, the Welshmen did goot service in a garden  
where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Monmouth  
caps; which, your majesty knows, to this hour is an honour-  
able padge of the service; and, I do believe, your majesty  
takes no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

K. HEN. I wear it for a memorable honour:  
For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

FLU. All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's  
Welsh plood out of your pody, I can tell you that: Got pless  
it and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace, and his ma-  
jesty too!

K. HEN. Thanks, good my countryman.

FLU. By Cheshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I care not who know it; I will confess it to all the 'orld: I need not be ashamed of your majesty, praised be God, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

K. HEN. God keep me so!—Our heralds go with him; Bring me just notice of the numbers dead On both our parts.—Call yonder fellow hither.

[*Points to WILLIAMS. Exeunt MONTJOY and others.*]

EXE. Soldier, you must come to the king.

K. HEN. Soldier, why wearest thou that glove in thy cap?

WILL. An 't please your majesty, 't is the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

K. HEN. An Englishman?

WILL. An 't please your majesty, a rascal that swaggered with me last night: who, if 'a live and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' the ear: or, if I can see my glove in his cap, (which he swore, as he was a soldier, he would wear if alive,) I will strike it out soundly.

K. HEN. What think you, captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

FLU. He is a craven and a villain else, an 't please your majesty, in my conscience.

K. HEN. It may be his enemy is a gentleman of great sort, quite from the answer of his degree.

FLU. Though he be as goot a gentleman as the tevil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath: if he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain, and a Jack sauce, as ever his plack shoe trod upon Got's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la.

K. HEN. Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meet'st the fellow.

WILL. So I will, my liege, as I live.

K. HEN. Who servest thou under?

WILL. Under captain Gower, my liege.

FLU. Gower is a goot captain; and is goot knowledge and literature in the wars.

K. HEN. Call him hither to me, soldier.

WILL. I will, my liege.

[*Exit.*]

K. HEN. Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me,

and stick it in thy cap: When Alençon and myself were down together, I plucked this glove from his helm; if any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon, and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost me love.

FLU. Your grace does me as great honours as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man, that has but two legs, that shall find himself aggrieved at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once; and please Got of his grace that I might see it.

K. HEN. Knowest thou Gower?

FLU. He is my dear friend, an please you.

K. HEN. Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

FLU. I will fetch him.

[*Exit.*

K. HEN. My lord of Warwick, and my brother Gloster, Follow Fluellen closely at the heels:

The glove which I have given him for a favour

May, haply, purchase him a box o' the ear;

It is the soldier's; I, by bargain, should

Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick:

If that the soldier strike him, (as, I judge

By his blunt bearing he will keep his word,)

Some sudden mischief may arise of it;

For I do know Fluellen valiant,

And, touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,

And quickly will return an injury:

Follow, and see there be no harm between them.—

Go you with me, uncle of Exeter.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE VIII.—*Before King HENRY's Pavilion.*

*Enter GOWER and WILLIAMS.*

WILL. I warrant it is to knight you, captain.

*Enter FLUELLEN.*

FLU. Got's will and his pleasure, captain, I peseech you now, come apace to the king: there is more goot toward you, peradventure, than is in your knowledge to dream of.

WILL. Sir, know you this glove?

FLU. Know the glove? I know, the glove is a glove.

WILL. I know this; and thus I challenge it.

*[Strikes him.]*

FLU. 'Sblud, an arrant traitor as any's in the universal world, or in France, or in England.

Gow. How now, sir? you villain!

WILL. Do you think I'll be forsworn?

FLU. Stand away, captain Gower; I will give treason his payment into plows, I warrant you.

WILL. I am no traitor.

FLU. That's a lie in thy throat.—I charge you in his majesty's name, apprehend him; he's a friend of the duke Alençon's.

*Enter WARWICK and GLOSTER.*

WAR. How now, how now! what's the matter?

FLU. My lord of Warwick, here is (praised be Got for it!) a most contagious treason come to light, look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day. Here is his majesty.

*Enter KING HENRY and EXETER.*

K. HEN. How now! what's the matter?

FLU. My liege, here is a villain, and a traitor, that, look your grace, has struck the glove which your majesty is take out of the helmet of Alençon.

WILL. My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow of it: and he that I gave it to in change promised to wear it in his cap; I promised to strike him, if he did: I met this man with my glove in his cap, and I have been as good as my word.

FLU. Your majesty hear now, (saving your majesty's manhood,) what an arrant, rascally, beggarly, lousy knave it is: I hope your majesty is pear me testimony, and witness, and will avouchment, that this is the glove of Alençon, that your majesty is give me, in your conscience now.

K. HEN. Give me thy glove, soldier! Look, here's the fellow of it.

'T was I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike;  
And thou hast given me most bitter terms.



FLU. An please your majesty, let his neck answer for it, if there is any martial law in the 'orld.

K. HEN. How canst thou make me satisfaction?

WILL. All offences, my lord, come from the heart: never came any from mine that might offend your majesty.

K. HEN. It was ourself thou didst abuse.

WILL. Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault, and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

K. HEN. Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns, And give it to this fellow.—Keep it, fellow; And wear it for an honour in thy cap, Till I do challenge it.—Give him the crowns:— And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

FLU. By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his pelly:—Hold, there is twelve pence for you, and I pray you to serve Got, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the petter for you.

WILL. I will none of your money.

FLU. It is with a goot will; I can tell you it will serve you to mend your shoes: Come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so goot: 't is a goot silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

*Enter an English Herald.*

K. HEN. Now, herald; are the dead numbered?

HER. Here is the number of the slaughter'd French.

*[Delivers a paper.]*

K. HEN. What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

EXE. Charles duke of Orleans, nephew to the king;  
John duke of Bourbon, and lord Bouciqualt:  
Of other lords and barons, knights, and 'squires,  
Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.

K. HEN. This note doth tell me of ten thousand French  
That in the field lie slain: of princes, in this number,  
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead

One hundred twenty-six: added to these,  
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,  
Eight thousand and four hundred; of the which;  
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb'd knights:  
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,  
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries;  
The rest are princes, barons, lords, knights, 'squires,  
And gentlemen of blood and quality.  
The names of those their nobles that lie dead,—  
Charles De-la-bret, high constable of France;  
Jaques of Chatillon, admiral of France;  
The master of the cross-bows, lord Rambures;  
Great master of France, the brave sir Guischard Dauphin;  
John duke of Alençon; Antony duke of Brabant,  
The brother to the duke of Burgundy;  
And Edward duke of Bar: of lusty earls,  
Grandpré and Roussi, Fauconberg and Foix,  
Beaumont and Marle, Vaudemont and Lestrale.  
Here was a royal fellowship of death!  
Where is the number of our English dead?

[Herald *presents another paper.*

Edward the duke of York, the earl of Suffolk,  
Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire:  
None else of name; and, of all other men,  
But five-and-twenty. O God, thy arm was here,  
And not to us, but to thy arm alone,  
Ascribe we all.—When, without stratagem,  
But in plain shock and even play of battle,  
Was ever known so great and little loss,  
On one part and on the other?—Take it, God!  
For it is none but thine!

EXE.

'T is wonderful!

K. HEN. Come, go we in procession to the village:  
And be it death proclaimed through our host,  
To boast of this, or take that praise from God  
Which is his only.

FLU. Is it not lawful, an please your majesty, to tell how  
many is killed?

K. HEN. Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,—  
That God fought for us.

FLU. Yes, my conscience, he did us great goot.

K. HEN. Do we all holy rites;  
Let there be sung *Non Nobis*, and *Te Deum*;  
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay:  
And then to Calais; and to England then  
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.

[*Exeunt*]

---

## ACT V.

### CHORUS.

Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,  
That I may prompt them: and of such as have,  
I humbly pray them to admit the excuse  
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,  
Which cannot in their huge and proper life  
Be here presented. Now we bear the king  
Towards Calais: grant him there; there seen,  
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts,  
Athwart the sea: Behold, the English beach  
Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,  
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,  
Which, like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king,  
Seems to prepare his way: so let him land;  
And, solemnly, see him set on to London.  
So swift a pace hath thought, that even now  
You may imagine him upon Blackheath:  
Where that his lords desire him to have borne  
His bruised helmet, and his bended sword,  
Before him, through the city: he forbids it,  
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride;  
Giving full trophy, signal, and ostent,  
Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,  
In the quick forge and working-house of thought,  
How London doth pour out her citizens!  
The mayor, and all his brethren, in best sort,—

Like to the senators of the antique Rome,  
With the plebeians swarming at their heels,—  
Go forth, and fetch their conquering Cæsar in :  
As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,  
Were now the general of our gracious empress  
(As, in good time, he may) from Ireland coming,  
Bringing rebellion broached on his sword,  
How many would the peaceful city quit  
To welcome him! much more (and much more cause)  
Did they this Harry. Now in London place him ;  
(As yet the lamentation of the French  
Invites the king of England's stay at home :  
The emperor 's coming in behalf of France,  
To order peace between them ;) and omit  
All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,  
Till Harry's back-return again to France :  
There must we bring him ; and myself have play'd  
The interim, by remembering you 't is past.  
Then brook abridgment ; and your eyes advance  
After your thoughts, straight back again to France.

SCENE I.—France. *An English Court of Guard.*

*Enter FLUELLEN and GOWER.*

Gow. Nay, that 's right ; but why wear you your leek to-day? Saint Davy's day is past.

Flu. There is occasions and causes why and wherefore in all things: I will tell you, as my friend, captain Gower: The rascally, scald, beggarly, lousy, praggling knave, Pistol,—which you and yourself, and all the 'orld, know to be no petter than a fellow, look you now, of no merits,—he is come to me, and prings me pread and salt yesterday, look you, and bid me eat my leek: it was in a place where I could not breed no contentions with him; but I will be so pold as to wear it in my cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell him a little piece of my desires.

*Enter PISTOL.*

Gow. Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-cock.

Flu. 'T is no matter for his swellings, nor his turkey-

cocks.—Got pless you, ancient Pistol! you scurvy, lousy knave, Got pless you!

PIST. Ha! art thou Bedlam? dost thou thirst, base Trojan, To have me fold up Parca's fatal web?

Hence! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

FLU. I peseech you heartily, scurvy, lousy knave, at my desires, and my requests, and my petitions, to eat, look you, this leek; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections, and your appetites, and your digestions, does not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

PIST. Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

FLU. There is one goat for you. [*Strikes him.*] Will you be so goot, scald knave, as eat it?

PIST. Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

FLU. You say very true, scald knave, when Got's will is: I will desire you to live in the mean time, and eat your victuals; come, there is sauce for it. [*Striking him again.*] You called me yesterday, mountain-squire, but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to; if you can mock a leek, you can eat a leek.

GOW. Enough, captain; you have astonished him.

FLU. I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days:—Bite, I pray you; it is goot for your green wound, and your ploody coxcomb.

PIST. Must I bite?

FLU. Yes, certainly; and out of doubt, and out of questions too, and ambiguities.

PIST. By this leek, I will most horribly revenge; I eat—and eat—I swear.

FLU. Eat, I pray you: Will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by.

PIST. Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see, I eat.

FLU. Much goot do you, scald knave, heartily. Nay, 'pray you, throw none away; the skin is goot for your proken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you mock at 'em; that is all.

PIST. Good.

FLU. Ay, leeks is goot:—Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

PIST. Me a groat!

FLU. Yes, verily, and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

PIST. I take thy groat, in earnest of revenge.

FLU. If I owe you anything, I will pay you in cudgels; you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God be wi' you, and keep you, and heal your pate. [Exit.

PIST. All hell shall stir for this.

Gow. Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition,—begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a memorable trophy of predeceased valour,—and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeking and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and, henceforth, let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition. Fare ye well. [Exit.

PIST. Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now?  
 News have I that my Nell is dead i' the spital  
 Of malady of France;  
 And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.  
 Old I do wax; and from my weary limbs  
 Honour is cudgell'd. Well, bawd I 'll turn,  
 And something lean to cutpurse of quick hand.  
 To England will I steal, and there I 'll steal:  
 And patches will I get unto these cudgell'd scars,  
 And swear I got them in the Gallia wars. [Exit.

SCENE II.—Troyes, in Champagne. *An Apartment in the French King's Palace.*

*Enter at one door, KING HENRY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WARWICK, WESTMORELAND, and other Lords; at another, the French KING, QUEEN ISABEL, the PRINCESS KATHARINE, Lords, Ladies, &c., the DUKE OF BURGUNDY, and his Train.*

K. HEN. Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met!  
 Unto our brother France, and to our sister,  
 Health and fair time of day:—joy and good wishes  
 To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine;

And (as a branch and member of this royalty,  
By whom this great assembly is contriv'd)  
We do salute you, duke of Burgundy;—  
And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

FR. KING. Right joyous are we to behold your face,  
Most worthy brother England; fairly met:—  
So are you, princes English, every one.

Q. ISA. So happy be the issue, brother England,  
Of this good day, and of this gracious meeting,  
As we are now glad to behold your eyes;  
Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them  
Against the French, that met them in their bent,  
The fatal balls of murdering basilisks:  
The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,  
Have lost their quality; and that this day  
Shall change all griefs and quarrels into love.

K. HEN. To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

Q. ISA. You English princes all, I do salute you.

BUR. My duty to you both, on equal love,  
Great kings of France and England! That I have labour'd  
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,  
To bring your most imperial majesties  
Unto this bar and royal interview,  
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.  
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd  
That face to face, and royal eye to eye,  
You have congreeted; let it not disgrace me,  
If I demand, before this royal view,  
What rub, or what impediment, there is,  
Why that the naked, poor, and mangled peace,  
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,  
Should not, in this best garden of the world,  
Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage?  
Alas! she hath from France too long been chas'd;  
And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps,  
Corrupting in its own fertility.  
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart,  
Unpruned dies: her hedges even-pleach'd,  
Like prisoners wildly overgrown with hair,  
Put forth disorder'd twigs: her fallow leas

The darnel, hemlock, and rank fumitory,  
Doth root upon; while that the coulter rusts,  
That should deracinate such savagery:  
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth  
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,  
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,  
Conceives by idleness; and nothing teems  
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burs,  
Losing both beauty and utility:  
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,  
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness;  
Even so our houses, and ourselves, and children,  
Have lost, or do not learn, for want of time,  
The sciences that should become our country;  
But grow, like savages,—as soldiers will,  
That nothing do but meditate on blood,—  
To swearing, and stern looks, diffus'd attire,  
And everything that seems unnatural.  
Which to reduce into our former favour  
You are assembled; and my speech entreats  
That I may know the let, why gentle peace  
Should not expel these inconveniences,  
And bless us with her former qualities.

K. HEN. If, duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,  
Whose want gives growth to the imperfections  
Which you have cited, you must buy that peace  
With full accord to all our just demands;  
Whose tenors and particular effects  
You have, enschedul'd briefly, in your hands.

BUR. The king hath heard them; to the which, as yet,  
There is no answer made.

K. HEN. Well, then, the peace,  
Which you before so urg'd, lies in his answer.

FR. KING. I have but with a cursory eye  
O'er-glanc'd the articles: pleaseth your grace  
To appoint some of your council presently  
To sit with us once more, with better heed  
To re-survey them, we will, suddenly,  
Pass our accept and peremptory answer.

K. HEN. Brother, we shall.—Go, uncle Exeter,—



And brother Clarence,—and you, brother Gloster,—  
Warwick,—and Huntingdon,—go with the king:  
And take with you free power to ratify,  
Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best  
Shall see advantageable for our dignity,  
Anything in, or out of, our demands;  
And we'll consign thereto.—Will you, fair sister,  
Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

Q. ISA. Our gracious brother, I will go with them;  
Haply a woman's voice may do some good,  
When articles too nicely urg'd be stood on.

K. HEN. Yet leave our cousin Katharine here with us;  
She is our capital demand, compris'd  
Within the fore rank of our articles.

Q. ISA. She hath good leave.

[*Exeunt all but HENRY, KATH., and her Gentlewoman.*]

K. HEN. Fair Katharine, and most fair!  
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms,  
Such as will enter at a lady's ear,  
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart?

KATH. Your majesty shall mock at me; I cannot speak  
your England.

K. HEN. O fair Katharine, if you will love me soundly  
with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess  
it brokenly with your English tongue. Do you like me,  
Kate?

KATH. *Pardonnez moy*, I cannot tell vat is—like me.

K. HEN. An angel is like you, Kate; and you are like an  
angel.

KATH. *Que dit-il? que je suis semblable à les anges?*

ALICE. *Ouy, vrayment, (sauf vostre grace,) ainsi dit-il.*

K. HEN. I said so, dear Katharine; and I must not blush  
to affirm it.

KATH. *O bon Dieu! les langues des hommes sont pleines des  
tromperies.*

K. HEN. What says she, fair one? that the tongues of  
men are full of deceits?

ALICE. *Ouy*; dat de tongues of de mans is be full of de-  
ceits: dat is de princess.

K. HEN. The princess is the better Englishwoman. I'

faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy understanding: I am glad thou canst speak no better English; for, if thou couldst, thou wouldst find me such a plain king, that thou wouldst think I had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know no ways to mince it in love, but directly to say—I love you: then, if you urge me further than to say—Do you in faith? I wear out my suit. Give me your answer: i' faith, do; and so clap hands and a bargain: How say you, lady?

KATH. *Sauf vostre honneur*, me understand well.

K. HEN. Marry, if you would put me to verses, or to dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me: for the one, I have neither words nor measure; and for the other, I have no strength in measure, yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my saddle with my armour on my back, under the correction of bragging be it spoken, I should quickly leap into a wife. Or, if I might buffet for my love, or bound my horse for her favours, I could lay on like a butcher, and sit like a jack-an-apes, never off: but, before God, Kate, I cannot look greenly, nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, that never looks in his glass for love of anything he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: If thou canst love me for this, take me: if not, to say to thee—that I shall die, is true: but—for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy; for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places: for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours, they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall; a straight back will stoop; a black beard will turn white; a curled pate will grow bald; a fair face will wither; a full eye will wax hollow; but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and the moon; or, rather, the sun, and not the moon; for it shines bright, and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me:

And take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king:  
And what sayest thou then to my love? speak, my fair, and  
fairly, I pray thee.

KATH. Is it possible dat I sould love de enemy of  
France?

K. HEN. No; it is not possible you should love the enemy  
of France, Kate; but, in loving me, you should love the  
friend of France; for I love France so well that I will not  
part with a village of it; I will have it all mine: and, Kate,  
when France is mine, and I am yours, then yours is France,  
and you are mine.

KATH. I cannot tell vat is dat.

K. HEN. No, Kate? I will tell thee in French; which, I  
am sure, will hang upon my tongue like a new-married wife  
about her husband's neck, hardly to be shook off. *Quand  
j'ay la possession de France, et quand vous avez la possession  
de moy*, (let me see, what then? Saint Dennis be my speed!)  
*—donc vostre est France, et vous estes mienne*. It is as easy  
for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom as to speak so much  
more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it  
be to laugh at me.

KATH. *Sauf vostre honneur, le François que vous parlez est  
meilleur que l'Anglois lequel je parle*.

K. HEN. No, 'faith, is 't not, Kate: but thy speaking of  
my tongue, and I thine, most truly falsely, must needs be  
granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand  
thus much English? Canst thou love me?

KATH. I cannot tell.

K. HEN. Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I'll  
ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me: and at night  
when you come into your closet, you'll question this gentle-  
woman about me; and I know, Kate, you will, to her, dis-  
praise those parts in me that you love with your heart: but,  
good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess,  
because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou be'st mine, Kate,  
(as I have a saving faith within me tells me thou shalt,) I  
get thee with scrambling, and thou must therefore needs prove  
a good soldier-breeder: Shall not thou and I, between Saint  
Dennis and Saint George, compound a boy, half French, half  
English, that shall go to Constantinople and take the Turk

by the beard? shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower-de-luce?

KATH. I do not know dat.

K. HEN. No; 't is hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy; and, for my English moiety, take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, *la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon tres chère et divine déesse?*

KATH. Your *majesté* 'ave *fausse* French enough to deceive de most *sage damoiselle* dat is *en France*.

K. HEN. Now, fie upon my false French! By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me; therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that when I come to woo ladies I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better; And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say—Harry of England, I am thine: which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal but I will tell thee aloud—England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken music; for thy voice is music, and thy English broken: therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English, Wilt thou have me?

KATH. Dat is as it shall please de *roy mon pere*.

K. HEN. Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.

KATH. Den it sall also content me.

K. HEN. Upon that I kiss your hand, and I call you my queen.

KATH. *Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez: ma foy, je ne veux point que vous abbaissiez vostre grandeur, en baisant la main d'une vostre indigne serviteure; excusez moy, je vous supplie, mon tres puissant seigneur.*

K. HEN. Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

KATH. *Les dames, et damoiselles, pour estre baissées devant leur nopces, il n'est pas le coûtume de France.*

K. HEN. Madam my interpreter, what says she?

ALICE. Dat it is not be de fashion *pour les ladies* of France,—I cannot tell what is *baiser*, *en English*.

K. HEN. To kiss.

ALICE. Your majesty *entendre* better *que moy*.

K. HEN. It is not a fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

ALICE. *Ouy, vrayment.*

K. HEN. O Kate, nice customs curt'sy to great kings. Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within the weak list of a country's fashion; we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follows our places stops the mouths of all find-faults; as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country in denying me a kiss; therefore, patiently, and yielding. [*Kissing her.*] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them, than in the tongues of the French council: and they should sooner persuade Harry of England than a general petition of monarchs. Here comes your father.

*Enter the French KING and QUEEN, BURGUNDY, BEDFORD, GLOSTER, EXETER, WESTMORELAND, and other French and English Lords.*

BUR. God save your majesty! my royal cousin, teach you our princess English?

K. HEN. I would have her learn, my fair cousin, how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

BUR. Is she not apt?

K. HEN. Our tongue is rough, coz; and my condition is not smooth; so that, having neither the voice nor the heart

of flattery about me, I cannot so conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will appear in his true likeness.

BUR. Pardon the frankness of my mirth, if I answer you for that. If you would conjure in her, you must make a circle: if conjure up love in her in his true likeness, he must appear naked and blind: Can you blame her, then, being a maid yet rosed over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard condition for a maid to consign to.

K. HEN. Yet they do wink, and yield; as love is blind, and enforces.

BUR. They are then excused, my lord, when they see not what they do.

K. HEN. Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent winking.

BUR. I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids, well summered and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on.

K. HEN. This moral ties me over to time, and a hot summer; and so I shall catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

BUR. As love is, my lord, before it loves.

K. HEN. It is so; and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness; who cannot see many a fair French city, for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

FR. KING. Yes, my lord, you see them perspectivevly, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls, that war hath never entered.

K. HEN. Shall Kate be my wife?

FR. KING. So please you.

K. HEN. I am content; so the maiden cities you talk of may wait on her: so the maid that stood in the way of my wish shall show me the way to my will.

FR. KING. We have consented to all terms of reason

K. HEN. Is 't so, my lords of England?

WEST. The king hath granted every article.  
His daughter, first; and then, in sequel, all,

According to their firm proposed natures.

EXE. Only, he hath not yet subscribed this:—Where your majesty demands,—That the king of France, having any occasion to write for matter of grant, shall name your highness in this form, and with this addition, in French,—*Notre tres cher filz Henry roy d'Angleterre, héritier de France*; and thus in Latin,—*Præclarissimus filius noster Henricus, rex Angliæ, et hæres Franciæ*.

FR. KING. Nor this I have not, brother, so denied,  
But your request shall make me let it pass.

K. HEN. I pray you then, in love and dear alliance,  
Let that one article rank with the rest:  
And, thereupon, give me your daughter.

FR. KING. Take her, fair son; and from her blood  
raise up  
Issue to me: that the contending kingdoms  
Of France and England, whose very shores look pale  
With envy of each other's happiness,  
May cease their hatred; and this dear conjunction  
Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord  
In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance  
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

ALL. Amen!

K. HEN. Now welcome, Kate;—and bear me witness all,  
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen. [Flourish]

Q. ISA. God, the best maker of all marriages,  
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!  
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,  
So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal,  
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,  
Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage,  
Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,  
To make divorce of their incorporate league;  
That English may as French, French Englishmen,  
Receive each other!—God speak this Amen!

ALL. Amen!

K. HEN. Prepare we for our marriage;—on which day,  
My lord of Burgundy, we'll take your oath,  
And all the peers', for surety of our leagues.

Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me;  
And may our oaths well kept and prosperous be! [*Exeunt.*]

### CHORUS.

Thus far, with rough and all unable pen,  
Our bending author hath pursued the story;  
In little room confining mighty men,  
Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.  
Small time, but in that small, most greatly liv'd  
This star of England: fortune made his sword;  
By which the world's best garden he achiev'd,  
And of it left his son imperial lord.  
Henry the sixth, in infant bands crown'd king  
Of France and England, did this king succeed;  
Whose state so many had the managing,  
That they lost France, and made his England bleed:  
Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,  
In your fair minds let this acceptance take.



## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

"They have a king, and officers of *state*." (ACT I., Sc. 2.)

Mr. Collier's MS. Corrector has  
"state," in place of the folio,  
"officers of *sorts*."

The officers of *sorts* are officers  
of different degrees, as afterwards  
enumerated — like magistrates,  
merchants, soldiers, and so down  
to poor mechanic porters.

"As many arrows, loosed several ways,  
Come to one mark; as many ways *unite*." (ACT I., Sc. 2.)

The original has—  
"Come to one mark; *as many ways*  
*meet in one town*."

The original is a definite idea,  
and not a bald generality.

The reading of the MS. Correc-  
tor is given above.

"For his nose was as sharp as a pen *on a table of green frieze*."  
(ACT II., Sc. 3.)

The passage in the folio reads  
thus:—

"For his nose was as sharp as a  
pen, and a table of *greene fields*."  
Theobald made the correction of  
"table" to "'a babbled" (he bab-  
bled). The emendation of Theo-  
bald has been received wherever  
Shakspeare is known. But it is  
now to be rejected on the autho-  
rity of Mr. Collier's old Corrector.  
"Writing tables," says Mr. Collier,  
"were, no doubt, at that period  
often covered with green cloth;  
and it is to the sharpness of a  
pen, as seen in strong relief on a  
table so covered, that Mrs. Quickly  
likens the nose of the dying wit  
and philosopher — 'for his nose  
was as sharp as a pen *on a table*  
*of green frieze*.'"

We have had such guesses as  
that of the old Corrector before  
now. One of the commentators,  
Smith, has a similar prosaic sug-  
gestion in defence of the original  
*table*, and would read "for his nose  
was as sharp as a pen *upon* a table  
of green *fells*;" for, says he, "On  
*table-books* silver or steel pens,  
very sharp pointed, were formerly,  
and still are, fixed to the backs or  
covers." Mr. Collier calls Theo-  
bald's emendation "*fanciful*;" ten  
years ago he called it "*judicious*."  
In our minds it is judicious be-  
cause it is fanciful; and being fan-  
ciful is consistent with the excited  
imagination that often attends the  
solemn parting hour. What does  
Dame Quickly say in this sen-  
tence?—"After I saw him fumble

with the sheets, and *play with flowers*, and smile upon his fingers' ends, I knew there was but one way; for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and 'a *babbled of green fields*." And so the pen must lie upon a "table of green frieze" before the comparison of the sharp nose can be felt; and we must lose one of the most beautiful examples of the conjunction of poetry and truth, because some authority chooses to read *frieze* for *fields*.

"I stay but for my *guard*. On to the field:  
I will a banner from a trumpet take,  
And use it for my haste." (ACT IV., Sc. 2.)

This is the common text, which is evidently inaccurate. One cannot see how the banner taken from a trumpet would be a substitute for the Constable's *guard*.

The substitution of "guidon" for "guard on" was the ingenious conjecture of the late Dr. Thackeray, which was obligingly communicated to us. A *guidon* was a leader's standard. The Constable could not wait for his *guidon*; and took a banner from a trumpet.

"Let us die *instant*." (ACT IV., Sc. 5.)

This is the ordinary reading. Malone would read, "Let us die *in fight*." The folio has, merely, "let us die *in*." A word of some sort has unquestionably been omitted; and that is to be found in the text of the quarto, upon which we found our reading, "Let's die *in honour*."

To justify and explain our reading we must exhibit the greatly altered scene of the quarto; which is also a curious example of the mode in which the text of the folio was expanded and amended,—and that certainly by the poet:—

GEBON. *O diabello!*

CON. *Mort de ma vie!*

ORL. O what a day is this!

BOUR. *O jour del honte!* all is gone; all is lost!

CON. We are enow yet living in the field

To smother up the English,  
If any order might be thought upon.

BOUR. A plague of order! once  
more to the field;  
And he that will not follow Bour-  
bon now,  
Let him go, &c.

COM. Disorder, that hath spoil'd  
us, right us now!  
Come we in heaps, we'll offer up  
our lives  
Unto these English, or else die  
with fame.  
Come, come along:  
*Let's die with honour; our shame*  
doth last too long."

"In which array (brave soldier!) doth he lie,  
*Loading the plain.*"

(ACT IV., Sc. 6.)

The original has *larding*. The *loading* of the MS. Corrector is supported, because "it is nowhere said that the Duke of York was obese."

To "lard" is not necessarily to enrich with fat, as Falstaff larded the lean earth. Of York the King says—

"From helmet to the spur, *all blood he was;*"

And Exeter continues—

"In which array (brave soldier!)  
doth he lie,  
*Larding the plain.*"

His blood is mixing with, and enriching, the earth.

"I come to thee for charitable licence,  
That we may wander o'er this bloody field,  
To *look* our dead."

(ACT IV., Sc. 7.)

The original has "to *book* our dead." The above alteration of the MS. Corrector is advocated because the French were not in a condition to take and note down a particular account of their dead. Mr. Collier adds, "It was an English herald who made out a statement of the killed, wounded, and prisoners, on both sides, and afterwards presented it to the King."

To "book our dead," is not necessarily to give a particular account of them, but to enumerate them previous to their burial. Mr. Collier mistakes about the English herald. The king says—

"Our heralds go *with him;*  
Bring me just notice of the num-  
bers dead  
On both our parts."

When the herald returns he presents two papers—one the French "book"—the other the English.

## GLOSSARY.

---

**ADVANTAGES.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

“Whose hours the peasant best advantages.”

The use of *advantage* as a verb occurs several times in Shakspeare. Thus, in ‘Julius Cæsar’—

“It shall advantage more, than do us wrong.”

**ASTONISHED.** Act V., Sc. 1.

“You have astonished him.”

*Astonished* is still used among pugilists in the sense of *stunned*, the precise sense in which Gower uses it, and as Dr. Johnson has explained it.

**BARBASON.** Act II., Sc. 1.

“I am not Barbason, you cannot conjure me.”

*Barbason* is the name of an evil spirit in the ‘Dæmonology.’

**BATE.** Act III., Sc. 7.

“’T is a hooded valour; and, when it appears, it will bate.”

In falconry the hawk when it fluttered its wings, as it would do when unhooded, was said to *bate*; the Constable quibbles on the word, meaning that the valour will *abate*.

**BAWCOCK.** Act III., Sc. 2.

“Good bawcock, bate thy rage!”

*Bawcock*, from the French *beau cog*, was a low phrase for a jolly fellow. It occurs also in ‘Twelfth Night,’ and in the ‘Winter’s Tale,’ as well as again in this play (Act IV., Sc. 1).

**BUXOM.** Act III., Sc. 6.

“And of buxom valour.”

*Buxom* is obedient, disciplined. It is from the Anglo-Saxon *buhsumenes*, obedience.

**CALEN O CUSTURE ME.** Act IV., Sc. 4.

This is the refrain to the song of a lover in praise of his mistress, published in a ‘Handeful of pleasant Delites’ (1584), meaning, as Boswell says, “Little girl of my heart, for ever and ever.” In the original folio it stands “calmie custure me.” It has been said that the words have no great connection with the Frenchman’s supplications, but Pistol is only guided by similarity of sounds.

**CASE.** Act III., Sc. 2.

“I have not a case of lives.”

A *case* is what contains more than one, as “a case of pistols,” “a case of poniards,” expressions in common use in the time of Elizabeth.

CHIDE. Act II., Sc. 4.

"Shall chide your trespass."

*Chide* is here used in its double sense of rebuke, and resound.

CHRISTOM CHILD. Act II., Sc. 3.

"An it had been any christom child."

The *chrisom* was a white cloth, placed upon the head of a child at baptism, when the *chrism* or sacred oil of the Romish church was used in that sacrament. The child wore it for a month, but if it died within that time the *chrisom* formed its shroud, and such children were called *chrisoms* in the bills of mortality. *Christom* is Mrs. Quickly's emendation of English.

COALS. Act III., Sc. 2.

"The men would carry coals."

See 'Romeo and Juliet.'

CONDITION. Act V., Sc. 2.

"My condition is not smooth."

*Condition* is state, circumstances; surely not *temper*, as Steevens explains it.

COMPANIES. Act I., Sc. 1.

"His companies unletter'd."

*Companies* are companions. Stow uses the word in the same sense.

CONFOUNDED. Act III., Sc. 1.

"His confounded base."

*Confounded* had often the sense of *destroyed*.

CRYSTALS. Act II., Sc. 3.

"Go, clear thy crystals."

*Crystals* is used for *eyes*—dry thy eyes.

CURRANCE. Act I., Sc. 1.

"With such a heady currance."

*Currance*, which is the word of the first folio, though generally printed *currents*, is from the French *courance*, from which we have compounded *concurrence* and *occurrence*.

DOUBT. Act IV., Sc. 2.

"And doubt them with superfluous courage."

To *doubt* is constantly used by the older writers as an equivalent to *awe*; but the commentators have changed the word to *dout*—to *do out* or *put out*.

DRESS. Act IV., Sc. 1.

"That we should dress us fairly for our end."

To *dress* is to set in order, to prepare. Malone printed it '*dress*—an abbreviation of address.

DUKE. Act III., Sc. 2.

"Abate thy rage, great duke!"

Pistol in his fustian uses *duke* in the sense of *dux*, a leader, a commander.

FARCED. Act IV., Sc. 1.

"The farced title running 'fore the king."

We think, without any great violence, this word may be taken for the gorgeous herald running before the king to proclaim his title, though Dr. Johnson explains it as "the tumid puffy titles with which a king's name is always introduced."

FAVOUR. Act V., Sc. 2.

"Which to reduce into our former favour."

*Favour* is here used in the sense of appearance.

FET. Act III., Sc. 1.

"Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof!"

*Fette* is the participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb *fet-ian*, to fetch, and *fet* is used by Chaucer and Gower, and in our translation of the Bible; but Pope changed it to *fetched*, and thus our Anglo-Saxon language has been deteriorated.

FEWER. Act IV., Sc. 1.

"In the name of Cheshu Christ, speak fewer."

To speak *few* is a provincial phrase for speak *low*, and therefore proper in the mouth of Fluellen. Gower afterwards, with equal propriety, says, "I will speak lower."

FIGO. Act III., Sc. 6.

"And figo for thy friendship."

The *figo*, *fico*, or *fig*, was a form of contempt by thrusting out the thumb in a peculiar manner between the fingers. Lodge, in his 'Wit's Miserie,' clearly shows that the *fico* and the "biting the thumb," a phrase in 'Romeo and Juliet' (Act I., Sc. 1) were the same:—"Behold, I see contempt marching forth, giving me the fico with his thumb in his mouth."

FLUELLEN is a corruption of the Welsh Llewellyn.

FOX. Act IV., Sc. 4.

"Thou diest on point of fox."

*Fox* was a cant word for sword. It was used by Congreve: "I have an old fox by my thigh."

GALLIARD. Act I., Sc. 2.

"That can be with a nimble galliard won."

The *galliard* was an ancient dance; "a swift and wandering dance," as Sir John Davis says.

GIMMAL-BIT. Act IV., Sc. 2.

"And in their pale dull mouths the gimmel bit."

*Gimmel*, from the latin *gemellus*, is double—a double bit. A gimmel ring is a double ring.

GLOZE. Act I., Sc. 2.

"Which Salique land the French unjustly gloze."

*Gloze* (from whence *glossary*) is a verb derived from the Anglo-Saxon *glesan*, to explain. In Hall's 'Chronicle' we find: "This land Salique the deceitful glozers named to be the realm of France."

GOD BEFORE. Act III., Sc. 6.

"Yet, God before, tell him we will come on."

*God before* is God being my guide. The "prevent us, O Lord," of the Liturgy, is—go before us.

HEADLY. Act III., Sc. 3.

"Of headly murther, spoil, and villainy."

*Headly* has here the meaning of headstrong, rash, passionate. The modern reading is *deadly*.

IMBAR. Act I., Sc. 2.

"Than amply to imbar their crooked titles."

To *bar* is to obstruct; to *imbar* is to bar in, to secure. The upholders of the Salique law would hide "their crooked titles," rather than amply defend them. It has been suggested to us, however, that *imbar* is here used for "to set at the bar"—to place their crooked titles before a proper tribunal. This is ingenious and plausible. The word in some editions is printed *imbare*.

IMPAWN. Act I., Sc. 2.

"Take heed how you impawn our person."

To *impawn* is to *pledge*, to *engage*. A *pawn* and a *gage* are the same. In 'Richard II.' (Act I., Sc. 1), we have "Take up mine honour's pawn."

JADES. Act III., Sc. 7.

"And all other jades you may call beasts."

The term *jade* was not always used as a term of reproach, as is shown by a passage in Ford:—

"Like high-fed jades upon a tilting day  
In antique trappings;"

and Shakspeare, in 'Henry IV. Part II.,' shows decisively his interpretation of the term:—

"——he gave his *able horse* the head,  
And, bending forward, struck his armed heels  
Against the panting sides of the *poor jade*."

It probably meant originally a tired horse, a horse that has

*yade* (gone). The term has given rise to much discussion and proposals for alteration.

JUTTY. Act III., Sc. 1.

"O'erhang and jutty."

*Jutting* is a common term applied to land. *Jet* and *jetty* are from the same root.

KERNE. Act III., Sc. 7.

"Rode, like a kerne of Ireland."

An Irish foot soldier, lightly armed with a dart or skene (dagger), and ill-equipped for riding.

LAVOLTAS. Act III., Sc. 5.

"And teach lavoltas high."

The *lavolta* was a dance of Italian origin, introduced from France, and seems to have been an exaggerated waltz. Its introduction in France was ascribed to the witches.

LINE. Act II., Sc. 4.

"He sends you this most memorable line."

*Line* is here used for genealogy.

LINSTOCK. Chorus to Act III.

"With linstock now the devilish cannon touches."

The *linstock* is the match, the *lint* on a *stock* (stick).

MARCHES. Act I., Sc. 2.

"They of those marches."

*Marches*, from the Anglo-Saxon *mearc*, are boundaries, the border counties of England and Scotland, and also of Wales.

MISCREATE. Act I., Sc. 2.

"With opening titles miscreate."

*Miscreate* is *spurious*.

MOUNTED. Act IV., Sc. 1.

"Though his affections are higher mounted than ours."

*Mounted* is a term used in falconry.

NOOK-SHOTTEN. Act III., Sc. 5.

"In that nook-shotten isle of Albion."

*Nook-shotten isle* is an isle thrust or shotten into a nook or corner.

PAX. Act III., Sc. 6.

"Pax of little price."

*ax* is the same thing as *pix*. The *pix* was a small plate of wood or metal, with some sacred representation engraved upon it, frequently a figure of Christ tendered to the people



before the Reformation, to kiss, as a substitute for the kiss of peace of the primitive church.

**PORTAGE.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“Let it pry through the portage of the head.”

By “the portage of the head,” the eyes are compared to cannon prying through port-holes.

**PROJECTION.** Act II., Sc. 4.

“A weak and niggardly projection.”

*Projection* appears to be used here for forecast, preparation. The false concord in the passage between *proportions* and *doth* may be justified by numerous examples from our old writers.

**QUIT.** Act III., Sc. 2.

“And I sall quit you with gud leve.”

To *quit* is to requite, to answer.

**RAUGHT.** Act IV., Sc. 6.

“He smil’d me in the face, raught me his hand.”

*Raught* is the past participle of the Anglo-Saxon verb, *ræcan* to reach. The word is used again in ‘Henry VI., Part III., Act I., Sc. 4 :—

“That raught at mountains with outstretched arms.”

**RIM.** Act IV., Sc. 4.

“For I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat.”

For *rim* Warburton proposed to read *ransom*, and Mason *ryno*. The word in the original folio is *rymme*. It may be conjectured that Pistol uses *rim* (perhaps derived from the Saxon *reoma*, which means *rheum* and *rime*), supposing that the rheum in the Frenchman’s throat occasions him to utter such guttural sounds.

**RIVAGE.** Chorus to Act III.

“You stand upon the rivage.”

The *rivage* is the shore. This expressive word is frequently used by Chaucer, Gower, Spenser, Holinshed, and others, but is nowhere else used by Shakspeare.

**SCALD.** Act V., Sc. 1. For this word, so frequently used by Fluellen, see ‘Merry Wives of Windsor,’ where it appears as *scall*.

**SCAMBLING.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“The scrambling and unquiet time.”

*Scrambling* is supposed by Bishop Percy to be synonymous with *scrambling*. The “scrambling time” is the disorderly time in which authority is unrespected. In the ‘Merry Devil of Edmonton’ we have—“Leave us to scramble for her getting out.”

**SCONCE.** Act III., Sc. 6.

"At such and such a sconce."

*Sconce* is interpreted by Blount in his 'Glossographia' (1656), as "a block-house or fortification in war."

**SKIRR.** Act IV., Sc. 7.

"Skirr away, as swift as stones."

*Skirr*, probably from the same root as skirmish, is to scour, to fly dispersedly, without order. The word occurs also in 'Macbeth' (Act V., Sc. 3): "skirr the country round."

**STERNAGE.** Chorus to Act III.

"Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy."

*Sternage* is the antique form of *steerage*. Chapman, in his 'Homer,' has "the sternsman."

**STOOP.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

"They stoop with the like wing."

To *stoop* is a term used in falconry, to descend, to pounce.

**SUR-REIN'D.** Act III., Sc. 5.

"A drench of sur-rein'd jades."

*Sur-rein'd* is over-rein'd, over-work'd.

**THEORIC.** Act I., Sc. 1.

"Must be the mistress to this theoric."

*Theoric* was used by our old writers for *theory*. Shakspeare never uses the word *theory*, but in 'All's Well that Ends Well' (Act IV., Sc. 3), we have "theoric of war," and in 'Othello' (Act I., Sc. 1), "the bookish theorick." In Bishop Hall, however, a contemporary, we have *theory*.

**TIKE.** Act II., Sc. 1.

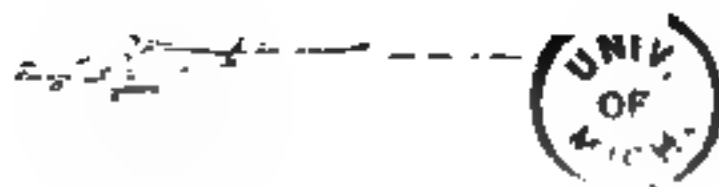
"Base tike, call'st thou me host?"

The word *tike* still signifies a common dog—a mongrel. In Landseer's picture of 'Low Life,' the bull-terrier is a tike. In 'Lear' we have "bobtail-tike." The "ploughman's collie of Burns, in his 'Twa Dogs,' is "a gash and faithful tike."

**WHIFFLER.** Chorus to Act V.

"Like a mighty whiffler 'fore the king."

A *whiffler* was originally a piper or a fifer, who anciently marched at the head of a procession. Minsheu defines him to be a club or staff-bearer. Grove says whiffers "are men who make way for the corporation of Norwich, by flourishing their swords." Phillips, in his 'World of Words,' defines him to be a young freeman, who on occasions of ceremony goes before the company to which he belongs, and the standard-bearers in the Lord Mayor's show of London are still called whiffers. The *whiffler* may be taken generally to mean an officer who leads the way in processions.





## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING HENRY VI.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 5.

DUKE OF GLOSTER, *uncle to the King, and Protector.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 5.

DUKE OF BEDFORD, *uncle to the King, and Regent of France.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2.

THOMAS BEAUFORT, *Duke of Exeter, great uncle to the King.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 5.

HENRY BEAUFORT, *great uncle to the King, Bishop of Winchester, and afterwards Cardinal.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 4.

JOHN BEAUFORT, *Earl of Somerset; afterwards Duke.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 4.

RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *eldest son of Richard, late Earl of Cambridge; afterwards Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4; sc. 5. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 3.  
Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.

EARL OF WARWICK.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1.  
Act V. sc. 4.

EARL OF SALISBURY.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4.

EARL OF SUFFOLK.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1. Act V. sc. 3; sc. 5.

LORD TALBOT, *afterwards Earl of Shrewsbury.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4; sc. 5. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 5; sc. 6; sc. 7.

JOHN TALBOT, *son to Lord Talbot.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 5; sc. 6; sc. 7.

EDMUND MORTIMER, *Earl of March.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 5.

Mortimer's Keeper.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 5.

A Lawyer.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4.

SIR JOHN FASTOLFE.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1.

SIR WILLIAM LUCY.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 7.

SIR WILLIAM GLANSDALE and SIR THOMAS GARGRAVE.

*Appear*, Act I. sc. 4.

Mayor of London.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1.

WOODVILLE, *Lieutenant of the Tower.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3.

VERNON, *of the White Rose, or York, faction.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1.

*BASSET, of the Red Rose, or Lancaster, faction.*

*Appears, Act III. sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1.*

*CHARLES, Dauphin, and afterwards King, of France.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 5; sc. 6. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 7. Act V. sc. 2; sc. 4.*

*REIGNIER, Duke of Anjou, and titular King of Naples.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 6. Act II. sc. 1. Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.*

*DUKE OF BURGUNDY.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3. Act IV. sc. 7.  
Act V. sc. 2.*

*DUKE OF ALENÇON.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 7. Act V. 2; sc. 4.*

*Governor of Paris.*

*Appears, Act IV. sc. 1.*

*BASTARD OF ORLEANS.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 7. Act V. sc. 4.*

*Master-Gunner of Orleans, and his Son.*

*Appear, Act I. sc. 4.*

*General of the French Forces in Bourdeaux.*

*Appears, Act IV. sc. 2.*

*A French Sergeant.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 1.*

*A Porter.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 3.*

*An old Shepherd, father to Joan la Pucelle.*

*Appears, Act V. sc. 4.*

*MARGARET, daughter to REIGNIER; afterwards married to King Henry.*

*Appears, Act V. sc. 3.*

*COUNTESS OF AUVERGNE.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 3.*

*JOAN LA PUCELLE, commonly called Joan of Arc.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 5; sc. 6. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 7. Act V. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4.*

*Fiends appearing to La Pucelle, Lords, Warders of the Tower, Herald, Officers, Soldiers, Messengers, and several Attendants both on the English and French.*

**SCENE,—PARTLY IN ENGLAND, AND PARTLY IN FRANCE.**

'The First Part of Henry VI.' was originally printed, under that title, in the folio collection of 1623. Upon the authority, then, of the editors of that edition of 'Mr. William Shakespeare's Comedies, Histories, and Tragedies, published according to the true original Copies,' this drama properly finds a place in every modern edition of our poet's works. The question of the authenticity of the three parts of 'Henry VI.' is a very large one, embracing many details; but the reader will find some notice of the argument in the first volume of this edition, 'Life and Writings of William Shakspeare,' chap. viii.

# KING HENRY VI.—PART I.

---

## ACT I.

### SCENE I.—Westminster Abbey.

*Dead march. Corpse of KING HENRY V. discovered, lying in state; attended on by the DUKES OF BEDFORD, GLOSTER, and EXETER; the EARL OF WARWICK, the BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, Herald, &c.*

BED. Hung be the heavens with black, yield day to night!  
Comets, importing change of times and states,  
Brandish your crystal tresses in the sky;  
And with them scourge the bad revolting stars,  
That have consented unto Henry's death!  
King Henry the fifth, too famous to live long!  
England ne'er lost a king of so much worth.

GLO. England ne'er had a king until his time.  
Virtue he had, deserving to command:  
His brandish'd sword did blind men with his beams;  
His arms spread wider than a dragon's wings:  
His sparkling eyes, replete with wrathful fire,  
More dazzled and drove back his enemies,  
Than mid-day sun, fierce bent against their faces.  
What should I say? his deeds exceed all speech:  
He ne'er lift up his hand but conquered.

EXE. We mourn in black: Why mourn we not in blood?  
Henry is dead, and never shall revive:  
Upon a wooden coffin we attend;  
And death's dishonourable victory  
We with our stately presence glorify,  
Like captives bound to a triumphant car.  
What! shall we curse the planets of mishap,

That plotted thus our glory's overthrow?  
Or shall we think the subtle-witted French  
Conjurers and sorcerers, that, afraid of him,  
By magic verses have contrived his end?

WIN. He was a king bless'd of the King of kings.  
Unto the French the dreadful judgment-day  
So dreadful will not be, as was his sight.  
The battles of the Lord of hosts he fought:  
The church's prayers made him so prosperous.

GLO. The church! where is it? Had not churchmen pray'd,  
His thread of life had not so soon decay'd;  
None do you like but an effeminate prince,  
Whom, like a schoolboy, you may over-awe.

WIN. Gloster, whate'er we like, thou art protector;  
And lookest to command the prince and realm.  
Thy wife is proud; she holdeth thee in awe,  
More than God or religious churchmen may.

GLO. Name not religion, for thou lov'st the flesh;  
And ne'er throughout the year to church thou go'st,  
Except it be to pray against thy foes.

BED. Cease, cease these jars, and rest your minds in peace!  
Let's to the altar:—Heralds, wait on us:—  
Instead of gold, we'll offer up our arms;  
Since arms avail not, now that Henry's dead.  
Posterity, await for wretched years,  
When at their mothers' moisten'd eyes babes shall suck;  
Our isle be made a nourish of salt tears,  
And none but women left to wail the dead.  
Henry the fifth! thy ghost I invoke;  
Prosper this realm, keep it from civil broils!  
Combat with adverse planets in the heavens!  
A far more glorious star thy soul will make,  
Than Julius Cæsar, or bright——

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My honourable lords, health to you all!  
Sad tidings bring I to you out of France,  
Of loss, of slaughter, and discomfiture:  
Guienne, Champagne, Rheims, Orleans,  
Paris, Guysors, Poictiers, are all quite lost.



BED. What say'st thou, man, before dead Henry's corse?  
Speak softly; or the loss of those great towns  
Will make him burst his lead, and rise from death.

GLO. Is Paris lost? is Rouen yielded up?  
If Henry were recall'd to life again,  
These news would cause him once more yield the ghost.

EXE. How were they lost? what treachery was us'd?

MESS. No treachery; but want of men and money.  
Amongst the soldiers this is muttered,—  
That here you maintain several factions;  
And, whilst a field should be despatch'd and fought,  
You are disputing of your generals.  
One would have ling'ring wars, with little cost;  
Another would fly swift, but wanteth wings;  
A third man thinks, without expense at all,  
By guileful fair words peace may be obtain'd.  
Awake, awake, English nobility!  
Let not sloth dim your honours, new-begot:  
Cropp'd are the flower-de-luces in your arms;  
Of England's coat one half is cut away.

EXE. Were our tears wanting to this funeral,  
These tidings would call forth her flowing tides.

BED. Me they concern; regent I am of France:  
Give me my steeled coat, I'll fight for France.  
Away with these disgraceful wailing robes!  
Wounds will I lend the French, instead of eyes,  
To weep their intermissive miseries.

*Enter another Messenger.*

2 MESS. Lords, view these letters, full of bad mischance:  
France is revolted from the English quite;  
Except some petty towns of no import:  
The dauphin Charles is crowned king in Rheims;  
The bastard of Orleans with him is join'd;  
Reignier, duke of Anjou, doth take his part;  
The duke of Alençon flieth to his side.

EXE. The dauphin crowned king! all fly to him!  
O, whither shall we fly from this reproach?

GLO. We will not fly, but to our enemies' throats:—  
Bedford, if thou be slack, I'll fight it out.

BED. Gloster, why doubt'st thou of my forwardness?  
An army have I muster'd in my thoughts,  
Wherewith already France is overrun.

*Enter a third Messenger.*

3 MESS. My gracious lords,—to add to your laments,  
Wherewith you now bedew king Henry's hearse,—  
I must inform you of a dismal fight  
Betwixt the stout lord Talbot and the French.

WIN. What! wherein Talbot overcame? is 't so?

3 MESS. O, no; wherein lord Talbot was o'erthrown:  
The circumstance I'll tell you more at large.  
The tenth of August last, this dreadful lord,  
Retiring from the siege of Orleans,  
Having full scarce six thousand in his troop,  
By three-and-twenty thousand of the French  
Was round encompassed and set upon:  
No leisure had he to enrank his men;  
He wanted pikes to set before his archers;  
Instead whereof, sharp stakes, pluck'd out of hedges,  
They pitched in the ground confusedly,  
To keep the horsemen off from breaking in.  
More than three hours the fight continued;  
Where valiant Talbot, above human thought,  
Enacted wonders with his sword and lance.  
Hundreds he sent to hell, and none durst stand him;  
Here, there, and everywhere, enrag'd he slew:  
The French exclaim'd, The devil was in arms;  
All the whole army stood agaz'd on him:  
His soldiers, spying his undaunted spirit,  
A Talbot! a Talbot! cried out amain,  
And rush'd into the bowels of the battle.  
Here had the conquest fully been seal'd up,  
If sir John Fastolfe had not play'd the coward;  
He, being in the vaward, (placed behind,  
With purpose to relieve and follow them,)  
Cowardly fled, not having struck one stroke.  
Hence grew the general wrack and massacre;  
Enclosed were they with their enemies:  
A base Walloon, to win the dauphin's grace,

Thrust Talbot with a spear into the back ;  
Whom all France, with their chief assembled strength,  
Durst not presume to look once in the face.

BED. Is Talbot slain? then I will slay myself,  
For living idly here, in pomp and ease,  
Whilst such a worthy leader, wanting aid,  
Unto his dastard foemen is betray'd.

3 MESS. O no, he lives ; but is took prisoner,  
And lord Scales with him, and lord Hungerford:  
Most of the rest slaughter'd, or took, likewise.

BED. His ransom there is none but I shall pay:  
I'll hale the dauphin headlong from his throne,—  
His crown shall be the ransom of my friend ;  
Four of their lords I'll change for one of ours.  
Farewell, my masters ; to my task will I ;  
Bonfires in France forthwith I am to make,  
To keep our great Saint George's feast withal:  
Ten thousand soldiers with me I will take,  
Whose bloody deeds shall make all Europe quake.

3 MESS. So you had need ; for Orleans is besieg'd ;  
The English army is grown weak and faint:  
The earl of Salisbury craveth supply,  
And hardly keeps his men from mutiny,  
Since they, so few, watch such a multitude.

EXE. Remember, lords, your oaths to Henry sworn,  
Either to quell the dauphin utterly,  
Or bring him in obedience to your yoke.

BED. I do remember it ; and here take my leave,  
To go about my preparation.

[*Exit.*

GLO. I'll to the Tower, with all the haste I can,  
To view the artillery and munition ;  
And then I will proclaim young Henry king.

[*Exit.*

EXE. To Eltham will I, where the young king is,  
Being ordain'd his special governor ;  
And for his safety there I'll best devise.

[*Exit.*

WIN. Each hath his place and function to attend:  
I am left out ; for me nothing remains.  
But long I will not be Jack-out-of-office ;  
The king from Eltham I intend to send,  
And sit at chiefest stern of public weal.

[*Exit. Scene closes.*

SCENE II.—France. *Before Orleans.*

*Enter CHARLES, with his Forces; ALENÇON, REIGNIER, and others.*

CHAR. Mars his true moving, even as in the heavens,  
So in the earth, to this day is not known:  
Late did he shine upon the English side;  
Now we are victors, upon us he smiles.  
What towns of any moment but we have?  
At pleasure here we lie near Orleans;  
Otherwhiles, the famish'd English, like pale ghosts,  
Faintly besiege us one hour in a month.

ALEN. They want their porridge and their fat bull-beeves:  
Either they must be dieted like mules,  
And have their provender tied to their mouths,  
Or piteous they will look, like drowned mice.

REIG. Let's raise the siege: Why live we idly here?  
Talbot is taken, whom we wont to fear;  
Remaineth none but mad-brain'd Salisbury;  
And he may well in fretting spend his gall,  
Nor men nor money hath he to make war.

CHAR. Sound, sound alarum; we will rush on them.  
Now for the honour of the forlorn French:—  
Him I forgive my death that killeth me,  
When he sees me go back one foot, or fly. [*Exeunt.*

*Alarums. They are beaten back by the English, with great loss.*  
*Re-enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, REIGNIER, and others.*

CHAR. Whoever saw the like? what men have I?—  
Dogs! cowards! dastards!—I would ne'er have fled,  
But that they left me midst my enemies.

REIG. Salisbury is a desperate homicide;  
He fighteth as one weary of his life.  
The other lords, like lions wanting food,  
Do rush upon us as their hungry prey.

ALEN. Froissart, a countryman of ours, records,  
England all Olivers and Rowlands bred  
During the time Edward the third did reign.  
More truly now may this be verified;

For none but Samsons and Goliasses,  
It sendeth forth to skirmish. One to ten!  
Lean raw-bon'd rascals! who would e'er suppose  
They had such courage and audacity?

CHAR. Let's leave this town; for they are hair-brain'd  
slaves,

And hunger will enforce them to be more eager:  
Of old I know them; rather with their teeth  
The walls they'll tear down than forsake the siege.

REIG. I think, by some odd gimmicks or device,  
Their arms are set like clocks, still to strike on;  
Else ne'er could they hold out so as they do.  
By my consent, we'll even let them alone.

ALEN. Be it so.

*Enter the BASTARD of ORLEANS.*

BAST. Where's the prince dauphin? I have news for him.

CHAR. Bastard of Orleans, thrice welcome to us.

BAST. Methinks your looks are sad, your cheer appall'd;  
Hath the late overthrow wrought this offence?  
Be not dismay'd, for succour is at hand:  
A holy maid hither with me I bring,  
Which, by a vision sent to her from heaven,  
Ordained is to raise this tedious siege,  
And drive the English forth the bounds of France.  
The spirit of deep prophecy she hath,  
Exceeding the nine sibyls of old Rome;  
What's past, and what's to come, she can descry.  
Speak, shall I call her in? Believe my words,  
For they are certain and unfallible.

CHAR. Go, call her in [*Exit Bastard*]: But, first, to try her  
skill,

Reignier, stand thou as dauphin in my place:  
Question her proudly, let thy looks be stern:—  
By this means shall we sound what skill she hath. [*Retires.*]

*Enter LA PUCELLE, BASTARD of ORLEANS, and others.*

REIG. Fair maid, is't thou wilt do these wondrous feats?

PUC. Reignier, is't thou that thinkest to beguile me?  
Where is the dauphin?—come, come from behind;

I know thee well, though never seen before.  
Be not amaz'd, there's nothing hid from me:  
In private will I talk with thee apart;—  
Stand back, you lords, and give us leave awhile.

REIG. She takes upon her bravely at first dash.

PUC. Dauphin, I am by birth a shepherd's daughter,  
My wit untrain'd in any kind of art.  
Heaven, and our Lady gracious, hath it pleas'd  
To shine on my contemptible estate:  
Lo, whilst I waited on my tender lambs,  
And to sun's parching heat display'd my cheeks,  
God's mother deigned to appear to me;  
And, in a vision full of majesty,  
Will'd me to leave my base vocation,  
And free my country from calamity:  
Her aid she promis'd and assur'd success:  
In complete glory she reveal'd herself;  
And, whereas I was black and swart before,  
With those clear rays which she infus'd on me,  
That beauty am I bless'd with which you may see.  
Ask me what question thou canst possible,  
And I will answer unpremeditated:  
My courage try by combat, if thou dar'st,  
And thou shalt find that I exceed my sex.  
Resolve on this: Thou shalt be fortunate  
If thou receive me for thy warlike mate.

CHAR. Thou hast astonish'd me with thy high terms:  
Only this proof I'll of thy valour make,—  
In single combat thou shalt buckle with me:  
And if thou vanquishest thy words are true;  
Otherwise I renounce all confidence.

PUC. I am prepar'd: here is my keen-edg'd sword,  
Deck'd with fine flower-de-luces on each side;  
The which, at Touraine, in Saint Katharine's churchyard,  
Out of a great deal of old iron I chose forth.

CHAR. Then come, o' God's name, I fear no woman.

PUC. And, while I live, I'll ne'er fly from a man.

[*They fight, and LA PUCELLE overcomes.*]

CHAR. Stay, stay thy hands; thou art an Amazon,  
And fightest with the sword of Deborah.

PUC. Christ's mother helps me, else I were too weak.

CHAR. Whoe'er helps thee, 't is thou that must help me:  
Impatiently I burn with thy desire:

My heart and hands thou hast at once subdued.

Excellent Pucelle, if thy name be so,

Let me thy servant, and not sovereign, be;

'T is the French dauphin sueth to thee thus.

PUC. I must not yield to any rites of love,

For my profession's sacred from above;

When I have chased all thy foes from hence,

Then will I think upon a recompense.

CHAR. Meantime, look gracious on thy prostrate thrall.

REIG. My lord, methinks, is very long in talk.

ALEN. Doubtless, he shrives this woman to her smock;  
Else ne'er could he so long protract his speech.

REIG. Shall we disturb him, since he keeps no mean?

ALEN. He may mean more than we poor men do know:  
These women are shrewd tempters with their tongues.

REIG. My lord, where are you? what devise you on?  
Shall we give over Orleans, or no?

PUC. Why, no, I say, distrustful recreants!  
Fight till the last gasp; I will be your guard.

CHAR. What she says I'll confirm; we'll fight it out.

PUC. Assign'd am I to be the English scourge.

This night the siege assuredly I'll raise:

Expect saint Martin's summer, halcyon days,

Since I have entered into these wars.

Glory is like a circle in the water,

Which never ceaseth to enlarge itself,

Till, by broad spreading, it disperse to nought.

With Henry's death the English circle ends;

Dispersed are the glories it included.

Now am I like that proud insulting ship

Which Cæsar and his fortune bare at once.

CHAR. Was Mahomet inspired with a dove?

Thou with an eagle art inspired then.

Helen, the mother of great Constantine,

Nor yet saint Philip's daughters, were like thee.

Bright star of Venus, fall'n down on the earth,

How may I reverently worship thee enough?

ALAN. Leave off delays, and let us raise the siege.

REIG. Woman, do what thou canst to save our honours;  
Drive them from Orleans, and be immortalis'd.

CHAR. Presently we'll try:—Come, let's away about it:  
No prophet will I trust, if she prove false. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE III.—London. *Hill before the Tower.*

*Enter, at the gates, the DUKE OF GLOSTER, with his Serving-men in blue coats.*

GLO. I am come to survey the Tower this day:  
Since Henry's death, I fear there is conveyance.  
Where be these warders, that they wait not here?  
Open the gates; 't is Gloster that calls. *[Servants knock.]*

1 WARD. *[Within.]* Who's there that knocks so imperiously?

1 SERV. It is the noble duke of Gloster.

2 WARD. *[Within.]* Whoe'er he be, you may not be let in.

1 SERV. Villains, answer you so the lord protector?

1 WARD. *[Within.]* The Lord protect him! so we answer him:

We do no otherwise than we are will'd.

GLO. Who willed you? or whose will stands but mine?  
There's none protector of the realm but I.  
Break up the gates, I'll be your warrantize:  
Shall I be flouted thus by dunghill grooms? . . .

*Servants rush at the Tower gates. Enter to the gates, WOODVILLE, the Lieutenant.*

WOOD. *[Within.]* What noise is this? what traitors have we here?

GLO. Lieutenant, is it you whose voice I hear?  
Open the gates; here's Gloster that would enter.

WOOD. *[Within.]* Have patience, noble duke; I may not open;

The cardinal of Winchester forbids:  
From him I have express commandment,  
That thou, nor none of thine, shall be let in.

GLO. Faint-hearted Woodville, prizest him 'fore me?  
Arrogant Winchester? that haughty prelate,



Whom Henry, our late sovereign, ne'er could brook?  
Thou art no friend to God, or to the king:  
Open the gates, or I'll shut thee out shortly.

I SERV. Open the gates unto the lord protector;  
Or we'll burst them open, if that you come not quickly.

*Enter WINCHESTER, attended by a train of Servants in tawny coats.*

WIN. How now, ambitious Humphrey? what means this?

GLO. Peel'd priest, dost thou command me to be shut out?

WIN. I do, thou most usurping proditor,  
And not protector of the king or realm.

GLO. Stand back, thou manifest conspirator;  
Thou that contriv'dst to murder our dead lord;  
Thou that giv'st whores indulgences to sin:  
I'll canvass thee in thy broad cardinal's hat,  
If thou proceed in this thy insolence.

WIN. Nay, stand thou back, I will not budge a foot;  
This be Damascus, be thou cursed Cain,  
To slay thy brother Abel, if thou wilt.

GLO. I will not slay thee, but I'll drive thee back:  
Thy scarlet robes, as a child's bearing cloth  
I'll use, to carry thee out of this place.

WIN. Do what thou dar'st; I beard thee to thy face.

GLO. What! am I dar'd, and bearded to my face?—  
Draw, men, for all this privileged place;  
Blue-coats to tawny-coats. Priest, beware your beard;

*[GLOSTER and his men attack the Bishop.]*

I mean to tug it, and to cuff you soundly:  
Under my feet I stamp thy cardinal's hat;  
In spite of pope, or dignities of church,  
Here by the cheeks I'll drag thee up and down.

WIN. Gloster, thou 'lt answer this before the pope.

GLO. Winchester goose! I cry—a rope! a rope!  
Now beat them hence: Why do you let them stay?—  
Thee I'll chase hence, thou wolf in sheep's array.—  
Out, tawny-coats!—out, scarlet hypocrite!

*Here a great tumult. In the midst of it, enter the Mayor of London, and Officers.*

MAY. Fie, lords! that you, being supreme magistrates,  
Thus contumeliously should break the peace!

GLO. Peace, mayor; thou know'st little of my wrongs.  
Here's Beaufort, that regards nor God nor king,  
Hath here distrain'd the Tower to his use.

WIN. Here's Gloster, too, a foe to citizens;  
One that still motions war, and never peace,  
O'ercharging your free purses with large fines;  
That seeks to overthrow religion,  
Because he is protector of the realm;  
And would have armour here out of the Tower,  
To crown himself king, and suppress the prince.

GLO. I will not answer thee with words, but blows.

*[Here they skirmish again.]*

MAY. Nought rests for me, in this tumultuous strife,  
But to make open proclamation:—  
Come, officer, as loud as e'er thou canst cry.

OFF. "All manner of men, assembled here in arms this  
day, against God's peace and the king's, we charge and com-  
mand you, in his highness' name, to repair to your several  
dwelling-places; and not to wear, handle, or use, any sword,  
weapon, or dagger, henceforward, upon pain of death."

GLO. Cardinal, I'll be no breaker of the law:  
But we shall meet, and break our minds at large.

WIN. Gloster, we'll meet; to thy dear cost, be sure:  
Thy heart-blood I will have for this day's work.

MAY. I'll call for clubs, if you will not away;—  
This cardinal is more haughty than the devil.

GLO. Mayor, farewell: thou dost but what thou mayst.

WIN. Abominable Gloster! guard thy head;  
For I intend to have it, ere long.

*[Exeunt.]*

MAY. See the coast clear'd, and then we will depart.—  
Good God! that nobles should such stomachs bear!

I myself fight not once in forty year.

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE IV.—France. *Before Orleans.*

*Enter, on the walls, the Master-Gunner and his Son.*

M. GUN. Sirrah, thou know'st how Orleans is besieg'd,  
And how the English have the suburbs won.

SON. Father, I know; and oft have shot at them,  
Howe'er, unfortunate, I miss'd my aim.

M. GUN. But now thou shalt not. Be thou rul'd by me:  
Chief master-gunner am I of this town;  
Something I must do to procure me grace.  
The prince's espials have informed me,  
How the English, in the suburbs close intrench'd,  
Wont, through a secret grate of iron bars  
In yonder tower, to overpeer the city;  
And thence discover how, with most advantage,  
They may vex us, with shot, or with assault.  
To intercept this inconvenience,  
A piece of ordnance 'gainst it I have plac'd;  
And fully even these three days have I watch'd  
If I could see them. Now, boy, do thou watch,  
For I can stay no longer.

If thou spy'st any, run and bring me word;  
And thou shalt find me at the governor's.

[*Exit.*

SON. Father, I warrant you; take you no care;  
I'll never trouble you if I may spy them.

*Enter, in an upper chamber of a tower, the LORDS SALISBURY  
and TALBOT, Sir WILLIAM GLANSDALE, Sir THOMAS GAR-  
GRAVE, and others.*

SAL. Talbot, my life, my joy, again return'd!  
How wert thou handled, being prisoner?  
Or by what means gott'st thou to be releas'd?  
Discourse, I prithee, on this turret's top.

TAL. The duke of Bedford had a prisoner,  
Called the brave lord Ponton de Santrailles;  
For him was I exchange'd and ransomed.  
But with a baser man of arms by far,  
Once, in contempt, they would have barter'd me;  
Which I, disdainingly, scorn'd; and craved death,

Rather than I would be so pil'd-esteem'd.  
In fine, redeem'd I was as I desir'd.  
But, O! the treacherous Fastolfe wounds my heart!  
Whom with my bare fists I would execute,  
If I now had him brought into my power.

SAL. Yet tell'st thou not how thou wert entertain'd.

TAL. With scoffs, and scorns, and contumelious taunts.  
In open market-place produc'd they me,  
To be a public spectacle to all:  
Here, said they, is the terror of the French,  
The scarecrow that affrights our children so.  
Then broke I from the officers that led me;  
And with my nails digg'd stones out of the ground,  
To hurl at the beholders of my shame.  
My grisly countenance made others fly;  
None durst come near, for fear of sudden death.  
In iron walls they deem'd me not secure;  
So great fear of my name 'mongst them was spread,  
That they suppos'd I could rend bars of steel,  
And spurn in pieces posts of adamant:  
Wherefore a guard of chosen shot I had,  
That walk'd about me every minute-while;  
And if I did but stir out of my bed,  
Ready they were to shoot me to the heart.

SAL. I grieve to hear what torments you endur'd;  
But we will be reveng'd sufficiently.

Now it is supper-time in Orleans:  
Here, thorough this grate, I count each one,  
And view the Frenchmen how they fortify;  
Let us look in, the sight will much delight thee.  
Sir Thomas Gargrave, and sir William Glansdale,  
Let me have your express opinions,  
Where is best place to make our battery next.

GAR. I think, at the north gate; for there stand lords.

GLAN. And I, here, at the bulwark of the bridge.

TAL. For aught I see, this city must be famish'd,  
Or with light skirmishes enfeebled.

[*Shot from the town. SALISBURY and GARGRAVE fall.*]

SAL. O Lord, have mercy on us, wretched sinners!

GAR. O Lord, have mercy on me, woeful man!

TAL. What chance is this that suddenly hath cross'd us?—  
Speak, Salisbury; at least, if thou canst speak;  
How far'st thou, mirror of all martial men?  
One of thy eyes, and thy cheek's side, struck off!—  
Accursed tower! accursed fatal hand,  
That hath contriv'd this woeful tragedy!  
In thirteen battles Salisbury o'ercame:  
Henry the fifth he first train'd to the wars;  
Whilst any trump did sound, or drum struck up,  
His sword did ne'er leave striking in the field.  
Yet liv'st thou, Salisbury? though thy speech doth fail,  
One eye thou hast, to look to heaven for grace:  
The sun with one eye vieweth all the world.  
Heaven, be thou gracious to none alive,  
If Salisbury wants mercy at thy hand!  
Bear hence his body, I will help to bury it.  
Sir Thomas Gargrave, hast thou any life?  
Speak unto Talbot; nay, look up to him.  
Salisbury, cheer thy spirit with this comfort;  
Thou shalt not die, whiles——  
He beckons with his hand, and smiles on me;  
As who should say, "When I am dead and gone,  
Remember to avenge me on the French."—  
Plantagenet, I will; and like thee, Nero,  
Play on the lute, beholding the towns burn:  
Wretched shall France be only in my name.

[*Thunder heard; afterwards an alarum.*]

What stir is this? What tumult's in the heavens?  
Whence cometh this alarum, and the noise?

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord, my lord, the French have gather'd head:  
The dauphin, with one Joan la Pucelle join'd,—  
A holy prophetess, new risen up,—  
Is come with a great power to raise the siege.

[*SALISBURY groans.*]

TAL. Hear, hear, how dying Salisbury doth groan!  
It irks his heart he cannot be reveng'd.—  
Frenchmen, I'll be a Salisbury to you:—  
Pucelle or puzzel, dolphin or dogfish,

Your hearts I'll stamp out with my horse's heels,  
And make a quagmire of your mingled brains.  
Convey me Salisbury into his tent,  
And then we'll try what these dastard Frenchmen dare.  
[*Exeunt, bearing out the bodies.*]

SCENE V.—*The same. Before one of the Gates.*

*Alarum. Skirmishings.* TALBOT *pursueth the Dauphin, and driveth him in; then enter* JOAN LA PUCELLE; *driving Englishmen before her. Then enter* TALBOT.

TAL. Where is my strength, my valour, and my force?  
Our English troops retire, I cannot stay them;  
A woman, clad in armour, chaseth them.

*Enter* LA PUCELLE.

Here, here she comes:—I'll have a bout with thee;  
Devil, or devil's dam, I'll conjure thee:  
Blood will I draw on thee, thou art a witch,  
And straightway give thy soul to him thou serv'st.

PUC. Come, come, 't is only I that must disgrace thee.

[*They fight*]

TAL. Heavens, can you suffer hell so to prevail?  
My breast I'll burst with straining of my courage,  
And from my shoulders crack my arms asunder,  
But I will chastise this high-minded strumpet.

PUC. Talbot, farewell; thy hour is not yet come:  
I must go victual Orleans forthwith.  
O'ertake me, if thou canst; I scorn thy strength.  
Go, go, cheer up thy hunger-starved men;  
Help Salisbury to make his testament:  
This day is ours, as many more shall be.

[*PUCELLE enters the Town, with Soldiers.*]

TAL. My thoughts are whirled like a potter's wheel;  
I know not where I am, nor what I do:  
A witch, by fear, not force, like Hannibal,  
Drives back our troops, and conquers as she lists:  
So bees with smoke, and doves with noisome stench,  
Are from their hives and houses driven away.  
They call'd us, for our fierceness, English dogs;

Now, like to whelps, we crying run away. [*A short alarum.*  
Hark, countrymen! either renew the fight,  
Or tear the lions out of England's coat;  
Renounce your soil, give sheep in lions' stead:  
Sheep run not half so timorous from the wolf,  
Or horse, or oxen, from the leopard,  
As you fly from your oft-subdued slaves.

[*Alarum. Another skirmish.*

It will not be:—Retire into your trenches:  
You all consented unto Salisbury's death,  
For none would strike a stroke in his revenge.—  
Pucelle is enter'd into Orleans,  
In spite of us, or aught that we could do.  
O, would I were to die with Salisbury!  
The shame hereof will make me hide my head!

[*Alarum. Retreat. Exeunt TALBOT and his forces, &c.*

SCENE VI.—*The same.*

*Enter, on the walls, PUCELLE, CHARLES, REIGNIER, ALENÇON,  
and Soldiers.*

PUC. Advance our waving colours on the walls;  
Rescued is Orleans from the English wolves:—  
Thus Joan la Pucelle hath perform'd her word.

CHAR. Divinest creature, bright Astræa's daughter,  
How shall I honour thee for this success?  
Thy promises are like Adonis' gardens,  
That one day bloom'd, and fruitful were the next.—  
France, triumph in thy glorious prophetess!—  
Recover'd is the town of Orleans:  
More blessed hap did ne'er befall our state.

REIG. Why ring not out the bells aloud throughout the  
town?

Dauphin, command the citizens make bonfires,  
And feast and banquet in the open streets,  
To celebrate the joy that God hath given us.

ALEN. All France will be replete with mirth and joy,  
When they shall hear how we have play'd the men.

CHAR. 'T is Joan, not we, by whom the day is won;  
For which, I will divide my crown with her:

And all the priests and friars in my realm  
Shall, in procession, sing her endless praise.  
A statelier pyramis to her I'll rear,  
Than Rhodope's, or Memphis', ever was:  
In memory of her, when she is dead,  
Her ashes, in an urn more precious  
Than the rich jewell'd coffer of Darius,  
Transported shall be at high festivals  
Before the kings and queens of France.  
No longer on saint Dennis will we cry,  
But Joan la Pucelle shall be France's saint.  
Come in: and let us banquet royally,  
After this golden day of victory. *[Flourish. Exeunt.]*

---

## ACT II.

### SCENE I.—Orleans.

*Enter to the gates, a French Sergeant, and Two Sentinels.*

SERG. Sirs, take your places, and be vigilant:  
If any noise, or soldier, you perceive  
Near to the walls, by some apparent sign  
Let us have knowledge at the court of guard.

1 SENT. Sergeant, you shall. *[Exit Sergeant.]* Thus are  
poor servitors

(When others sleep upon their quiet beds)  
Constrain'd to watch in darkness, rain, and cold.

*Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, and Forces, with scaling ladders; their drums beating a dead march.*

TAL. Lord regent, and redoubted Burgundy,—  
By whose approach, the regions of Artois,  
Walloon, and Picardy, are friends to us,—  
This happy night the Frenchmen are secure,  
Having all day carous'd and banqueted:  
Embrace we then this opportunity;  
As fitting best to quittance their deceit,



Contriv'd by art and baleful sorcery.

BED. Coward of France!—how much he wrongs his fame,  
Despairing of his own arm's fortitude,  
To join with witches, and the help of hell!

BUR. Traitors have never other company.  
But what's that Pucelle, whom they term so pure?

TAL. A maid, they say.

BED. A maid! and be so martial?

BUR. Pray God she prove not masculine ere long;  
If underneath the standard of the French,  
She carry armour, as she hath begun.

TAL. Well, let them practise and converse with spirits:  
God is our fortress; in whose conquering name  
Let us resolve to scale their flinty bulwarks.

BED. Ascend, brave Talbot; we will follow thee.

TAL. Not altogether: better far, I guess,  
That we do make our entrance several ways;  
That if it chance the one of us do fail,  
The other yet may rise against their force.

BED. Agreed; I'll to yon corner.

BUR. And I to this.

TAL. And here will Talbot mount, or make his grave.  
Now, Salisbury! for thee, and for the right  
Of English Henry, shall this night appear  
How much in duty I am bound to both.

[*The English scale the walls, crying St. George!*

*A Talbot! and all enter by the Town.*

SENT. [*Within.*] Arm, arm! the enemy doth make assault!

*The French leap over the walls in their shirts. Enter, several ways, BASTARD, ALENÇON, REIGNIER, half ready, and half unready.*

ALEN. How now, my lords? what, all unready so?

BAST. Unready? ay, and glad we 'scap'd so well.

REIG. 'T was time, I trow, to wake and leave our beds,  
Hearing alarums at our chamber doors.

ALEN. Of all exploits, since first I follow'd arms,  
Ne'er heard I of a warlike enterprise  
More venturous or desperate than this.

BAST. I think this Talbot be a fiend of hell.

REIG. If not of hell, the heavens sure favour him.

ALEN. Here cometh Charles; I marvel how he sped.

*Enter CHARLES and LA PUCELLE.*

BAST. Tut! holy Joan was his defensive guard.

CHAR. Is this thy cunning, thou deceitful dame?  
Didst thou at first, to flatter us withal,  
Make us partakers of a little gain,  
That now our loss might be ten times so much?

PUC. Wherefore is Charles impatient with his friend?  
At all times will you have my power alike?  
Sleeping, or waking, must I still prevail,  
Or will you blame and lay the fault on me?  
Improvident soldiers! had your watch been good,  
This sudden mischief never could have fall'n.

CHAR. Duke of Alençon, this was your default;  
That, being captain of the watch to-night,  
Did look no better to that weighty charge.

ALEN. Had all your quarters been as safely kept  
As that whereof I had the government,  
We had not been thus shamefully surpris'd.

BAST. Mine was secure.

REIG. And so was mine, my lord.

CHAR. And, for myself, most part of all this night,  
Within her quarter, and mine own precinct,  
I was employ'd in passing to and fro,  
About relieving of the sentinels;  
Then how, or which way, should they first break in?

PUC. Question, my lords, no further of the case,  
How, or which way; 't is sure they found some place  
But weakly guarded, where the breach was made.  
And now there rests no other shift but this,—  
To gather our soldiers, scatter'd and dispers'd,  
And lay new platforms to endamage them.

*Alarum. Enter an English Soldier, crying A Talbot! A Talbot! They fly, leaving their clothes behind.*

SOLD. I'll be so bold to take what they have left.

The cry of Talbot serves me for a sword;  
For I have loaden me with many spoils,  
Using no other weapon but his name.

[*Exit.*

SCENE II.—Orleans. *Within the Town.*

*Enter TALBOT, BEDFORD, BURGUNDY, a Captain, and others.*

BED. The day begins to break, and night is fled,  
Whose pitchy mantle over-veil'd the earth.  
Here sound retreat, and cease our hot pursuit.

[*Retreat sounded.*

TAL. Bring forth the body of old Salisbury;  
And here advance it in the market-place,  
The middle centre of this cursed town.  
Now have I paid my vow unto his soul;  
For every drop of blood was drawn from him,  
There hath at least five Frenchmen died to-night.  
And, that hereafter ages may behold  
What ruin happen'd in revenge of him,  
Within their chiefest temple I'll erect  
A tomb, wherein his corpse shall be interr'd:  
Upon the which, that every one may read,  
Shall be engrav'd the sack of Orleans;  
The treacherous manner of his mournful death,  
And what a terror he had been to France.  
But, lords, in all our bloody massacre,  
I muse we met not with the dauphin's grace,  
His new-come champion, virtuous Joan of Arc,  
Nor any of his false confederates.

BED. 'Tis thought, lord Talbot, when the fight began,  
Rous'd on the sudden from their drowsy beds,  
They did, amongst the troops of armed men,  
Leap o'er the walls for refuge in the field.

BUR. Myself (as far as I could well discern,  
For smoke and dusky vapours of the night)  
Am sure I scar'd the dauphin, and his trull;  
When arm in arm they both came swiftly running,  
Like to a pair of loving turtle-doves,  
That could not live asunder day or night.

After that things are set in order here,  
We 'll follow them with all the power we have.

*Enter a Messenger.*

Mess. All hail, my lords! which of this princely train  
Call ye the warlike Talbot, for his acts  
So much applauded through the realm of France?

TAL. Here is the Talbot; who would speak with him?

Mess. The virtuous lady, countess of Auvergne,  
With modesty admiring thy renown,  
By me entreats, great lord, thou wouldst vouchsafe  
To visit her poor castle where she lies;  
That she may boast she hath beheld the man  
Whose glory fills the world with loud report.

BUR. Is it even so? Nay, then, I see our wars  
Will turn into a peaceful comic sport,  
When ladies crave to be encounter'd with.  
You may not, my lord, despise her gentle suit.

TAL. Ne'er trust me then; for when a world of men  
Could not prevail with all their oratory,  
Yet hath a woman's kindness over-rul'd:  
And therefore tell her, I return great thanks;  
And in submission will attend on her.  
Will not your honours bear me company?

BED. No, truly; it is more than manners will:  
And I have heard it said,—Unbidden guests  
Are often welcomest when they are gone.

TAL. Well, then, alone (since there 's no remedy)  
I mean to prove this lady's courtesy.  
Come hither, captain. [*Whispers.*]—You perceive my mind?

CAPT. I do, my lord; and mean accordingly. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—Auvergne. *Court of the Castle.*

*Enter the COUNTESS and her Porter.*

COUNT. Porter, remember what I gave in charge;  
And when you have done so, bring the keys to me.

PORT. Madam, I will. [*Exit.*]

COUNT. The plot is laid: if all things fall out right,  
I shall as famous be by this exploit  
As Scythian Thomyris by Cyrus' death.

Great is the rumour of this dreadful knight,  
And his achievements of no less account:  
Fain would mine eyes be witness with mine ears,  
To give their censure of these rare reports.

*Enter Messenger and TALBOT.*

MESS. Madam,  
According as your ladyship desir'd,  
By message crav'd, so is lord Talbot come.

COUNT. And he is welcome. What! is this the man?

MESS. Madam, it is.

COUNT. Is this the scourge of France?  
Is this the Talbot, so much fear'd abroad,  
That with his name the mothers still their babes?  
I see report is fabulous and false:  
I thought I should have seen some Hercules,  
A second Hector, for his grim aspect,  
And large proportion of his strong-knit limbs.  
Alas! this is a child, a silly dwarf:  
It cannot be this weak and writhled shrimp  
Should strike such terror to his enemies.

TAL. Madam, I have been bold to trouble you:  
But since your ladyship is not at leisure,  
I'll sort some other time to visit you.

COUNT. What means he now?—Go ask him whither he  
goes.

MESS. Stay, my lord Talbot; for my lady craves  
To know the cause of your abrupt departure.

TAL. Marry, for that she's in a wrong belief,  
I go to certify her Talbot's here.

*Re-enter Porter, with keys.*

COUNT. If thou be he, then art thou prisoner.

TAL. Prisoner! to whom?

COUNT. To me, bloodthirsty lord;  
And for that cause I train'd thee to my house.  
Long time thy shadow hath been thrall to me,  
For in my gallery thy picture hangs:  
But now thy substance shall endure the like;  
And I will chain these legs and arms of thine,

That hast by tyranny, these many years,  
Wasted our country, slain our citizens,  
And sent our sons and husbands captivate.

TAL. Ha, ha, ha!

COUNT. Laughest thou, wretch? thy mirth shall turn to  
moan.

TAL. I laugh to see your ladyship so fond,  
To think that you have aught but Talbot's shadow,  
Whereon to practise your severity.

COUNT. Why, art not thou the man?

TAL. I am, indeed.

COUNT. Then have I substance too.

TAL. No, no, I am but shadow of myself:  
You are deceiv'd, my substance is not here;  
For what you see is but the smallest part  
And least proportion of humanity:  
I tell you, madam, were the whole frame here,  
It is of such a spacious lofty pitch,  
Your roof were not sufficient to contain it.

COUNT. This is a riddling merchant for the nonce;  
He will be here, and yet he is not here:  
How can these contrarieties agree?

TAL. That will I show you presently.

*He winds a horn. Drums heard; then a Peal of Ordnance.  
The Gates being forced, enter Soldiers.*

How say you, madam? are you now persuaded  
That Talbot is but shadow of himself?  
These are his substance, sinews, arms, and strength,  
With which he yoketh your rebellious necks;  
Razeth your cities, and subverts your towns,  
And in a moment makes them desolate.

COUNT. Victorious Talbot! pardon my abuse:  
I find thou art no less than fame hath bruited,  
And more than may be gather'd by thy shape.  
Let my presumption not provoke thy wrath;  
For I am sorry, that with reverence  
I did not entertain thee as thou art.

TAL. Be not dismay'd, fair lady; nor misconster  
The mind of Talbot, as you did mistake

The outward composition of his body.  
What you have done hath not offended me;  
Nor other satisfaction do I crave,  
But only (with your patience) that we may  
Taste of your wine, and see what cates you have;  
For soldiers' stomachs always serve them well.

COUNT. With all my heart; and think me honoured  
To feast so great a warrior in my house. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE IV.—London. *The Temple Garden.*

*Enter the Earls of SOMERSET, SUFFOLK, and WARWICK;  
RICHARD PLANTAGENET, VERNON, and another Lawyer.*

PLAN. Great lords, and gentlemen, what means this  
silence?

Dare no man answer in a case of truth?

SUF. Within the Temple hall we were too loud;  
The garden here is more convenient.

PLAN. Then say at once, If I maintain the truth;  
Or, else, was wrangling Somerset in the error?

SUF. 'Faith, I have been a truant in the law;  
And never yet could frame my will to it;  
And, therefore, frame the law unto my will.

SOM. Judge you, my lord of Warwick, then between us.

WAR. Between two hawks, which flies the higher pitch,  
Between two dogs, which hath the deeper mouth,  
Between two blades, which bears the better temper,  
Between two horses, which doth bear him best,  
Between two girls, which hath the merriest eye,  
I have, perhaps, some shallow spirit of judgment:  
But in these nice sharp quilllets of the law,  
Good faith, I am no wiser than a daw.

PLAN. Tut, tut, here is a mannerly forbearance:  
The truth appears so naked on my side,  
That any purblind eye may find it out.

SOM. And on my side it is so well apparel'd,  
So clear, so shining, and so evident,  
That it will glimmer through a blind man's eye.

PLAN. Since you are tongue-tied, and so loth to speak,  
In dumb significants proclaim your thoughts;

Let him that is a true-born gentleman,  
And stands upon the honour of his birth,  
If he suppose that I have pleaded truth,  
From off this brier pluck a white rose with me.

SOM. Let him that is no coward, nor no flatterer,  
But dare maintain the party of the truth,  
Pluck a red rose from off this thorn with me.

WAR. I love no colours; and, without all colour  
Of base insinuating flattery,  
I pluck this white rose, with Plantagenet.

SUF. I pluck this red rose, with young Somerset;  
And say withal, I think he held the right.

VER. Stay, lords and gentlemen; and pluck no more,  
Till you conclude—that he upon whose side  
The fewest roses are cropp'd from the tree,  
Shall yield the other in the right opinion.

SOM. Good master Vernon, it is well objected;  
If I have fewest I subscribe in silence.

PLAN. And I.

VER. Then, for the truth and plainness of the case,  
I pluck this pale and maiden blossom here,  
Giving my verdict on the white rose side.

SOM. Prick not your finger as you pluck it off;  
Lest, bleeding, you do paint the white rose red,  
And fall on my side so against your will.

VER. If I, my lord, for my opinion bleed,  
Opinion shall be surgeon to my hurt,  
And keep me on the side where still I am.

SOM. Well, well, come on; Who else?

LAW. Unless my study and my books be false,  
The argument you held was wrong in you; [To SOMERSET.  
In sign whereof, I pluck a white rose too.

PLAN. Now, Somerset, where is your argument?

SOM. Here, in my scabbard; meditating that  
Shall die your white rose in a bloody red.

PLAN. Meantime, your cheeks do counterfeit our roses;  
For pale they look with fear, as witnessing  
The truth on our side.

SOM. No, Plantagenet,  
'T is not for fear, but anger,—that thy cheeks



Blush for pure shame, to counterfeit our roses;  
And yet thy tongue will not confess thy error.

PLAN. Hath not thy rose a canker, Somerset?

SOM. Hath not thy rose a thorn, Plantagenet?

PLAN. Ay, sharp and piercing, to maintain his truth;  
Whiles thy consuming canker eats his falsehood.

SOM. Well, I'll find friends to wear my bleeding roses,  
That shall maintain what I have said is true,  
Where false Plantagenet dare not be seen.

PLAN. Now, by this maiden blossom in my hand,  
I scorn thee and thy fashion, peevish boy.

SUF. Turn not thy scorns this way, Plantagenet.

PLAN. Proud Poole, I will; and scorn both him and thee.

SUF. I'll turn my part thereof into thy throat.

SOM. Away, away, good William De-la-Poole!  
We grace the yeoman by conversing with him.

WAR. Now, by God's will, thou wrong'st him, Somerset:  
His grandfather was Lionel duke of Clarence,  
Third son to the third Edward king of England;  
Spring crestless yeomen from so deep a root?

PLAN. He bears him on the place's privilege,  
Or durst not, for his craven heart, say thus.

SOM. By Him that made me, I'll maintain my words  
On any plot of ground in Christendom:  
Was not thy father, Richard, earl of Cambridge,  
For treason executed in our late king's days?  
And, by his treason, stand'st not thou attainted,  
Corrupted, and exempt from ancient gentry?  
His trespass yet lives guilty in thy blood;  
And, till thou be restor'd, thou art a yeoman.

PLAN. My father was attached, not attainted;  
Condemn'd to die for treason, but no traitor;  
And that I'll prove on better men than Somerset,  
Were growing time once ripen'd to my will.  
For your partaker Poole, and you yourself,  
I'll note you in my book of memory,  
To scourge you for this apprehension:  
Look to it well; and say you are well warn'd.

SOM. Ay, thou shalt find us ready for thee still:  
And know us, by these colours, for thy foes

For these my friends, in spite of thee, shall wear.

PLAN. And, by my soul, this pale and angry rose,  
As cognizance of my blood-drinking hate,  
Will I for ever, and my faction, wear;  
Until it wither with me to my grave,  
Or flourish to the height of my degree.

SUF. Go forward, and be chok'd with thy ambition!  
And so farewell, until I meet thee next. *[Exit.]*

SOM. Have with thee, Poole.—Farewell, ambitious Richard.  
*[Exit.]*

PLAN. How I am brav'd, and must perforce endure it!

WAR. This blot, that they object against your house,  
Shall be wip'd out in the next parliament,  
Call'd for the truce of Winchester and Gloster:  
And, if thou be not then created York,  
I will not live to be accounted Warwick.  
Meantime, in signal of my love to thee,  
Against proud Somerset and William Poole,  
Will I upon thy party wear this rose:  
And here I prophesy,—This brawl to-day,  
Grown to this faction, in the Temple garden,  
Shall send, between the red rose and the white,  
A thousand souls to death and deadly night.

PLAN. Good master Vernon, I am bound to you,  
That you on my behalf would pluck a flower.

VER. In your behalf still will I wear the same.

LAW. And so will I.

PLAN. Thanks, gentle sir.

Come, let us four to dinner: I dare say  
This quarrel will drink blood another day. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE V.—*The same. A Room in the Tower.*

*Enter MORTIMER, brought in a chair by two Keepers.*

MOR. Kind keepers of my weak decaying age,  
Let dying Mortimer here rest himself.  
Even like a man new haled from the rack,  
So fare my limbs with long imprisonment:  
And these gray locks, the pursuivants of death,

Nestor-like aged, in an age of care,  
Argue the end of Edmund Mortimer.  
These eyes, like lamps whose wasting oil is spent,  
Wax dim, as drawing to their exigent:  
Weak shoulders, overborne with burth'ning grief;  
And pithless arms, like to a wither'd vine  
That droops his sapless branches to the ground:  
Yet are these feet, whose strengthless stay is numb,  
Unable to support this lump of clay,  
Swift-winged with desire to get a grave,  
As witting I no other comforts have.  
But tell me, keeper, will my nephew come?

1 KEEP. Richard Plantagenet, my lord, will come:  
We sent unto the Temple, to his chamber;  
And answer was return'd, that he will come.

MOR. Enough; my soul shall then be satisfied.  
Poor gentleman! his wrong doth equal mine.  
Since Henry Monmouth first began to reign,  
(Before whose glory I was great in arms,)  
This loathsome sequestration have I had;  
And even since then hath Richard been obscur'd,  
Depriv'd of honour and inheritance:  
But now, the arbitrator of despairs,  
Just death, kind umpire of men's miseries,  
With sweet enlargement doth dismiss me hence;  
I would his troubles likewise were expir'd,  
That so he might recover what was lost.

*Enter RICHARD PLANTAGENET.*

1 KEEP. My lord, your loving nephew now is come.

MOR. Richard Plantagenet, my friend? Is he come?

PLAN. Ay, noble uncle, thus ignobly us'd,  
Your nephew, late-despised Richard, comes.

MOR. Direct mine arms, I may embrace his neck,  
And in his bosom spend my latter gasp:  
O, tell me, when my lips do touch his cheeks,  
That I may kindly give one fainting kiss.  
And now declare, sweet stem from York's great stock,  
Why didst thou say—of late thou wert despis'd?

PLAN. First, lean thine aged back against mine arm;

And, in that ease, I'll tell thee my disease.  
This day, in argument upon a case,  
Some words there grew 'twixt Somerset and me:  
Among which terms, he us'd his lavish tongue,  
And did upbraid me with my father's death;  
Which obloquy set bars before my tongue,  
Else with the like I had requited him:  
Therefore, good uncle,—for my father's sake,  
In honour of a true Plantagenet,  
And for alliance' sake,—declare the cause  
My father, earl of Cambridge, lost his head.

MOR. That cause, fair nephew, that imprison'd me,  
And hath detain'd me, all my flow'ring youth,  
Within a loathsome dungeon, there to pine,  
Was cursed instrument of his decease.

PLAN. Discover more at large what cause that was,  
For I am ignorant, and cannot guess.

MOR. I will; if that my fading breath permit,  
And death approach not ere my tale be done.  
Henry the fourth, grandfather to this king,  
Depos'd his nephew Richard,—Edward's son,  
The first-begotten, and the lawful heir  
Of Edward king, the third of that descent:  
During whose reign the Percies of the north,  
Finding his usurpation most unjust,  
Endeavour'd my advancement to the throne:  
The reason mov'd these warlike lords to this,  
Was—for that (young king Richard thus remov'd,  
Leaving no heir begotten of his body)  
I was the next by birth and parentage;  
For by my mother I derived am  
From Lionel duke of Clarence, the third son  
To king Edward the third, whereas he  
From John of Gaunt doth bring his pedigree,  
Being but fourth of that heroic line.  
But mark; as, in this haughty great attempt,  
They laboured to plant the rightful heir,  
I lost my liberty, and they their lives.  
Long after this, when Henry the fifth,  
Succeeding his father Bolingbroke, did reign,

Thy father, earl of Cambridge, then deriv'd  
From famous Edmund Langley, duke of York,  
Marrying my sister, that thy mother was,  
Again, in pity of my hard distress,  
Levied an army; weening to redeem,  
And have install'd me in the diadem:  
But, as the rest, so fell that noble earl,  
And was beheaded. Thus the Mortimers,  
In whom the title rested, were suppress'd.

PLAN. Of which, my lord, your honour is the last.

MOR. True; and thou seest that I no issue have;  
And that my fainting words do warrant death:  
Thou art my heir; the rest, I wish thee gather;  
And yet be wary in thy studious care.

PLAN. Thy grave admonishments prevail with me:  
But yet, methinks, my father's execution  
Was nothing less than bloody tyranny.

MOR. With silence, nephew, be thou politic;  
Strong-fixed is the house of Lancaster,  
And, like a mountain, not to be remov'd.  
But now thy uncle is removing hence;  
As princes do their courts, when they are cloy'd  
With long continuance in a settled place.

PLAN. O, uncle, would some part of my young years  
Might but redeem the passage of your age!

MOR. Thou dost then wrong me; as the slaught'rer doth,  
Which giveth many wounds when one will kill.

Mourn not, except thou sorrow for my good;  
Only, give order for my funeral;  
And so farewell; and fair be all thy hopes!  
And prosperous be thy life, in peace, and war!

[Dies.

PLAN. And peace, no war, befall thy parting soul!  
In prison hast thou spent a pilgrimage,  
And like a hermit overpass'd thy days.  
Well, I will lock his counsel in my breast;  
And what I do imagine, let that rest.  
Keepers, convey him hence: and I myself  
Will see his burial better than his life.

[Exeunt Keepers, bearing out MORTIMER.

Here dies the dusky torch of Mortimer,

Chok'd with ambition of the meaner sort:  
And, for those wrongs, those bitter injuries,  
Which Somerset hath offer'd to my house,  
I doubt not but with honour to redress:  
And therefore haste I to the parliament;  
Either to be restored to my blood,  
Or make my ill the advantage of my good.

[*Exit.*]

---

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—London. *The Parliament-House.*

*Flourish. Enter KING HENRY, EXETER, GLOSTER, WARWICK, SOMERSET, and SUFFOLK; the BISHOP OF WINCHESTER, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, and others. GLOSTER offers to put up a bill; WINCHESTER snatches it, and tears it.*

WIN. Com'st thou with deep premeditated lines,  
With written pamphlets studiously devis'd,  
Humphrey of Gloster? if thou canst accuse,  
Or aught intend'st to lay unto my charge,  
Do it without invention suddenly;  
As I with sudden and extemporal speech  
Purpose to answer what thou canst object.

GLOS. Presumptuous priest! this place commands my patience,  
Or thou shouldst find thou hast dishonour'd me.  
Think not, although in writing I preferr'd  
The manner of thy vile outrageous crimes,  
That therefore I have forg'd, or am not able  
Verbatim to rehearse the method of my pen:  
No, prelate; such is thy audacious wickedness,  
Thy lewd, pestiferous, and dissentious pranks,  
As very infants prattle of thy pride.  
Thou art a most pernicious usurer;  
Froward by nature, enemy to peace;

Lascivious, wanton, more than well beseems  
A man of thy profession and degree;  
And for thy treachery, what's more manifest?  
In that thou laid'st a trap to take my life,  
As well at London bridge, as at the Tower?  
Beside, I fear me, if thy thoughts were sifted,  
The king, thy sovereign, is not quite exempt  
From envious malice of thy swelling heart.

WIN. Gloster, I do defy thee. Lords, vouchsafe  
To give me hearing what I shall reply.  
If I were covetous, ambitious, or perverse,  
As he will have me, how am I so poor?  
Or how haps it I seek not to advance  
Or raise myself, but keep my wonted calling?  
And for dissension, who preferreth peace  
More than I do,—except I be provok'd?  
No, my good lords, it is not that offends;  
It is not that that hath incens'd the duke:  
It is, because no one should sway but he;  
No one but he should be about the king;  
And that engenders thunder in his breast,  
And makes him roar these accusations forth.  
But he shall know, I am as good——

GLO.

As good?

Thou bastard of my grandfather!—

WIN. Ay, lordly sir: For what are you, I pray,  
But one imperious in another's throne?

GLO. Am I not protector, saucy priest?

WIN. And am I not a prelate of the church?

GLO. Yes, as an outlaw in a castle keeps,  
And useth it to patronage his theft.

WIN. Unreverent Gloster!

GLO.

Thou art reverent,

Touching thy spiritual function, not thy life.

WIN. Rome shall remedy this.

WAR.

Roam thither then.

SOM. My lord, it were your duty to forbear.

WAR. Ay, see the bishop be not overborne.

SOM. Methinks, my lord should be religious,  
And know the office that belongs to such.

WAR. Methinks, his lordship should be humbler;  
It fitteth not a prelate so to plead.

SOM. Yes, when his holy state is touch'd so near.

WAR. State holy, or unhallow'd, what of that?  
Is not his grace protector to the king?

PLAN. Plantagenet, I see, must hold his tongue;  
Lest it be said, "Speak, sirrah, when you should;  
Must your bold verdict enter talk with lords?"  
Else would I have a fling at Winchester.

[*Aside.*

K. HEN. Uncles of Gloster, and of Winchester,  
The special watchmen of our English weal,  
I would prevail, if prayers might prevail,  
To join your hearts in love and amity.  
O, what a scandal is it to our crown,  
That two such noble peers as ye should jar!  
Believe me, lords, my tender years can tell,  
Civil dissension is a viperous worm  
That gnaws the bowels of the commonwealth.—

[*A noise within; "Down with the tawny-coats!"*  
What tumult's this?

WAR. An uproar, I dare warrant,  
Begun through malice of the bishop's men.

[*A noise again; "Stones! Stones!"*

*Enter the Mayor of London, attended.*

MAY. O, my good lords,—and virtuous Henry,—  
Pity the city of London, pity us!  
The bishop and the duke of Gloster's men,  
Forbidden late to carry any weapon,  
Have fill'd their pockets full of pebble-stones;  
And banding themselves in contrary parts,  
Do pelt so fast at one another's pate,  
That many have their giddy brains knock'd out:  
Our windows are broke down in every street,  
And we, for fear, compell'd to shut our shops.

*Enter, skirmishing, the Retainers of GLOSTER and WINCHESTER,  
with bloody pates.*

K. HEN. We charge you, on allegiance to ourself,  
To hold your slaught'ring hands, and keep the peace.



Pray, uncle Gloster, mitigate this strife.

1 SERV. Nay, if we be forbidden stones, we'll fall to it  
with our teeth.

2 SERV. Do what ye dare, we are as resolute.

*[Skirmish again.]*

GLO. You of my household, leave this peevish broil,  
And set this unaccustom'd fight aside.

3 SERV. My lord, we know your grace to be a man  
Just and upright; and, for your royal birth,  
Inferior to none but to his majesty:  
And ere that we will suffer such a prince,  
So kind a father of the commonweal,  
To be disgraced by an inkhorn mate,  
We, and our wives, and children, all will fight,  
And have our bodies slaughter'd by thy foes.

1 SERV. Ay, and the very parings of our nails  
Shall pitch a field, when we are dead. *[Skirmish again.]*

GLO.

Stay, stay, I say!

And, if you love me, as you say you do,  
Let me persuade you to forbear a while.

K. HEN. O, how this discord doth afflict my soul!  
Can you, my lord of Winchester, behold  
My sighs and tears, and will not once relent?  
Who should be pitiful, if you be not?  
Or who should study to prefer a peace,  
If holy churchmen take delight in broils?

WAR. Yield, my lord protector;—yield, Winchester;—  
Except you mean, with obstinate repulse,  
To slay your sovereign, and destroy the realm.  
You see what mischief, and what murther too,  
Hath been enacted through your enmity;  
Then be at peace, except ye thirst for blood.

WIN. He shall submit, or I will never yield.

GLO. Compassion on the king commands me stoop;  
Or I would see his heart out ere the priest  
Should ever get that privilege of me.

WAR. Behold, my lord of Winchester, the duke  
Hath banish'd moody discontented fury,  
As by his smoothed brows it doth appear:  
Why look you still so stern and tragical?

GLO. Here, Winchester, I offer thee my hand.

K. HEN. Fie, uncle Beaufort! I have heard you preach  
That malice was a great and grievous sin:  
And will not you maintain the thing you teach,  
But prove a chief offender in the same?

WAR. Sweet king!—the bishop hath a kindly gird.—  
For shame, my lord of Winchester! relent;  
What, shall a child instruct you what to do?

WIN. Well, duke of Gloster, I will yield to thee;  
Love for thy love, and hand for hand I give.

GLO. Ay; but, I fear me, with a hollow heart.  
See here, my friends, and loving countrymen;  
This token serveth for a flag of truce  
Betwixt ourselves and all our followers:  
So help me God, as I dissemble not!

WIN. So help me God, as I intend it not! [*Aside.*

K. HEN. O loving uncle, kind duke of Gloster,  
How joyful am I made by this contract!  
Away, my masters! trouble us no more;  
But join in friendship, as your lords have done.

1 SERV. Content; I'll to the surgeon's.

2 SERV. And so will I.

3 SERV. And I will see what physic the tavern affords.

[*Exeunt* Servants, Mayor, &c.]

WAR. Accept this scroll, most gracious sovereign;  
Which in the right of Richard Plantagenet  
We do exhibit to your majesty.

GLO. Well urg'd, my lord of Warwick,—for, sweet prince,  
An if your grace mark every circumstance,  
You have great reason to do Richard right:  
Especially, for those occasions  
At Eltham-place I told your majesty.

K. HEN. And those occasions, uncle, were of force:  
Therefore, my loving lords, our pleasure is  
That Richard be restored to his blood.

WAR. Let Richard be restored to his blood;  
So shall his father's wrongs be recompens'd.

WIN. As will the rest, so willeth Winchester.

K. HEN. If Richard will be true, not that alone,  
But all the whole inheritance I give

That doth belong unto the house of York,  
From whence you spring by lineal descent.

PLAN. Thy humble servant vows obedience,  
And humble service, till the point of death.

K. HEN. Stoop then, and set your knee against my foot:  
And, in reguerdon of that duty done,  
I girt thee with the valiant sword of York:  
Rise, Richard, like a true Plantagenet;  
And rise created princely duke of York.

PLAN. And so thrive Richard, as thy foes may fall!  
And as my duty springs, so perish they  
That grudge one thought against your majesty!

ALL. Welcome, high prince, the mighty duke of York!

SOM. Perish, base prince, ignoble duke of York! [*Aside.*]

GLO. Now will it best avail your majesty,  
To cross the seas, and to be crown'd in France:  
The presence of a king engenders love  
Amongst his subjects, and his loyal friends;  
As it disanimates his enemies.

K. HEN. When Gloster says the word, King Henry goes;  
For friendly counsel cuts off many foes.

GLO. Your ships already are in readiness.

[*Sennet. Flourish. Exeunt all but EXETER.*]

EXE. Ay, we may march in England, or in France,  
Not seeing what is likely to ensue:  
This late dissension, grown betwixt the peers,  
Burns under feigned ashes of forg'd love,  
And will at last break out into a flame:  
As fester'd members rot but by degree,  
Till bones, and flesh, and sinews, fall away,  
So will this base and envious discord breed.  
And now I fear that fatal prophecy,  
Which, in the time of Henry nam'd the fifth,  
Was in the mouth of every sucking babe,—  
That Henry, born at Monmouth, should win all;  
And Henry, born at Windsor, should lose all:  
Which is so plain, that Exeter doth wish  
His days may finish ere that hapless time.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE II.—France. *Before Rouen.*

*Enter LA PUCELLE, disguised, and Soldiers, dressed like Countrymen, with sacks upon their backs.*

PUC. These are the city gates, the gates of Rouen,  
Through which our policy must make a breach:  
Take heed, be wary how you place your words;  
Talk like the vulgar sort of market-men  
That come to gather money for their corn.  
If we have entrance (as I hope we shall),  
And that we find the slothful watch but weak,  
I'll by a sign give notice to our friends,  
That Charles the dauphin may encounter them.

1 SOLD. Our sacks shall be a mean to sack the city,  
And we be lords and rulers over Rouen;  
Therefore we'll knock.

[*Knocks.*]

GUARD. [Within.] *Qui est là?*

PUC. *Paisans, pauvres gens de France:*  
Poor market-folks, that come to sell their corn.

GUARD. Enter, go in; the market-bell is rung.

[*Opens the gates.*]

PUC. Now, Rouen, I'll shake thy bulwarks to the ground.

[*PUCELLE, &c., enter the city.*]

*Enter CHARLES, BASTARD of ORLEANS, ALENÇON, and Forces.*

CHAR. Saint Dennis bless this happy stratagem!  
And once again we'll sleep secure in Rouen.

BAST. Here enter'd Pucelle, and her practisants;  
Now she is there, how will she specify  
Where is the best and safest passage in?

ALEN. By thrusting out a torch from yonder tower;  
Which, once discern'd, shows that her meaning is,—  
No way to that, for weakness, which she enter'd.

*Enter LA PUCELLE on a battlement, holding out a torch burning.*

PUC. Behold, this is the happy wedding torch,  
That joineth Rouen unto her countrymen;  
But burning fatal to the Talbotites.

BAST. See, noble Charles! the beacon of our friend,  
The burning torch, in yonder turret stands.

CHAR. Now shine it like a comet of revenge,  
A prophet to the fall of all our foes!

ALEN. Defer no time: Delays have dangerous ends;  
Enter, and cry—"The dauphin!"—presently,  
And then do execution on the watch. *[They enter.]*

*Alarums. Enter TALBOT and certain English.*

TAL. France, thou shalt rue this treason with thy tears,  
If Talbot but survive thy treachery.  
Pucelle, that witch, that damned sorceress,  
Hath wrought this hellish mischief unawares,  
That hardly we escap'd the pride of France.

*[Exeunt to the town.]*

*Alarum: Excursions. Enter, from the town, BEDFORD, brought in sick, in a chair, with TALBOT, BURGUNDY, and the English Forces. Then, enter on the walls, LA PUCELLE, CHARLES, BASTARD, ALENÇON, and others.*

PUC. Good morrow, gallants! want ye corn for bread?  
I think the duke of Burgundy will fast,  
Before he'll buy again at such a rate:  
'T was full of darnel: Do you like the taste?

BUR. Scoff on, vile fiend, and shameless courtesan!  
I trust, ere long, to choke thee with thine own,  
And make thee curse the harvest of that corn.

CHAR. Your grace may starve, perhaps, before that time.

BED. O, let no words, but deeds, revenge this treason!

PUC. What will you do, good gray-beard? break a lance,  
And run a tilt at death within a chair?

TAL. Foul fiend of France, and hag of all despite,  
Encompass'd with thy lustful paramours,  
Becomes it thee to taunt his valiant age,  
And twit with cowardice a man half dead?  
Damsel, I'll have a bout with you again,  
Or else let Talbot perish with this shame.

PUC. Are you so hot, sir? Yet, Pucelle, hold thy peace;  
If Talbot do but thunder, rain will follow.

*[TALBOT, and the rest, consult together.]*

God speed the parliament! who shall be the speaker?

TAL. Dare ye come forth, and meet us in the field?

PUC. Belike, your lordship takes us then for fools,  
To try if that our own be ours, or no.

TAL. I speak not to that railing Hecaté,  
But unto thee, Alençon, and the rest;  
Will ye, like soldiers, come and fight it out?

ALEN. Signior, no.

TAL. Signior, hang!—base muleteers of France!  
Like peasant footboys do they keep the walls,  
And dare not take up arms like gentlemen.

PUC. Away, captains: let's get us from the walls,  
For Talbot means no goodness by his looks.  
God be wi' you, my lord! we came but to tell you  
That we are here.

[*Exeunt LA PUCELLE, &c., from the walls.*]

TAL. And there will we be too, ere it be long,  
Or else reproach be Talbot's greatest fame!  
Vow, Burgundy, by honour of thy house,  
(Prick'd on by public wrongs sustain'd in France,)  
Either to get the town again, or die:  
And I, as sure as English Henry lives,  
And as his father here was conqueror;  
As sure as in this late-betrayed town  
Great Cœur-de-lion's heart was buried;  
So sure I swear to get the town or die.

BUR. My vows are equal partners with thy vows.

TAL. But, ere we go, regard this dying prince,  
The valiant duke of Bedford:—Come, my lord,  
We will bestow you in some better place,  
Fitter for sickness and for crazy age.

BED. Lord Talbot, do not so dishonour me:  
Here will I sit before the walls of Rouen,  
And will be partner of your weal or woe.

BUR. Courageous Bedford, let us now persuade you.

BED. Not to be gone from hence; for once I read,  
That stout Pendragon, in his litter, sick,  
Came to the field, and vanquished his foes:  
Methinks I should revive the soldiers' hearts.  
Because I ever found them as myself.

TAL. Undaunted spirit in a dying breast!—  
Then be it so;—Heavens keep old Bedford safe!—  
And now no more ado, brave Burgundy,  
But gather we our forces out of hand,  
And set upon our boasting enemy.

[*Exeunt* BURGUNDY, TALBOT, and *Forces*, leaving  
BEDFORD and others.

*Alarum: Excursions. Enter* Sir JOHN FASTOLFE and a  
Captain.

CAP. Whither away, sir John Fastolfe, in such haste?

FAST. Whither away? to save myself by flight.

We are like to have the overthrow again.

CAP. What! will you fly, and leave lord Talbot?

FAST. Ay. All the Talbots in the world, to save my life.

[*Exit.*

CAP. Cowardly knight! ill fortune follow thee! [*Exit.*

*Retreat: Excursions. Enter, from the town, LA PUCELLE,*  
*ALENÇON, CHARLES, &c., and exeunt flying.*

BED. Now, quiet soul, depart when Heaven please;

For I have seen our enemies' overthrow:

What is the trust or strength of foolish man?

They, that of late were daring with their scoffs,

Are glad and fain by flight to save themselves.

[*Dies, and is carried off in his chair*

*Alarum: Enter* TALBOT, BURGUNDY, and others.

TAL. Lost, and recover'd in a day again!

This is a double honour, Burgundy:

Yet, Heavens have glory for this victory!

BUR. Warlike and martial Talbot, Burgundy  
Enshrines thee in his heart; and there erects  
Thy noble deeds, as valour's monuments.

TAL. Thanks, gentle duke. But where is Pucelle now?  
I think her old familiar is asleep:  
Now where's the Bastard's braves, and Charles his gleeks?  
What, all a-mort? Rouen hangs her head for grief  
That such a valiant company are fled.  
Now will we take some order in the town,

Placing therein some expert officers;  
And then depart to Paris, to the king;  
For there young Henry, with his nobles, lies.

BUR. What wills lord Talbot pleaseth Burgundy.

TAL. But yet, before we go, let's not forget  
The noble duke of Bedford, late deceas'd,  
But see his exequies fulfill'd in Rouen;  
A braver soldier never couched lance,  
A gentler heart did never sway in court:  
But kings, and mightiest potentates, must die;  
For that's the end of human misery.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*The same. The Plains near the City.*

*Enter CHARLES, the BASTARD, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE, and Forces.*

PUC. Dismay not, princes, at this accident,  
Nor grieve that Rouen is so recovered:  
Care is no cure, but rather corrosive,  
For things that are not to be remedied.  
Let frantic Talbot triumph for a while,  
And like a peacock sweep along his tail;  
We'll pull his plumes, and take away his train,  
If dauphin and the rest will be but rul'd.

CHAR. We have been guided by thee hitherto,  
And of thy cunning had no diffidence;  
One sudden foil shall never breed distrust.

BAST. Search out thy wit for secret policies,  
And we will make thee famous through the world.

ALEN. We'll set thy statue in some holy place,  
And have thee reverenc'd like a blessed saint;  
Employ thee then, sweet virgin, for our good.

PUC. Then thus it must be; this doth Joan devise:  
By fair persuasions, mix'd with sugar'd words,  
We will entice the duke of Burgundy  
To leave the Talbot, and to follow us.

CHAR. Ay, marry, sweeting, if we could do that,  
France were no place for Henry's warriors;  
Nor should that nation boast it so with us,  
But be extirped from our provinces.



ALLEN. For ever should they be expuls'd from France,  
And not have title of an earldom here.

PUC. Your honours shall perceive how I will work,  
To bring this matter to the wished end. [*Drums heard.*  
Hark! by the sound of drum you may perceive  
Their powers are marching unto Paris-ward.

*An English march. Enter, and pass over at a distance,  
TALBOT and his Forces.*

There goes the Talbot, with his colours spread;  
And all the troops of English after him.

*A French march. Enter the DUKE OF BURGUNDY and Forces.*

Now, in the rearward, comes the duke, and his;  
Fortune, in favour, makes him lag behind.  
Summon a parley, we will talk with him.

[*A parley sounded.*

CHAR. A parley with the duke of Burgundy.

BUR. Who craves a parley with the Burgundy?

PUC. The princely Charles of France, thy countryman.

BUR. What say'st thou, Charles? for I am marching hence.

CHAR. Speak, Pucelle; and enchant him with thy words.

PUC. Brave Burgundy, undoubted hope of France!

Stay, let thy humble handmaid speak to thee.

BUR. Speak on; but be not over-tedious.

PUC. Look on thy country, look on fertile France,  
And see the cities and the towns defac'd  
By wasting ruin of the cruel foe!  
As looks the mother on her lowly babe,  
When death doth close his tender dying eyes,  
See, see, the pining malady of France;  
Behold the wounds, the most unnatural wounds,  
Which thou thyself hast given her woeful breast!  
O, turn thy edged sword another way;  
Strike those that hurt, and hurt not those that help!  
One drop of blood, drawn from thy country's bosom,  
Should grieve thee more than streams of foreign gore;  
Return thee, therefore, with a flood of tears,

And wash away thy country's stained spots!

BUR. Either she hath bewitch'd me with her words,  
Or nature makes me suddenly relent.

PUC. Besides, all French and France exclaims on thee,  
Doubting thy birth and lawful progeny.

Who join'st thou with, but with a lordly nation,

That will not trust thee but for profit's sake?

When Talbot hath set footing once in France,

And fashion'd thee that instrument of ill,

Who then, but English Henry, will be lord,

And thou be thrust out like a fugitive?

Call we to mind,—and mark but this, for proof;—

Was not the duke of Orleans thy foe?

And was he not in England prisoner?

But, when they heard he was thine enemy,

They set him free, without his ransom paid,

In spite of Burgundy and all his friends.

See, then! thou fight'st against thy countrymen,

And join'st with them will be thy slaughtermen.

Come, come, return; return, thou wand'ring lord;

Charles and the rest will take thee in their arms.

BUR. I am vanquished; these haughty words of hers

Have batter'd me like roaring cannon-shot,

And made me almost yield upon my knees.

Forgive me, country, and sweet countrymen!

And, lords, accept this hearty kind embrace:

My forces and my power of men are yours;

So, farewell, Talbot; I'll no longer trust thee.

PUC. Done like a Frenchman; turn, and turn again!

CHAR. Welcome, brave duke! thy friendship makes us  
fresh.

BAST. And doth beget new courage in our breasts.

ALEN. Pucelle hath bravely play'd her part in this,  
And doth deserve a coronet of gold.

CHAR. Now let us on, my lords, and join our powers;  
And seek how we may prejudice the foe. [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—Paris. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, *and other* Lords, VERNON, BASSET, &c. *To them* TALBOT, *and some of his* Officers.

TAL. My gracious prince, and honourable peers,  
Hearing of your arrival in this realm,  
I have awhile given truce unto my wars,  
To do my duty to my sovereign:  
In sign whereof, this arm—that hath reclaim'd  
To your obedience fifty fortresses,  
Twelve cities, and seven walled towns of strength,  
Besides five hundred prisoners of esteem—  
Lets fall his sword before your highness' feet;  
And, with submissive loyalty of heart,  
Ascribes the glory of his conquest got,  
First to my God, and next unto your grace.

K. HEN. Is this the lord Talbot, uncle Gloster,  
That hath so long been resident in France?

GLO. Yes, if it please your majesty, my liege.

K. HEN. Welcome, brave captain, and victorious lord!  
When I was young, (as yet I am not old,)  
I do remember how my father said  
A stouter champion never handled sword.  
Long since we were resolved of your truth,  
Your faithful service, and your toil in war;  
Yet never have you tasted our reward,  
Or been reguerdon'd with so much as thanks,  
Because till now we never saw your face:  
Therefore, stand up; and, for these good deserts,  
We here create you earl of Shrewsbury;  
And in our coronation take your place.

[*Exeunt* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, TALBOT, *and* Nobles.

VER. Now, sir, to you, that were so hot at sea,  
Disgracing of these colours that I wear  
In honour of my noble lord of York,—  
Dar'st thou maintain the former words thou spak'st?

BAS. Yes, sir; as well as you dare patronage  
The envious barking of your saucy tongue  
Against my lord, the duke of Somerset.

VER. Sirrah, thy lord I honour as he is.

BAS. Why, what is he? as good a man as York.

VER. Hark ye; not so: in witness take ye that.

[*Strikes him.*]

BAS. Villain, thou know'st the law of arms is such,  
That whoso draws a sword 't is present death,  
Or else this blow should broach thy dearest blood.  
But I'll unto his majesty, and crave  
I may have liberty to venge this wrong;  
When thou shalt see I'll meet thee to thy cost.

VER. Well, miscreant, I'll be there as soon as you;  
And, after, meet you sooner than you would. [*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I.—Paris. *A Room of State.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, EXETER, YORK, SUFFOLK, SOMERSET, WINCHESTER, WARWICK, TALBOT, *the Governor of Paris, and others.*

GLO. Lord bishop, set the crown upon his head.

WIN. God save King Henry, of that name the sixth!

GLO. Now, governor of Paris, take your oath,—

[*Governor kneels.*]

That you elect no other king but him:

Esteem none friends but such as are his friends;

And none your foes but such as shall pretend

Malicious practices against his state:

This shall ye do, so help you righteous God!

[*Exeunt Governor and his Train.*]

*Enter* SIR JOHN FASTOLFE.

FAST. My gracious sovereign, as I rode from Calais,  
To haste unto your coronation,  
A letter was deliver'd to my hands,  
Writ to your grace from the duke of Burgundy.

TAL. Shame to the duke of Burgundy, and thee!  
I vow'd, base knight, when I did meet thee next,  
To tear the garter from thy craven's leg, [Plucking it off,  
(Which I have done,) because unworthily  
Thou wast installed in that high degree.  
Pardon me, princely Henry, and the rest:  
This dastard, at the battle of Patay,  
When but in all I was six thousand strong,  
And that the French were almost ten to one,  
Before we met, or that a stroke was given,  
Like to a trusty squire, did run away;  
In which assault we lost twelve hundred men;  
Myself, and divers gentlemen beside,  
Were there surpris'd and taken prisoners.  
Then judge, great lords, if I have done amiss;  
Or whether that such cowards ought to wear  
This ornament of knighthood, yea or no.

GLO. To say the truth, this fact was infamous,  
And ill-beseeming any common man ;  
Much more a knight, a captain, and a leader.

TAL. When first this order was ordain'd, my lords,  
Knights of the garter were of noble birth;  
Valiant, and virtuous, full of haughty courage,  
Such as were grown to credit by the wars;  
Not fearing death, nor shrinking for distress,  
But always resolute in most extremes.  
He then that is not furnish'd in this sort  
Doth but usurp the sacred name of knight,  
Profaning this most honourable order;  
And should (if I were worthy to be judge)  
Be quite degraded, like a hedge-born swain  
That doth presume to boast of gentle blood.

**K. HEN.** Stain to thy countrymen! thou hear'st thy doom!  
Be packing therefore, thou that wast a knight;  
Henceforth we banish thee, on pain of death.—

[*Exit* FASTOLFE.]

**And now, lord protector, view the letter  
Sent from our uncle duke of Burgundy.**

GLO. What means his grace, that he hath chang'd his style?  
[ *Viewing the superscription.*

No more but, plain and bluntly,—“To the king?”  
Hath he forgot he is his sovereign?  
Or doth this churlish superscription  
Pretend some alteration in good will?  
What’s here?—“I have, upon especial cause,— [Reads.  
Mov’d with compassion of my country’s wrack,  
Together with the pitiful complaints  
Of such as your oppression feeds upon,—  
Forsaken your pernicious faction,  
And join’d with Charles, the rightful king of France.”  
O monstrous treachery! Can this be so;  
That in alliance, amity, and oaths,  
There should be found such false dissembling guile?

K. HEN. What! doth my uncle Burgundy revolt?

GLO. He doth, my lord; and is become your foe.

K. HEN. Is that the worst this letter doth contain?

GLO. It is the worst, and all, my lord, he writes.

K. HEN. Why, then, lord Talbot there shall talk with him,  
And give him chastisement for this abuse;  
How say you, my lord? are you not content?

TAL. Content, my liege? Yes; but that I am prevented,  
I should have begg’d I might have been employ’d.

K. HEN. Then gather strength, and march unto him  
straight:

Let him perceive how ill we brook his treason;  
And what offence it is to flout his friends.

TAL. I go, my lord; in heart desiring still  
You may behold confusion of your foes.

[Exit.

*Enter VERNON and BASSET.*

VER. Grant me the combat, gracious sovereign!

BAS. And me, my lord, grant me the combat too!

YORK. This is my servant: Hear him, noble prince!

SOM. And this is mine: Sweet Henry, favour him!

K. HEN. Be patient, lords, and give them leave to speak.—  
Say, gentlemen, What makes you thus exclaim?  
And wherefore crave you combat? or with whom?

VER. With him, my lord; for he hath done me wrong.

BAS. And I with him; for he hath done me wrong.

K. HEN. What is that wrong whereof you both complain?

First let me know, and then I'll answer you.

BAS. Crossing the sea from England into France  
This fellow here, with envious carping tongue,  
Upbraided me about the rose I wear;  
Saying—the sanguine colour of the leaves  
Did represent my master's blushing cheeks,  
When stubbornly he did repugn the truth,  
About a certain question in the law,  
Argued betwixt the duke of York and him;  
With other vile and ignominious terms:  
In confutation of which rude reproach,  
And in defence of my lord's worthiness,  
I crave the benefit of law of arms.

VER. And that is my petition, noble lord:  
For though he seem, with forged quaint conceit,  
To set a gloss upon his bold intent,  
Yet know, my lord, I was provok'd by him;  
And he first took exceptions at this badge,  
Pronouncing—that the paleness of this flower  
Bewray'd the faintness of my master's heart.

YORK. Will not this malice, Somerset, be left?

SOM. Your private grudge, my lord of York, will out,  
Though ne'er so cunningly you smother it.

K. HEN. Good Lord! what madness rules in brain-sick  
men;

When, for so slight and frivolous a cause,  
Such factious emulations shall arise:  
Good cousins both, of York and Somerset,  
Quiet yourselves, I pray, and be at peace.

YORK. Let this dissension first be tried by fight,  
And then your highness shall command a peace.

SOM. The quarrel toucheth none but us alone;  
Betwixt ourselves let us decide it then.

YORK. There is my pledge; accept it, Somerset.

VER. Nay, let it rest where it began at first.

BAS. Confirm it so, mine honourable lord.

GLO. Confirm it so? Confounded be your strife!  
And perish ye, with your audacious prate!  
Presumptuous vassals! are you not asham'd,  
With this immodest clamorous outrage,

To trouble and disturb the king and us?  
And you, my lords,—methinks you do not well,  
To bear with their perverse objections;  
Much less to take occasion from their mouths  
To raise a mutiny betwixt yourselves;  
Let me persuade you, take a better course.

EXE. It grieves his highness:—Good my lords, be friends.

K. HEN. Come hither, you that would be combatants:  
Henceforth, I charge you, as you love our favour,  
Quite to forget this quarrel, and the cause.  
And you, my lords, remember where we are;  
In France, amongst a fickle wavering nation:  
If they perceive dissension in our looks,  
And that within ourselves we disagree,  
How will their grudging stomachs be provok'd  
To wilful disobedience, and rebel!  
Beside, what infamy will there arise,  
When foreign princes shall be certified  
That, for a toy, a thing of no regard,  
King Henry's peers and chief nobility  
Destroy'd themselves, and lost the realm of France!  
O, think upon the conquest of my father,  
My tender years; and let us not forego  
That for a trifle that was bought with blood!  
Let me be umpire in this doubtful strife.  
I see no reason, if I wear this rose, [*Putting on a red rose.*]  
That any one should therefore be suspicious  
I more incline to Somerset than York:  
Both are my kinsmen, and I love them both:  
As well they may upbraid me with my crown,  
Because, forsooth, the king of Scots is crown'd.  
But your discretions better can persuade  
Than I am able to instruct or teach:  
And therefore, as we hither came in peace,  
So let us still continue peace and love.  
Cousin of York, we institute your grace  
To be our regent in these parts of France:  
And, good my lord of Somerset, unite  
Your troops of horsemen with his bands of foot;  
And, like true subjects, sons of your progenitors,



Go cheerfully together, and digest  
Your angry choler on your enemies.  
Ourselves, my lord protector, and the rest,  
After some respite, will return to Calais;  
From thence to England, where I hope ere long  
To be presented, by your victories,  
With Charles, Alençon, and that traitorous rout.

[*Flourish. Exeunt KING HEN., GLO., SOM., WIN.,  
SUF., and BASSET.*

WAR. My lord of York, I promise you, the king  
Prettily, methought, did play the orator.

YORK. And so he did; but yet I like it not,  
In that he wears the badge of Somerset.

WAR. Tush! that was but his fancy, blame him not;  
I dare presume, sweet prince, he thought no harm.

YORK. And, if I wist he did,—But let it rest;  
Other affairs must now be managed.

[*Exeunt YORK, WARWICK, and VERNON.*

EXE. Well didst thou, Richard, to suppress thy voice:  
For had the passions of thy heart burst out,  
I fear we should have seen decipher'd there  
More rancorous spite, more furious raging broils,  
Than yet can be imagin'd or suppos'd.  
But howsoe'er, no simple man that sees  
This jarring discord of nobility,  
This should'ring of each other in the court,  
This factious bandying of their favourites,  
But that it doth presage some ill event.  
'T is much, when sceptres are in children's hands:  
But more, when envy breeds unkind division;  
There comes the ruin, there begins confusion.

[*Exit.*

SCENE II.—France. *Before Bourdeaux.*

*Enter TALBOT, with his Forces.*

TAL. Go to the gates of Bourdeaux, trumpeter:  
Summon their general unto the wall.

[*Trumpet sounds a parley. Enter, on the walls, the  
General of the French Forces, and others.*

English John Talbot, captains, calls you forth,

Servant in arms to Harry King of England,  
And thus he would,—Open your city gates;  
Be humble to us; call my sovereign yours,  
And do him homage as obedient subjects;  
And I'll withdraw me and my bloody power:  
But, if you frown upon this proffer'd peace,  
You tempt the fury of my three attendants,  
Lean famine, quartering steel, and climbing fire;  
Who, in a moment, even with the earth  
Shall lay your stately and air-braving towers,  
If you forsake the offer of their love.

GEN. Thou ominous and fearful owl of death,  
Our nation's terror, and their bloody scourge!  
The period of thy tyranny approacheth.  
On us thou canst not enter, but by death:  
For, I protest, we are well fortified,  
And strong enough to issue out and fight:  
If thou retire, the dauphin, well appointed,  
Stands with the snares of war to tangle thee:  
On either hand thee there are squadrons pitch'd,  
To wall thee from the liberty of flight;  
And no way canst thou turn thee for redress,  
But death doth front thee with apparent spoil,  
And pale destruction meets thee in the face.  
Ten thousand French have ta'en the sacrament,  
To rive their dangerous artillery  
Upon no Christian soul but English Talbot.  
Lo! there thou stand'st, a breathing valiant man,  
Of an invincible unconquer'd spirit:  
This is the latest glory of thy praise,  
That I, thy enemy, due thee withal;  
For ere the glass that now begins to run  
Finish the process of his sandy hour,  
These eyes, that see thee now well coloured,  
Shall see thee wither'd, bloody, pale, and dead.

[*Drum afar off.*

Hark! hark! the dauphin's drum, a warning bell,  
Sings heavy music to thy timorous soul,  
And mine shall ring thy dire departure out.

[*Exeunt General, &c., from the walls.*

TAL. He fables not, I hear the enemy;—  
Out, some light horsemen, and peruse their wings.—  
O, negligent and heedless discipline!  
How are we park'd, and bounded in a pale;  
A little herd of England's timorous deer,  
Maz'd with a yelping kennel of French curs!  
If we be English deer, be then in blood:  
Not rascal-like, to fall down with a pinch;  
But rather moody-mad and desperate stags,  
Turn on the bloody hounds with heads of steel,  
And make the cowards stand aloof at bay:  
Sell every man his life as dear as mine,  
And they shall find dear deer of us, my friends.  
God, and saint George! Talbot, and England's right!  
Prosper our colours in this dangerous fight! [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*Plains in Gascony.*

*Enter YORK, with Forces; to him a Messenger.*

YORK. Are not the speedy scouts return'd again,  
That dogg'd the mighty army of the dauphin?

MESS. They are return'd, my lord: and give it out  
That he is march'd to Bourdeaux with his power,  
To fight with Talbot: As he march'd along,  
By your espials were discovered  
Two mightier troops than that the dauphin led;  
Which joined with him, and made their march for Bour-  
deaux.

YORK. A plague upon that villain Somerset,  
That thus delays my promised supply  
Of horsemen, that were levied for this siege!  
Renowned Talbot doth expect my aid;  
And I am lowted by a traitor villain,  
And cannot help the noble chevalier:  
God comfort him in this necessity!  
If he miscarry, farewell wars in France.

*Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY.*

LUCY. Thou princely leader of our English strength,  
Never so needful on the earth of France,

Spur to the rescue of the noble Talbot ;  
Who now is girdled with a waist of iron,  
And hemm'd about with grim destruction :  
To Bourdeaux, warlike duke ! to Bourdeaux, York !  
Else, farewell Talbot, France, and England's honour.

YORK. O God ! that Somerset, who in proud heart  
Doth stop my cornets, were in Talbot's place !  
So should we save a valiant gentleman,  
By forfeiting a traitor and a coward.  
Mad ire, and wrathful fury, makes me weep,  
That thus we die, while remiss traitors sleep.

LUCY. O, send some succour to the distress'd lord !

YORK. He dies, we lose ; I break my warlike word :  
We mourn, France smiles ; we lose, they daily get ;  
All 'long of this vile traitor Somerset.

LUCY. Then, God take mercy on brave Talbot's soul !  
And on his son, young John ; whom, two hours since,  
I met in travel toward his warlike father ;  
This seven years did not Talbot see his son ;  
And now they meet where both their lives are done.

YORK. Alas ! what joy shall noble Talbot have,  
To bid his young son welcome to his grave ?  
Away ! vexation almost stops my breath,  
That sunder'd friends greet in the hour of death.  
Lucy, farewell : no more my fortune can,  
But curse the cause I cannot aid the man.  
Maine, Blois, Poitiers, and Tours, are won away,  
'Long all of Somerset, and his delay.

[*Exit.*

LUCY. Thus while the vulture of sedition  
Feeds in the bosom of such great commanders,  
Sleeping neglect doth betray to loss  
The conquest of our scarce-cold conqueror,  
That ever-living man of memory,  
Henry the fifth :—Whiles they each other cross,  
Lives, honours, lands, and all, hurry to loss.

[*Exit.*

SCENE IV.—*Other plains of Gascony.*

*Enter SOMERSET, with his Forces; an Officer of TALBOT :  
with him.*

SOM. It is too late; I cannot send them now:  
This expedition was by York and Talbot  
Too rashly plotted; all our general force  
Might with a sally of the very town  
Be buckled with: the over-daring Talbot  
Hath sullied all his gloss of former honour,  
By this unheedful, desperate, wild adventure:  
York set him on to fight, and die in shame,  
That, Talbot dead, great York might bear the name.

OFF. Here is sir William Lucy, who with me  
Set from our o'ermatch'd forces forth for aid.

*Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY.*

SOM. How now? sir William, whither were you sent?

LUCY. Whither, my lord? from bought and sold lord  
Talbot;

Who, ring'd about with bold adversity,  
Cries out for noble York and Somerset,  
To beat assailing death from his weak legions.  
And whiles the honourable captain there  
Drops bloody sweat from his war-wearied limbs.  
And, in advantage ling'ring, looks for rescue,  
You, his false hopes, the trust of England's honour,  
Keep off aloof with worthless emulation.  
Let not your private discord keep away  
The levied succours that should lend him aid,  
While he, renowned noble gentleman,  
Yields up his life unto a world of odds:  
Orleans the Bastard, Charles, Burgundy,  
Alençon, Reignier, compass him about,  
And Talbot perisheth by your default.

SOM. York set him on, York should have sent him aid.

LUCY. And York as fast upon your grace exclaims;

Swearing that you withhold his levied host,  
Collected for this expedition.

SOM. York lies; he might have sent and had the horse;  
I owe him little duty and less love;  
And take foul scorn to fawn on him by sending.

LUCY. The fraud of England, not the force of France,  
Hath now entrapp'd the noble-minded Talbot:  
Never to England shall he bear his life;  
But dies, betray'd to fortune by your strife.

SOM. Come, go; I will despatch the horsemen straight:  
Within six hours they will be at his aid.

LUCY. Too late comes rescue; he is ta'en, or slain:  
For fly he could not, if he would have fled;  
And fly would Talbot never, though he might.

SOM. If he be dead, brave Talbot then adieu!

LUCY. His fame lives in the world, his shame in you.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE V.—*The English Camp near Bourdeaux*

*Enter TALBOT and JOHN his Son.*

TAL. O young John Talbot! I did send for thee,  
To tutor thee in stratagems of war;  
That Talbot's name might be in thee reviv'd,  
When sapless age, and weak unable limbs,  
Should bring thy father to his drooping chair.  
But,—O malignant and ill-boding stars!—  
Now thou art come unto a feast of death,  
A terrible and unavoided danger:  
Therefore, dear boy, mount on my swiftest horse;  
And I'll direct thee how thou shalt escape  
By sudden flight: come, dally not, begone.

JOHN. Is my name Talbot? and am I your son?  
And shall I fly? O, if you love my mother,  
Dishonour not her honourable name,  
To make a bastard and a slave of me:  
The world will say,—He is not Talbot's blood,  
That basely fled, when noble Talbot stood.

TAL. Fly, to revenge my death, if I be slain.

JOHN. He that flies so will ne'er return again.

TAL. If we both stay, we both are sure to die.

JOHN. Then let me stay; and, father, do you fly:  
Your loss is great, so your regard should be;  
My worth unknown, no loss is known in me.  
Upon my death the French can little boast;  
In yours they will, in you all hopes are lost.  
Flight cannot stain the honour you have won;  
But mine it will, that no exploit have done:  
You fled for vantage, every one will swear;  
But, if I bow, they'll say it was for fear.  
There is no hope that ever I will stay,  
If the first hour I shrink, and run away.  
Here, on my knee, I beg mortality,  
Rather than life preserv'd with infamy.

TAL. Shall all thy mother's hopes lie in one tomb?

JOHN. Ay, rather than I'll shame my mother's womb.

TAL. Upon my blessing I command thee go.

JOHN. To fight I will, but not to fly the foe.

TAL. Part of thy father may be sav'd in thee.

JOHN. No part of him but will be shame in me.

TAL. Thou never hadst renown, nor canst not lose it.

JOHN. Yes, your renowned name: Shall flight abuse it?

TAL. Thy father's charge shall clear thee from that stain.

JOHN. You cannot witness for me, being slain.

If death be so apparent, then both fly.

TAL. And leave my followers here, to fight and die?  
My age was never tainted with such shame.

JOHN. And shall my youth be guilty of such blame?  
No more can I be sever'd from your side,  
Than can yourself yourself in twain divide:  
Stay, go, do what you will, the like do I;  
For live I will not if my father die.

TAL. Then here I take my leave of thee, fair son,  
Born to eclipse thy life this afternoon.  
Come, side by side together live and die;  
And soul with soul from France to heaven fly. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE VI.—*A Field of Battle.*

*Alarum: Excursions, wherein TALBOT's Son is hemmed about, and TALBOT rescues him.*

TAL. Saint George and victory! fight, soldiers, fight:  
The regent hath with Talbot broke his word,  
And left us to the rage of France his sword.  
Where is John Talbot?—pause, and take thy breath;  
I gave thee life, and rescued thee from death.

JOHN. O twice my father! twice am I thy son:  
The life thou gav'st me first was lost and done;  
Till with thy warlike sword, despite of fate,  
To my determin'd time thou gav'st new date.

TAL. When from the dauphin's crest thy sword struck fire,  
It warm'd thy father's heart with proud desire  
Of bold-fac'd victory. Then leaden age,  
Quicken'd with youthful spleen and warlike rage,  
Beat down Alençon, Orleans, Burgundy,  
And from the pride of Gallia rescued thee.  
The ireful bastard Orleans—that drew blood  
From thee, my boy; and had the maidenhood  
Of thy first fight—I soon encountered;  
And, interchanging blows, I quickly shed  
Some of his bastard blood; and, in disgrace,  
Bespoke him thus: "Contaminated, base,  
And misbegotten blood I spill of thine,  
Mean and right poor; for that pure blood of mine,  
Which thou didst force from Talbot, my brave boy;"—  
Here, purposing the Bastard to destroy,  
Came in strong rescue. Speak, thy father's care;  
Art thou not weary, John? How didst thou fare?  
Wilt thou yet leave the battle, boy, and fly,  
Now thou art seal'd the son of chivalry?  
Fly, to revenge my death, when I am dead;  
The help of one stands me in little stead.  
O, too much folly is it, well I wot,  
To hazard all our lives in one small boat.  
If I to-day die not with Frenchmen's rage,  
To-morrow I shall die with mickle age:



By me they nothing gain an if I stay,  
'T is but the short'ning of my life one day:  
In thee thy mother dies, our household's name,  
My death's revenge, thy youth, and England's fame:  
All these, and more, we hazard by thy stay;  
All these are sav'd if thou wilt fly away.

JOHN. The sword of Orleans hath not made me smart;  
These words of yours draw life-blood from my heart;  
On that advantage, bought with such a shame,  
(To save a paltry life, and slay bright fame,)  
Before young Talbot from old Talbot fly,  
The coward horse that bears me fall and die:  
And like me to the peasant boys of France;  
To be shame's scorn, and subject of mischance.  
Surely, by all the glory you have won,  
An if I fly I am not Talbot's son:  
Then talk no more of flight, it is no boot;  
If son to Talbot, die at Talbot's foot.

TAL. Then follow thou thy desperate sire of Crete,  
Thou Icarus; thy life to me is sweet:  
If thou wilt fight, fight by thy father's side;  
And, commendable prov'd, let's die in pride. [Exeunt.

SCENE VII.—*Another Part of the same.*

*Alarum: Excursions. Enter TALBOT wounded, supported by a Servant.*

TAL. Where is my other life?—mine own is gone;—  
O, where's young Talbot? where is valiant John?  
'Triumphant death, smear'd with captivity,  
Young Talbot's valour makes me smile at thee.  
When he perceiv'd me shrink, and on my knee,  
His bloody sword he brandish'd over me,  
And, like a hungry lion, did commence  
Rough deeds of rage and stern impatience;  
But when my angry guardant stood alone,  
Tend'ring my ruin, and assail'd of none,  
Dizzy-ey'd fury, and great rage of heart,  
Suddenly made him from my side to start

Into the clust'ring battle of the French:  
And in that sea of blood my boy did drench  
His over-mounting spirit; and there died  
My Icarus, my blossom, in his pride.

*Enter Soldiers, bearing the body of JOHN TALBOT.*

SERV. O my dear lord! lo, where your son is borne!

TAL. Thou antic death, which laugh'st us here to scorn,  
Anon, from thy insulting tyranny,  
Coupled in bonds of perpetuity,  
Two Talbots, winged through the lither sky,  
In thy despite shall 'scape mortality.  
O thou, whose wounds become hard-favour'd death,  
Speak to thy father, ere thou yield thy breath:  
Brave death by speaking, whether he will or no;  
Imagine him a Frenchman, and thy foe.  
Poor boy! he smiles, methinks; as who should say,  
Had death been French, then death had died to-day.  
Come, come, and lay him in his father's arms;  
My spirit can no longer bear these harms.  
Soldiers, adieu! I have what I would have,  
Now my old arms are young John Talbot's grave. [Dies.

*Alarums. Exeunt Soldiers and Servant, leaving the two bodies. Enter CHARLES, ALENÇON, BURGUNDY, BASTARD, LA PUCELLE, and Forces.*

CHAR. Had York and Somerset brought rescue in,  
We should have found a bloody day of this.

BAST. How the young whelp of Talbot's, raging wood,  
Did flesh his puny sword in Frenchmen's blood!

PUC. Once I encounter'd him, and thus I said,—  
"Thou maiden youth, be vanquish'd by a maid:"  
But, with a proud, majestical high scorn,  
He answer'd thus: "Young Talbot was not born  
To be the pillage of a giglot wench:"  
So, rushing in the bowels of the French,  
He left me proudly, as unworthy fight.

BUR. Doubtless he would have made a noble knight;  
See, where he lies inhered in the arms  
Of the most bloody nurser of his harms.

BAST. Hew them to pieces, hack their bones asunder;  
Whose life was England's glory, Gallia's wonder.

CHAR. O, no; forbear: for that which we have fled  
During the life, let us not wrong it dead.

*Enter SIR WILLIAM LUCY, attended; a French Herald  
preceding.*

LUCY. Herald, conduct me to the dauphin's tent;  
To know who hath obtain'd the glory of the day.

CHAR. On what submissive message art thou sent?

LUCY. Submission, dauphin! 't is a mere French word;  
We English warriors wot not what it means.  
I come to know what prisoners thou hast ta'en,  
And to survey the bodies of the dead.

CHAR. For prisoners ask'st thou? hell our prison is.  
But tell me whom thou seek'st.

LUCY. But where's the great Alcides of the field,  
Valiant lord Talbot, earl of Shrewsbury?  
Created, for his rare success in arms,  
Great earl of Washford, Waterford, and Valence;  
Lord Talbot of Goodrig and Urchinfield,  
Lord Strange of Blackmere, lord Verdun of Alton,  
Lord Cromwell of Wingfield, lord Furnival of Sheffield,  
The thrice-victorious lord of Falconbridge;  
Knight of the noble order of saint George,  
Worthy saint Michael, and the golden fleece;  
Great mareshal to Henry the sixth,  
Of all his wars within the realm of France?

PUC. Here is a silly stately style indeed!  
The Turk, that two-and-fifty kingdoms hath,  
Writes not so tedious a style as this.  
Him, that thou magnifiest with all these titles,  
Stinking, and fly-blown, lies here at our feet.

LUCY. Is Talbot slain? the Frenchman's only scourge,  
Your kingdom's terror and black Nemesis?  
O, were mine eyeballs into bullets turn'd,  
That I, in rage, might shoot them at your faces!  
O, that I could but call these dead to life!  
It were enough to fright the realm of France:  
Were but his picture left among you here,

It would amaze the proudest of you all.  
Give me their bodies; that I may bear them hence,  
And give them burial as beseems their worth.

PUC. I think this upstart is old Talbot's ghost,  
He speaks with such a proud commanding spirit.  
For God's sake, let him have 'em; to keep them here,  
They would but stink and putrefy the air.

CHAR. Go, take their bodies hence.

LUCY. I'll bear them hence:  
But from their ashes shall be rear'd  
A phoenix that shall make all France afraid.

CHAR. So we be rid of them do with 'em what thou wilt.  
And now to Paris, in this conquering vein;  
All will be ours, now bloody Talbot's slain. [*Exeunt.*

---

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, GLOSTER, and EXETER.

K. HEN. Have you perus'd the letters from the pope,  
The emperor, and the earl of Armagnac?

GLO. I have, my lord; and their intent is this,—  
They humbly sue unto your excellence,  
To have a godly peace concluded of  
Between the realms of England and of France.

K. HEN. How doth your grace affect their motion?

GLO. Well, my good lord; and as the only means  
To stop effusion of our Christian blood,  
And 'stablish quietness on every side.

K. HEN. Ay, marry, uncle; for I always thought  
It was both impious and unnatural  
That such immanity and bloody strife  
Should reign among professors of one faith.

GLO. Beside, my lord,—the sooner to effect,

And surer bind, this knot of amity,—  
The earl of Armagnac—near knit to Charles,  
A man of great authority in France—  
Proffers his only daughter to your grace  
In marriage, with a large and sumptuous dowry.

K. HEN. Marriage, uncle! alas! my years are young;  
And fitter is my study and my books  
Than wanton dalliance with a paramour.  
Yet, call the ambassadors; and, as you please,  
So let them have their answers every one:  
I shall be well content with any choice  
Tends to God's glory, and my country's weal.

*Enter a Legate, and two Ambassadors, with WINCHESTER in a Cardinal's habit.*

EXE. What! is my lord of Winchester install'd,  
And call'd unto a cardinal's degree?  
Then, I perceive, that will be verified,  
Henry the fifth did sometime prophesy,—  
“If once he come to be a cardinal,  
“He 'll make his cap co-equal with the crown.”

K. HEN. My lords ambassadors, your several suits  
Have been consider'd and debated on.  
Your purpose is both good and reasonable:  
And, therefore, are we certainly resolv'd  
To draw conditions of a friendly peace;  
Which, by my lord of Winchester, we mean  
Shall be transported presently to France.

GLO. And for the proffer of my lord your master,—  
I have inform'd his highness so at large,  
As—liking of the lady's virtuous gifts,  
Her beauty, and the value of her dower,—  
He doth intend she shall be England's queen.

K. HEN. In argument and proof of which contract,  
Bear her this jewel [*to the Amb.*], pledge of my affection.  
And so, my lord protector, see them guarded,  
And safely brought to Dover; where, inshipp'd,  
Commit them to the fortune of the sea.

*[Exeunt K. HENRY and Train, GLOSTER, EXETER,  
and Ambassadors.]*

WIN. Stay, my lord legate; you shall first receive  
The sum of money which I promised  
Should be deliver'd to his holiness  
For clothing me in these grave ornaments.

LEG. I will attend upon your lordship's leisure.

WIN. Now, Winchester will not submit, I trow,  
Or be inferior to the proudest peer.

Humphrey of Gloster, thou shalt well perceive,  
That, neither in birth, or for authority,  
The bishop will be overborne by thee:

I'll either make thee stoop and bend thy knee,  
Or sack this country with a mutiny.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—France. *Plains in Anjou.*

*Enter CHARLES, BURGUNDY, ALENÇON, LA PUCELLE, and  
Forces, marching.*

CHAR. These news, my lords, may cheer our drooping  
spirits:

'T is said the stout Parisians do revolt,  
And turn again unto the warlike French.

ALEN. Then march to Paris, royal Charles of France,  
And keep not back your powers in dalliance.

PUC. Peace be amongst them if they turn to us,  
Else, ruin combat with their palaces!

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. Success unto our valiant general,  
And happiness to his accomplices!

CHAR. What tidings send our scouts? I prithee speak.

MESS. The English army, that divided was  
Into two parties, is now conjoin'd in one;  
And means to give you battle presently.

CHAR. Somewhat too sudden, sirs, the warning is;  
But we will presently provide for them.

BUR. I trust the ghost of Talbot is not there;  
Now he is gone, my lord, you need not fear.

PUC. Of all base passions, fear is most accurs'd:—  
Command the conquest, Charles, it shall be thine;  
Let Henry fret, and all the world repine.

CHAR. Then on, my lords; and France be fortunate!

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*The same. Before Angiers.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter LA PUCELLE.*

PUC. The regent conquers, and the Frenchmen fly.  
Now, help, ye charming spells, and periapts;  
And ye choice spirits that admonish me,  
And give me signs of future accidents! [Thunder.  
You speedy helpers, that are substitutes  
Under the lordly monarch of the north,  
Appear, and aid me in this enterprise!

*Enter Fiends.*

This speedy and quick appearance argues proof  
Of your accustom'd diligence to me.

Now, ye familiar spirits, that are cull'd  
Out of the powerful regions under earth,  
Help me this once, that France may get the field.

[*They walk about and speak not.*]

O, hold me not with silence over-long!  
Where I was wont to feed you with my blood,  
I'll lop a member off, and give it you,  
In earnest of a further benefit;  
So you do condescend to help me now.—

[*They hang their heads.*]

No hope to have redress?—My body shall  
Pay recompense, if you will grant my suit.

[*They shake their heads.*]

Cannot my body, nor blood-sacrifice,  
Entreat you to your wonted furtherance?  
Then take my soul; my body, soul, and all,  
Before that England give the French the foil. [*They depart.*  
See! they forsake me. Now the time is come  
That France must veil her lofty-plumed crest,  
And let her head fall into England's lap.  
My ancient incantations are too weak,

And hell too strong for me to buckle with:  
Now, France, thy glory droopeth to the dust.

[*Exit.*]

*Alarums. Enter French and English, fighting. LA PUCELLE and YORK fight hand to hand. LA PUCELLE is taken. The French fly.*

YORK. Damsel of France, I think I have you fast:  
Unchain your spirits now with spelling charms,  
And try if they can gain your liberty.  
A goodly prize, fit for the devil's grace!  
See, how the ugly witch doth bend her brows,  
As if, with Circe, she would change my shape.

PUC. Chang'd to a worser shape thou canst not be.

YORK. O, Charles the dauphin is a proper man;  
No shape but his can please your dainty eye.

PUC. A plaguing mischief light on Charles, and thee!  
And may ye both be suddenly surpris'd  
By bloody hands, in sleeping on your beds!

YORK. Fell, banning hag! enchantress, hold thy tongue.

PUC. I prithee, give me leave to curse a while.

YORK. Curse, miscreant, when thou comest to the stake.

[*Exeunt.*]

*Alarums. Enter SUFFOLK, leading in LADY MARGARET.*

SUF. Be what thou wilt, thou art my prisoner.

[*Gazes on her.*]

O fairest beauty, do not fear, nor fly;  
For I will touch thee but with reverent hands.  
I kiss these fingers [*kissing her hand*] for eternal peace,  
And lay them gently on thy tender side.  
Who art thou? say, that I may honour thee.

MAR. Margaret my name, and daughter to a king,  
The king of Naples; whosoe'er thou art.

SUF. An earl I am, and Suffolk am I call'd.  
Be not offended, nature's miracle,  
Thou art allotted to be ta'en by me:  
So doth the swan her downy cygnets save,  
Keeping them prisoner underneath her wings.



Yet if this servile usage once offend,  
Go, and be free again, as Suffolk's friend.

*[She turns away as going.]*

O, stay!—I have no power to let her pass;  
My hand would free her, but my heart says—no.  
As plays the sun upon the glassy streams,  
Twinkling another counterfeited beam,  
So seems this gorgeous beauty to mine eyes.  
Fain would I woo her, yet I dare not speak:  
I'll call for pen and ink, and write my mind:  
Fie, De la Poole! disable not thyself;  
Hast not a tongue? is she not here thy prisoner?  
Wilt thou be daunted at a woman's sight?  
Ay; beauty's princely majesty is such,  
Confounds the tongue, and makes the senses rough.

MAR. Say, earl of Suffolk, if thy name be so,  
What ransom must I pay before I pass?  
For I perceive I am thy prisoner.

SUF. How canst thou tell, she will deny thy suit,  
Before thou make a trial of her love? *[Aside.]*

MAR. Why speak'st thou not? what ransom must I pay?

SUF. She's beautiful; and therefore to be woo'd:  
She is a woman; therefore to be won. *[Aside.]*

MAR. Wilt thou accept of ransom, yea, or no?

SUF. Fond man! remember that thou hast a wife;  
Then how can Margaret be thy paramour? *[Aside.]*

MAR. I were best to leave him, for he will not hear.

SUF. There all is marr'd; there lies a cooling card.

MAR. He talks at random; sure, the man is mad.

SUF. And yet a dispensation may be had.

MAR. And yet I would that you would answer me.

SUF. I'll win this lady Margaret. For whom?  
Why, for my king: Tush! that's a wooden thing.

MAR. He talks of wood: it is some carpenter.

SUF. Yet so my fancy may be satisfied,  
And peace established between these realms.  
But there remains a scruple in that too:  
For though her father be the king of Naples,  
Duke of Anjou and Maine, yet is he poor,  
And our nobility will scorn the match. *[Aside.]*

MAR. Hear ye, captain? Are you not at leisure?

SUF. It shall be so, disdain they ne'er so much:  
Henry is youthful, and will quickly yield.  
Madam, I have a secret to reveal.

MAR. What though I be enthrall'd? he seems a knight,  
And will not any way dishonour me. [Aside.

SUF. Lady, vouchsafe to listen what I say.

MAR. Perhaps I shall be rescued by the French;  
And then I need not crave his courtesy. [Aside.

SUF. Sweet madam, give me hearing in a cause——

MAR. Tush! women have been captivate ere now. [Aside.

SUF. Lady, wherefore talk you so?

MAR. I cry you mercy, 't is but *quid* for *quo*.

SUF. Say, gentle princess, would you not suppose  
Your bondage happy, to be made a queen?

MAR. To be a queen in bondage is more vile  
Than is a slave in base servility:  
For princes should be free.

SUF. And so shall you,  
If happy England's royal king be free.

MAR. Why, what concerns his freedom unto me!

SUF. I'll undertake to make thee Henry's queen;  
To put a golden sceptre in thy hand,  
And set a precious crown upon thy head,  
If thou wilt condescend to be my——

MAR. What?

SUF. His love.

MAR. I am unworthy to be Henry's wife.

SUF. No, gentle madam; I unworthy am  
To woo so fair a dame to be his wife,  
And have no portion in the choice myself.  
How say you, madam; are you so content?

MAR. An if my father please, I am content.

SUF. Then call our captains, and our colours, forth:  
And, madam, at your father's castle walls  
We'll crave a parley, to confer with him.

[Troops come forward.

*A parley sounded. Enter REIGNIER, on the walls.*

SUF. See, Reignier, see, thy daughter prisoner.

REIG. To whom?

SUF. To me.

REIG. Suffolk, what remedy?

I am a soldier; and unapt to weep,  
Or to exclaim on fortune's fickleness.

SUF. Yes, there is remedy enough, my lord:  
Consent (and for thy honour, give consent),  
Thy daughter shall be wedded to my king;  
Whom I with pain have woo'd and won thereto;  
And this her easy-held imprisonment  
Hath gain'd thy daughter princely liberty.

REIG. Speaks Suffolk as he thinks?

SUF. Fair Margaret knows  
That Suffolk doth not flatter, face, or feign.

REIG. Upon thy princely warrant, I descend,  
To give thee answer of thy just demand.

*[Exit from the walls.]*

SUF. And here I will expect thy coming.

*Trumpets sounded. Enter REIGNIER, below.*

REIG. Welcome, brave earl, into our territories;  
Command in Anjou what your honour pleases.

SUF. Thanks, Reignier, happy for so sweet a child,  
Fit to be made companion with a king:  
What answer makes your grace unto my suit?

REIG. Since thou dost deign to woo her little worth,  
To be the princely bride of such a lord;  
Upon condition I may quietly  
Enjoy mine own, the county Maine, and Anjou,  
Free from oppression, or the stroke of war,  
My daughter shall be Henry's, if he please.

SUF. That is her ransom, I deliver her;  
And those two counties, I will undertake,  
Your grace shall well and quietly enjoy.

REIG. And I again, in Henry's royal name,  
As deputy unto that gracious king,  
Give thee her hand, for sign of plighted faith

SUF. Reignier of France, I give thee kingly thanks,  
Because this is in traffic of a king:  
And yet, methinks, I could be well content

To be mine own attorney in this case.

[*Aside.*

I'll over then to England with this news,  
And make this marriage to be solemniz'd;  
So, farewell, Reignier! set this diamond safe  
In golden palaces, as it becomes.

REIG. I do embrace thee, as I would embrace  
The Christian prince, king Henry, were he here.

MAR. Farewell, my lord! Good wishes, praise, and prayers,  
Shall Suffolk ever have of Margaret. [*Going.*

SUF. Farewell, sweet madam! But hark you, Margaret;  
No princely commendations to my king?

MAR. Such commendations as become a maid,  
A virgin, and his servant, say to him.

SUF. Words sweetly plac'd, and modestly directed.  
But, madam, I must trouble you again,—  
No loving token to his majesty?

MAR. Yes, my good lord; a pure unspotted heart,  
Never yet taint with love, I send the king.

SUF. And this withal.

[*Kisses her.*

MAR. That for thyself; I will not so presume,  
To send such peevish tokens to a king.

[*Exeunt REIGNIER and MARGARET.*

SUF. O, wert thou for myself!—But, Suffolk, stay;  
Thou mayst not wander in that labyrinth;  
There Minotaurs, and ugly treasons, lurk.  
Solicit Henry with her wondrous praise:  
Bethink thee on her virtues that surmount:  
Mad, natural graces that extinguish art;  
Repeat their semblance often on the seas,  
That, when thou com'st to kneel at Henry's feet,  
Thou mayst bereave him of his wits with wonder. [*Exit.*

SCENE IV.—*Camp of the Duke of York, in Anjou.*

*Enter YORK, WARWICK, and others.*

YORK. Bring forth that sorceress, condemn'd to burn.

*Enter LA PUCELLE, guarded, and a Shepherd*

SHEP. Ah, Joan! this kills thy father's heart outright!  
Have I sought every country far and near,

And, now it is my chance to find thee out,  
Must I behold thy timeless cruel death?  
Ah, Joan, sweet daughter Joan, I'll die with thee!

PUC. Decrepit miser; base ignoble wretch;  
I am descended of a gentler blood;  
Thou art no father, nor no friend, of mine.

SHEP. Out, out!—My lords, an please you, 't is not so;  
I did beget her all the parish knows:  
Her mother liveth yet, can testify  
She was the first fruit of my bachelorship.

WAR. Graceless! wilt thou deny thy parentage?

YORK. This argues what her kind of life hath been;  
Wicked and vile; and so her death concludes.

SHEP. Fie, Joan! that thou wilt be so obstacle!  
God knows thou art a collop of my flesh;  
And for thy sake have I shed many a tear:  
Deny me not, I prithee, gentle Joan.

PUC. Peasant, avaunt!—You have suborn'd this man,  
Of purpose to obscure my noble birth.

SHEP. 'T is true, I gave a noble to the priest,  
The morn that I was wedded to her mother.  
Kneel down and take my blessing, good my girl.  
Wilt thou not stoop? Now cursed be the time  
Of thy nativity! I would, the milk  
Thy mother gave thee, when thou suck'dst her breast,  
Had been a little ratsbane for thy sake!  
Or else, when thou didst keep my lambs a-field,  
I wish some ravenous wolf had eaten thee!  
Dost thou deny thy father, cursed drab?  
O, burn her, burn her; hanging is too good. [Exit.

YORK. Take her away; for she hath liv'd too long,  
To fill the world with vicious qualities.

PUC. First, let me tell you whom you have condemn'd:  
Not me begotten of a shepherd swain,  
But issued from the progeny of kings;  
Virtuous, and holy; chosen from above,  
By inspiration of celestial grace,  
To work exceeding miracles on earth.  
I never had to do with wicked spirits:  
But you,—that are polluted with your lusts,

Stain'd with the guiltless blood of innocents,  
Corrupt and tainted with a thousand vices,—  
Because you want the grace that others have,  
You judge it straight a thing impossible  
To compass wonders, but by help of devils.  
No, misconceived! Joan of Arc hath been  
A virgin from her tender infancy,  
Chaste and immaculate in every thought;  
Whose maiden blood, thus rigorously effus'd,  
Will cry for vengeance at the gates of heaven.

YORK. Ay, ay;—away with her to execution.

WAR. And hark ye, sirs; because she is a maid,  
Spare for no fagots, let there be enow;  
Place barrels of pitch upon the fatal stake,  
That so her torture may be shortened.

PUC. Will nothing turn your unrelenting hearts?  
Then, Joan, discover thine infirmity;  
That warranteth by law to be thy privilege.  
I am with child, ye bloody homicides:  
Murder not then the fruit within my womb,  
Although ye hale me to a violent death.

YORK. Now Heaven forefend! the holy maid with child?

WAR. The greatest miracle that e'er ye wrought:  
Is all your strict preciseness come to this?

YORK. She and the dauphin have been juggling:  
I did imagine what would be her refuge.

WAR. Well, go to; we will have no bastards live;  
Especially, since Charles must father it.

PUC. You are deceiv'd; my child is none of his;  
It was Alençon that enjoy'd my love.

YORK. Alençon! that notorious Machiavel!  
It dies, an if it had a thousand lives.

PUC. O, give me leave, I have deluded you;  
'T was neither Charles nor yet the duke I nam'd,  
But Reignier, king of Naples, that prevail'd.

WAR. A married man! that's most intolerable.

YORK. Why, here's a girl! I think she knows not well,  
There were so many, whom she may accuse.

WAR. It's sign she hath been liberal and free.

YORK. And yet, forsooth, she is a virgin pure.

Strumpet, thy words condemn thy brat, and thee:  
Use no entreaty, for it is in vain.

PUC. Then lead me hence;—with whom I leave my curse:  
May never glorious sun reflex his beams  
Upon the country where you make abode!  
But darkness and the gloomy shade of death  
Environ you: till mischief, and despair,  
Drive you to break your necks, or hang yourselves!  
[*Exit, guarded.*]

YORK. Break thou in pieces, and consume to ashes,  
Thou foul accursed minister of hell!

*Enter* CARDINAL BEAUFORT, *attended.*

CAR. Lord regent, I do greet your excellence  
With letters of commission from the king.  
For know, my lords, the states of Christendom,  
Mov'd with remorse of these outrageous broils,  
Have earnestly implor'd a general peace  
Betwixt our nation and the aspiring French;  
And here at hand the dauphin, and his train,  
Approacheth to confer about some matter.

YORK. Is all our travail turn'd to this effect?  
After the slaughter of so many peers,  
So many captains, gentlemen, and soldiers,  
That in this quarrel have been overthrown,  
And sold their bodies for their country's benefit,  
Shall we at last conclude effeminate peace?  
Have we not lost most part of all the towns,  
By treason, falsehood, and by treachery,  
Our great progenitors had conquered?  
O, Warwick, Warwick! I foresee with grief  
The utter loss of all the realm of France.

WAR. Be patient, York: if we conclude a peace,  
It shall be with such strict and severe covenants  
As little shall the Frenchmen gain thereby.

*Enter* CHARLES, *attended*: ALENÇON, BASTARD, REIGNIER,  
*and others.*

CHAR. Since, lords of England, it is thus agreed  
That peaceful truce shall be proclaim'd in France,

We come to be informed by yourselves  
What the conditions of that league must be.

YORK. Speak, Winchester; for boiling choler chokes  
The hollow passage of my prison'd voice,  
By sight of these our baleful enemies.

WIN. Charles, and the rest, it is enacted thus:  
That, in regard king Henry gives consent,  
Of mere compassion and of lenity,  
To ease your country of distressful war,  
And suffer you to breathe in fruitful peace,  
You shall become true liegemen to his crown:  
And, Charles, upon condition thou wilt swear  
To pay him tribute, and submit thyself,  
Thou shalt be plac'd as viceroy under him,  
And still enjoy thy regal dignity.

ALAN. Must he be then a shadow of himself?  
Adorn his temples with a coronet;  
And yet in substance and authority,  
Retain but privilege of a private man?  
This proffer is absurd and reasonless.

CHAR. 'T is known already that I am possess'd  
With more than half the Gallian territories,  
And therein reverenc'd for their lawful king:  
Shall I, for lucre of the rest unvanquish'd,  
Detract so much from that prerogative,  
As to be call'd but viceroy of the whole?  
No, lord ambassador; I'll rather keep  
That which I have, than, coveting for more,  
Be cast from possibility of all.

YORK. Insulting Charles! hast thou by secret means  
Used intercession to obtain a league;  
And, now the matter grows to compromise,  
Stand'st thou aloof upon comparison?  
Either accept the title thou usurp'st,  
Of benefit proceeding from our king,  
And not of any challenge of desert,  
Or we will plague thee with incessant wars.

REIG. My lord, you do not well in obstinacy  
To cavil in the course of this contract:  
If once it be neglected, ten to one,



We shall not find like opportunity.

ALAN. To say the truth, it is your policy,  
To save your subjects from such massacre,  
And ruthless slaughters, as are daily seen  
By our proceeding in hostility;  
And therefore take this compact of a truce,  
Although you break it when your pleasure serves.

[*Aside to CHARLES.*

WAR. How say'st thou, Charles? shall our condition  
stand?

CHAR. It shall:

Only reserv'd, you claim no interest  
In any of our towns of garrison.

YORK. Then swear allegiance to his majesty;  
As thou art knight, never to disobey,  
Nor be rebellious to the crown of England,  
Thou, nor thy nobles, to the crown of England.—

[*CHARLES, and the rest, give tokens of fealty.*

So, now dismiss your army when ye please;  
Hang up your ensigns, let your drums be still,  
For here we entertain a solemn peace.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE V.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter KING HENRY, in conference with SUFFOLK;  
GLOSTER and EXETER following.*

K. HEN. Your wondrous rare description, noble earl,  
Of beauteous Margaret hath astonish'd me:  
Her virtues, graced with external gifts,  
Do breed love's settled passions in my heart:  
And like as rigour of tempestuous gusts  
Provokes the mightiest hulk against the tide,  
So am I driven, by breath of her renown,  
Either to suffer shipwrack, or arrive  
Where I may have fruition of her love.

SUF. Tush! my good lord! this superficial tale  
Is but a preface of her worthy praise:  
The chief perfections of that lovely dame  
(Had I sufficient skill to utter them)  
Would make a volume of enticing lines,

Able to ravish any dull conceit.  
And, which is more, she is not so divine,  
So full replete with choice of all delights,  
But, with as humble lowliness of mind,  
She is content to be at your command;  
Command, I mean, of virtuous chaste intents,  
To love and honour Henry as her lord.

K. HEN. And otherwise will Henry ne'er presume  
Therefore, my lord protector, give consent  
That Margaret may be England's royal queen.

GLO. So should I give consent to flatter sin.  
You know, my lord, your highness is betroth'd  
Unto another lady of esteem;  
How shall we then dispense with that contract,  
And not deface your honour with reproach?

SUF. As doth a ruler with unlawful oaths;  
Or one that, at a triumph having vow'd  
To try his strength, forsaketh yet the lists  
By reason of his adversary's odds:  
A poor earl's daughter is unequal odds,  
And therefore may be broke without offence.

GLO. Why, what, I pray, is Margaret more than that?  
Her father is no better than an earl,  
Although in glorious titles he excel.

SUF. Yes, my lord, her father is a king,  
The king of Naples and Jerusalem;  
And of such great authority in France,  
As his alliance will confirm our peace,  
And keep the Frenchmen in allegiance.

GLO. And so the earl of Armagnac may do,  
Because he is near kinsman unto Charles.

EXE. Beside, his wealth doth warrant a liberal dower,  
Where Reignier sooner will receive than give.

SUF. A dower, my lords! disgrace not so your king,  
That he should be so abject, base, and poor,  
To choose for wealth, and not for perfect love.  
Henry is able to enrich his queen,  
And not to seek a queen to make him rich:  
So worthless peasants bargain for their wives,  
As market-men for oxen, sheep, or horse.

Marriage is a matter of more worth  
Than to be dealt in by attorneyship;  
Not whom we will, but whom his grace affects,  
Must be companion of his nuptial bed:  
And therefore, lords, since he affects her most,  
It most of all these reasons bindeth us,  
In our opinions she should be preferr'd.  
For what is wedlock forced but a hell,  
An age of discord and continual strife?  
Whereas the contrary bringeth forth bliss,  
And is a pattern of celestial peace.  
Whom should we match with Henry, being a king,  
But Margaret, that is daughter to a king?  
Her peerless feature, joined with her birth,  
Approves her fit for none but for a king:  
Her valiant courage, and undaunted spirit,  
(More than in women commonly is seen,)  
Will answer our hope in issue of a king;  
For Henry, son unto a conqueror,  
Is likely to beget more conquerors,  
If with a lady of so high resolve  
As is fair Margaret he be link'd in love.  
Then yield, my lords; and here conclude with me,  
That Margaret shall be queen, and none but she.

K. HEN. Whether it be through force of your report,  
My noble lord of Suffolk; or for that  
My tender youth was never yet attaint  
With any passion of inflaming love,  
I cannot tell; but this I am assur'd,  
I feel such sharp dissension in my breast,  
Such fierce alarums both of hope and fear,  
As I am sick with working of my thoughts.  
Take, therefore, shipping, post, my lord, to France;  
Agree to any covenants; and procure  
That lady Margaret do vouchsafe to come  
To cross the seas to England, and be crown'd  
King Henry's faithful and anointed queen:  
For your expenses and sufficient charge,  
Among the people gather up a tenth.  
Be gone, I say; for, till you do return,

I rest perplexed with a thousand cares.  
And you, good uncle, banish all offence:  
If you do censure me by what you were,  
Not what you are, I know it will excuse  
This sudden execution of my will.

And so conduct me, where, from company,  
I may revolve and ruminare my grief.

[*Exit.*

GLO. Ay, grief, I fear me, both at first and last.

[*Exeunt GLOSTER and EXETER.*

SUF. Thus Suffolk hath prevail'd: and thus he goes,  
As did the youthful Paris once to Greece;  
With hope to find the like event in love,  
But prosper better than the Trojan did.  
Margaret shall now be queen, and rule the king;  
But I will rule both her, the king and realm.

[*Exit.*

## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

"Than Julius Cæsar, or bright *Cassiope*." (Act I., Sc. 1.)

This is the reading of the MS. Corrector.

Pope suggested (the notion looks like a joke) to fill up the line thus:—

"Than Julius Cæsar, or bright  
*Francis Drake* ;"

and Monck Mason gravely upholds the reading. Johnson would read—

'Than Julius Cæsar, or bright  
*Berenice*."

In the original the line is terminated with four hyphens, thus (- - - -), a point which is several times used in the same play to mark an interrupted speech.

"He being in the *rearward*, plac'd behind,  
With purpose to relieve and follow them." (Act I., Sc. 1.)

The original has *vaward*—the *van*. It is possibly a misprint.

Steevens and Monck Mason explain the passage in the following manner:—"When an army is attacked in the *rear*, the *van* becomes the *rear* in its turn, and of course the *reserve*."

"For I will touch thee but with reverent hands,  
And lay them gently on thy tender side.  
I kiss these fingers for eternal peace." (Act V., Sc. 3.)

Suffolk exhorts Margaret not to fear, or fly.

The original reading continues:

"For I will touch thee but with  
reverent hands.

I kiss these fingers for eternal  
peace,

And lay them gently on thy  
tender side."

Capell suggested the reading which is usually followed; and the transposition of the lines is

Suffolk says—

"Do not fear, nor fly;

For I will touch thee but with  
reverent hands."

He then adds, kissing the lady's  
fingers,—

"I kiss these fingers for eternal  
peace,

And lay them gently on thy  
tender side,"—

accompanying the words by a corresponding action. He takes the

found in the MS. Corrections. Malone says, that by the original reading, "Suffolk is made to kiss his own fingers, a symbol of peace, of which there is, I believe, no example."

lady's hand, but, instead of seizing it as the hand of a prisoner, he replaces it, having kissed it, on her tender side.

"Speak, Winchester, for boiling choler chokes

The hollow passage of my *poison'd* voice." (Act V., Sc. 4.)

The above is the reading of the original.

Pope suggested *prison'd*, which is also found in the MS. corrections. It is a decided emendation.

## GLOSSARY.

A-MORT. Act III., Sc. 2.

"What, all a-mort?"

*A-mort* is dejected, dispirited. See 'Taming of the Shrew.'

APPREHENSION. Act II., Sc. 4.

"To scourge you for this apprehension."

*Apprehension* is opinion—for apprehending it thus.

BALEFUL. Act V., Sc. 4.

"By sight of these our baleful enemies."

*Bale* is grief, trouble, mischief. *Baneful* is now generally used.

BLOOD. Act IV., Sc. 2.

"If we be English deer, be then in blood."

In *blood* was a term of the chace, for the deer in full vigour.

BREAK. Act I., Sc. 3.

"Break up the gates."

To *break up* is to *open*. In the 'Winter's Tale' (Act III. Sc. 2), speaking of a letter, we have "break up the seals and read;" and in Hall's 'Chronicle,' he says the Kentish-men "brake up the gates of the King's Bench and Marshalsea."

**CENSURE.** Act II., Sc. 3, and Act V., Sc. 5.

“To give their censure of these rare reports.”

Act V., Sc. 5.

“If you do censure me by what you were.”

To *censure* is to give an opinion, to judge, though now usually implying to find fault with, to reprove.

**CHEER.** Act I., Sc. 2.

“Methinks your looks are sad, your cheer appall’d.”

*Cheer* is countenance.

**COGNIZANCE.** Act II., Sc. 4.

“As cognizance of my blood-drinking hate.”

*Cognizance* is the badge by which he might be known.

**COLOURS.** Act II., Sc. 4.

“I love no colours; and, without all colour.”

*Colours* is here used ambiguously for *deceit*; as in ‘Love’s Labour’s Lost’ (Act IV., Sc. 2), “I do fear colourable colours.”

**CONSENTED.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“That have consented unto Henry’s death!”

Malone thinks that *consented* is here used in its ordinary sense, as also in the 5th Scene of this Act—

“You all consented unto Salisbury’s death.”

But Steevens, and we think he is right, believes that the word should be spelt *concented*. To *concent* is to be in harmony—to act together. See ‘Henry V.,’ Act I., Sc. 2.

**CONVEYANCE.** Act I., Sc. 3.

“I fear there is conveyance.”

*Conveyance* is a term for theft. In the ‘Merry Wives of Windsor’ (Act I., Sc. 3) we have—“Convey, the wise it call.”

**COURT OF GUARD.** Act II., Sc. 1.

“Let us have knowledge at the court of guard.”

The *court of guard* is the place where a guard is held, in which the guard-room is situated, and not the guard-room itself, as Steevens explains it.

**DISEASE.** Act II., Sc. 5.

“And, in that ease, I’ll tell thee my disease.”

*Disease*, in the sense of uneasiness, un-ease.

**DUE.** Act IV., Sc. 2.

“That I, thy enemy, due thee withal.”

*Due* is to pay as due, to endue.

**ESPIALS.** Act I., Sc. 4.

“The prince’s espials have informed me.”

*Espials* are spies.

**EXEMPT.** Act II., Sc. 4.

“Corrupted, and exempt from ancient gentry?”

*Exempt*, in the sense of excluded.

**EXIGENT.** Act II., Sc. 5.

“As drawing to their exigent.”

*Exigent*, used in the sense of end.

**FANCY.** Act V., Sc. 3.

“Yet so my fancy may be satisfied.”

*Fancy* is here used by Shakspeare, as in several other passages, for love.

**GIGLOT.** Act IV., Sc. 7.

“To be the pillage of a giglot wench.”

*Giglot* is a strumpet or wanton. Shakspeare has used it in this sense in ‘Measure for Measure,’ and in ‘Cymbeline;’ and Chaucer under the form of *gigges*.

**GIMMERS.** Act I., Sc. 2.

“I think, by some odd gimmers or device.

*Gimmer* is used here for some mechanical contrivance. Bishop Hall uses the word in the same sense:—“When I saw my precious watch taken asunder . . . . . so as here lay a wheel, there the balance, here one gimmer, there another; straight my ignorance was ready to think when and how will all these ever piece together again in their former order?”

**GIRD.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“The bishop hath a kindly gird.”

A *kindly gird* is a reproof or reproach given in kindness. In ‘Coriolanus’ (Act I., Sc. 1), we have—

“Being moved, he will not spare to gird the gods.”

**HAUGHTY.** Act III., Sc. 3.

“These haughty words of hers.”

*Haughty* is used in the sense of lofty, spirited. In Act IV., Sc. 1, it is used in the same sense—

“Valiant and virtuous, full of haughty courage.”

**HEAVENS.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“Hung be the heavens with black.”

As the covering, or internal roof, of the theatre was anciently termed the heavens, it has been supposed that this is an allusion to it; and Mr. Whiter maintains that several of



the poetical images of Shakspeare are derived from this association.

**ILL.** Act II., Sc. 5.

“Or make my ill the advantage of my good.”

*Ill* is here used for ill-usage.

**IMMANITY.** Act V., Sc. 1.

“That such immanity and bloody strife.”

*Immanity*, says Phillips, is “savageness, wildness, outrageous cruelty.”

**INKHORN.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“To be disgraced by an inkhorn mate.”

An “*inkhorn mate*” is a pedant. Wilson, in his ‘Art of Rhetoric’ (1553), describes one as using “inkhorn terms.”

**LIES.** Act II., Sc. 2.

“To visit her poor castle where she lies.”

*Lies* is used in the sense of dwells.

**LITHER.** Act IV., Sc. 7.

“Winged through the lither sky.”

*Lither* is here used for soft or pliant, from *lithe*, but this form of the adjective is not common. *Lither* is used by Chaucer for wicked.

**LOWTED.** Act IV., Sc. 3.

“And I am lowted by a traitor villain.”

A lowt was a mean unmannerly fellow, and Malone thinks the term here means, “I am treated with contempt like a lowt.”

**MAD.** Act V., Sc. 3.

“Mad, natural graces that extinguish art.”

The epithet *mad*, as Steevens thinks, is here used for wild; perhaps rather *capricious*.

**MISCONSTER.** Act II., Sc. 3.

“Be not dismay’d, fair lady; nor misconster.”

*Misconster* is the word of the original folio, but it is usually printed *misconstrue*, which it undoubtedly means. Phillips in his ‘World of Words,’ has “To construe or conster—to interpret or expound;” and in the quarto edition of ‘Othello’ (Act IV., Sc. 1), we have—

“And his unbookish jealousy must conster.”

**MISER.** Act V., Sc. 4.

“Decrepit miser; base ignoble wretch.”

*Miser* is here used in the sense of wretch, miserable creature.

## MONARCH OF THE NORTH. Act V., Sc. 3.

"Under the lordly monarch of the north."

The *monarch of the north*, says Douce, "was Zimimar, one of the four devils invoked by witches. The others were Amaimon king of the East, Gorson king of the South, and Goap king of the West." Under these were a devil-aristocracy, dukes, marquesses, &c., who are enumerated in Scott's 'Discoverie of Witchcraft,' Book xv. c. 2, 3.

## NEPHEW. Act II., Sc. 5.

"That cause, fair nephew, that imprison'd me."

*Nephew*, in the sense of the Latin *nepos*, a relative in general.

## NOURISH. Act I., Sc. 1.

"Our isle be made a nourish of salt tears."

*Nourish*, from the French *nourice*, is the same as *nourice*, nurst, nurse. Lydgate affords an example:—

"Athenes, whan it was in his floures,  
Was called nourish of philosophers wise."

## OBJECTED. Act II., Sc. 4.

"Good master Vernon, it is well objected."

*Objected* is not used here in its ordinary sense of *opposed*, but in the less common sense of proposed, suggested.

## OBSTACLE. Act V., Sc. 4.

"Fie, Joan! that thou wilt be so obstacle!"

*Obstacle*, used for obstinate. Chapman has used it in the same sense in 'May Day':—

"An obstacle young thing it is."

## PARTAKER. Act II., Sc. 4.

"For your partaker Poole."

*Partaker* is confederate, part-taker.

## PEEL'D. Act I., Sc. 3.

"Peel'd priest, dost thou command me to be shut out?"

*Peel'd* is an allusion to the tonsure of the priest.

## PERIAPTS. Act V., Sc. 3.

"Now help, ye charming spells, and periapts."

Cotgrave explains *periapts* to be "medicines hanged about any part of the body." They were charms or amulets.

## PIL'D. Act I., Sc. 4.

"Rather than I would be so pil'd-esteem'd."

*Pil'd*, the word in the folio, it has been suggested, is from *pili*—"Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili." The word was altered by Malone, to *vile*—*vile-esteem'd*—which is certainly an ingenious and unforced change.

**PLATFORMS.** Act II., Sc. 1.

“And lay new platforms to endamage them.”

A *platform* is a delineation of a *form* on a *plain* surface; and hence, a plan generally. In North's ‘Plutarch,’ platform is used for a map or plan—“They were every one occupied about drawing the platform of Sicilia.”

**PRETEND.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

“And none your foes but such as shall pretend.”

*Pretend*, in the sense of intend; the words were often used interchangeably. In ‘Richard III.’ (Act III., Sc. 5), Buckingham says “Intending deep suspicion,” for *pretending*.

**PREVENTED.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

“But that I am prevented.”

*Prevented* is anticipated, preceded.

**PRODITOR.** Act I., Sc. 3.

“Thou most usurping proditor.”

*Proditor* is Latin for a betrayer. It was probably an old term of chivalry, as applied to a traitor. In the form of expulsion of a Knight of the Garter, the herald is made to say, “Vah! Proditor!”

**PUZZEL.** Act I., Sc. 4.

“Pucelle or puzzel, dolphin or dog-fish.”

*Puzzel*, says Phillips, is a dirty slut.

**RASCAL.** Act IV., Sc. 2.

“Not rascal-like, to fall down with a pinch.”

*Rascal* was a hunting-term for a deer out of condition.

**REGUERDON.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“In reguerdon of that duty done.”

*Reguerdon* is the same as *guerdon*, a reward or recompense.

**REPUGN.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

“When stubbornly he did repugn the truth.”

*Repugn* is to be against, contrary to, to oppose.

**RESOLVE.** Act I., Sc. 2.

“Resolve on this.”

To *resolve* is here to be firmly persuaded, convinced.

**SAINT MARTIN'S SUMMER,** Act I., Sc. 2.

“Expect saint Martin's summer, halcyon days.”

St. Martin's day is on the 11th of November. St. Martin's summer is fine weather in November—prosperity after adversity.

TAWNY-COATS. Act I., Sc. 3.

“Blue-coats to tawny-coats.”

*Tawny-coats*, it appears, were the livery of an apparitor, and probably of ecclesiastics in general. The bishop of London is described by Stow as “attended by a goodly company of gentlemen in tawny coats.”

UNAVOIDED. Act IV., Sc. 5.

“A terrible and unavowed danger.”

*Unavoided*, in the sense of not to be avoided, unavoidable.

UNREADY. Act II., Sc. 1.

“How now, my lords? what, all unready so?”

*Unready* is *undressed*. Beaumont and Fletcher, in the ‘Island Princess’ (Act III.), have—

“Make me unready;  
I slept but ill last night.”

WONT. Act I., Sc. 4.

“Wont, through a secret grate of iron bars.”

*Wont*, from the Anglo-Saxon *wone*, custom, usage, means are accustomed. The original reads *went*; Tyrwhitt made the alteration, which seems judicious, and accords with the construction of the remainder of the sentence.

WOOD. Act IV., Sc. 7.

“How the young whelp of Talbot’s, raging wood.”

*Wood*, from the Anglo-Saxon *wud*, is mad. *Wud*, for mad, is still used in Scotland.

WRITHLED. Act II., Sc. 3.

“It cannot be this weak and writhled shrimp.”

Spenser uses *writhled* in the sense of wrinkled:—

“Her writhled skin, as rough as maple rind;  
but it may be used here in the sense of crooked, writhed.

# **KING HENRY THE SIXTH.**

## **PART II.**

This drama appears in the original folio edition of Shakspeare's plays under the title of 'The Second Part of Henry the Sixt, with the Death of the Good Duke Humfrey.' In the form in which it has been transmitted to us by the editors of that first collected edition of our author, it had not been previously printed. But in 1594 there appeared a separate play, in quarto, under the following title :—'The First Part of the Contention betwixt the two famous Houses of Yorke and Lancaster,' &c. This play, in the entire conduct of the scenes, and in a great measure in the dialogue, is 'The Second Part of Henry the Sixt.' But the alterations and additions are so considerable in amount that it has been doubted whether the original authorship belongs to Shakspeare. The whole dramatic conception is in the original play, and we, therefore, have no doubts upon the matter.

## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

### KING HENRY VI.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 3.  
Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3. Act IV. sc. 4; sc. 9. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

### HUMPHREY, *Duke of Gloster, uncle to Henry VI.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4.  
Act III. sc. 1.

### CARDINAL BEAUFORT, *Bishop of Winchester, great uncle to the King.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3.

### RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3.

### EDWARD, *son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 1.

### RICHARD, *son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3.

### DUKE OF SOMERSET, *of the King's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 9.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

### DUKE OF SUFFOLK, *of the King's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2.  
Act IV. sc. 1.

### DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM, *of the King's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 1.  
Act IV. sc. 4; sc. 8; sc. 9. Act V. sc. 1.

### LORD CLIFFORD, *of the King's party.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 8; sc. 9. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

### YOUNG CLIFFORD, *son to Lord Clifford, of the King's party.*

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

### EARL OF SALISBURY, *of the York faction.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 3.

### EARL OF WARWICK, *of the York faction.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 3.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3.

### LORD SCALES, *governor of the Tower.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 5.

### LORD SAY.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 4; sc. 7.

### SIR HUMPHREY STAFFORD, *and WILLIAM STAFFORD.*

*Appear*, Act IV. sc. 2.

### SIR JOHN STANLEY.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4.

### A Sea-Captain, Master, *and Master's Mate.*

*Appear*, Act IV. sc. 1.

### WALTER WHITMORE.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 1.

### Two Gentlemen, *prisoners with Suffolk.*

*Appear*, Act IV. sc. 1.

A Herald.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4.

VAUX.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 2.

HUME, *a priest*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3.

SOUTHWELL, *a priest*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3.

BOLINGBROKE, *a conjuror*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3.

Spirit raised by Bolingbroke.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4.

THOMAS HORNER, *an armourer*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 3.

PETER, *servant to Horner*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 3.

Clerk of Chatham.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2.

Mayor of St. Albans.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 1.

SIMPOOX, *an impostor*.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 1.

Two Murderers.

*Appear*, Act III. sc. 2.

JACK CADE, *a rebel*.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6; sc. 7; sc. 8; sc. 10.

GEORGE and JOHN, *followers of Jack Cade*.

*Appear*, Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 7.

DICK, *a follower of Jack Cade*.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6; sc. 7.

SMITH, *the weaver, a follower of Jack Cade*.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 7.

MICHAEL, *a follower of Jack Cade*.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2.

ALEXANDER IDEN, *a Kentish gentleman*.

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 10. Act V. sc. 1.

MARGARET, *Queen to King Henry*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2.

Act IV. sc. 4; sc. 9. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

ELEANOR, *Duchess of Gloster*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3; sc. 4.

MARGERY JOURDAIN, *a witch*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3.

Wife to Simpcox.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 1.

*Lords, Ladies, and Attendants; Petitioners, Aldermen, a Beadle, Sheriff, and Officers; Citizens, Prentices, Falconers, Guards, Soldiers, Messengers, &c.*

SCENE,—IN VARIOUS PARTS OF ENGLAND.



# KING HENRY VI.—PART II.

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room of State in the Palace.*

*Flourish of trumpets: then hautboys. Enter, on one side, KING HENRY, DUKE OF GLOSTER, SALISBURY, WARWICK, and CARDINAL BEAUFORT; on the other, QUEEN MARGARET, led in by SUFFOLK; YORK, SOMERSET, BUCKINGHAM, and others following.*

SUF. As by your high imperial majesty  
I had in charge at my depart for France,  
As procurator to your excellence,  
To marry princess Margaret for your grace;  
So, in the famous ancient city, Tours,—  
In presence of the kings of France and Sicil,  
The dukes of Orleans, Calaber, Bretagne, and Alençon,  
Seven earls, twelve barons, and twenty reverend bishops,—  
I have perform'd my task, and was espous'd;  
And humbly now upon my bended knee,  
In sight of England and her lordly peers,  
Deliver up my title in the queen  
To your most gracious hands, that are the substance  
Of that great shadow I did represent;  
The happiest gift that ever marquess gave,  
The fairest queen that ever king receiv'd.

K. HEN. Suffolk, arise.—Welcome, queen Margaret:  
I can express no kinder sign of love,  
Than this kind kiss.—O Lord, that lends me life,  
Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness!  
For thou hast given me, in this beauteous face,

A world of earthly blessings to my soul,  
If sympathy of love unite our thoughts.

Q. MAR. Great king of England, and my gracious lord,  
The mutual conference that my mind hath had,  
By day, by night,—waking, and in my dreams,—  
In courtly company, or at my beads,—  
With you mine alder-liefest sovereign,  
Makes me the bolder to salute my king  
With ruder terms, such as my wit affords,  
And over-joy of heart doth minister.

K. HEN. Her sight doth ravish; but her grace in speech,  
Her words y-clad with wisdom's majesty,  
Makes me from wondering fall to weeping joys;  
Such is the fulness of my heart's content.  
Lords, with one cheerful voice welcome my love.

ALL. [*kneeling.*] Long live queen Margaret, England's happiness!

Q. MAR. We thank you all. [*Flourish.*]

SUF. My lord protector, so it please your grace,  
Here are the articles of contracted peace,  
Between our sovereign, and the French king Charles,  
For eighteen months concluded by consent.

GLO. [*Reads.*] "Imprimis, It is agreed between the French king, Charles, and William de la Poole, marquess of Suffolk, ambassador for Henry king of England, that the said Henry shall espouse the lady Margaret, daughter unto Reignier, king of Naples, Sicilia, and Jerusalem; and crown her queen of England, ere the thirtieth of May next ensuing.—Item,—That the Duchy of Anjou and the county of Maine shall be released and delivered to the king her father"—

K. HEN. Uncle, how now?

GLO. Pardon me, gracious lord;  
Some sudden qualm hath struck me at the heart,  
And dimm'd mine eyes, that I can read no further.

K. HEN. Uncle of Winchester, I pray, read on.

CAR. "Item,—It is further agreed between them, that the duchies of Anjou and Maine shall be released and delivered over to the king her father; and she sent over of the king of England's own proper cost and charges, without having any dowry."

K. HEN. They please us well.—Lord marquess, kneel down;

We here create thee the first duke of Suffolk,  
And girt thee with the sword. Cousin of York,  
We here discharge your grace from being regent  
In the parts of France, till term of eighteen months  
Be full expir'd. Thanks, uncle Winchester,  
Gloster, York, Buckingham, Somerset,  
Salisbury, and Warwick;  
We thank you all for this great favour done,  
In entertainment to my princely queen.  
Come, let us in; and with all speed provide  
To see her coronation be perform'd.

[*Exeunt KING, QUEEN, and SUFFOLK.*]

GLO. Brave peers of England, pillars of the state,  
To you duke Humphrey must unload his grief;  
Your grief, the common grief of all the land.  
What! did my brother Henry spend his youth,  
His valour, coin, and people, in the wars?  
Did he so often lodge in open field,  
In winter's cold, and summer's parching heat,  
To conquer France, his true inheritance?  
And did my brother Bedford toil his wits,  
To keep by policy what Henry got?  
Have you yourselves, Somerset, Buckingham,  
Brave York, Salisbury, and victorious Warwick,  
Receiv'd deep scars in France and Normandy?  
Or hath mine uncle Beaufort, and myself,  
With all the learned council of the realm,  
Studied so long, sat in the council-house,  
Early and late, debating to and fro  
How France and Frenchmen might be kept in awe?  
And hath his highness in his infancy  
Been crown'd in Paris, in despite of foes?  
And shall these labours, and these honours, die?  
Shall Henry's conquest, Bedford's vigilance,  
Your deeds of war, and all our counsel, die?  
O peers of England, shameful is this league!  
Fatal this marriage! cancelling your fame;  
Blotting your names from books of memory;

Razing the characters of your renown;  
Defacing monuments of conquer'd France;  
Undoing all, as all had never been!

CAR. Nephew, what means this passionate discourse,—  
This peroration with such circumstance?  
For France, 't is ours; and we will keep it still.

GLO. Ay, uncle, we will keep it, if we can;  
But now it is impossible we should:  
Suffolk, the new-made duke, that rules the roast,  
Hath given the duchies of Anjou and Maine  
Unto the poor king Reignier, whose large style  
Agrees not with the leanness of his purse.

SAL. Now, by the death of him that died for all,  
These counties were the keys of Normandy:—  
But wherefore weeps Warwick, my valiant son?

WAR. For grief, that they are past recovery:  
For were there hope to conquer them again,  
My sword should shed hot blood, mine eyes no tears.  
Anjou and Maine! myself did win them both;  
Those provinces these arms of mine did conquer:  
And are the cities that I got with wounds  
Deliver'd up again with peaceful words?  
Mort Dieu!

YORK. For Suffolk's duke, may he be suffocate,  
That dims the honour of this warlike isle!  
France should have torn and rent my very heart  
Before I would have yielded to this league.  
I never read but England's kings have had  
Large sums of gold, and dowries, with their wives:  
And our king Henry gives away his own,  
To match with her that brings no vantages.

GLO. A proper jest, and never heard before,  
That Suffolk should demand a whole fifteenth,  
For costs and charges in transporting her!  
She should have stay'd in France, and starv'd in France,  
Before——

CAR. My lord of Gloster, now you grow too hot;  
It was the pleasure of my lord the king.

GLO. My lord of Winchester, I know your mind;  
'T is not my speeches that you do mislike,

But 't is my presence that doth trouble you.  
Rancour will out: Proud prelate, in thy face  
I see thy fury: if I longer stay  
We shall begin our ancient bickerings.  
Lordings, farewell; and say, when I am gone,  
I prophesied—France will be lost ere long.

[*Exit.*

CAR. So, there goes our protector in a rage.  
'T is known to you he is mine enemy;  
Nay, more, an enemy unto you 'all;  
And no great friend, I fear me, to the king.  
Consider, lords,—he is the next of blood,  
And heir apparent to the English crown;  
Had Henry got an empire by his marriage,  
And all the wealthy kingdoms of the west,  
There's reason he should be displeas'd at it.  
Look to it, lords; let not his smoothing words  
Bewitch your hearts; be wise and circumspect.  
What, though the common people favour him,  
Calling him—"Humphrey, the good duke of Gloster;"  
Clapping their hands, and crying with loud voice—  
"Jesu maintain your royal excellence!"  
With—"God preserve the good duke Humphrey!"  
I fear me, lords, for all this flattering gloss,  
He will be found a dangerous protector.

BUCK. Why should he then protect our sovereign,  
He being of age to govern of himself?  
Cousin of Somerset, join you with me,  
And all together with the duke of Suffolk,  
We'll quickly hoise duke Humphrey from his seat.

CAR. This weighty business will not brook delay;  
I'll to the duke of Suffolk presently.

[*Exit.*

SOM. Cousin of Buckingham, though Humphrey's pride,  
And greatness of his place, be grief to us,  
Yet let us watch the haughty cardinal;  
His insolence is more intolerable  
Than all the princes in the land beside;  
If Gloster be displac'd, he'll be protector.

BUCK. Or thou, or I, Somerset, will be protector,  
Despite duke Humphrey, or the cardinal.

[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM and SOMERSET.

**SAL.** Pride went before, ambition follows him.  
While these do labour for their own preferment,  
Behoves it us to labour for the realm.  
I never saw but Humphrey duke of Gloster  
Did bear him like a noble gentleman.  
Oft have I seen the haughty cardinal—  
More like a soldier than a man o' the church,  
As stout and proud as he were lord of all—  
Swear like a ruffian, and demean himself  
Unlike the ruler of a commonweal.  
Warwick, my son, the comfort of my age!  
Thy deeds, thy plainness, and thy housekeeping,  
Hath won the greatest favour of the commons;  
Excepting none but good duke Humphrey.  
And, brother York, thy acts in Ireland,  
In bringing them to civil discipline;  
Thy late exploits, done in the heart of France,  
When thou wert regent for our sovereign,  
Have made thee fear'd and honour'd of the people:  
Join we together for the public good;  
In what we can, to bridle and suppress  
The pride of Suffolk, and the cardinal,  
With Somerset's and Buckingham's ambition;  
And, as we may, cherish duke Humphrey's deeds  
While they do tend the profit of the land.

**WAR.** So God help Warwick, as he loves the land,  
And common profit of his country!

**YORK.** And so says York, for he hath greatest cause.

**SAL.** Then let's make haste away, and look unto the main.

**WAR.** Unto the main! O father, Maine is lost;  
That Maine, which by main force Warwick did win,  
And would have kept, so long as breath did last:  
Main chance, father, you meant; but I meant Maine;  
Which I will win from France, or else be slain.

[*Exeunt WARWICK and SALISBURY.*]

**YORK.** Anjou and Maine are given to the French;  
Paris is lost; the state of Normandy  
Stands on a tickle point, now they are gone:  
Suffolk concluded on the articles;  
The peers agreed; and Henry was well pleas'd,

To change two dukedoms for a duke's fair daughter.  
I cannot blame them all: What is 't to them?  
'T is thine they give away, and not their own.  
Pirates may make cheap pennyworths of their pillage,  
And purchase friends, and give to courtesans,  
Still revelling, like lords, till all be gone:  
While as the silly owner of the goods  
Weeps over them, and wrings his hapless hands,  
And shakes his head, and trembling stands aloof,  
While all is shar'd, and all is borne away;  
Ready to starve, and dare not touch his own.  
So York must sit, and fret, and bite his tongue,  
While his own lands are bargain'd for and sold.  
Methinks the realms of England, France, and Ireland,  
Bear that proportion to my flesh and blood  
As did the fatal brand Althea burn'd,  
Unto the prince's heart of Calydon.  
Anjou and Maine both given unto the French!  
Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,  
Even as I have of fertile England's soil.  
A day will come when York shall claim his own;  
And therefore I will take the Nevils' parts,  
And make a show of love to proud duke Humphrey,  
And, when I spy advantage, claim the crown,  
For that 's the golden mark I seek to hit:  
Nor shall proud Lancaster usurp my right,  
Nor hold the sceptre in his childish fist,  
Nor wear the diadem upon his head,  
Whose church-like humours fit not for a crown.  
Then, York, be still awhile, till time do serve:  
Watch thou, and wake, when others be asleep,  
To pry into the secrets of the state;  
Till Henry, surfeiting in joys of love,  
With his new bride, and England's dear-bought queen,  
And Humphrey with the peers be fall'n at jars:  
Then will I raise aloft the milk-white rose,  
With whose sweet smell the air shall be perfum'd;  
And in my standard bear the arms of York,  
To grapple with the house of Lancaster;

And, force perforce, I 'll make him yield the crown,  
Whose bookish rule hath pull'd fair England down. [Exit.

SCENE II.—*The same. A Room in the Duke of Gloster's House.*

*Enter GLOSTER and the DUCHESS.*

DUCH. Why droops my lord, like over-ripen'd corn,  
Hanging the head at Ceres' plenteous load?  
Why doth the great duke Humphrey knit his brows,  
As frowning at the favours of the world?  
Why are thine eyes fix'd to the sullen earth,  
Gazing on that which seems to dim thy sight?  
What seest thou there? king Henry's diadem,  
Enchas'd with all the honours of the world?  
If so, gaze on, and grovel on thy face,  
Until thy head be circled with the same.  
Put forth thy hand, reach at the glorious gold:  
What, is 't too short? I 'll lengthen it with mine:  
And, having both together heav'd it up,  
We 'll both together lift our heads to heav'n;  
And never more abase our sight so low  
As to vouchsafe one glance unto the ground.

GLO. O Nell, sweet Nell, if thou dost love thy lord,  
Banish the canker of ambitious thoughts:  
And may that thought, when I imagine ill  
Against my king and nephew, virtuous Henry,  
Be my last breathing in this mortal world!  
My troublous dream this night doth make me sad.

DUCH. What dream'd my lord? tell me, and I 'll requite it  
With sweet rehearsal of my morning's dream.

GLO. Methought this staff, mine office-badge in court,  
Was broke in twain; by whom I have forgot,  
But, as I think, it was by the cardinal;  
And, on the pieces of the broken wand  
Were plac'd the heads of Edmond duke of Somerset,  
And William de la Poole first duke of Suffolk.  
This was my dream; what it doth bode, God knows.

DUCH. Tut, this was nothing but an argument,



That he that breaks a stick of Gloster's grove  
Shall lose his head for his presumption.  
But list to me, my Humphrey, my sweet duke.  
Methought, I sat in seat of majesty,  
In the cathedral church of Westminster,  
And in that chair where kings and queens are crown'd;  
Where Henry, and dame Margaret, kneel'd to me,  
And on my head did set the diadem.

GLO. Nay, Eleanor, then must I chide outright:  
Presumptuous dame, ill-nurtur'd Eleanor!  
Art thou not second woman in the realm;  
And the protector's wife, belov'd of him?  
Hast thou not worldly pleasure at command,  
Above the reach or compass of thy thought?  
And wilt thou still be hammering treachery,  
To tumble down thy husband and thyself,  
From top of honour to disgrace's feet?  
Away from me, and let me hear no more.

DUCH. What, what, my lord! are you so choleric  
With Eleanor, for telling but her dream?  
Next time, I'll keep my dreams unto myself,  
And not be check'd.

GLO. Nay, be not angry, I am pleas'd again.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord protector, 't is his highness' pleasure,  
You do prepare to ride unto St. Albans,  
Whereas the king and queen do mean to hawk.

GLO. I go.—Come, Nell, thou wilt ride with us?

DUCH. Yes, my good lord, I'll follow presently.

*[Exeunt GLOSTER and Messenger.]*

Follow I must, I cannot go before,  
While Gloster bears this base and humble mind.  
Were I a man, a duke, and next of blood,  
I would remove these tedious stumbling-blocks,  
And smooth my way upon their headless necks:  
And, being a woman, I will not be slack  
To play my part in fortune's pageant.  
Where are you there? Sir John! nay, fear not, man,  
We are alone; here 's none but thee and I.

*Enter HUME.*

HUME. Jesu preserve your royal majesty!

DUCH. What say'st thou, majesty! I am but grace.

HUME. But, by the grace of God, and Hume's advice,  
Your grace's title shall be multiplied.

DUCH. What say'st thou, man? hast thou as yet conferr'd  
With Margery Jourdain, the cunning witch;  
With Roger Bolingbroke, the conjurer?  
And will they undertake to do me good?

HUME. This they have promised,—to show your highness  
A spirit rais'd from depth of underground,  
That shall make answer to such questions  
As by your grace shall be propounded him.

DUCH. It is enough: I'll think upon the questions:  
When from Saint Albans we do make return,  
We'll see these things effected to the full.  
Here, Hume, take this reward; make merry, man,  
With thy confederates in this weighty cause.

*[Exit DUCHESS.]*

HUME. Hume must make merry with the duchess' gold;  
Marry, and shall. But how now, sir John Hume?  
Seal up your lips, and give no words but—mum!  
The business asketh silent secrecy.  
Dame Eleanor gives gold, to bring the witch:  
Gold cannot come amiss, were she a devil.  
Yet have I gold, flies from another coast:  
I dare not say from the rich cardinal,  
And from the great and new-made duke of Suffolk;  
Yet I do find it so: for, to be plain,  
They, knowing Dame Eleanor's aspiring humour,  
Have hired me to undermine the duchess,  
And buzz these conjurations in her brain.  
They say, A crafty knave does need no broker;  
Yet am I Suffolk and the cardinal's broker.  
Hume, if you take not heed, you shall go near  
To call them both a pair of crafty knaves.  
Well, so it stands: And thus, I fear, at last,  
Hume's knavery will be the duchess' wrack;

And her attainture will be Humphrey's fall:  
Sort how it will, I shall have gold for all.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE III.—*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter PETER, and others, with petitions.*

1 PET. My masters, let's stand close; my lord protector will come this way by and by, and then we may deliver our supplications in the quill.

2 PET. Marry, the Lord protect him, for he's a good man! Jesu bless him!

*Enter SUFFOLK and QUEEN MARGARET.*

1 PET. Here a' comes, methinks, and the queen with him; I'll be the first, sure.

2 PET. Come back, fool; this is the duke of Suffolk, and not my lord protector.

SUF. How now, fellow? wouldst anything with me?

1 PET. I pray, my lord, pardon me! I took ye for my lord protector.

Q. MAR. [*Reading the superscription.*] "To my lord protector!" are your supplications to his lordship? Let me see them: What is thine?

1 PET. Mine is, an't please your grace, against John Goodman, my lord cardinal's man, for keeping my house, and lands, and wife and all, from me.

SUF. Thy wife too? that's some wrong, indeed.—What's yours?—What's here! [*Reads.*] "Against the duke of Suffolk, for enclosing the commons of Melford."—How now, sir knave?

2 PET. Alas, sir, I am but a poor petitioner of our whole township.

PETER. [*Presenting his petition.*] Against my master, Thomas Horner, for saying, That the duke of York was rightful heir to the crown.

Q. MAR. What say'st thou? Did the duke of York say, he was rightful heir to the crown?

PETER. That my master was? No, forsooth: my master said, That he was; and that the king was an usurper.

SUF. Who is there? [*Enter Servants.*]—Take this fellow

in, and send for his master with a pursuivant presently:—  
we'll hear more of your matter before the king.

[*Exeunt* Servants, with PETER.]

Q. MAR. And as for you that love to be protected  
Under the wings of our protector's grace,  
Begin your suits anew, and sue to him. [*Tears the petition.*  
Away, base cullions!—Suffolk, let them go.

ALL. Come, let's be gone. [*Exeunt* Petitioners.]

Q. MAR. My lord of Suffolk, say, is this the guise,  
Is this the fashions in the court of England?  
Is this the government of Britain's isle,  
And this the royalty of Albion's king?  
What, shall king Henry be a pupil still,  
Under the surly Gloster's governance?  
Am I a queen in title and in style,  
And must be made a subject to a duke?  
I tell thee, Poole, when in the city Tours  
Thou rann'st a tilt in honour of my love,  
And stol'st away the ladies' hearts of France,  
I thought king Henry had resembled thee,  
In courage, courtship, and proportion:  
But all his mind is bent to holiness,  
To number Ave-Maries on his beads:  
His champions are the prophets and apostles;  
His weapons, holy saws of sacred writ;  
His study is his tilt-yard, and his loves  
Are brazen images of canonis'd saints.  
I would the college of the cardinals  
Would choose him pope, and carry him to Rome,  
And set the triple crown upon his head;  
That were a state fit for his holiness.

SUF. Madam, be patient: as I was cause  
Your highness came to England, so will I  
In England work your grace's full content.

Q. MAR. Beside the haughty protector, have we Beaufort,  
The imperious churchman; Somerset, Buckingham,  
And grumbling York: and not the least of these  
But can do more in England than the king.

SUF. And he of these that can do most of all  
Cannot do more in England than the Nevils:

Salisbury and Warwick are no simple peers.

Q. MAR. Not all these lords do vex me half so much  
As that proud dame, the lord protector's wife.  
She sweeps it through the court with troops of ladies,  
More like an empress than duke Humphrey's wife;  
Strangers in court do take her for the queen:  
She bears a duke's revenues on her back,  
And in her heart she scorns our poverty:  
Shall I not live to be aveng'd on her?  
Contemptuous base-born callat as she is,  
She vaunted 'mongst her minions t'other day,  
The very train of her worst wearing-gown  
Was better worth than all my father's lands,  
Till Suffolk gave two dukedoms for his daughter.

SUF. Madam, myself have lim'd a bush for her;  
And plac'd a quire of such enticing birds,  
That she will light to listen to the lays,  
And never mount to trouble you again.  
So, let her rest: And, madam, list to me;  
For I am bold to counsel you in this:  
Although we fancy not the cardinal,  
Yet must we join with him, and with the lords,  
Till we have brought duke Humphrey in disgrace.  
As for the duke of York, this late complaint  
Will make but little for his benefit:  
So, one by one, we 'll weed them all at last,  
And you yourself shall steer the happy helm.

*Enter KING HENRY, YORK and SOMERSET conversing with him;  
DUKE and DUCHESS OF GLOSTER, CARDINAL BEAUFORT,  
BUCKINGHAM, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.*

K. HEN. For my part, noble lords, I care not which;  
Or Somerset, or York, all's one to me.

YORK. If York have ill demean'd himself in France,  
Then let him be deny'd the regentship.

SOM. If Somerset be unworthy of the place,  
Let York be regent, I will yield to him.

WAR. Whether your grace be worthy, yea, or no,  
Dispute not that: York is the worthier.

CAR. Ambitious Warwick, let thy betters speak.

WAR. The cardinal's not my better in the field.

BUCK. All in this presence are thy betters, Warwick.

WAR. Warwick may live to be the best of all.

SAL. Peace, son; and show some reason, Buckingham,  
Why Somerset should be preferr'd in this.

Q. MAR. Because the king, forsooth, will have it so.

GLO. Madam, the king is old enough himself  
To give his censure; these are no women's matters.

Q. MAR. If he be old enough, what needs your grace  
To be protector of his excellence?

GLO. Madam, I am protector of the realm;  
And at his pleasure will resign my place.

SUF. Resign it then, and leave thine insolence.  
Since thou wert king, (as who is king but thou?)  
The commonwealth hath daily run to wrack:  
The dauphin hath prevail'd beyond the seas;  
And all the peers and nobles of the realm  
Have been as bondmen to thy sovereignty.

CAR. The commons hast thou rack'd; the clergy's bags  
Are lank and lean with thy extortions.

SOM. Thy sumptuous buildings, and thy wife's attire,  
Have cost a mass of public treasury.

BUCK. Thy cruelty in execution,  
Upon offenders, hath exceeded law,  
And left thee to the mercy of the law.

Q. MAR. Thy sale of offices, and towns in France,  
If they were known, as the suspect is great,  
Would make thee quickly hop without thy head.

[*Exit GLOSTER. The QUEEN drops her fan.*  
Give me my fan: What, minion! can you not?

[*Gives the DUCHESS a box on the ear.*  
I cry you mercy, madam; was it you?

DUCH. Was 't I? yea, I it was, proud Frenchwoman:  
Could I come near your beauty with my nails,  
I'd set my ten commandments in your face.

K. HEN. Sweet aunt, be quiet; 't was against her will.

DUCH. Against her will! Good king, look to 't in time;  
She'll hamper thee, and dandle thee like a baby.  
Though in this place most master wear no breeches,

She shall not strike dame Eleanor unreveng'd.

[*Exit* DUCHESS.]

BUCK. Lord cardinal, I will follow Eleanor,  
And listen after Humphrey, how he proceeds:  
She's tickled now: her fume needs no spurs,  
She'll gallop far enough to her destruction.

[*Exit* BUCKINGHAM.]

*Re-enter* GLOSTER.

GLO. Now, lords, my choler being over-blown,  
With walking once about the quadrangle,  
I come to talk of commonwealth affairs.  
As for your spiteful false objections,  
Prove them, and I lie open to the law:  
But God in mercy so deal with my soul,  
As I in duty love my king and country!  
But, to the matter that we have in hand:  
I say, my sovereign, York is meetest man  
To be your regent in the realm of France.

SUF. Before we make election, give me leav  
To show some reason, of no little force,  
That York is most unmeet of any man.

YORK. I'll tell thee, Suffolk, why I am unmeet.  
First, for I cannot flatter thee in pride:  
Next, if I be appointed for the place,  
My lord of Somerset will keep me here,  
Without discharge, money, or furniture,  
Till France be won into the dauphin's hands.  
Last time, I danc'd attendance on his will,  
Till Paris was besieg'd, famish'd, and lost.

WAR. That can I witness; and a fouler fact  
Did never traitor in the land commit.

SUF. Peace, headstrong Warwick!

WAR. Image of pride, why should I hold my peace?

*Enter* Servants of SUFFOLK, bringing in HORNER and PETER.

SUF. Because here is a man accus'd of treason:  
Pray God, the duke of York excuse himself!

YORK. Doth any one accuse York for a traitor?

K. HEN. What mean'st thou, Suffolk? Tell me: What are these?

SUF. Please it your majesty, this is the man  
That doth accuse his master of high treason:  
His words were these;—That Richard, duke of York,  
Was rightful heir unto the English crown;  
And that your majesty was an usurper.

K. HEN. Say, man, were these thy words?

HOR. An't shall please your majesty, I never said nor  
thought any such matter: God is my witness, I am falsely  
accused by the villain.

PET. By these ten bones, my lords [*holding up his hands*],  
he did speak them to me in the garret one night, as we were  
scouring my lord of York's armour.

YORK. Base dunghill villain, and mechanical,  
I'll have thy head for this thy traitor's speech:—  
I do beseech your royal majesty,  
Let him have all the rigour of the law.

HOR. Alas, my lord, hang me if ever I spake the words.  
My accuser is my prentice; and when I did correct him for  
his fault the other day, he did vow upon his knees he would  
be even with me: I have good witness of this; therefore, I  
beseech your majesty, do not cast away an honest man for a  
villain's accusation.

K. HEN. Uncle, what shall we say to this in law?

GLO. This doom, my lord, if I may judge.  
Let Somerset be regent o'er the French,  
Because in York this breeds suspicion:  
And let these have a day appointed them  
For single combat, in convenient place;  
For he hath witness of his servant's malice:  
This is the law, and this duke Humphrey's doom.

SOM. I humbly thank your royal majesty.

HOR. And I accept the combat willingly.

PET. Alas, my lord, I cannot fight; for God's sake, pity my  
case! the spite of man prevaieth against me. O Lord, have  
mercy upon me! I shall never be able to fight a blow: O  
Lord, my heart!

GLO. Sirrah, or you must fight, or else be hang'd.

K. HEN. Away with them to prison: and the day



Of combat shall be the last of the next month.—

Come, Somerset, we'll see thee sent away. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—*The same. The Duke of Gloster's Garden.*

*Enter* MARGERY JOURDAIN, HUME, SOUTHWELL, and  
BOLINGBROKE.

HUME. Come, my masters; the duchess, I tell you, expects performance of your promises.

BOLING. Master Hume, we are therefore provided: Will her ladyship behold and hear our exorcisms?

HUME. Ay: What else? fear you not her courage.

BOLING. I have heard her reported to be a woman of an invincible spirit: But it shall be convenient, master Hume, that you be by her aloft while we be busy below; and so, I pray you, go in God's name, and leave us. [*Exit* HUME. Mother Jourdain, be you prostrate, and grovel on the earth: John Southwell, read you; and let us to our work.

*Enter* DUCHESS, *above.*

DUCH. Well said, my masters; and welcome all. To this geer; the sooner the better.

BOLING. Patience, good lady; wizards know their times: Deep night, dark night, the silent of the night,  
The time of night when Troy was set on fire;  
The time when screech-owls cry, and ban-dogs howl,  
And spirits walk, and ghosts break up their graves,  
That time best fits the work we have in hand.  
Madam, sit you, and fear not; whom we raise,  
We will make fast within a hallow'd verge.

*[Here they perform the ceremonies appertaining, and make the circle; BOLINGBROKE, or SOUTHWELL, reads, Conjuro te, &c. It thunders and lightens terribly; then the Spirit riseth.]*

SPIR. Adsum.

M. JOURD. Asmath,  
By the eternal God, whose name and power  
Thou tremblest at, answer that I shall ask;  
For till thou speak thou shalt not pass from hence.

SPIR. Ask what thou wilt: That I had said and done!

BOLING. "First of the king. What shall of him become?"

*[Reading out of a paper.]*

SPIR. The duke yet lives that Henry shall depose;  
But him outlive, and die a violent death.

*[As the Spirit speaks, SOUTHWELL writes the answer.]*

BOLING. "What fates await the duke of Suffolk?"

SPIR. By water shall he die, and take his end.

BOLING. "What shall befall the duke of Somerset?"

SPIR. Let him shun castles;  
Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,  
Than where castles mounted stand.  
Have done, for more I hardly can endure.

BOLING. Descend to darkness and the burning lake:  
False fiend, avoid!

*[Thunder and lightning. Spirit descends.]*

*Enter YORK and BUCKINGHAM, hastily, with their Guards,  
and others.*

YORK. Lay hands upon these traitors, and their trash.  
Beldame, I think, we watch'd you at an inch.—  
What, madam, are you there? the king and commonweal  
Are deeply indebted for this piece of pains;  
My lord protector will, I doubt it not,  
See you well guerdon'd for these good deserts.

DUCH. Not half so bad as thine to England's king,  
Injurious duke; that threat'st where is no cause.

BUCK. True, madam, none at all. What call you this?

*[Showing her the papers.]*

Away with them; let them be clapp'd up close,  
And kept asunder:—You, madam, shall with us:—  
Stafford, take her to thee. *[Exit DUCHESS from above.]*  
We'll see your trinkets here all forthcoming;  
All, away! *[Exeunt Guards, with SOUTH., BOLING., &c.]*

YORK. Lord Buckingham, methinks you watch'd her well:  
A pretty plot, well chosen to build upon;  
Now, pray, my lord, let's see the devil's writ.  
What have we here?

*[Reads.]*

"The duke yet lives that Henry shall depose;  
But him outlive, and die a violent death."  
Why, this is just,

*Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere posse.*

Well, to the rest:

"Tell me, what fate awaits the duke of Suffolk?

By water shall he die, and take his end.—

What shall betide the duke of Somerset?

Let him shun castles;

Safer shall he be upon the sandy plains,

Than where castles mounted stand."

Come, come, my lords;

These oracles are hardly attain'd,

And hardly understood.

The king is now in progress toward Saint Albans,

With him the husband of this lovely lady:

Thither go these news, as fast as horse can carry them;

A sorry breakfast for my lord protector.

BUCK. Your grace shall give me leave, my lord of York,

To be the post, in hope of his reward.

YORK. At your pleasure, my good lord.—

Who 's within there, ho!

*Enter a Servant.*

Invite my lords of Salisbury and Warwick

To sup with me to-morrow night.—Away!

*[Exeunt.]*

---

## ACT II.

### SCENE I.—Saint Albans.

*Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, GLOSTER, CARDINAL,  
and SUFFOLK, with Falconers hollaing.*

Q. MAR. Believe me, lords, for flying at the brook,

I saw not better sport these seven years' day:

Yet, by your leave, the wind was very high;

And ten to one old Joan had not gone out.

K. HEN. But what a point, my lord, your falcon made,

And what a pitch she flew above the rest!—

To see how God in all his creatures works!

Yea, man and birds are fain of climbing high.

SUF. No marvel, an it like your majesty,  
My lord protector's hawks do tower so well;  
They know their master loves to be aloft,  
And bears his thoughts above his falcon's pitch.

GLO. My lord, 't is but a base ignoble mind  
That mounts no higher than a bird can soar.

CAR. I thought as much; he would be above the clouds.

GLO. Ay, my lord cardinal: How think you by that?  
Were it not good your grace could fly to heaven?

K. HEN. The treasury of everlasting joy!

CAR. Thy heaven is on earth; thine eyes and thoughts  
Beat on a crown, the treasure of thy heart;  
Pernicious protector, dangerous peer,  
That smooth'st it so with king and commonweal!

GLO. What, cardinal, is your priesthood grown peremptory?  
*Tantæne animis cœlestibus iræ?*  
Churchmen so hot? good uncle, hide such malice;  
With such holiness can you do it?

SUF. No malice, sir; no more than well becomes  
So good a quarrel, and so bad a peer.

GLO. As who, my lord?

SUF. Why, as you, my lord;  
An 't like your lordly lord-protectorship.

GLO. Why, Suffolk, England knows thine insolence.

Q. MAR. And thy ambition, Gloster.

K. HEN. I prithee, peace,  
Good queen; and whet not on these furious peers,  
For blessed are the peacemakers on earth.

CAR. Let me be blessed for the peace I make,  
Against this proud protector with my sword!

GLO. 'Faith, holy uncle, 'would 't were come to that!

[*Aside to the CARDINAL*

CAR. Marry, when thou dar'st. [*Aside.*

GLO. Make up no factious numbers for the matter,  
In thine own person answer thy abuse. [*Aside.*

CAR. Ay, where thou dar'st not peep: an if thou dar'st,  
This evening, on the east side of the grove. [*Aside.*

K. HEN. How now, my lords?

CAR. Believe me, cousin Gloster,

Had not your man put up the fowl so suddenly,  
We had had more sport.—Come, with thy two-hand sword.  
[*Aside to GLOSTER.*

GLO. True, uncle.

CAR. Are you advis'd?—the east side of the grove?

GLO. Cardinal, I am with you. [*Aside.*

K. HEN. Why, how now, uncle Gloster?

GLO. Talking of hawking; nothing else, my lord.—  
Now, by God's mother, priest, I'll shave your crown for  
this,  
Or all my fence shall fail. [*Aside.*

CAR. *Medice teipsum.*

Protector, see to 't well, protect yourself. [*Aside.*

K. HEN. The winds grow high, so do your stomachs,  
lords.

How irksome is this music to my heart!  
When such strings jar, what hope of harmony?  
I pray, my lords, let me compound this strife.

*Enter One, crying, A Miracle.*

GLO. What means this noise?

Fellow, what miracle dost thou proclaim?

ONE. A miracle! a miracle!

SUF. Come to the king, and tell him what miracle.

ONE. Forsooth, a blind man at St. Alban's shrine,  
Within this half-hour, hath receiv'd his sight;  
A man that ne'er saw in his life before.

K. HEN. Now, God be prais'd! that to believing souls  
Gives light in darkness, comfort in despair!

*Enter the Mayor of St. Albans, and his brethren; and  
SIMPCOX, borne between two persons in a chair; his wife and  
a great multitude following.*

CAR. Here come the townsmen on procession,  
To present your highness with the man.

K. HEN. Great is his comfort in this earthly vale,  
Although by his sight his sin be multiplied.

GLO. Stand by, my masters, bring him near the king;  
His highness' pleasure is to talk with him.

K. HEN. Good fellow, tell us here the circumstance,  
That we for thee may glorify the Lord.

What, hast thou been long blind, and now restor'd?

SIMP. Born blind, an 't please your grace.

WIFE. Ay, indeed, was he.

SUF. What woman is this?

WIFE. His wife, an 't like your worship.

GLO. Hadst thou been his mother thou couldst have better  
told.

K. HEN. Where wert thou born?

SIMP. At Berwick in the north, an 't like your grace.

K. HEN. Poor soul! God's goodness hath been great to  
thee:

Let never day nor night unhallow'd pass,  
But still remember what the Lord hath done.

Q. MAR. Tell me, good fellow, cam'st thou here by chance,  
Or of devotion, to this holy shrine?

SIMP. God knows, of pure devotion; being call'd  
A hundred times, and oftener, in my sleep  
By good Saint Alban; who said,—“Simpcox, come;  
Come, offer at my shrine, and I will help thee.”

WIFE. Most true, forsooth; and many time and oft  
Myself have heard a voice to call him so.

CAR. What, art thou lame?

SIMP. Ay, God Almighty help me!

SUF. How cam'st thou so?

SIMP. A fall off of a tree.

WIFE. A plum-tree, master.

GLO. How long hast thou been blind?

SIMP. O, born so, master.

GLO. What, and wouldst climb a tree?

SIMP. But that in all my life, when I was a youth.

WIFE. Too true; and bought his climbing very dear.

GLO. 'Mass, thou lov'dst plums well, that wouldst venture  
so.

SIMP. Alas, good master, my wife desir'd some damsons,  
And made me climb, with danger of my life.

GLO. A subtle knave! but yet it shall not serve.—  
Let me see thine eyes:—wink now; now open them:—  
In my opinion yet thou seest not well.

SIMP. Yes, master, clear as day; I thank God and Saint Alban.

GLO. Say'st thou me so? What colour is this cloak of?

SIMP. Red, master; red as blood.

GLO. Why, that's well said: What colour is my gown of?

SIMP. Black, forsooth; coal-black, as jet.

K. HEN. Why, then, thou know'st what colour jet is of?

SUF. And yet, I think, jet did he never see.

GLO. But cloaks and gowns, before this day, a many.

WIFE. Never, before this day, in all his life.

GLO. Tell me, sirrah, what's my name?

SIMP. Alas, my master, I know not.

GLO. What's his name?

SIMP. I know not.

GLO. Nor his?

SIMP. No, indeed, master.

GLO. What's thine own name?

SIMP. Saunder Simpcox, an if it please you, master.

GLO. Then, Saunder, sit there, the lyingest knave in Christendom. If thou hadst been born blind, thou mightst as well have known all our names, as thus to name the several colours we do wear. Sight may distinguish of colours; but suddenly to nominate them all, it is impossible.—My lords, Saint Alban here hath done a miracle; and would ye not think that cunning to be great that could restore this cripple to his legs again?

SIMP. O master, that you could!

GLO. My masters of Saint Albans, have you not beadles in your town, and things called whips?

MAY. Yes, my lord, if it please your grace.

GLO. Then send for one presently.

MAY. Sirrah, go fetch the beadle hither straight.

[*Exit an Attendant.*]

GLO. Now fetch me a stool hither by and by. [*A stool brought out.*] Now, sirrah, if you mean to save yourself from whipping, leap me over this stool and run away.

SIMP. Alas, master, I am not able to stand alone; you go about to torture me in vain.

*Re-enter Attendant, with the Beadle.*

GLO. Well, sir, we must have you find your legs. Sirrah beadle, whip him till he leap over that same stool.

BEAD. I will, my lord.—Come on, sirrah; off with your doublet quickly.

SIMP. Alas, master, what shall I do? I am not able to stand.

*[After the Beadle hath hit him once, he leaps over the stool, and runs away; and the people follow, and cry, A Miracle!]*

K. HEN. O God, seest thou this, and bear'st so long?

Q. MAR. It made me laugh to see the villain run.

GLO. Follow the knave; and take this drab away.

WIFE. Alas, sir, we did it for pure need.

GLO. Let them be whipped through every market town, till they come to Berwick, from whence they came.

*[Exeunt Mayor, Beadle, Wife, &c.]*

CAR. Duke Humphrey has done a miracle to-day.

SUF. True; made the lame to leap, and fly away.

GLO. But you have done more miracles than I;  
You made in a day, my lord, whole towns to fly.

*Enter BUCKINGHAM*

K. HEN. What tidings with our cousin Buckingham?

BUCK. Such as my heart doth tremble to unfold.

A sort of naughty persons, lewdly bent,—  
Under the countenance and confederacy  
Of lady Eleanor, the protector's wife,  
The ringleader and head of all this rout,—  
Have practis'd dangerously against your state,  
Dealing with witches, and with conjurers:  
Whom we have apprehended in the fact;  
Raising up wicked spirits from under ground,  
Demanding of king Henry's life and death,  
And other of your highness' privy council,  
As more at large your grace shall understand.

CAR. And so, my lord protector, by this means  
Your lady is forthcoming yet at London.



This news, I think, hath turn'd your weapon's edge;  
'T is like, my lord, you will not keep your hour.

[*Aside to GLOSTER.*]

GLO. Ambitious churchman, leave to afflict my heart!  
Sorrow and grief have vanquish'd all my powers:  
And vanquish'd as I am I yield to thee,  
Or to the meanest groom.

K. HEN. O God, what mischiefs work the wicked ones;  
Heaping confusion on their own heads thereby!

Q. MAR. Gloster, see here the tainture of thy nest;  
And look thyself be faultless, thou wert best.

GLO. Madam, for myself, to Heaven I do appeal,  
How I have lov'd my king and commonweal:  
And for my wife, I know not how it stands;  
Sorry I am to hear what I have heard;  
Noble she is; but if she have forgot  
Honour and virtue, and convers'd with such  
As, like to pitch, defile nobility,  
I banish her my bed and company;  
And give her as a prey to law, and shame,  
That hath dishonour'd Gloster's honest name.

K. HEN. Well, for this night we will repose us here:  
To-morrow toward London, back again,  
To look into this business thoroughly,  
And call these foul offenders to their answers;  
And poise the cause in justice' equal scales,  
Whose beam stands sure, whose rightful cause prevails.

[*Flourish. Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—London. *The Duke of York's Garden.*

*Enter YORK, SALISBURY, and WARWICK.*

YORK. Now, my good lords of Salisbury and Warwick,  
Our simple supper ended, give me leave,  
In this close walk, to satisfy myself,  
In craving your opinion of my title,  
Which is infallible, to England's crown.

SAL. My lord, I long to hear it at full.

WAR. Sweet York, begin: and if thy claim be good,  
The Nevils are thy subjects to command.

YORK. Then thus—

Edward the third, my lords, had seven sons:  
The first, Edward the Black Prince, prince of Wales;  
The second, William of Hatfield; and the third,  
Lionel, duke of Clarence; next to whom  
Was John of Gaunt, the duke of Lancaster:  
The fifth was Edmond Langley, duke of York;  
The sixth was Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloster;  
William of Windsor was the seventh, and last.  
Edward, the Black Prince, died before his father;  
And left behind him Richard, his only son,  
Who, after Edward the third's death, reign'd as king;  
Till Henry Bolingbroke, duke of Lancaster,  
The eldest son and heir of John of Gaunt,  
Crown'd by the name of Henry the fourth,  
Seiz'd on the realm; depos'd the rightful king;  
Sent his poor queen to France from whence she came,  
And him to Pomfret; where, as all you know,  
Harmless Richard was murdered traitorously.

WAR. Father, the duke hath told the truth;  
Thus got the house of Lancaster the crown.

YORK. Which now they hold by force, and not by right;  
For Richard, the first son's heir, being dead,  
The issue of the next son should have reign'd.

SAL. But William of Hatfield died without an heir.

YORK. The third son, duke of Clarence, (from whose line  
I claim the crown,) had issue—Philippe, a daughter,  
Who married Edmund Mortimer, earl of March:  
Edmund had issue—Roger, earl of March:  
Roger had issue—Edmund, Anne, and Eleanor.

SAL. This Edmund, in the reign of Bolingbroke,  
As I have read, laid claim unto the crown:  
And but for Owen Glendower had been king,  
Who kept him in captivity till he died.  
But, to the rest.

YORK. His eldest sister, Anne,  
My mother, being heir unto the crown,  
Married Richard earl of Cambridge; who was son  
To Edmond Langley, Edward the third's fifth son.  
By her I claim the kingdom: she was heir

To Roger earl of March ; who was the son  
Of Edmund Mortimer ; who married Philippe,  
Sole daughter unto Lionel duke of Clarence ;  
So if the issue of the elder son  
Succeed before the younger, I am king.

WAR. What plain proceedings are more plain than this ?  
Henry doth claim the crown from John of Gau ,  
The fourth son ; York claims it from the third.  
Till Lionel's issue fails his should not reign :  
It fails not yet ; but flourishes in thee,  
And in thy sons, fair slips of such a stock.  
Then, father Salisbury, kneel we together ;  
And, in this private plot, be we the first  
That shall salute our rightful sovereign,  
With honour of his birthright to the crown.

BOTH. Long live our sovereign Richard, England's king !

YORK. We thank you, lords. But I am not your king  
Till I be crown'd ; and that my sword be stain'd  
With heart-blood of the house of Lancaster ;  
And that 's not suddenly to be perform'd ;  
But with advice, and silent secrecy.  
Do you, as I do, in these dangerous days,  
Wink at the duke of Suffolk's insolence,  
At Beaufort's pride, at Somerset's ambition,  
At Buckingham, and all the crew of them,  
Till they have snar'd the shepherd of the flock,  
That virtuous prince, the good duke Humphrey :  
'T is that they seek ; and they, in seeking that,  
Shall find their deaths, if York can prophesy.

SAL. My lord, break we off ; we know your mind at full.

WAR. My heart assures me that the earl of Warwick  
Shall one day make the duke of York a king.

YORK. And, Nevil, this I do assure myself,—  
Richard shall live to make the earl of Warwick  
The greatest man in England but the king.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*The same. A Hall of Justice.*

*Trumpet sounded. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, GLOSTER, YORK, SUFFOLK, and SALISBURY; the DUCHESS OF GLOSTER, MARGERIE JOURDAIN, SOUTHWELL, HUME, and BOLINGBROKE, under guard.*

K. HEN. Stand forth, dame Eleanor Cobham, Gloster's wife:

In sight of God, and us, your guilt is great;  
Receive the sentence of the law, for sins  
Such as by God's book are adjudg'd to death.  
You four, from hence to prison back again;

[*To JOURDAIN, &c.*

From thence, unto the place of execution:  
The witch in Smithfield shall be burn'd to ashes,  
And you three shall be strangled on the gallows.  
You, madam, for you are more nobly born,  
Despoiled of your honour in your life,  
Shall, after three days' open penance done,  
Live in your country here in banishment,  
With sir John Stanley, in the isle of Man.

DUCH. Welcome is banishment, welcome were my death.

GLO. Eleanor, the law, thou seest, hath judged thee;  
I cannot justify whom the law condemns.—

[*Exeunt the DUCHESS, and the other prisoners, guarded.*

Mine eyes are full of tears, my heart of grief.  
Ah, Humphrey, this dishonour in thine age  
Will bring thy head with sorrow to the ground!  
I beseech your majesty give me leave to go;  
Sorrow would solace, and mine age would ease.

K. HEN. Stay, Humphrey duke of Gloster: ere thou go  
Give up thy staff; Henry will to himself  
Protector be: and God shall be my hope,  
My stay, my guide, and lantern to my feet;  
And go in peace, Humphrey; no less belov'd  
Than when thou wert protector to thy king.

Q. MAR. I see no reason why a king of years  
Should be to be protected like a child.

God and king Henry govern England's helm :  
Give up your staff, sir, and the king his realm.

GLO. My staff?—here, noble Henry, is my staff:  
As willingly do I the same resign,  
As e'er thy father Henry made it mine ;  
And even as willingly at thy feet I leave it,  
As others would ambitiously receive it.  
Farewell, good king: when I am dead and gone,  
May honourable peace attend thy throne. [Exit.

Q. MAR. Why, now is Henry king, and Margaret queen ;  
And Humphrey duke of Gloster scarce himself,  
That bears so shrewd a maim ; two pulls at once,—  
His lady banish'd, and a limb lopp'd off ;  
This staff of honour raught:—There let it stand,  
Where it best fits to be, in Henry's hand.

SUF. Thus droops this lofty pine, and hangs his sprays ;  
Thus Eleanor's pride dies in her youngest days.

YORK. Lords, let him go:—Please it your majesty,  
This is the day appointed for the combat ;  
And ready are the appellant and defendant,  
The armourer and his man, to enter the lists,  
So please your highness to behold the fight.

Q. MAR. Ay, good my lord ; for purposely therefore  
Left I the court, to see this quarrel tried.

K. HEN. O' God's name, see the lists and all things fit !  
Here let them end it, and God defend the right !

YORK. I never saw a fellow worse bested,  
Or more afraid to fight, than is the appellant,  
The servant of this armourer, my lords.

*Enter, on one side, HORNER, and his neighbours drinking to him so much that he is drunk; and he enters bearing his staff with a sand-bag fastened to it; a drum before him: at the other side, PETER, with a drum and a similar staff; accompanied by prentices drinking to him.*

1 NEIGH. Here, neighbour Horner, I drink to you in a cup of sack. And fear not, neighbour, you shall do well enough.

2 NEIGH. And here, neighbour, here's a cup of charneco.

3 NEIGH. And here's a pot of good double beer, neighbour; drink, and fear not your man.

HOB. Let it come, i' faith, and I'll pledge you all; and a fig for Peter!

1 PREN. Here, Peter, I drink to thee; and be not afraid.

2 PREN. Be merry, Peter, and fear not thy master: fight for credit of the prentices.

PETER. I thank you all: drink, and pray for me, I pray you; for I think I have taken my last draught in this world.—Here, Robin, an if I die I give thee my apron; and, Will, thou shalt have my hammer:—and here, Tom, take all the money that I have. O Lord, bless me, I pray God! for I am never able to deal with my master, he hath learnt so much fence already.

SAL. Come, leave your drinking, and fall to blows.—Sirrah, what's thy name?

PETER. Peter, forsooth.

SAL. Peter! what more?

PETER. Thump.

SAL. Thump! then see thou thump thy master well.

HOB. Masters, I am come hither, as it were, upon my man's instigation, to prove him a knave and myself an honest man: and touching the duke of York, I will take my death, I never meant him any ill, nor the king, nor the queen: And therefore, Peter, have at thee with a downright blow as Bevis of Southampton fell upon Ascapart.

YORK. Despatch;—this knave's tongue begins to double. Sound trumpets alarum to the combatants.

[*Alarum. They fight, and PETER strikes down his master.*

HOB. Hold, Peter, hold! I confess, I confess treason.

[*Dies.*

YORK. Take away his weapon:—Fellow, thank God, and the good wine in thy master's way.

PETER. O God! have I overcome mine enemies in this presence? O Peter, thou hast prevailed in right!

K. HEN. Go, take hence that traitor from our sight;  
For, by his death, we do perceive his guilt:  
And God, in justice, hath reveal'd to us  
The truth and innocence of this poor fellow,  
Which he had thought to have murther'd wrongfully.  
Come, fellow, follow us for thy reward.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE IV.—*The same. A Street.*

*Enter GLOSTER and Servants, in mourning cloaks.*

GLO. Thus, sometimes, hath the brightest day a cloud;  
And after summer evermore succeeds  
Barren winter, with his wrathful nipping cold:  
So cares and joys abound as seasons fleet.  
Sirs, what's o'clock?

SERV. Ten, my lord.

GLO. Ten is the hour that was appointed me,  
To watch the coming of my punish'd duchess;  
Uneath may she endure the flinty streets,  
To tread them with her tender-feeling feet.  
Sweet Nell, ill can thy noble mind abrook  
The abject people, gazing on thy face,  
With envious looks still laughing at thy shame,  
That erst did follow thy proud chariot wheels,  
When thou didst ride in triumph through the streets.  
But soft! I think she comes; and I'll prepare  
My tear-stain'd eyes to see her miseries.

*Enter the DUCHESS OF GLOSTER, in a white sheet, with papers pinned upon her back, her feet bare, and a taper burning in her hand; SIR JOHN STANLEY, a Sheriff, and Officers.*

SERV. So please your grace, we'll take her from the sheriff.

GLO. No, stir not, for your lives; let her pass by.

DUCH. Come you, my lord, to see my open shame?  
Now thou dost penance too. Look, how they gaze!  
See, how the giddy multitude do point,  
And nod their heads, and throw their eyes on thee!  
Ah, Gloster, hide thee from their hateful looks:  
And in thy closet pent up rue my shame,  
And ban thine enemies, both mine and thine.

GLO. Be patient, gentle Nell; forget this grief.

DUCH. Ah, Gloster, teach me to forget myself:  
For, whilst I think I am thy married wife,  
And thou a prince, protector of this land,  
Methinks I should not thus be led along,  
Mail'd up in shame, with papers on my back;

And follow'd with a rabble, that rejoice  
To see my tears, and hear my deep-fet groans.  
The ruthless flint doth cut my tender feet;  
And when I start the envious people laugh,  
And bid me be advised how I tread.  
Ah, Humphrey, can I bear this shameful yoke?  
Trowest thou that e'er I'll look upon the world;  
Or count them happy that enjoy the sun?  
No: dark shall be my light, and night my day;  
To think upon my pomp shall be my hell.  
Sometime I'll say, I am duke Humphrey's wife;  
And he a prince, and ruler of the land:  
Yet so he rul'd, and such a prince he was,  
As he stood by, whilst I, his forlorn duchess,  
Was made a wonder, and a pointing stock,  
To every idle rascal follower.  
But be thou mild, and blush not at my shame;  
Nor stir at nothing, till the axe of death  
Hang over thee, as sure it shortly will.  
For Suffolk,—he that can do all in all  
With her, that hateth thee, and hates us all,—  
And York, and impious Beaufort, that false priest,  
Have all lim'd bushes to betray thy wings,  
And, fly thou how thou canst, they'll tangle thee:  
But fear not thou until thy foot be snar'd,  
Nor never seek prevention of thy foes.

GLO. Ah, Nell, forbear; thou aimest all awry;  
I must offend before I be attainted:  
And had I twenty times so many foes,  
And each of them had twenty times their power,  
All these could not procure me any scath,  
So long as I am loyal, true, and crimeless.  
Wouldst have me rescue thee from this reproach?  
Why, yet thy scandal were not wip'd away,  
But I in danger for the breach of law.  
Thy greatest help is quiet, gentle Nell:  
I pray thee, sort thy heart to patience;  
These few days' wonder will be quickly worn.



*Enter a Herald.*

HER. I summon your grace to his majesty's parliament, holden at Bury the first of this next month.

GLO. And my consent ne'er ask'd herein before!  
This is close dealing.—Well, I will be there. [*Exit Herald.*  
My Nell, I take my leave:—and, master sheriff,  
Let not her penance exceed the king's commission.

SHER. An't please your grace, here my commission stays:  
And sir John Stanley is appointed now  
To take her with him to the isle of Man.

GLO. Must you, sir John, protect my lady here?

STAN. So am I given in charge, may't please your grace.

GLO. Entreat her not the worse, in that I pray  
You use her well:  
The world may laugh again; and I may live  
To do you kindness, if you do it her.  
And so, sir John, farewell.

DUCH. What, gone, my lord; and bid me not farewell?

GLO. Witness my tears, I cannot stay to speak.

[*Exeunt GLO. and Servants.*

DUCH. Art thou gone too? All comfort go with thee,  
For none abides with me: my joy is—death;  
Death, at whose name I oft have been afeard,  
Because I wish'd this world's eternity.—  
Stanley, I prithee, go, and take me hence;  
I care not whither, for I beg no favour,  
Only convey me where thou art commanded.

STAN. Why, madam, that is to the isle of Man;  
There to be used according to your state.

DUCH. That's bad enough, for I am but reproach:  
And shall I then be used reproachfully?

STAN. Like to a duchess, and duke Humphrey's lady,  
According to that state you shall be used.

DUCH. Sheriff, farewell, and better than I fare;  
Although thou hast been conduct of my shame!

SHER. It is my office; and, madam, pardon me.

DUCH. Ay, ay, farewell; thy office is discharg'd.  
Come, Stanley, shall we go?

STAN. Madam, your penance done, throw off this sheet;

And go we to attire you for our journey.

DUCH. My shame will not be shifted with my sheet;  
No, it will hang upon my richest robes,  
And show itself, attire me how I can.

Go, lead the way; I long to see my prison.

[*Exeunt.*]

## ACT III.

### SCENE I.—*The Abbey at Bury.*

*Enter to the Parliament, KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, CARDINAL BEAUFORT, SUFFOLK, YORK, BUCKINGHAM, and others.*

K. HEN. I muse, my lord of Gloster is not come:  
'T is not his wont to be the hindmost man,  
Whate'er occasion keeps him from us now.

Q. MAR. Can you not see? or will you not observe  
The strangeness of his alter'd countenance?  
With what a majesty he bears himself;  
How insolent of late he is become,  
How proud, peremptory, and unlike himself?  
We know the time since he was mild and affable;  
And, if we did but glance a far-off look,  
Immediately he was upon his knee,  
That all the court admir'd him for submission;  
But meet him now, and, be it in the morn,  
When every one will give the time of day,  
He knits his brow, and shows an angry eye,  
And passeth by with stiff unbowed knee,  
Disdaining duty that to us belongs.  
Small curs are not regarded when they grin;  
But great men tremble when the lion roars;  
And Humphrey is no little man in England.  
First, note, that he is near you in descent;  
And should you fall he is the next will mount.  
Me seemeth then, it is no policy,—

Respecting what a rancorous mind he bears,  
And his advantage following your decease,—  
That he should come about your royal person,  
Or be admitted to your highness' council.  
By flattery hath he won the commons' hearts;  
And, when he please to make commotion,  
'T is to be fear'd they all will follow him.  
Now 't is the spring, and weeds are shallow-rooted;  
Suffer them now, and they 'll o'ergrow the garden,  
And choke the herbs for want of husbandry.  
The reverent care I bear unto my lord  
Made me collect these dangers in the duke.  
If it be fond, call it a woman's fear;  
Which fear if better reasons can supplant,  
I will subscribe, and say—I wrong'd the duke.  
My lord of Suffolk,—Buckingham,—and York,—  
Reprove my allegation, if you can;  
Or else conclude my words effectual.

SUF. Well hath your highness seen into this duke;  
And had I first been put to speak my mind,  
I think I should have told your grace's tale.  
The duchess, by his subornation,  
Upon my life, began her devilish practices:  
Or, if he were not privy to those faults,  
Yet, by reputing of his high descent,  
(As next the king he was successive heir,)  
And such high vaunts of his nobility,  
Did instigate the bedlam brain-sick duchess,  
By wicked means to frame our sovereign's fall.  
Smooth runs the water where the brook is deep;  
And in his simple show he harbours treason.  
The fox barks not when he would steal the lamb.  
No, no, my sovereign; Gloster is a man  
Unsounded yet, and full of deep deceit.

CAR. Did he not, contrary to form of law,  
Devise strange deaths for small offences done?

YORK. And did he not, in his protectorship,  
Levy great sums of money through the realm,  
For soldiers' pay in France, and never sent it?  
By means whereof the towns each day revolted.

BUCK. Tut! These are petty faults to faults unknown,  
Which time will bring to light in smooth duke Humphrey.

K. HEN. My lords, at once. The care you have of us,  
To mow down thorns that would annoy our foot,  
Is worthy praise: But shall I speak my conscience?  
Our kinsman Gloster is as innocent  
From meaning treason to our royal person,  
As is the sucking lamb, or harmless dove:  
The duke is virtuous, mild; and too well given,  
To dream on evil, or to work my downfall.

Q. MAR. Ah, what's more dangerous than this fond  
affiance!

Seems he a dove? his feathers are but borrow'd,  
For he's disposed as the hateful raven.  
Is he a lamb? his skin is surely lent him,  
For he's inclin'd as are the ravenous wolves.  
Who cannot steal a shape that means deceit?  
Take heed, my lord; the welfare of us all  
Hangs on the cutting short that fraudulent man.

*Enter SOMERSET.*

SOM. All health unto my gracious sovereign!

K. HEN. Welcome, lord Somerset. What news from  
France?

SOM. That all your interest in those territories  
Is utterly bereft you; all is lost.

K. HEN. Cold news, lord Somerset: But God's will be  
done!

YORK. Cold news for me; for I had hope of France,  
As firmly as I hope for fertile England.  
Thus are my blossoms blasted in the bud,  
And caterpillars eat my leaves away:  
But I will remedy this gear ere long,  
Or sell my title for a glorious grave.

[*Aside.*

*Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. All happiness unto my lord the king!  
Pardon, my liege, that I have stay'd so long.

SUF. Nay, Gloster, know that thou art come too soon,  
Unless thou wert more loyal than thou art:

I do arrest thee of high treason here.

GLO. Well, Suffolk's duke, thou shalt not see me blush,  
Nor change my countenance for this arrest;  
A heart unspotted is not easily daunted.  
The purest spring is not so free from mud  
As I am clear from treason to my sovereign:  
Who can accuse me? wherein am I guilty?

YORK. 'T is thought, my lord, that you took bribes of  
France,  
And, being protector, stay'd the soldiers' pay;  
By means whereof his highness hath lost France.

GLO. Is it but thought so? What are they that think it?  
I never robb'd the soldiers of their pay,  
Nor ever had one penny bribe from France.  
So help me God, as I have watch'd the night,—  
Ay, night by night,—in studying good for England!  
That doit that e'er I wrested from the king,  
Or any groat I hoarded to my use,  
Be brought against me at my trial day!  
No! many a pound of mine own proper store,  
Because I would not tax the needy commons,  
Have I dispersed to the garrisons,  
And never ask'd for restitution.

CAR. It serves you well, my lord, to say so much.

GLO. I say no more than truth, so help me God!

YORK. In your protectorship, you did devise  
Strange tortures for offenders, never heard of,  
That England was defam'd by tyranny.

GLO. Why, 't is well known, that whiles I was protector  
Pity was all the fault that was in me;  
For I should melt at an offender's tears,  
And lowly words were ransom for their fault.  
Unless it were a bloody murderer,  
Or foul felonious thief, that fleec'd poor passengers,  
I never gave them condign punishment:  
Murder, indeed, that bloody sin, I tortur'd  
Above the felon, or what trespass else.

SUF. My lord, these faults are easy-quickly answer'd:  
But mightier crimes are laid unto your charge,  
Whereof you cannot easily purge yourself.

I do arrest you in his highness' name;  
And here commit you to my lord cardinal  
To keep, until your further time of trial.

K. HEN. My lord of Gloster, 't is my special hope,  
That you will clear yourself from all suspects;  
My conscience tells me you are innocent.

GLO. Ah, gracious lord, these days are dangerous.  
Virtue is chok'd with foul ambition,  
And charity chas'd hence by rancour's hand;  
Foul subornation is predominant,  
And equity exil'd your highness' land.  
I know their complot is to have my life;  
And, if my death might make this island happy,  
And prove the period of their tyranny,  
I would expend it with all willingness:  
But mine is made the prologue to their play;  
For thousands more, that yet suspect no peril,  
Will not conclude their plotted tragedy.  
Beaufort's red sparkling eyes blab his heart's malice,  
And Suffolk's cloudy brow his stormy hate;  
Sharp Buckingham unburthens with his tongue  
The envious load that lies upon his heart;  
And dogged York, that reaches at the moon,  
Whose overweening arm I have pluck'd back,  
By false accuse doth level at my life:  
And you, my sovereign lady, with the rest  
Causeless have laid disgraces on my head;  
And, with your best endeavour, have stirr'd up  
My liefest liege to be mine enemy:  
Ay, all of you have laid your heads together.  
Myself had notice of your conventicles,  
And all to make away my guiltless life:  
I shall not want false witness to condemn me,  
Nor store of treasons to augment my guilt;  
The ancient proverb will be well effected,—  
A staff is quickly found to beat a dog.

CAR. My liege, his railing is intolerable:  
If those that care to keep your royal person  
From 'treason's secret knife, and traitors' rage,  
Be thus upbraided, chid, and rated at,

And the offender granted scope of speech,  
'T will make them cool in zeal unto your grace.

SUF. Hath he not twit our sovereign lady here,  
With ignominious words, though clerkly couch'd,  
As if she had suborned some to swear  
False allegations to o'erthrow his state?

Q. MAR. But I can give the loser leave to chide.

GLO. Far truer spoke than meant: I lose, indeed;—  
Beshrew the winners, for they play'd me false!  
And well such losers may have leave to speak.

BUCK. He 'll wrest the sense, and hold us here all day:  
Lord cardinal, he is your prisoner.

CAR. Sirs, take away the duke, and guard him sure.

GLO. Ah, thus king Henry throws away his crutch,  
Before his legs be firm to bear his body:  
Thus is the shepherd beaten from thy side,  
And wolves are gnarling who shall gnaw thee first.  
Ah, that my fear were false! ah, that it were!  
For, good king Henry, thy decay I fear.

[*Exeunt Attendants, with GLOSTER.*]

K. HEN. My lords, what to your wisdoms seemeth best,  
Do, or undo, as if ourself were here.

Q. MAR. What, will your highness leave the parliament?

K. HEN. Ay, Margaret; my heart is drown'd with grief,  
Whose flood begins to flow within mine eyes;  
My body round engirt with misery;  
For what 's more miserable than discontent?  
Ah, uncle Humphrey! in thy face I see  
The map of honour, truth, and loyalty;  
And yet, good Humphrey, is the hour to come,  
That e'er I prov'd thee false, or fear'd thy faith.  
What low'ring star now envies thy estate,  
That these great lords, and Margaret our queen,  
Do seek subversion of thy harmless life?  
Thou never didst them wrong, nor no man wrong:  
And as the butcher takes away the calf,  
And binds the wretch, and beats it when it strays,  
Bearing it to the bloody slaughter-house;  
Even so, remorseless, have they borne him hence.  
And as the dam runs lowing up and down,

Looking the way her harmless young one went,  
And can do nought but wail her darling's loss;  
Even so myself bewails good Gloster's case,  
With sad unhelpful tears; and with dimm'd eyes  
Look after him, and cannot do him good;  
So mighty are his vowed enemies.

His fortunes I will weep; and, 'twixt each groan,  
Say—"Who's a traitor, Gloster he is none."

[*Exit.*

Q. MAR. Free lords, cold snow melts with the sun's hot  
beams.

Henry my lord is cold in great affairs,  
Too full of foolish pity: and Gloster's show  
Beguiles him, as the mournful crocodile  
With sorrow snares relenting passengers;  
Or as the snake, roll'd in a flowering bank,  
With shining checker'd slough, doth sting a child,  
That, for the beauty, thinks it excellent.  
Believe me, lords, were none more wise than I,  
(And yet, herein I judge mine own wit good,)  
This Gloster should be quickly rid the world,  
To rid us from the fear we have of him.

CAR. That he should die is worthy policy:  
But yet we want a colour for his death:  
'T is meet he be condemn'd by course of law.

SUF. But, in my mind, that were no policy:  
The king will labour still to save his life;  
The commons haply rise to save his life;  
And yet we have but trivial argument,  
More than mistrust, that shows him worthy death.

YORK. So that by this you would not have him die.

SUF. Ah, York, no man alive so fain as I.

YORK. 'T is York that hath more reason for his death.  
But, my lord cardinal, and you, my lord of Suffolk,—  
Say as you think, and speak it from your souls,—  
Were 't not all one, an empty eagle were set  
To guard the chicken from a hungry kite,  
As place duke Humphrey for the king's protector?

Q. MAR. So the poor chicken should be sure of death.

SUF. Madam, 't is true: and were 't not madness then,  
To make the fox surveyor of the fold?



Who being accus'd a crafty murtherer,  
His guilt should be but idly posted over,  
Because his purpose is not executed.  
No; let him die, in that he is a fox,  
By nature prov'd an enemy to the flock,  
(Before his chaps be stain'd with crimson blood,)  
As Humphrey, prov'd by reasons, to my liege.  
And do not stand on quilllets, how to slay him:  
Be it by gins, by snares, by subtilty,  
Sleeping or waking, 't is no matter how,  
So he be dead: for that is good deceit  
Which mates him first that first intends deceit.

Q. MAR. Thrice-noble Suffolk, 't is resolutely spoke.

SUF. Not resolute, except so much were done;  
For things are often spoke, and seldom meant:  
But, that my heart accordeth with my tongue,—  
Seeing the deed is meritorious,  
And to preserve my sovereign from his foe,—  
Say but the word, and I will be his priest.

CAR. But I would have him dead, my lord of Suffolk,  
Ere you can take due orders for a priest:  
Say, you consent, and censure well the deed,  
And I 'll provide his executioner,  
I tender so the safety of my liege.

SUF. Here is my hand, the deed is worthy doing.

Q. MAR. And so say I.

YORK. And I: and now we three have spoke it,  
It skills not greatly who impugns our doom.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. Great lords, from Ireland am I come amain,  
To signify, that rebels there are up,  
And put the Englishmen unto the sword:  
Send succours, lords, and stop the rage betime,  
Before the wound do grow incurable;  
For being green there is great hope of help.

CAR. A breach that craves a quick expedient stop!  
What counsel give you in this weighty cause?

YORK. That Somerset be sent as regent thither;

'T is meet that lucky ruler be employ'd;  
Witness the fortune he hath had in France.

SOM. If York, with all his far-fet policy,  
Had been the regent there instead of me,  
He never would have stay'd in France so long.

YORK. No, not to lose it all as thou hast done:  
I rather would have lost my life betimes,  
Than bring a burthen of dishonour home,  
By staying there so long, till all were lost.  
Show me one scar character'd on thy skin:  
Men's flesh preserv'd so whole, do seldom win.

Q. MAR. Nay then, this spark will prove a raging fire,  
If wind and fuel be brought to feed it with:  
No more, good York;—sweet Somerset, be still:  
Thy fortune, York, hadst thou been regent there,  
Might happily have prov'd far worse than his.

YORK. What, worse than naught? nay, then a shame take  
all!

SOM. And in the number, thee, that wishest shame!

CAR. My lord of York, try what your fortune is.  
The uncivil Kernes of Ireland are in arms,  
And temper clay with blood of Englishmen:  
To Ireland will you lead a band of men,  
Collected choicely, from each county some,  
And try your hap against the Irishmen?

YORK. I will, my lord, so please his majesty.

SUF. Why, our authority is his consent;  
And what we do establish he confirms:  
Ther noble York, take thou this task in hand.

YORK. I am content: Provide me soldiers, lords,  
While I take order for mine own affairs.

SUF. A charge, lord York, that I will see perform'd.  
But now return we to the false duke Humphrey.

CAR. No more of him; for I will deal with him,  
That henceforth he shall trouble us no more.  
And so break off; the day is almost spent:  
Lord Suffolk, you and I must talk of that event.

YORK. My lord of Suffolk, within fourteen days,  
At Bristol I expect my soldiers;  
For there I'll ship them all for Ireland.

SUF. I'll see it truly done, my lord of York.

*[Exeunt all but YORK.]*

YORK. Now, York, or never, steel thy fearful thoughts,  
And change misdoubt to resolution:  
Be that thou hop'st to be; or what thou art  
Resign to death, it is not worth the enjoying:  
Let pale-fac'd fear keep with the mean-born man,  
And find no harbour in a royal heart.  
Faster than spring-time showers comes thought on thought;  
And not a thought but thinks on dignity.  
My brain, more busy than the labouring spider,  
Weaves tedious snares to trap mine enemies.  
Well, nobles, well, 't is politicly done,  
To send me packing with an host of men:  
I fear me you but warm the starved snake,  
Who, cherish'd in your breasts, will sting your hearts.  
'T was men I lack'd, and you will give them me:  
I take it kindly; yet, be well assur'd  
You put sharp weapons in a madman's hands.  
Whiles I in Ireland nourish a mighty band,  
I will stir up in England some black storm  
Shall blow ten thousand souls to heaven or hell:  
And this fell tempest shall not cease to rage  
Until the golden circuit on my head,  
Like to the glorious sun's transparent beams,  
Do calm the fury of this mad-bred flaw.  
And, for a minister of my intent,  
I have seduc'd a headstrong Kentishman,  
John Cade of Ashford,  
To make commotion, as full well he can,  
Under the title of John Mortimer.  
In Ireland have I seen this stubborn Cade  
Oppose himself against a troop of Kernes;  
And fought so long, till that his thighs with darts  
Were almost like a sharp-quill'd porcupine:  
And, in the end being rescued, I have seen  
Him caper upright like a wild Morisco,  
Shaking the bloody darts, as he his bells.  
Full often, like a shag-hair'd crafty Kerne,  
Hath he conversed with the enemy;

And undiscover'd come to me again,  
And given me notice of their villainies.  
This devil here shall be my substitute;  
For that John Mortimer, which now is dead,  
In face, in gait, in speech, he doth resemble:  
By this I shall perceive the commons' mind,  
How they affect the house and claim of York.  
Say, he be taken, rack'd, and tortured;  
I know no pain they can inflict upon him  
Will make him say—I mov'd him to those arms.  
Say, that he thrive, (as 't is great like he will,)  
Why, then from Ireland come I with my strength,  
And reap the harvest which that rascal sow'd:  
For, Humphrey being dead, as he shall be,  
And Henry put apart, the next for me. [Exit.

SCENE II.—Bury. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter certain Murtherers, hastily.*

1 MUR. Run to my lord of Suffolk; let him know  
We have despatch'd the duke, as he commanded.

2 MUR. O, that it were to do!—What have we done?  
Didst ever hear a man so penitent?

*Enter SUFFOLK.*

1 MUR. Here comes my lord.

SUF. Now, sirs, have you despatch'd this thing?

1 MUR. Ay, my good lord, he's dead.

SUF. Why, that's well said. Go, get you to my house;  
I will reward you for this venturous deed.  
The king and all the peers are here at hand:—  
Have you laid fair the bed? are all things well,  
According as I gave directions?

1 MUR. 'T is, my good lord.

SUF. Away, be gone!

*[Exeunt Murtherers.]*

*Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, CARDINAL BEAUFORT,  
SOMERSET, Lords, and others.*

K. HEN. Go, call our uncle to our presence straight;  
Say, we intend to try his grace to-day,

If he be guilty, as 't is published.

SUF., I'll call him presently, my noble lord. [*Exit.*]

K. HEN. Lords, take your places:—And, I pray you all,  
Proceed no straiter 'gainst our uncle Gloster,  
Than from true evidence, of good esteem,  
He be approv'd in practice culpable.

Q. MAR. God forbid any malice should prevail,  
That faultless may condemn a nobleman!  
Pray God he may acquit him of suspicion!

K. HEN. I thank thee, Margaret; these words content me  
much.—

*Re-enter SUFFOLK.*

How now? why look'st thou pale? why tremblest thou?  
Where is our uncle? what's the matter, Suffolk?

SUF. Dead in his bed, my lord; Gloster is dead.

Q. MAR. Marry, God forefend!

CAR. God's secret judgment:—I did dream to-night  
The duke was dumb, and could not speak a word.

[*The KING swoons.*]

Q. MAR. How fares my lord?—Help, lords! the king is  
dead.

SOM. Rear up his body; wring him by the nose.

Q. MAR. Run, go, help, help!—O Henry, ope thine eyes!

SUF. He doth revive again:—Madam, be patient.

K. HEN. O heavenly God!

Q. MAR. How fares my gracious lord

SUF. Comfort, my sovereign! gracious Henry, comfort!

K. HEN. What, doth my lord of Suffolk comfort me?

Came he right now to sing a raven's note,  
Whose dismal tune bereft my vital powers;  
And thinks he that the chirping of a wren,  
By crying comfort from a hollow breast,  
Can chase away the first-conceived sound?  
Hide not thy poison with such sugar'd words.  
Lay not thy hands on me; forbear, I say;  
Their touch affrights me as a serpent's sting.  
Thou baleful messenger, out of my sight!  
Upon thy eyeballs murtherous tyranny  
Sits in grim majesty, to fright the world.

Look not upon me, for thine eyes are wounding:  
Yet do not go away:—Come, basilisk,  
And kill the innocent gazer with thy sight:  
For in the shade of death I shall find joy;  
In life but double death, now Gloster's dead.

Q. MAR. Why do you rate my lord of Suffolk thus?  
Although the duke was enemy to him,  
Yet he, most Christianlike, laments his death;  
And for myself, foe as he was to me,  
Might liquid tears, or heart-offending groans,  
Or blood-consuming sighs, recall his life,  
I would be blind with weeping, sick with groans,  
Look pale as primrose with blood-drinking sighs,  
And all to have the noble duke alive.  
What know I how the world may deem of me?  
For it is known we were but hollow friends;  
It may be judg'd I made the duke away:  
So shall my name with slander's tongue be wounded,  
And princes' courts be fill'd with my reproach.  
This get I by his death: Ah me, unhappy!  
To be a queen, and crown'd with infamy!

K. HEN. Ah, woe is me for Gloster, wretched man!

Q. MAR. Be woe for me, more wretched than he is.  
What, dost thou turn away, and hide thy face?  
I am no loathsome leper, look on me.  
What, art thou like the adder waxen deaf?  
Be poisonous too, and kill thy forlorn queen.  
Is all thy comfort shut in Gloster's tomb?  
Why, then dame Margaret was ne'er thy joy:  
Erect his statue then, and worship it,  
And make my image but an alehouse sign.  
Was I for this nigh wreck'd upon the sea?  
And twice by awkward wind from England's bank  
Drove back again unto my native clime?  
What boded this, but well-forewarning wind  
Did seem to say,—Seek not a scorpion's nest,  
Nor set no footing on this unkind shore?  
What did I then, but curs'd the gentle gusts,  
And he that loos'd them forth their brazen caves;  
And bid them blow towards England's blessed shore,

Or turn our stern upon a dreadful rock?  
Yet Æolus would not be a murtherer,  
But left that hateful office unto thee:  
The pretty vaulting sea refus'd to drown me;  
Knowing that thou wouldst have me drown'd on shore  
With tears as salt as sea, through thy unkindness:  
The splitting rocks cow'r'd in the sinking sands,  
And would not dash me with their ragged sides;  
Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they,  
Might in thy palace perish Margaret.  
As far as I could ken thy chalky cliffs,  
When from thy shore the tempest beat us back,  
I stood upon the hatches in the storm:  
And when the dusky sky began to rob  
My earnest-gaping sight of thy land's view,  
I took a costly jewel from my neck,—  
A heart it was, bound in with diamonds,—  
And threw it towards thy land;—the sea receiv'd it;  
And so I wish'd thy body might my heart:  
And even with this I lost fair England's view,  
And bid mine eyes be packing with my heart;  
And call'd them blind and dusky spectacles,  
For losing ken of Albion's wished coast.  
How often have I tempted Suffolk's tongue  
(The agent of thy foul inconstancy)  
To sit and witch me, as Ascanius did,  
When he to madding Dido would unfold  
His father's acts, commenc'd in burning Troy!  
Am I not witch'd like her? or thou not false like him?  
Ah me, I can no more! Die, Margaret!  
For Henry weeps that thou dost live so long.

*Noise within. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY.*

*The Commons press to the door.*

WAR. It is reported, mighty sovereign,  
That good duke Humphrey traitorously is murther'd  
By Suffolk and the cardinal Beaufort's means.  
The commons, like an angry hive of bees,  
That want their leader, scatter up and down

And care not who they sting in his revenge.  
Myself have calm'd their spleenful mutiny,  
Until they hear the order of his death.

K. HEN. That he is dead, good Warwick, 't is too true;  
But how he died, God knows, not Henry:  
Enter his chamber, view his breathless corpse,  
And comment then upon his sudden death.

WAR. That shall I do, my liege:—Stay, Salisbury,  
With the rude multitude, till I return.

[WARWICK goes into an inner room, and  
SALISBURY retires.

K. HEN. O Thou that judgest all things, stay my thoughts;  
My thoughts, that labour to persuade my soul  
Some violent hands were laid on Humphrey's life!  
If my suspect be false, forgive me, God;  
For judgment only doth belong to thee!  
Fain would I go to chafe his paly lips  
With twenty thousand kisses, and to drain  
Upon his face an ocean of salt tears;  
To tell my love unto his dumb deaf trunk,  
And with my fingers feel his hand unfeeling:  
But all in vain are these mean obsequies;  
And to survey his dead and earthy image,  
What were it but to make my sorrow greater?

*The folding doors of an inner chamber are thrown open, and  
GLOSTER is discovered dead in his bed: WARWICK and  
others standing by it.*

WAR. Come hither, gracious sovereign, view this body.

K. HEN. That is, to see how deep my grave is made;  
For with his soul fled all my worldly solace:  
For seeing him, I see my life in death.

WAR. As surely as my soul intends to live  
With that dread King, that took our state upon him  
To free us from his Father's wrathful curse,  
I do believe that violent hands were laid  
Upon the life of this thrice-famed duke.

SUF. A dreadful oath, sworn with a solemn tongue!  
What instance gives lord Warwick for his vow?

WAR. See, how the blood is settled in his face!



Oft have I seen a timely-parted ghost,  
Of ashy semblance, meagre, pale, and bloodless,  
Being all descended to the labouring heart;  
Who, in the conflict that it holds with death,  
Attracts the same for aidance 'gainst the enemy;  
Which with the heart there cools, and ne'er returneth  
To blush and beautify the cheek again.  
But see, his face is black, and full of blood;  
His eyeballs further out than when he liv'd,  
Staring full ghastly like a strangled man:  
His hair uprear'd, his nostrils stretch'd with struggling;  
His hands abroad display'd, as one that grasp'd  
And tugg'd for life, and was by strength subdued.  
Look on the sheets, his hair, you see, is sticking;  
His well-proportion'd beard made rough and rugged,  
Like to the summer's corn by tempest lodg'd.  
It cannot be but he was murther'd here;  
The least of all these signs were probable.

SUF. Why, Warwick, who should do the duke to death?  
Myself and Beaufort had him in protection;  
And we, I hope, sir, are no murtherers.

WAR. But both of you were vow'd duke Humphrey's foes;  
And you, forsooth, had the good duke to keep:  
'T is like you would not feast him like a friend;  
And 't is well seen he found an enemy.

Q. MAR. Then you, belike, suspect these noblemen  
As guilty of duke Humphrey's timeless death.

WAR. Who finds the heifer dead, and bleeding fresh,  
And sees fast by a butcher with an axe,  
But will suspect 't was he that made the slaughter?  
Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest,  
But may imagine how the bird was dead,  
Although the kite soar with unblooded beak?  
Even so suspicious is this tragedy.

Q. MAR. Are you the butcher, Suffolk; where's your  
knife?

Is Beaufort term'd a kite; where are his talons?

SUF. I wear no knife to slaughter sleeping men;  
But here 's a vengeful sword, rusted with ease,  
That shall be scoured in his rancorous heart

That slanders me with murther's crimson badge:  
Say, if thou dar'st, proud lord of Warwickshire,  
That I am faulty in duke Humphrey's death.

[*Exeunt* CARDINAL, SOMERSET, and others.

WAR. What dares not Warwick, if false Suffolk dare him?

Q. MAR. He dares not calm his contumelious spirit,  
Nor cease to be an arrogant controller,  
Though Suffolk dare him twenty thousand times.

WAR. Madam, be still, with reverence may I say;  
For every word you speak in his behalf  
Is slander to your royal dignity.

SUF. Blunt-witted lord, ignoble in demeanour!  
If ever lady wrong'd her lord so much,  
Thy mother took into her blameful bed  
Some stern untutor'd churl, and noble stock  
Was graft with crab-tree slip; whose fruit thou art,  
And never of the Nevils' noble race.

WAR. But that the guilt of murther bucklers thee,  
And I should rob the deathsman of his fee,  
Quitting thee thereby of ten thousand shames,  
And that my sovereign's presence makes me mild,  
I would, false murtherous coward, on thy knee  
Make thee beg pardon for thy passed speech,  
And say—It was thy mother that thou meant'st,  
That thou thyself wast born in bastardy:  
And after all this fearful homage done,  
Give thee thy hire, and send thy soul to hell,  
Pernicious bloodsucker of sleeping men!

SUF. Thou shalt be waking while I shed thy blood,  
If from this presence thou dar'st go with me.

WAR. Away even now, or I will drag thee hence:  
Unworthy though thou art, I'll cope with thee,  
And do some service to duke Humphrey's ghost.

[*Exeunt* SUFFOLK and WARWICK.

K. HEN. What stronger breastplate than a heart untainted!

Thrice is he arm'd that hath his quarrel just;  
And he but naked, though lock'd up in steel,  
Whose conscience with injustice is corrupted.

[*A noise within.*

Q. MAR. What noise is this?

*Re-enter SUFFOLK and WARWICK, with their weapons drawn.*

K. HEN. Why, how now, lords? your wrathful weapons  
drawn

Here in our presence? dare you be so bold?—

Why, what tumultuous clamour have we here?

SUF. The traitorous Warwick, with the men of Bury,  
Set all upon me, mighty sovereign.

*Noise of a crowd within. Re-enter SALISBURY.*

SAL. Sirs, stand apart; the king shall know your mind.—

*[Speaking to those within.]*

Dread lord, the commons send you word by me,  
Unless lord Suffolk straight be done to death,  
Or banished fair England's territories,  
They will by violence tear him from your palace,  
And torture him with grievous ling'ring death.  
They say, by him the good duke Humphrey died;  
They say, in him they fear your highness' death;  
And mere instinct of love, and loyalty,—  
Free from a stubborn opposite intent,  
As being thought to contradict your liking,—  
Makes them thus forward in his banishment.  
They say, in care of your most royal person,  
That, if your highness should intend to sleep,  
And charge that no man should disturb your rest,  
In pain of your dislike, or pain of death;  
Yet, notwithstanding such a strait edict,  
Were there a serpent seen, with forked tongue,  
That slily glided towards your majesty,  
It were but necessary you were wak'd;  
Lest, being suffer'd in that harmful slumber,  
The mortal worm might make the sleep eternal:  
And therefore do they cry, though you forbid,  
That they will guard you whe'r you will or no,  
From such fell serpents as false Suffolk is;  
With whose envenomed and fatal sting,  
Your loving uncle, twenty times his worth,  
They say, is shamefully bereft of life.

COMMONS. [*Within.*] An answer from the king, my lord of Salisbury.

SUF. 'T is like, the commons, rude unpolish'd hinds,  
Could send such message to their sovereign:  
But you, my lord, were glad to be employ'd,  
To show how quaint an orator you are:  
But all the honour Salisbury hath won,  
Is, that he was the lord ambassador,  
Sent from a sort of tinkers to the king.

COMMONS. [*Within.*] An answer from the king, or we will all break in.

K. HEN. Go, Salisbury, and tell them all from me,  
I thank them for their tender loving care;  
And had I not been 'cited so by them,  
Yet did I purpose as they do entreat;  
For sure, my thoughts do hourly prophesy  
Mischance unto my state by Suffolk's means.  
And therefore, by His majesty I swear,  
Whose far unworthy deputy I am,  
He shall not breathe infection in this air  
But three days longer, on the pain of death.

[*Exit SALISBURY.*]

Q. MAR. O Henry, let me plead for gentle Suffolk!

K. HEN. Ungentle queen, to call him gentle Suffolk.  
No more, I say; if thou dost plead for him  
Thou wilt but add increase unto my wrath.  
Had I but said, I would have kept my word;  
But when I swear, it is irrevocable:  
If, after three days' space, thou here be'st found  
On any ground that I am ruler of,  
The world shall not be ransom for thy life.  
Come, Warwick, come, good Warwick, go with me;  
I have great matters to impart to thee.

[*Exeunt KING HENRY, WARWICK, Lords, &c.*]

Q. MAR. Mischance and sorrow go along with you!  
Heart's discontent, and sour affliction,  
Be playfellows to keep you company!  
There's two of you; the devil make a third!  
And threefold vengeance tend upon your steps!

SUF. Cease, gentle queen, these execrations,

And let thy Suffolk take his heavy leave.

Q. MAR. Fie, coward woman, and soft-hearted wretch!  
Hast thou not spirit to curse thine enemies?

SUF. A plague upon them! wherefore should I curse them?

Would curses kill, as doth the mandrake's groan,  
I would invent as bitter searching terms,  
As curst, as harsh, and horrible to hear,  
Deliver'd strongly through my fixed teeth,  
With full as many signs of deadly hate,  
As lean-fac'd Envy in her loathsome cave:  
My tongue should stumble in mine earnest words;  
Mine eyes should sparkle like the beaten flint;  
My hair be fix'd on end, as one distract;  
Ay, every joint should seem to curse and ban:  
And even now my burthen'd heart would break,  
Should I not curse them. Poison be their drink!  
Gall, worse than gall, the daintiest that they taste!  
Their sweetest shade a grove of cypress-trees!  
Their chiefest prospect murdering basilisks!  
Their softest touch as smart as lizards' stings!  
Their music frightful as the serpents' hiss;  
And boding screech-owls make the concert full!  
All the foul terrors in dark-seated hell—

Q. MAR. Enough, sweet Suffolk; thou torment'st thyself;  
And these dread curses, like the sun 'gainst glass,  
Or like an overcharged gun, recoil,  
And turn the force of them upon thyself.

SUF. You bade me ban, and will you bid me leave?  
Now, by the ground that I am banish'd from,  
Well could I curse away a winter's night,  
Though standing naked on a mountain top  
Where biting cold would never let grass grow,  
And think it but a minute spent in sport.

Q. MAR. O, let me entreat thee, cease! Give me thy hand,  
That I may dew it with my mournful tears;  
Nor let the rain of heaven wet this place,  
To wash away my woeful monuments.  
O, could this kiss be printed in thy hand, [*Kisses his hand.*  
That thou mightst think upon these by the seal,

Through whom a thousand sighs are breath'd for thee! ,  
So, get thee gone, that I may know my grief;  
'T is but surmis'd whilst thou art standing by,  
As one that surfeits thinking on a want.  
I will repeal thee, or, be well assur'd,  
Adventure to be banished myself:  
And banished I am, if but from thee.  
Go, speak not to me; even now be gone.—  
O, go not yet!—Even thus two friends condemn'd  
Embrace, and kiss, and take ten thousand leaves,  
Loth'er a hundred times to part than die.  
Yet now farewell; and farewell life with thee!

SUF. Thus is poor Suffolk ten times banished,  
Once by the king, and three times thrice by thee.  
'T is not the land I care for, wert thou thence;  
A wilderness is populous enough,  
So Suffolk had thy heavenly company:  
For where thou art there is the world itself,  
With every several pleasure in the world;  
And where thou art not, desolation.  
I can no more:—Live thou to joy thy life;  
Myself no joy in nought, but that thou liv'st.

*Enter VAUX.*

Q. MAR. Whither goes Vaux so fast? what news, I  
prithee?

VAUX. To signify unto his majesty  
That cardinal Beaufort is at point of death:  
For suddenly a grievous sickness took him,  
That makes him gasp, and stare, and catch the air,  
Blaspheming God, and cursing men on earth.  
Sometime, he talks as if duke Humphrey's ghost  
Were by his side; sometime, he calls the king,  
And whispers to his pillow, as to him,  
The secrets of his overcharged soul:  
And I am sent to tell his majesty  
That even now he cries aloud for him.

Q. MAR. Go tell this heavy message to the king.

*[Exit VAUX.]*

Ah me! what is this world? what news are these?  
But wherefore grieve I at an hour's poor loss,  
Omitting Suffolk's exile, my soul's treasure?  
Why only, Suffolk, mourn I not for thee,  
And with the southern clouds contend in tears;  
Theirs for the earth's increase, mine for my sorrows?  
Now, get thee hence: The king, thou know'st, is coming!  
If thou be found by me thou art but dead.

SUF. If I depart from thee I cannot live:  
And in thy sight to die, what were it else,  
But like a pleasant slumber in thy lap?  
Here could I breathe my soul into the air,  
As mild and gentle as the cradle-babe,  
Dying with mother's dug between its lips:  
Where, from thy sight, I should be raging mad,  
And cry out for thee to close up mine eyes,  
To have thee with thy lips to stop my mouth;  
So shouldst thou either turn my flying soul,  
Or I should breathe it so into thy body,  
And then it liv'd in sweet Elysium.  
To die by thee were but to die in jest;  
From thee to die were torture more than death:  
O let me stay, befall what may befall.

Q. MAR. Away! though parting be a fretful corsive,  
It is applied to a deathful wound.  
To France, sweet Suffolk: Let me hear from thee;  
For wheresoe'er thou art in this world's globe,  
I'll have an Iris that shall find thee out.

SUF. I go.

Q. MAR. And take my heart with thee.

SUF. A jewel, lock'd into the woefull'st cask  
That ever did contain a thing of worth.  
Even as a splitted bark, so sunder we;  
This way fall I to death.

Q. MAR. This way for me. [*Exeunt severally.*]

SCENE III.—London. *Cardinal Beaufort's Bedchamber.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, SALISBURY, WARWICK, *and others.*  
*The CARDINAL in bed; Attendants with him.*

K. HEN. How fares my lord? speak, Beaufort, to thy sovereign.

CAR. If thou be'st death, I'll give thee England's treasure,  
Enough to purchase such another island,  
So thou wilt let me live, and feel no pain.

K. HEN. Ah, what a sign it is of evil life,  
Where death's approach is seen so terrible!

WAR. Beaufort, it is thy sovereign speaks to thee.

CAR. Bring me unto my trial when you will.  
Died he not in his bed? where should he die?  
Can I make men live, whe'r they will or no?  
O! torture me no more, I will confess.—  
Alive again? then show me where he is;  
I'll give a thousand pound to look upon him.—  
He hath no eyes, the dust hath blinded them.—  
Comb down his hair; look! look! it stands upright,  
Like lime-twigs set to catch my winged soul!—  
Give me some drink; and bid the apothecary  
Bring the strong poison that I bought of him.

K. HEN. O thou eternal Mover of the heavens,  
Look with a gentle eye upon this wretch!  
O, beat away the busy meddling fiend  
That lays strong siege unto this wretch's soul,  
And from his bosom purge this black despair!

WAR. See how the pangs of death do make him grin.

SAL. Disturb him not, let him pass peaceably.

K. HEN. Peace to his soul, if God's good pleasure be!  
Lord cardinal, if thou think'st on heaven's bliss,  
Hold up thy hand, make signal of thy hope.—  
He dies, and makes no sign; O God, forgive him!

WAR. So bad a death argues a monstrous life.

K. HEN. Forbear to judge, for we are sinners all.—  
Close up his eyes, and draw the curtain close;  
And let us all to meditation.

[*Exeunt.*



## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—Kent. *The Sea-shore, near Dover.*

*Firing heard at sea. Then enter from a boat, a Captain, a Master, a Master's Mate, WALTER WHITMORE, and others; with them SUFFOLK, and other Gentlemen, prisoners.*

CAP. The gaudy, blabbing, and remorseful day  
is crept into the bosom of the sea;  
And now loud-howling wolves arouse the jades  
That drag the tragic melancholy night;  
Who with their drowsy, slow, and flagging wings  
Clip dead men's graves, and from their misty jaws  
Breathe foul contagious darkness in the air.  
Therefore, bring forth the soldiers of our prize;  
For, whilst our pinnace anchors in the Downs,  
Here shall they make their ransom on the sand,  
Or with their blood stain this discolour'd shore.  
Master, this prisoner freely give I thee;—  
And thou that art his mate, make boot of this;—  
The other [*pointing to SUFFOLK*], Walter Whitmore, is thy  
share.

1 GENT. What is my ransom, master? let me know.

MAST. A thousand crowns, or else lay down your head.

MATE. And so much shall you give, or off goes yours.

CAP. What, think you much to pay two thousand crowns,  
And bear the name and port of gentlemen?—  
Cut both the villains' throats,—for die you shall.—  
The lives of those which we have lost in fight  
Be counterpois'd with such a petty sum?

1 GENT. I'll give it, sir; and therefore spare my life.

2 GENT. And so will I, and write home for it straight.

WHIT. I lost mine eye in laying the prize aboard,  
And therefore to revenge it shalt thou die; [*To SUFFOLK.*]  
And so should these, if I might have my will.

CAP. Be not so rash; take ransom, let him live.

SUF. Look on my George, I am a gentleman;  
Rate me at what thou wilt thou shalt be paid.

WHIT. And so am I; my name is Walter Whitmore.

How now? why start'st thou? what, doth death affright?

SUF. Thy name affrights me, in whose sound is death.  
A cunning man did calculate my birth,  
And told me that by *Water* I should die.  
Yet let not this make thee be bloody minded;  
Thy name is *Gualtier*, being rightly sounded.

WHIT. *Gualtier*, or *Walter*, which it is I care not:  
Never yet did base dishonour blur our name,  
But with our sword we wip'd away the blot;  
Therefore, when merchant-like I sell revenge,  
Broke be my sword, my arms torn and defac'd,  
And I proclaim'd a coward through the world!

[*Lays hold on* SUFFOLK.]

SUF. Stay, Whitmore; for thy prisoner is a prince,  
The duke of Suffolk, William de la Pole.

WHIT. The duke of Suffolk, muffled up in rags!

SUF. Ay, but these rags are no part of the duke;  
Jove sometime went disguis'd, and why not I?

CAP. But Jove was never slain, as thou shalt be.

SUF. Obscure and lowly swain, king Henry's blood,  
The honourable blood of Lancaster,  
Must not be shed by such a jaded groom.  
Hast thou not kiss'd thy hand, and held my stirrup?  
Bare-headed plodded by my foot-cloth mule,  
And thought thee happy when I shook my head?  
How often hast thou waited at my cup,  
Fed from my trencher, kneel'd down at the board,  
When I have feasted with queen Margaret?  
Remember it, and let it make thee crest-fall'n;  
Ay, and allay this thy abortive pride:  
How in our voiding lobby hast thou stood,  
And duly waited for my coming forth?  
This hand of mine hath writ in thy behalf,  
And therefore shall it charm thy riotous tongue.

WHIT. Speak, captain, shall I stab the forlorn swain?

CAP. First let my words stab him, as he hath me.

SUF. Base slave! thy words are blunt, and so art thou.

CAP. Convey him hence, and on our long-boat's side  
Strike off his head.

SUF. Thou dar'st not for thy own.

CAP. Yes, Poole.

SUF. Poole!

CAP. Poole! Sir Poole! lord!

Ay, kennel, puddle, sink; whose filth and dirt  
Troubles the silver spring where England drinks.  
Now will I dam up this thy yawning mouth,  
For swallowing the treasure of the realm:  
Thy lips, that kiss'd the queen, shall sweep the ground:  
And thou, that smil'dst at good duke Humphrey's death,  
Against the senseless winds shalt grin in vain,  
Who, in contempt, shall hiss at thee again:  
And wedded be thou to the hags of hell,  
For daring to affy a mighty lord  
Unto the daughter of a worthless king,  
Having neither subject, wealth, nor diadem.  
By devilish policy art thou grown great,  
And, like ambitious Sylla, overgorg'd  
With gobbets of thy mother's bleeding heart.  
By thee Anjou and Maine were sold to France:  
The false revolting Normans, thorough thee,  
Disdain to call us lord; and Picardy  
Hath slain their governors, surpris'd our forts,  
And sent the ragged soldiers wounded home.  
The princely Warwick, and the Nevils all,  
Whose dreadful swords were never drawn in vain,  
As hating thee, are rising up in arms:  
And now the house of York,—thrust from the crown,  
By shameful murder of a guiltless king,  
And lofty proud encroaching tyranny,—  
Burns with revenging fire; whose hopeful colours  
Advance our half-fac'd sun, striving to shine,  
Under the which is writ *Invitis nubibus*.  
The commons here in Kent are up in arms:  
And, to conclude, reproach, and beggary,  
Is crept into the palace of our king,  
And all by thee:—Away! convey him hence.

SUF. O that I were a god, to shoot forth thunder  
Upon these paltry, servile, abject drudges!  
Small things make base men proud: this villain here,  
Being captain of a pinnace, threatens more

Than Bargulus the strong Illyrian pirate.  
Drones suck not eagles' blood, but rob bee-hives.  
It is impossible that I should die  
By such a lowly vassal as thyself.  
Thy words move rage, and not remorse, in me:  
I go of message from the queen to France;  
I charge thee waft me safely cross the channel.

CAP. Walter,——

WHIT. Come, Suffolk, I must waft thee to thy death.

SUF. *Penè gelidus timor occupat artus*:—'t is thee I fear.

WHIT. Thou shalt have cause to fear before I leave thee.

What, are ye daunted now? now will ye stoop?

1 GENT. My gracious lord, entreat him, speak him fair.

SUF. Suffolk's imperial tongue is stern and rough,  
Us'd to command, untaught to plead for favour.

Far be it we should honour such as these  
With humble suit: no, rather let my head  
Stoop to the block than these knees bow to any,  
Save to the God of heaven, and to my king;  
And sooner dance upon a bloody pole  
Than stand uncover'd to the vulgar groom.  
True nobility is exempt from fear:—  
More can I bear than you dare execute.

CAP. Hale him away, and let him talk no more.

SUF. Come, soldiers, show what cruelty ye can,  
That this my death may never be forgot!—  
Great men oft die by vile bezonians:  
A Roman sworder and banditto slave  
Murther'd sweet Tully; Brutus' bastard hand  
Stabb'd Julius Cæsar; savage islanders,  
Pompey the great: and Suffolk dies by pirates.

[*Exit SUFFOLK, with WHITMORE and others.*]

CAP. And as for these whose ransom we have set,  
It is our pleasure one of them depart:—  
Therefore come you with us, and let him go.

[*Exeunt all but the first Gentleman.*]

*Re-enter WHITMORE with SUFFOLK's body.*

WHIT. There let his head and lifeless body lie,  
Until the queen his mistress bury it.

[*Exit.*]

I GENT. O barbarous and bloody spectacle!  
His body will I bear unto the king:  
If he revenge it not, yet will his friends;  
So will the queen, that living held him dear.

*[Exit, with the body.]*

SCENE II.—Blackheath.

*Enter GEORGE BEVIS and JOHN HOLLAND.*

GEO. Come, and get thee a sword, though made of a lath;  
they have been up these two days.

JOHN. They have the more need to sleep now then.

GEO. I tell thee, Jack Cade the clothier means to dress  
the commonwealth, and turn it, and set a new nap upon it.

JOHN. So he had need, for 't is threadbare. Well, I say it  
was never merry world in England since gentlemen came up.

GEO. O miserable age! Virtue is not regarded in handi-  
crafts-men.

JOHN. The nobility think scorn to go in leather aprons.

GEO. Nay, more, the king's council are no good workmen.

JOHN. True. And yet it is said, Labour in thy vocation;  
which is as much to say as, let the magistrates be labouring  
men; and therefore should we be magistrates.

GEO. Thou hast hit it: for there's no better sign of a  
brave mind than a hard hand.

JOHN. I see them! I see them! There's Best's son, the  
tanner of Wingham:—

GEO. He shall have the skins of our enemies, to make  
dog's leather of.

JOHN. And Dick the butcher,—

GEO. Then is sin struck down like an ox, and iniquity's  
throat cut like a calf.

JOHN. And Smith the weaver.

GEO. *Argo*, their thread of life is spun.

JOHN. Come, come, let's fall in with them.

*Drum. Enter CADE, DICK the butcher, SMITH the weaver, and  
others in great number.*

CADE. We John Cade, so termed of our supposed father,—

DICK. Or rather, of stealing a cade of herrings. *[Aside.]*

CADE. —for our enemies shall fall before us, inspired with the spirit of putting down kings and princes,—Command silence.

DICK. Silence!

CADE. My father was a Mortimer,—

DICK. He was an honest man, and a good bricklayer.

[*Aside.*

CADE. My mother a Plantagenet,—

DICK. I knew her well, she was a midwife.

[*Aside.*

CADE. My wife descended of the Lacies,—

DICK. She was, indeed, a pedlar's daughter, and sold many laces.

[*Aside.*

SMITH. But, now of late, not able to travel with her furred pack, she washes bucks here at home.

[*Aside.*

CADE. Therefore am I of an honourable house.

DICK. Ay, by my faith, the field is honourable; and there was he born, under a hedge; for his father had never a house but the cage.

[*Aside.*

CADE. Valiant I am.

SMITH. 'A must needs; for beggary is valiant.

[*Aside.*

CADE. I am able to endure much.

DICK. No question of that; for I have seen him whipped three market days together.

[*Aside.*

CADE. I fear neither sword nor fire.

SMITH. He need not fear the sword, for his coat is of proof.

[*Aside.*

DICK. But methinks he should stand in fear of fire, being burnt i' the hand for stealing of sheep.

[*Aside.*

CADE. Be brave then; for your captain is brave, and vows reformation. There shall be, in England, seven halfpenny loaves sold for a penny: the three-hooped pot shall have ten hoops; and I will make it felony to drink small beer: all the realm shall be in common, and in Cheapside shall my palfrey go to grass. And when I am king, (as king I will be)——

ALL. God save your majesty!

CADE. I thank you, good people:—there shall be no money; all shall eat and drink on my score; and I will apparel them all in one livery, that they may agree like brothers, and worship me their lord.

DICK. The first thing we do, let's kill all the lawyers.

CADE. Nay, that I mean to do. Is not this a lamentable thing, that of the skin of an innocent lamb should be made parchment? that parchment, being scribbled o'er, should undo a man? Some say the bee stings; but I say 't is the bee's wax, for I did but seal once to a thing, and I was never mine own man since. How now? who's there?

*Enter some, bringing in the Clerk of Chatham.*

SMITH. The clerk of Chatham: he can write, and read, and cast accompt.

CADE. O monstrous!

SMITH. We took him setting of boys' copies.

CADE. Here's a villain!

SMITH. H'as a book in his pocket with red letters in 't.

CADE. Nay, then he is a conjuror.

DICK. Nay, he can make obligations, and write court-hand.

CADE. I am sorry for 't: the man is a proper man, of mine honour; unless I find him guilty he shall not die.—Come hither, sirrah, I must examine thee: What is thy name?

CLERK. Emmanuel.

DICK. They use to write it on the top of letters;—'T will go hard with you.

CADE. Let me alone:—Dost thou use to write thy name? or hast thou a mark to thyself, like an honest plain-dealing man?

CLERK. Sir, I thank God I have been so well brought up that I can write my name.

ALL. He hath confessed: away with him; he's a villain and a traitor.

CADE. Away with him, I say: hang him with his pen and inkhorn about his neck. [*Exeunt some with the Clerk.*]

*Enter MICHAEL.*

MICH. Where's our general?

CADE. Here I am, thou particular fellow.

MICH. Fly, fly, fly! sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother are hard by, with the king's forces.

CADE. Stand, villain, stand, or I'll fell thee down: He

shall be encountered with a man as good as himself: He is but a knight, is 'a?

MICH. No.

CADE. To equal him, I will make myself a knight presently: Rise up, sir John Mortimer. Now have at him.

*Enter SIR HUMPHREY STAFFORD, and WILLIAM his brother, with drum and Forces.*

STAF. Rebellious hinds, the filth and scum of Kent,  
Mark'd for the gallows, lay your weapons down,  
Home to your cottages, forsake this groom;  
The king is merciful, if you revolt.

W. STAF. But angry, wrathful, and inclin'd to blood,  
If you go forward: Therefore yield, or die.

CADE. As for these silken-coated slaves, I pass not;  
It is to you, good people, that I speak,  
Over whom, in time to come, I hope to reign;  
For I am rightful heir unto the crown.

STAF. Villain, thy father was a plasterer;  
And thou thyself a shearman, art thou not?

CADE. And Adam was a gardener.

W. STAF. And what of that?

CADE. Marry, this:—Edmund Mortimer, earl of March,  
Married the duke of Clarence' daughter:—Did he not?

STAF. Ay, sir.

CADE. By her he had two children at one birth.

W. STAF. That's false.

CADE. Ay, there's the question; but, I say, 't is true:  
The elder of them, being put-to nurse,  
Was by a beggar-woman stolen away;  
And, ignorant of his birth and parentage:  
Became a bricklayer when he came to age:  
His son am I; deny it if you can.

DICK. Nay, 't is too true; therefore he shall be king.

SMITH. Sir, he made a chimney in my father's house, and the bricks are alive at this day to testify it; therefore, deny it not.

STAF. And will you credit this base drudge's words,  
That speaks he knows not what?

ALL. Ay, marry, will we; therefore get ye gone.



W. STAF. Jack Cade, the duke of York hath taught you this.

CADE. He lies, for I invented it myself. [Aside.  
—Go to, sirrah: Tell the king from me, that, for his father's sake, Henry the fifth, in whose time boys went to span-counter for French crowns, I am content he shall reign; but I'll be protector over him.

DICK. And, furthermore, we'll have the lord Say's head, for selling the dukedom of Maine.

CADE. And good reason, for thereby is England maimed, and fain to go with a staff, but that my puissance holds it up. Fellow kings, I tell you, that that lord Say hath gelded the commonwealth, and made it an eunuch: and more than that, he can speak French, and therefore he is a traitor.

STAF. O gross and miserable ignorance!

CADE. Nay, answer if you can: The Frenchmen are our enemies: go to then. I ask but this,—can he that speaks with the tongue of an enemy be a good counsellor, or no?

ALL. No, no; and therefore we'll have his head.

W. STAF. Well, seeing gentle words will not prevail, Assail them with the army of the king.

STAF. Herald, away: and, throughout every town,  
Proclaim them traitors that are up with Cade;  
That those which fly before the battle ends  
May, even in their wives' and children's sight,  
Be hang'd up for example at their doors:  
And you that be the king's friends follow me.

[*Exeunt the two STAFFORDS, and Forces.*

CADE. And you that love the commons follow me.  
Now show yourselves men, 't is for liberty.  
We will not leave one lord, one gentleman:  
Spare none, but such as go in clouted shoon;  
For they are thrifty honest men, and such  
As would (but that they dare not) take our parts.

DICK. They are all in order, and march towards us.

CADE. But then are we in order, when we are most out of order. Come, march forward. [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—*Another part of Blackheath.*

*Alarum. The two parties enter and fight, and both the  
STAFFORDS are slain.*

CADE. Where's Dick the butcher of Ashford?

DICK. Here, sir.

CADE. They fell before thee like sheep and oxen, and thou behavedst thyself as if thou hadst been in thine own slaughter-house; therefore thus will I reward thee,—The lent shall be as long again as it is; and thou shalt have a licence to kill for a hundred lacking one.

DICK. I desire no more.

CADE. And, to speak truth, thou deservest no less. This monument of the victory will I bear; and the bodies shall be dragged at my horse' heels, till I do come to London, where we will have the mayor's sword borne before us.

DICK. If we mean to thrive and do good, break open the gaols, and let out the prisoners.

CADE. Fear not that, I warrant thee. Come, let's march towards London. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE IV.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter KING HENRY, reading a supplication; the DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM, and LORD SAY, with him: at a distance QUEEN MARGARET, mourning over SUFFOLK's head.*

Q. MAR. Oft have I heard that grief softens the mind,  
And makes it fearful and degenerate;  
Think therefore on revenge, and cease to weep.  
But who can cease to weep, and look on this?  
Here may his head lie on my throbbing breast:  
But where's the body that I should embrace?

BUCK. What answer makes your grace to the rebels' supplication?

K. HEN. I'll send some holy bishop to entreat:  
For God forbid, so many simple souls  
Should perish by the sword! And I myself,  
Rather than bloody war shall cut them short,  
Will parley with Jack Cade their general.

But stay, I'll read it over once again.

Q. MAR. Ah, barbarous villains! hath this lovely face  
Rul'd, like a wandering planet, over me:  
And could it not enforce them to relent,  
That were unworthy to behold the same?

K. HEN. Lord Say, Jack Cade hath sworn to have thy  
head.

SAY. Ay, but I hope your highness shall have his.

K. HEN. How now, madam?  
Still lamenting, and mourning for Suffolk's death?  
I fear me, love, if that I had been dead,  
Thou wouldest not have mourn'd so much for me.

Q. MAR. No, my love, I should not mourn, but die for  
thee.

*Enter a Messenger.*

K. HEN. How now! what news? why com'st thou in such  
haste?

MESS. The rebels are in Southwark. Fly, my lord!  
Jack Cade proclaims himself lord Mortimer,  
Descended from the duke of Clarence' house;  
And calls your grace usurper, openly,  
And vows to crown himself in Westminster.  
His army is a ragged multitude  
Of hinds and peasants, rude and merciless:  
Sir Humphrey Stafford and his brother's death  
Hath given them heart and courage to proceed;  
All scholars, lawyers, courtiers, gentlemen,  
They call false caterpillars, and intend their death.

K. HEN. O graceless men! they know not what they do.

BUCK. My gracious lord, retire to Killingworth,  
Until a power be rais'd to put them down.

Q. MAR. Ah! were the duke of Suffolk now alive,  
These Kentish rebels would be soon appeas'd.

K. HEN. Lord Say, the traitors hate thee,  
Therefore away with us to Killingworth.

SAY. So might your grace's person be in danger:  
The sight of me is odious in their eyes;  
And therefore in this city will I stay,  
And live alone as secret as I may.

*Enter another Messenger.*

2 MESS. Jack Cade hath gotten London-bridge;  
The citizens fly and forsake their houses;  
The rascal people, thirsting after prey,  
Join with the traitor; and they jointly swear  
To spoil the city and your royal court.

BUCK. Then linger not, my lord; away, take horse.

K. HEN. Come, Margaret; God, our hope, will succour us.

Q. MAR. My hope is gone, now Suffolk is deceas'd.

K. HEN. Farewell, my lord [*to LORD SAY*]; trust not the  
Kentish rebels.

BUCK. Trust nobody, for fear you be betray'd.

SAY. The trust I have is in mine innocence,  
And therefore am I bold and resolute. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE V.—*The same. The Tower.*

*Enter LORD SCALES, and others, on the walls. Then enter  
certain Citizens, below.*

SCALES. How now? is Jack Cade slain?

1 CIT. No, my lord, nor likely to be slain; for they have  
won the bridge, killing all those that withstand them: The  
lord mayor craves aid of your honour from the Tower, to  
defend the city from the rebels.

SCALES. Such aid as I can spare you shall command;  
But I am troubled here with them myself:  
The rebels have essay'd to win the Tower.  
But get you to Smithfield, and gather head,  
And thither I will send you Matthew Gough:  
Fight for your king, your country, and your lives;  
And so farewell, for I must hence again. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI.—*The same. Cannon-street.*

*Enter JACK CADE, and his Followers. He strikes his  
staff on London stone.*

CADE. Now is Mortimer lord of this city. And here, sit-  
ting upon London stone, I charge and command, that, of the  
city's cost, the pissing-conduit run nothing but claret wine  
this first year of our reign. And now, henceforward, it shall  
be treason for any that calls me other than lord Mortimer.

*Enter a Soldier, running.*

SOLD. Jack Cade! Jack Cade!

CADE. Knock him down there. *[They kill him.]*

SMITH. If this fellow be wise, he'll never call you Jack Cade more: I think he hath a very fair warning.

DICK. My lord, there's an army gathered together in Smithfield.

CADE. Come then, let's go fight with them: But, first, go and set London-bridge on fire; and, if you can, burn down the Tower too. Come, let's away. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE VII.—*The same.* Smithfield.

*Alarum. Enter, on one side, CADE and his Company; on the other, Citizens, and the KING's Forces, headed by MATTHEW GOUGH. They fight; the Citizens are routed, and MATTHEW GOUGH is slain.*

CADE. So, sirs:—Now go some and pull down the Savoy; others to the inns of court; down with them all.

DICK. I have a suit unto your lordship.

CADE. Be it a lordship, thou shalt have it for that word.

DICK. Only, that the laws of England may come out of your mouth.

JOHN. Mass, 't will be sore law then; for he was thrust in the mouth with a spear, and 't is not whole yet. *[Aside.]*

SMITH. Nay, John, it will be stinking law; for his breath stinks with eating toasted cheese. *[Aside.]*

CADE. I have thought upon it, it shall be so. Away, burn all the records of the realm; my mouth shall be the parliament of England.

JOHN. Then we are like to have biting statutes, unless his teeth be pulled out. *[Aside.]*

CADE. And henceforward all things shall be in common.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord, a prize, a prize! here's the lord Say, which sold the towns in France; he that made us pay one-and-twenty fifteens, and one shilling to the pound, the last subsidy.

*Enter* GEORGE BEVIS, *with the* LORD SAY.

CADE. Well, he shall be beheaded for it ten times.—Ah, thou say, thou serge, nay, thou buckram lord! now art thou within point blank of our jurisdiction regal. What canst thou answer to my majesty, for giving up of Normandy unto monsieur Basimecu, the dauphin of France? Be it known unto thee, by these presence, even the presence of lord Mortimer, that I am the besom that must sweep the court clean of such filth as thou art. Thou hast most traitorously corrupted the youth of the realm, in erecting a grammar-school: and whereas, before, our forefathers had no other books but the score and the tally, thou hast caused printing to be used; and, contrary to the king, his crown and dignity, thou hast built a paper-mill. It will be proved to thy face, that thou hast men about thee that usually talk of a noun, and a verb; and such abominable words as no Christian ear can endure to hear. Thou hast appointed justices of peace, to call poor men before them about matters they were not able to answer. Moreover, thou hast put them in prison; and because they could not read thou hast hanged them; when, indeed, only for that cause they have been most worthy to live. Thou dost ride on a footcloth, dost thou not?

SAY. What of that?

CADE. Marry, thou oughtest not to let thy horse wear a cloak, when honestest men than thou go in their hose and doublets.

DICK. And work in their shirt too; as myself, for example, that am a butcher.

SAY. You men of Kent,—

DICK. What say you of Kent,—

SAY. Nothing but this: 'T is *bona terra, mala gens*.

CADE. Away with him, away with him! he speaks Latin.

SAY. Hear me but speak, and bear me where you will.  
Kent, in the commentaries Cæsar writ,  
Is term'd the civill'st place of all this isle:  
Sweet is the country, because full of riches  
The people liberal, valiant, active, wealthy;  
Which makes me hope you are not void of pity.

I sold not Maine, I lost not Normandy;  
Yet, to recover them, would lose my life.  
Justice with favour have I always done;  
Prayers and tears have 'mov'd me, gifts could never.  
When have I aught exacted at your hands?  
Kent to maintain, the king, the realm, and you,  
Large gifts have I bestow'd on learned clerks,  
Because my book preferr'd me to the king,  
And seeing ignorance is the curse of God,  
Knowledge the wing wherewith we fly to heaven.  
Unless you be possess'd with devilish spirits,  
You cannot but forbear to murther me.  
This tongue hath parley'd unto foreign kings  
For your behoof,—

CADE. Tut! when struck'st thou one blow in the field?

SAY. Great men have reaching hands: oft have I struck  
Those that I never saw, and struck them dead.

GEO. O monstrous coward! what, to come behind folks?

SAY. These cheeks are pale for watching for your good.

CADE. Give him a box o' the ear, and that will make 'em  
red again.

SAY. Long sitting to determine poor men's causes  
Hath made me full of sickness and diseases.

CADE. Ye shall have a hempen caudle then, and the pap  
of hatchet.

DICK. Why dost thou quiver, man?

SAY. The palsy, and not fear, provoketh me.

CADE. Nay, he nods at us; as who should say, I'll be  
even with you. I'll see if his head will stand steadier on a  
pole, or no: Take him away, and behead him.

SAY. Tell me, wherein have I offended most?  
Have I affected wealth, or honour? speak!  
Are my chests fill'd up with extorted gold  
Is my apparel sumptuous to behold?  
Whom have I injured, that ye seek my death?  
These hands are free from guiltless blood-shedding,  
This breast from harbouring foul deceitful thoughts.  
O, let me live!

CADE. I feel remorse in myself with his words; but I'll  
bridle it; he shall die, an it be but for pleading so well for

his life. Away with him! he has a familiar under his tongue; he speaks not o' God's name. Go, take him away, I say, and strike off his head presently; and then break into his son-in-law's house, sir James Cromer, and strike off his head, and bring them both upon two poles hither.

ALL. It shall be done.

SAY. Ah, countrymen! if when you make your prayers, God should be so obdurate as yourselves, How would it fare with your departed souls? And therefore yet relent, and save my life.

CADE. Away with him, and do as I command ye. [*Exeunt some, with LORD SAY.*] The proudest peer in the realm shall not wear a head on his shoulders, unless he pay me tribute; there shall not a maid be married, but she shall pay to me her maidenhead ere they have it: Men shall hold of me *in capite*; and we charge and command that their wives be as free as heart can wish, or tongue can tell.

DICK. My lord, when shall we go to Cheapside, and take up commodities upon our bills?

CADE. Marry, presently.

ALL. O brave!

*Re-enter Rebels, with the heads of LORD SAY and his Son-in-law.*

CADE. But is not this braver?—Let them kiss one another, for they loved well when they were alive. Now part them again, lest they consult about the giving up of some more towns in France. Soldiers, defer the spoil of the city until night: for with these borne before us, instead of maces, will we ride through the streets; and, at every corner, have them kiss.—Away! [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VIII.—Southwark.

*Alarum. Enter CADE, and all his Rabblement.*

CADE. Up Fish-street! down St. Magnus' corner! kill and knock down! throw them into the Thames!—[*A parley sounded, then a retreat.*] What noise is this I hear? Dare any be so bold to sound retreat or parley, when I command them kill?



*Enter BUCKINGHAM and Old CLIFFORD, with Forces.*

BUCK. Ay, here they be that dare and will disturb thee;  
Know, Cade, we come ambassadors from the king  
Unto the commons, whom thou hast misled;  
And here pronounce free pardon to them all  
That will forsake thee, and go home in peace.

CLIF. What say ye, countrymen? will ye relent,  
And yield to mercy, whilst 't is offer'd you;  
Or let a rabble lead you to your deaths?  
Who loves the king, and will embrace his pardon,  
Fling up his cap, and say—God save his majesty!  
Who hateth him, and honours not his father,  
Henry the fifth, that made all France to quake,  
Shake he his weapon at us, and pass by.

ALL. God save the king! God save the king!

CADE. What, Buckingham, and Clifford, are ye so brave?  
—And you, base peasants, do ye believe him? will you needs  
be hanged with your pardons about your necks? Hath my  
sword therefore broke through London gates, that you should  
leave me at the White Hart in Southwark? I thought ye  
would never have given out these arms, till you had re-  
covered your ancient freedom: but you are all recreants and  
dastards; and delight to live in slavery to the nobility. Let  
them break your backs with burthens, take your houses over  
your heads, ravish your wives and daughters before your  
faces: For me,—I will make shift for one; and so—God's  
curse light upon you all!

ALL. We 'll follow Cade, we 'll follow Cade.

CLIF. Is Cade the son of Henry the fifth,  
That thus you do exclaim you 'll go with him?  
Will he conduct you through the heart of France,  
And make the meanest of you earls and dukes?  
Alas, he hath no home, no place to fly to;  
Nor knows he how to live but by the spoil,  
Unless by robbing of your friends, and us.  
Were 't not a shame that whilst you live at jar,  
The fearful French, whom you late vanquished,  
Should make a start o'er seas, and vanquish you?  
Methinks, already, in this civil broil,

I see them lording it in London streets,  
Crying—*Villageois!* unto all they meet.  
Better ten thousand base-born Cades miscarry,  
Than you should stoop unto a Frenchman's mercy.  
To France, to France, and get what you have lost;  
Spare England, for it is your native coast:  
Henry hath money, you are strong and manly;  
God on our side, doubt not of victory.

ALL. A Clifford! a Clifford! we'll follow the king, and Clifford.

CADE. Was ever feather so lightly blown to and fro as this multitude? The name of Henry the fifth hales them to a hundred mischiefs, and makes them leave me desolate. I see them lay their heads together to surprise me: my sword make way for me, for here is no staying.—In despite of the devils and hell, have through the very midst of you! and heavens and honour be witness, that no want of resolution in me, but only my followers' base and ignominious treasons, makes me betake to my heels. *[Exit.*

BUCK. What, is he fled? go some, and follow him;  
And he that brings his head unto the king  
Shall have a thousand crowns for his reward.—

*[Exeunt some of them.*

Follow me, soldiers; we'll devise a mean  
To reconcile you all unto the king.

*[Exeunt.*

#### SCENE IX.—Killingworth Castle.

*Enter* KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, and SOMERSET,  
*on the terrace of the Castle.*

K. HEN. Was ever king that joy'd an earthly throne,  
And could command no more content than I?  
No sooner was I crept out of my cradle,  
But I was made a king, at nine months old:  
Was never subject long'd to be a king,  
As I do long and wish to be a subject.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM and CLIFFORD.

BUCK. Health and glad tidings to your majesty!

K. HEN. Why, Buckingham, is the traitor Cade surpris'd?  
Or is he but retir'd to make him strong?

*Enter, below, a great number of CADE's Followers, with halters  
about their necks.*

CLIF. He's fled, my lord, and all his powers do yield;  
And humbly thus, with halters on their necks,  
Expect your highness' doom, of life or death.

K. HEN. Then, Heaven, set ope thy everlasting gates,  
To entertain my vows of thanks and praise!  
Soldiers, this day have you redeem'd your lives,  
And show'd how well you love your prince and country;  
Continue still in this so good a mind,  
And Henry, though he be infortunate,  
Assure yourselves, will never be unkind;  
And so, with thanks, and pardon to you all,  
I do dismiss you to your several countries.

ALL. God save the king! God save the king!

*Enter a Messenger.*

Mess. Please it your grace to be advertised,  
The duke of York is newly come from Ireland:  
And with a puissant and a mighty power,  
Of Gallowglasses and stout Kernes,  
Is marching hitherward in proud array;  
And still proclaimeth, as he comes along,  
His aims are only to remove from thee  
The duke of Somerset, whom he terms a traitor.

K. HEN. Thus stands my state, 'twixt Cade and York  
distress'd;  
Like to a ship, that, having 'scap'd a tempest,  
Is straightway calm'd and boarded with a pirate:  
But now is Cade driven back, his men dispers'd;  
And now is York in arms to second him.  
I pray thee, Buckingham, go forth and meet him;  
And ask him, what's the reason of these arms.  
Tell him, I'll send duke Edmund to the Tower;—  
And, Somerset, we will commit thee thither,  
Until his army be dismiss'd from him.

SOM. My lord,

I'll yield myself to prison willingly,  
Or unto death, to do my country good.

K. HEN. In any case, be not too rough in terms;  
For he is fierce, and cannot brook hard language.

BUCK. I will, my lord; and doubt not so to deal  
As all things shall redound unto your good.

K. HEN. Come, wife, let's in, and learn to govern better:  
For yet may England curse my wretched reign. [*Exeunt*]

SCENE X.—Kent. Iden's Garden.

*Enter CADE.*

CADE. Fie on ambition! fie on myself, that have a sword,  
and yet am ready to famish! These five days have I hid  
me in these woods; and durst not peep out, for all the  
country is lay'd for me. But now am I so hungry that if  
I might have a lease of my life for a thousand years, I  
could stay no longer. Wherefore, on a brick-wall have I  
climbed into this garden; to see if I can eat grass, or pick  
a sallet another while, which is not amiss to cool a man's  
stomach this hot weather. And I think this word sallet  
was born to do me good: for, many a time, but for a sallet  
my brain-pan had been cleft with a brown bill; and, many  
a time, when I have been dry, and bravely marching, it hath  
served me instead of a quart-pot to drink in: And now the  
word sallet must serve me to feed on.

*Enter IDEN, with Servants.*

IDEN. Lord, who would live turmoiled in the court,  
And may enjoy such quiet walks as these?  
This small inheritance my father left me  
Contenteth me, and 's worth a monarchy.  
I seek not to wax great by others' waning;  
Or gather wealth I care not with what envy;  
Sufficeth that I have maintains my state,  
And sends the poor well pleased from my gate.

CADE. Here 's the lord of the soil come to seize me for a  
stray, for entering his fee simple without leave. Ah, villain,  
thou wilt betray me, and get a thousand crowns of the king  
by carrying my head to him: but I'll make thee eat iron

like an ostrich, and swallow my sword like a great pin, ere thou and I part.

IDEN. Why, rude companion, whatsoe'er thou be,  
I know thee not: Why then should I betray thee?  
Is 't not enough to break into my garden,  
And, like a thief, to come to rob my grounds,  
Climbing my walls in spite of me the owner,  
But thou wilt brave me with these saucy terms?

CADE. Brave thee? ay, by the best blood that ever was  
broached, and beard thee too. Look on me well: I have  
eat no meat these five days: yet, come thou and thy five  
men, and if I do not leave you all as dead as a door-nail, I  
pray God I may never eat grass more.

IDEN. Nay, it shall ne'er be said, while England stands,  
That Alexander Iden, an esquire of Kent,  
Took odds to combat a poor famish'd man.  
Oppose thy steadfast gazing eyes on mine,  
See if thou canst outface me with thy looks.  
Set limb to limb, and thou art far the lesser;  
Thy hand is but a finger to my fist;  
Thy leg a stick, compared with this truncheon;  
My foot shall fight with all the strength thou hast;  
And if mine arm be heaved in the air,  
Thy grave is digg'd already in the earth.  
As for words, whose greatness answers words,  
Let this my sword report what speech forbears.

CADE. By my valour, the most complete champion that  
ever I heard.—Steel, if thou turn the edge, or cut not out  
the burly-boned clown in chins of beef ere thou sleep in  
thy sheath, I beseech Jove on my knees thou mayest be  
turned to hobnails. [*They fight. CADE falls.*] O, I am  
slain! famine, and no other, hath slain me: let ten thou-  
sand devils come against me, and give me but the ten meals  
I have lost, and I'd defy them all. Wither, garden; and be  
henceforth a burying-place to all that do dwell in this house,  
because the unconquered soul of Cade is fled.

IDEN. Is 't Cade that I have slain, that monstrous traitor?  
Sword, I will hallow thee for this thy deed,  
And hang thee o'er my tomb, when I am dead:  
Ne'er shall this blood be wiped from thy point;

But thou shalt wear it as a herald's coat,  
To emblaze the honour that thy master got.

CADZ. Iden, farewell; and be proud of thy victory: Tell Kent from me she hath lost her best man, and exhort all the world to be cowards; for I, that never feared any, am vanquished by famine, not by valour. [Dies]

IDEN. How much thou wrong'st me, Heaven be my judge. Die, damned wretch, the curse of her that bare thee! And as I thrust thy body in with my sword, So wish I, I might thrust thy soul to hell. Hence will I drag thee headlong by the heels Unto a dunghill, which shall be thy grave, And there cut off thy most ungracious head; Which I will bear in triumph to the king, Leaving thy trunk for crows to feed upon.

[Exit, dragging out the body.]

---

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—*The same. Fields between Dartford and Blackheath.*

*The KING's Camp on one side. On the other, enter YORK attended, with drum and colours: his Forces at some distance.*

YORK. From Ireland thus comes York, to claim his right,  
And pluck the crown from feeble Henry's head:  
Ring, bells, aloud; burn, bonfires, clear and bright;  
To entertain great England's lawful king.  
Ah, *sancta majestas!* who would not buy thee dear?  
Let them obey that know not how to rule;  
This hand was made to handle nought but gold:  
I cannot give due action to my words,  
Except a sword or sceptre balance it.  
A sceptre shall it have, have I a soul,  
On which I'll toss the fleur-de-luce of France.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM.

Whom have we here? Buckingham, to disturb me?  
The king hath sent him, sure: I must dissemble.

BUCK. York, if thou meanest well, I greet thee well.

YORK. Humphrey of Buckingham, I accept thy greeting.  
Art thou a messenger, or come of pleasure?

BUCK. A messenger from Henry, our dread liege,  
To know the reason of these arms in peace;  
Or why thou, being a subject as I am,  
Against thy oath and true allegiance sworn,  
Shouldst raise so great a power without his leave,  
Or dare to bring thy force so near the court.

YORK. Scarce can I speak, my choler is so great.  
O, I could hew up rocks, and fight with flint,  
I am so angry at these abject terms;  
And now, like Ajax Telamonius,  
On sheep or oxen could I spend my fury!  
I am far better born than is the king;  
More like a king, more kingly in my thoughts:  
But I must make fair weather yet awhile,  
Till Henry be more weak, and I more strong.—

*[All the preceding is spoken aside.]*

Buckingham, I prithee pardon me,  
That I have given no answer all this while;  
My mind was troubled with deep melancholy.  
The cause why I have brought this army hither,  
Is, to remove proud Somerset from the king,  
Seditious to his grace, and to the state.

BUCK. That is too much presumption on thy part:  
But if thy arms be to no other end,  
The king hath yielded unto thy demand;  
The duke of Somerset is in the Tower.

YORK. Upon thine honour, is he prisoner?

BUCK. Upon mine honour, he is prisoner.

YORK. Then, Buckingham, I do dismiss my powers.  
Soldiers, I thank you all; disperse yourselves;  
Meet me to-morrow in Saint George's field,  
You shall have pay, and everything you wish.  
And let my sovereign, virtuous Henry,

Command my eldest son, nay, all my sons,  
As pledges of my fealty and love,  
I'll send them all as willing as I live;  
Lands, goods, horse, armour, anything I have  
Is his to use, so Somerset may die.

BUCK. York, I commend this kind submission:  
We twain will go into his highness' tent.

*Enter KING HENRY, attended.*

K. HEN. Buckingham, doth York intend no harm to us,  
That thus he marcheth with thee arm in arm?

YORK. In all submission and humility,  
York doth present himself unto your highness.

K. HEN. Then what intend these forces thou dost bring?

YORK. To heave the traitor Somerset from hence;  
And fight against that monstrous rebel, Cade,  
Who since I heard to be discomfited.

*Enter IDEN, with CADE's head.*

IDEN. If one so rude, and of so mean condition,  
May pass into the presence of a king,  
Lo, I present your grace a traitor's head,  
The head of Cade, whom I in combat slew.

K. HEN. The head of Cade?—Great God, how just art  
thou!—

O, let me view his visage, being dead,  
That living wrought me such exceeding trouble.  
Tell me, my friend, art thou the man that slew him?

IDEN. I was, an 't like your majesty.

K. HEN. How art thou call'd? and what is thy degree?

IDEN. Alexander Iden, that 's my name;  
A poor esquire of Kent, that loves his king

BUCK. So please it you, my lord, 't were not amiss  
He were created knight for his good service.

K. HEN. Iden, kneel down [*He kneels*]: Rise up a knight.  
We give thee for reward a thousand marks;  
And will that thou henceforth attend on us.

IDEN. May Iden live to merit such a bounty,  
And never live but true unto his liege!.



K. HEN. See, Buckingham! Somerset comes with the queen;  
Go, bid her hide him quickly from the duke.

*Enter QUEEN MARGARET and SOMERSET.*

Q. MAR. For thousand Yorks, he shall not hide his head,  
But boldly stand, and front him to his face.

YORK. How now! Is Somerset at liberty?  
Then, York, unloose thy long-imprison'd thoughts,  
And let thy tongue be equal with thy heart.  
Shall I endure the sight of Somerset?—  
False king! why hast thou broken faith with me,  
Knowing how hardly I can brook abuse?  
King did I call thee? no, thou art not king;  
Not fit to govern and rule multitudes,  
Which dar'st not, no, nor canst not rule a traitor.  
That head of thine doth not become a crown;  
Thy hand is made to grasp a palmer's staff,  
And not to grace an awful princely sceptre.  
That gold must round engirt these brows of mine;  
Whose smile and frown, like to Achilles' spear,  
Is able with the change to kill and cure.  
Here is a hand to hold a sceptre up,  
And with the same to act controlling laws.  
Give place: by Heaven, thou shalt rule no more  
O'er him whom Heaven created for thy ruler.

SOM. O monstrous traitor!—I arrest thee, York,  
Of capital treason 'gainst the king and crown:  
Obey, audacious traitor; kneel for grace.

YORK. Wouldst have me kneel? first let me ask of these,  
If they can brook I bow a knee to man.  
Sirrah, call in my sons to be my bail; [*Exit an Attendant.*]  
I know, ere they will have me go to ward,  
They 'll pawn their swords for my enfranchisement.

Q. MAR. Call hither Clifford; bid him come amain,

[*Exit BUCKINGHAM.*]

To say, if that the bastard boys of York  
Shall be the surety for their traitor father.

YORK. O blood-bespotted Neapolitan,  
Outcast of Naples, England's bloody scourge!

The sons of York, thy betters in their birth,  
Shall be their father's bail; and bane to those  
That for my surety will refuse the boys.

*Enter EDWARD and RICHARD PLANTAGENET, with Forces, at one side; at the other, with Forces also, Old CLIFFORD and his Son.*

See, where they come; I 'll warrant they 'll make it good.

Q. MAR. And here comes Clifford, to deny their bail.

CLIF. Health and all happiness to my lord the king!

[*Kneels.*]

YORK. I thank thee, Clifford: Say, what news with thee?  
Nay, do not fright us with an angry look:  
We are thy sovereign, Clifford, kneel again;  
For thy mistaking so we pardon thee.

CLIF. This is my king, York, I do not mistake;  
But thou mistak'st me much to think I do:—  
To Bedlam with him! is the man grown mad?

K. HEN. Ay, Clifford; a bedlam and ambitious humour  
Makes him oppose himself against his king.

CLIF. He is a traitor; let him to the Tower,  
And chop away that factious pate of his.

Q. MAR. He is arrested, but will not obey;  
His sons, he says, shall give their words for him.

YORK. Will you not, sons?

EDW. Ay, noble father, if our words will serve.

RICH. And if words will not, then our weapons shall.

CLIF. Why, what a brood of traitors have we here!

YORK. Look in a glass, and call thy image so;  
I am thy king, and thou a false-heart traitor.  
Call hither to the stake my two brave bears,  
That, with the very shaking of their chains,  
They may astonish these fell lurking curs;  
Bid Salisbury and Warwick come to me.

*Drums. Enter WARWICK and SALISBURY, with Forces.*

CLIF. Are these thy bears? we 'll bait thy bears to death,  
And manacle the bearward in their chains,  
If thou dar'st bring them to the baiting-place.

RICH. Oft have I seen a hot o'erweening cur

Run back and bite, because he was withheld;  
Who, being suffer'd with the bear's fell paw,  
Hath clapp'd his tail behind his legs, and cried:  
And such a piece of service will you do,  
If you oppose yourselves to match lord Warwick.

CLIF. Hence, heap of wrath, foul indigested lump,  
As crooked in thy manners as thy shape!

YORK. Nay, we shall heat you thoroughly anon.

CLIF. Take heed, lest by your heat you burn yourselves

K. HEN. Why, Warwick, hath thy knee forgot to bow?  
Old Salisbury,—shame to thy silver hair,  
Thou mad misleader of thy brainsick son!—  
What, wilt thou on thy death-bed play the ruffian,  
And seek for sorrow with thy spectacles?  
O, where is faith? O, where is loyalty?  
If it be banish'd from the frosty head,  
Where shall it find a harbour in the earth?—  
Wilt thou go dig a grave to find out war,  
And shame thine honourable age with blood?  
Why art thou old and want'st experience?  
Or wherefore dost abuse it if thou hast it?  
For shame! in duty bend thy knee to me,  
That bows unto the grave with mickle age.

SAL. My lord, I have consider'd with myself  
The title of this most renowned duke;  
And in my conscience do repute his grace  
The rightful heir to England's royal seat.

K. HEN. Hast thou not sworn allegiance unto me?

SAL. I have.

K. HEN. Canst thou dispense with Heaven for such an  
oath?

SAL. It is great sin, to swear unto a sin;  
But greater sin, to keep a sinful oath.  
Who can be bound by any solemn vow  
To do a murderous deed, to rob a man,  
To force a spotless virgin's chastity,  
To reave the orphan of his patrimony,  
To wring the widow from her custom'd right;  
And have no other reason for this wrong  
But that he was bound by a solemn oath?

Q. MAR. A subtle traitor needs no sophister.

K. HEN. Call Buckingham, and bid him arm himself.

YORK. Call Buckingham, and all the friends thou hast,  
I am resolv'd for death, or dignity.

CLIF. The first I warrant thee, if dreams prove true.

WAR. You were best to go to bed, and dream again,  
To keep thee from the tempest of the field.

CLIF. I am resolv'd to bear a greater storm  
Than any thou canst conjure up to-day;  
And that I'll write upon thy burgonet,  
Might I but know thee by thy household badge.

WAR. Now, by my father's badge, old Nevil's crest,  
The rampant bear chain'd to the ragged staff,  
This day I'll wear aloft my burgonet,  
(As on a mountain-top the cedar shows,  
That keeps his leaves in spite of any storm,)  
Even to affright thee with the view thereof.

CLIF. And from thy burgonet I'll rend thy bear,  
And tread it under foot with all contempt,  
Despite the bearward that protects the bear.

Y. CLIF. And so to arms, victorious father,  
To quell the rebels and their 'complices.

RICH. Fie! charity, for shame! speak not in spite,  
For you shall sup with Jesu Christ to-night.

Y. CLIF. Foul stigmatic, that's more than thou canst tell.

RICH. If not in heaven, you'll surely sup in hell.

[*Exeunt severally.*]

## SCENE II.—Saint Albans.

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.*

WAR. Clifford of Cumberland, 't is Warwick calls!  
And if thou dost not hide thee from the bear,  
Now, when the angry trumpet sounds alarum,  
And dead men's cries do fill the empty air,  
Clifford, I say, come forth and fight with me!  
Proud northern lord, Clifford of Cumberland,  
Warwick is hoarse with calling thee to arms.

*Enter YORK.*

How now, my noble lord? what, all a-foot?

YORK. The deadly-handed Clifford slew my steed;  
But match to match I have encounter'd him,  
And made a prey for carrion kites and crows  
Even of the bonny beast he lov'd so well.

*Enter CLIFFORD.*

WAR. Of one or both of us the time is come.

YORK. Hold, Warwick, seek thee out some other chase,  
For I myself must hunt this deer to death.

WAR. Then, nobly, York; 't is for a crown thou fight'st.  
As I intend, Clifford, to thrive to-day,  
It grieves my soul to leave thee unassail'd. *[Exit.*

CLIF. What seest thou in me, York? why dost thou pause?

YORK. With thy brave bearing should I be in love,  
But that thou art so fast mine enemy.

CLIF. Nor should thy prowess want praise and esteem,  
But that 't is shown ignobly, and in treason.

YORK. So let it help me now against thy sword,  
As I in justice and true right express it!

CLIF. My soul and body on the action both!—

YORK. A dreadful lay!—address thee instantly.

*[They fight, and CLIFFORD falls.*

CLIF. *La fin couronne les œuvres.* *[Dies.*

YORK. Thus war hath given thee peace, for thou art still.  
Peace with his soul, Heaven, if it be thy will. *[Exit.*

*Enter Young CLIFFORD.*

Y. CLIF. Shame and confusion! all is on the rout!  
Fear frames disorder, and disorder wounds  
Where it should guard. O war, thou son of hell,  
Whom angry heavens do make their minister,  
Throw in the frozen bosoms of our part  
Hot coals of vengeance!—Let no soldier fly  
He that is truly dedicate to war  
Hath no self-love; nor he that loves himself  
Hath not essentially, but by circumstance,

The name of valour.—O, let the vile world end,

[*Seeing his dead father.*

And the premised flames of the last day

Knit earth and heaven together!

Now let the general trumpet blow his blast,

Particularities and petty sounds

To cease! Wast thou ordain'd, dear father,

To lose thy youth in peace, and to achieve

The silver livery of advised age,

And in thy reverence, and thy chair-days, thus

To die in ruffian battle?—Even at this sight

My heart is turn'd to stone: and, while 't is mine,

It shall be stony. York not our old men spares;

No more will I their babes: tears virginal

Shall be to me even as the dew to fire;

And beauty, that the tyrant oft reclaims,

Shall to my flaming wrath be oil and flax.

Henceforth I will not have to do with pity:

Meet I an infant of the house of York,

Into as many gobbets will I cut it,

As wild Medea young Absyrtus did:

In cruelty will I seek out my fame.

Come, thou new ruin of old Clifford's house;

[*Taking up the body.*

As did Æneas old Anchises bear,

So bear I thee upon my manly shoulders;

But then Æneas bare a living load,

Nothing so heavy as these woes of mine.

[*Exit.*

*Enter* RICHARD PLANTAGENET *and* SOMERSET, *fighting,*  
*and* SOMERSET *is killed.*

RICH. So, lie thou there;—

For underneath an alehouse' paltry sign,

The Castle in Saint Albans, Somerset

Hath made the wizard famous in his death.

Sword, hold thy temper: heart, be wrathful still:

Priests pray for enemies, but princes kill.

[*Exit.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, and others, retreating.*

Q. MAR. Away, my lord! you are slow; for shame, away!

K. HEN. Can we outrun the heavens? good Margaret, stay.

Q. MAR. What are you made of? you 'll not fight, nor fly: Now is it manhood, wisdom, and defence, To give the enemy way; and to secure us By what we can, which can no more but fly.

*[Alarum afar off.]*

If you be ta'en, we then should see the bottom  
Of all our fortunes: but if we haply 'scape,  
(As well we may, if not through your neglect,)  
We shall to London get, where you are lov'd;  
And where this breach, now in our fortunes made,  
May readily be stopp'd.

*Enter Young CLIFFORD.*

Y. CLIF. But that my heart's on future mischief set,  
I would speak blasphemy ere bid you fly;  
But fly you must; uncurable discomfit  
Reigns in the hearts of all our present parts.  
Away, for your relief! and we will live  
To see their day, and them our fortune give:  
Away, my lord, away!

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE III.—*Fields near Saint Albans.*

*Alarum: Retreat. Flourish: then enter YORK, RICHARD PLANTAGENET, WARWICK, and Soldiers, with drum and colours.*

YORK. Of Salisbury, who can report of him?—  
That winter lion, who in rage forgets  
Aged contusions and all brush of time;  
And, like a gallant in the brow of youth,  
Repairs him with occasion? This happy day  
Is not itself, nor have we won one foot,  
If Salisbury be lost.

RICH. My noble father,

Three times to-day I holp him to his horse,  
Three times bestrid him, thrice I led him off,  
Persuaded him from any further act:  
But still where danger was, still there I met him;  
And like rich hangings in a homely house,  
So was his will in his old feeble body.  
But, noble as he is, look where he comes.

*Enter SALISBURY.*

SAL. Now, by my sword, well hast thou fought to-day;  
By the mass, so did we all.—I thank you, Richard:  
God knows how long it is I have to live;  
And it hath pleas'd him that three times to-day  
You have defended me from imminent death.  
Well, lords, we have not got that which we have:  
'T is not enough our foes are this time fled,  
Being opposites of such repairing nature.

YORK. I know our safety is to follow them;  
For, as I hear, the king is fled to London,  
To call a present court of parliament.  
Let us pursue him, ere the writs go forth:  
What says lord Warwick? shall we after them?

WAR. After them! nay, before them, if we can.  
Now, by my hand, lords, 't was a glorious day:  
Saint Albans' battle, won by famous York,  
Shall be eternis'd in all age to come.  
Sound, drum and trumpets:—and to London all:  
And more such days as these to us befall!

[*Exeunt.*



## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

"My masters, let's stand close: my lord protector will come this way, by and by, and then we may deliver our supplications in *sequel*."  
(ACT I., Sc. 3.)

The original has "in the *quill*." Some commentators have made a difficulty about this expression; but Steevens suggested that "in the quill" meant written or penn'd supplications; as we say, "in print." Mr. Dyce would read "in the coil." Mr. Collier's MS. Corrector has *sequel*.

We always adopted the original reading; and agree with Mr. Richard Grant White, the author of 'Shakespeare's Scholar,' that the text should not be disturbed.

"My staff? here noble Henry is my staff:  
*To think I fain would keep it makes me laugh.*"  
(ACT II., Sc. 3.)

The new line in Italic is given in Mr. Collier's MS. corrections. Queen Margaret's previous speech of four lines has been turned into rhyme, by the substitution of one word for another.

The broken-hearted Protector has just seen his wife banished:  
"Mine eyes are full of tears, my heart of grief."  
Is the *new* line suited to the situation or the character?

"*Old* Salisbury, who can report of him?  
That winter lion, who in rage forgets  
Aged contusions and all *bruise* of time,  
And, like a gallant in the *bloom* of youth,  
Repairs her with occasion."  
(ACT V., Sc. 3.)

The original has—"Of Salisbury"—"*brush* of time"—and "*brow* of youth." Mr. Collier calls these "three errors," and substitutes the lines above.

Steevens rejected the corrections, which were proposed before Mr. Collier's folio was discovered. "*Brush* of time" has a precedent in 'Timon,' and in 'Troilus and Cressida,' and "*brow* of youth,"—meaning the general air of the countenance, occurs in 'Lear.'

## GLOSSARY.

---

AFFY. Act IV., Sc. 1.

“For daring to affy a mighty lord.”

To *affy* is to betroth, to affiance.

ALDER-LIEFEST. Act I., Sc. 1.

“With you mine alder-liefest sovereign.”

*Alder*, the Anglo-Saxon genitive case of *all*, is frequently joined with an adjective of the superlative degree—as alder-first, alder-most. *Liefest*, or *levest*, is the superlative of *lefe*, *leve* (from *leof*, love), dear, dearest of all.

AWKWARD. Act III., Sc. 2.

“And twice by awkward wind from England’s bank.”

The epithet of *awkward*, as applied to wind, has been used by Marlowe and Drayton.

BARGULUS. Act IV., Sc. 1.

“Bargulus, the strong Illyrian pirate.”

Cicero, ‘Officia,’ lib. ii., cap. xi., mentions “Bargulus, Illyrius latro.”

BEARS. Act V., Sc. 1.

“My two brave bears.”

The cognizance of the Nevils was the *bear and ragged staff*.

BEAT. Act II., Sc. 1.

“Thine eyes and thoughts

Beat on a crown.”

That is, are intent on a crown. This fine expression is elucidated by a similar one in ‘The Tempest’ (Act V., Sc. 1)—

“Do not infest your mind with *beating on*  
The strangeness of this business.”

BEZONIANS. Act IV., Sc. 1.

“Great men oft die by vile bezonians.”

*Bezonian*, probably from the Italian *bisognoso*, a poor or mean person, was used, as a term of contempt. In ‘Henry IV., Part II.’ (Act V., Sc. 3), Pistol says—

“Under which king, Bezonian?”

BILLS. Act IV., Sc. 7.

“Take up commodities upon our bills.”

This is a play upon the double meaning of *bills* the *bills* of

Cade were the brown bills of the rabble soldiery, not written *bills* of debt on the merchants of London.

BLOODLESS. Act III., Sc. 2.

“Meagre, pale, and bloodless,  
Being all descended to the labouring heart.”

By a licence of construction, *bloodless* the adjective, includes the substantive *blood*, which has “all descended to the labouring heart.”

CADE. Act IV., Sc. 2.

“Stealing a cade of herrings.”

*Cade*, from the Latin *cadus*, was a keg or cask.

CALYDON. Act I., Sc. 1.

“As did the fatal brand Althea burn’d,  
Unto the prince’s heart of Calydon.”

The prince of Calydon was Meleager, whose life depended on the preservation of a firebrand, which Althea, his mother, threw into the flames and destroyed.

CEASE. Act V., Sc. 2.

“Particularities and petty sounds to cease!”

*Cease* is here used actively—to stop.

CENSURE. Act I., Sc. 3.

“To give his censure.”

To *censure* is to give an opinion. See ‘Henry VI., Part I.’

CHARNECO. Act II., Sc. 3.

“Here, neighbour, here’s a cup of charneco.”

*Charneco* was a kind of sweet wine.

CORSIVE. Act III., Sc. 2.

“Though parting be a fretful corsive.”

*Corsive* was frequently the spelling and pronunciation of *corrosive* in our old writers.

DEEP-FET. Act II., Sc. 4.

“Hear my deep-fet groans.”

*Deep-fet* is *deep-fetched*. See *fet* in ‘Henry V.’

DENAY’D. Act I., Sc. 3.

“Then let him be denay’d the regentship.”

*Denay’d*, from the old French *denoier*, is denied, refused.

EASY. Act III., Sc. 1.

“These faults are easy-quickly answer’d.”

*Easy-quickly* is one of the compound epithets that Shakspeare has so often formed; or otherwise *easy* is here used as an adverb.

**EXPEDIENT.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“That craves a quick expedient stop!”

*Expedient* is expeditious. See ‘King John.’

**FAIN.** Act II., Sc. 1.

“Man and birds are fain of climbing high.”

*Fain*, from the Anglo-Saxon *fægn*, is *glad*, and is still so used in the Scottish dialect. Steevens, we think mistakenly, suggests that it here means *fond*.

**FLAW.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“Do calm the fury of this mad-bred flaw.”

A *flaw* is a sudden gust of wind.

**FLYING AT THE BROOK.** Act II., Sc. 1. This was a term used in hawking, when the sport was water-fowl.

**FOR.** Act IV., Sc. 7.

“These cheeks are pale for watching.”

*For* used in the sense of because of, in consequence of, a not unusual practice in Shakspeare's time.

**GHOST.** Act III., Sc. 2.

“Oft have I seen a timely-parted ghost.”

*Ghost* was used by our old writers somewhat vaguely. There can be no doubt that it here means a *body* just parted from the soul.

**INVITIS NUBIBUS.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

*Invitis nubibus*—in spite of the clouds—is an allusion to the device of Edward III., which was “the rays of the sun dispersing themselves out of a cloud,” according to Camden.

**KERNE.** Act IV., Sc. 9.

“Of Gallowglasses and stout Kernes.”

The *Kernes* of Ireland, who are mentioned several times in this play, were lightly armed and clothed foot soldiers.

**LEWDLY.** Act II., Sc. 1.

“Naughty persons, lewdly bent.”

*Lewdly* is here wickedly, mischievously.

**LIEFEST.** Act III., Sc. 1. See *alder-liefest*.

**MATES.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“Which mates him first that first intends deceit.”

*Mate*, from the French *mater*, to confound, mortify, or destroy.

**MORISCO.** Act III., Sc. 1.

“Caper upright like a wild Morisco.”

This term, it is probable, points to the Moorish origin of the morris-dance.

**MUSE.** Act III., Sc. 1.

"I muse, my lord of Gloster is not come."

*Muse* is used in the sense of *wonder*.

**PAP OF HATCHET.** Act IV., Sc. 7. This was a common cant phrase of the time. Lyly's pamphlet, so celebrated in the history of controversy, bears the title 'Pap with an Hatchet.' "Hempden caudle," and the "pap of hatchet" were to cure Say's sickness and diseases. The original has "help of hatchet." Steevens made the alteration on the suggestion of Farmer.

**PARTS.** Act V., Sc. 2.

"The hearts of all our present parts."

*Parts* used in the sense of parties—party—partners.

**PERISH.** Act III., Sc. 2.

"Might in thy palace perish Margaret."

*Perish* is here used actively, in the sense of *destroy*.

**PLOT.** Act II., Sc. 2.

"And, in this private plot."

*Plot* is here used for spot, place.

**PUTTOCK.** Act III., Sc. 2.

"Who finds the partridge in the puttock's nest."

The *puttock*, according to Phillips, was "a kind of long-winged kite."

**RAUGHT.** Act II., Sc. 3.

"This staff of honour raught."

*Raught* is usually used in the sense of *reached*, but here it certainly means *taken away*, as in the 'Arraignment of Paris,' by Peele:—

"How Pluto raught queen Ceres' daughter thence."

**SALLET.** Act IV., Sc. 10.

"But for a sallet my brain-pan had been cleft."

*Sallet*, or *sallad*, was an old-fashioned helmet; from the Spanish *celada*. Chaucer has used the word. Cade plays upon the resemblance in sound between his helmet and *sallet* or *salad*, a herb to be eaten salted—*salada*.

**SCATH.** Act II., Sc. 4.

"Could not procure me any scath."

*Scath* is damage, harm.

**SILENT.** Act I., Sc. 4.

"The silent of the night."

*Silent* is here used very beautifully as a noun, and reminds us of "the vast of night," in 'The Tempest.'

SIR. Act I., Sc. 2.

“Where are you there? Sir John!”

Hume was a priest, and *Sir* was the title given to a priest. See ‘Merry Wives of Windsor.’

SORT. Act II., Sc. 1.

“A sort of naughty persons.”

A *sort* is a company.

STIGMATIC. Act V., Sc. 1.

“Foul stigmatic, that’s more than thou canst tell.”

*Stigmatic* was the appellation for an offender who had been branded. Clifford alludes to the natural *stigma*—the deformity—of Richard.

TEN BONES. Act I., Sc. 3.

“By these ten bones.”

This was an ancient form of adjuration.

TEN COMMANDMENTS. Act I., Sc. 3.

“I’d set my ten commandments in your face.”

This phrase for scratching the face, though it now appears more fitting for the mouth of a lady of the fish-market than that of a duchess, was frequently used by the dramatists who wrote before the date of this play.

TICKLE. Act I., Sc. 1.

“Stands on a tickle point.”

*Tickle* is uncertain. Chaucer, in ‘The Miller’s Tale,’ has—

“This world is now full tickel sickerly.”

We still speak of a ticklish situation.

UNEATH. Act II., Sc. 4.

“Uneath may she endure the flinty streets.”

*Uneath*, from the Anglo-Saxon *eathe*, easy, is uneasily, not easily.

WHEREAS. Act I., Sc. 2.

“Whereas the king and queen do mean to hawk.”

*Where* and *whereas* were convertible terms in Shakspeare’s time. Daniel, in his tragedy of ‘Cleopatra’ (1594), has—

“That I should pass whereas Octavia stands.”

In Act III., Sc. 2, of this play *where* is used for *whereas*.

# KING HENRY THE SIXTH.

## PART III.

This drama appears in the original folio collection under the title of 'The Third Part of Henry the Sixt, with the Death of the Duke of Yorke.' In 1595 was published 'The True Tragedie of Richard Duke of Yorke, and the Death of good King Henry the Sixt, with the whole Contention between the two Houses Lancaster and Yorke, as it was sundrie times acted by the Right Honourable the Earle of Pembroke his Servants.' Upon this drama is founded 'The Third Part of Henry VI.,' in the form in which we have received it as Shakspeare's.



## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

### KING HENRY VI.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 5. Act III. sc. 1.  
Act IV. sc. 6; sc. 8. Act V. sc. 6.

### EDWARD, PRINCE OF WALES, *son to Henry VI.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 5. Act III. sc. 3.  
Act V. sc. 4; sc. 5.

### LEWIS XI., *King of France.*

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 3.

### DUKE OF SOMERSET, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4; sc. 5.

### DUKE OF EXETER, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 5. Act IV. sc. 8.

### EARL OF OXFORD, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 3. Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6; sc. 8.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4; sc. 5.

### EARL OF NORTHUMBERLAND, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2.

### EARL OF WESTMORELAND, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1.

### LORD CLIFFORD, *on King Henry's side.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 4; sc. 6.

### RICHARD PLANTAGENET, *Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4.

### EDWARD, *Earl of March, afterwards King Edward IV., son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6.  
Act III. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 5; sc. 7.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 5; sc. 7.

### EDMUND, *Earl of Rutland, son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3.

### GEORGE, *afterwards Duke of Clarence, son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6. Act III. sc. 2.  
Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6; sc. 8.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 5; sc. 7.

### RICHARD, *afterwards Duke of Gloster, son to the Duke of York.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 6.  
Act III. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 5; sc. 7.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 5; sc. 6; sc. 7.

### DUKE OF NORFOLK, *of the Duke of York's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 2.

### MARQUIS OF MONTAGUE, *of the Duke of York's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 6.  
Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 6; sc. 8. Act V. sc. 1.

### EARL OF WARWICK, *of the Duke of York's party.*

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6. Act III. sc. 3.  
Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 6; sc. 8. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

### EARL OF PEMBROKE, *of the Duke of York's party.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 1.

**LORD HASTINGS**, *of the Duke of York's party.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 5; sc. 7. Act V. sc. 7.*

**LORD STAFFORD**, *of the Duke of York's party.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 1.*

**SIR JOHN MORTIMER**, *uncle to the Duke of York.*  
*Appears, Act I. sc. 2.*

**SIR HUGH MORTIMER**, *uncle to the Duke of York.*  
*Appears, Act I. sc. 2.*

**HENRY**, *Earl of Richmond, a youth.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 6.*

**LORD RIVERS**, *brother to Lady Grey.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 4.*

**SIR WILLIAM STANLEY.  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 5.***

**SIR JOHN MONTGOMERY.  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 7.***

**SIR JOHN SOMERVILLE.  
*Appears, Act V. sc. 1.***

*Tutor to Rutland.*  
*Appears, Act I. sc. 3.*

*Mayor of York.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 7.*

*Lieutenant of the Tower.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 6.*

*A Nobleman.*  
*Appears, Act III. sc. 2.*

*Two Keepers.*  
*Appear, Act III. sc. 1.*

*A Huntsman.*  
*Appears, Act IV. sc. 5.*

*A Son that has killed his Father.*  
*Appears, Act II. sc. 5.*

*A Father that has killed his Son.*  
*Appears, Act II. sc. 5.*

**QUEEN MARGARET.**  
*Appears, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 5. Act III. sc. 3.*  
*Act V. sc. 4; sc. 5.*

**LADY GREY**, *afterwards Queen to Edward IV.*  
*Appears, Act III. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act V. sc. 7.*

**BONA**, *sister to the French Queen.*  
*Appears, Act III. sc. 3.*

*Soldiers, and other Attendants on King Henry and King Edward,*  
*Messengers, Watchmen, &c.*

---

**SCENE**,—DURING PART OF THE THIRD ACT, IN FRANCE; DURING ALL THE REST OF THE PLAY, IN ENGLAND.

# KING HENRY VI.—PART III.

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *The Parliament-House.*

*Drums.* *Some Soldiers of YORK's Party break in. Then enter the DUKE OF YORK, EDWARD, RICHARD, NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and others, with white roses in their hats.*

WAR. I wonder how the king escap'd our hands.

YORK. While we pursued the horsemen of the north,  
He slyly stole away, and left his men:

Whereat the great lord of Northumberland,  
Whose warlike ears could never brook retreat,  
Cheer'd up the drooping army; and himself,  
Lord Clifford, and lord Stafford, all abreast,  
Charg'd our main battle's front, and, breaking in,  
Were by the swords of common soldiers slain.

EDW. Lord Stafford's father, duke of Buckingham,  
Is either slain or wounded dangerous:  
I cleft his beaver with a downright blow;  
That this is true, father, behold his blood.

*[Showing his bloody sword.]*

MONT. And, brother, here 's the earl of Wiltshire's blood,

*[To YORK, showing his.]*

Whom I encounter'd as the battles join'd.

RICH. Speak thou for me, and tell them what I did.

*[Throwing down the DUKE OF SOMERSET's head.]*

YORK. Richard hath best deserv'd of all my sons.—  
But, is your grace dead, my lord of Somerset?

NORF. Such hope have all the line of John of Gaunt!

RICH. Thus do I hope to shake king Henry's head.

WAR. And so do I, victorious prince of York.

Before I see thee seated in that throne  
Which now the house of Lancaster usurps,  
I vow by Heaven, these eyes shall never close.  
This is the palace of the fearful king,  
And this the regal seat: possess it, York;  
For this is thine, and not king Henry's heirs'.

YORK. Assist me then, sweet Warwick, and I will;  
For hither we have broken in by force.

NORF. We'll all assist you; he that flies shall die.

YORK. Thanks, gentle Norfolk,—Stay by me, my lords;—  
And, soldiers, stay, and lodge by me this night.

WAR. And when the king comes offer him no violence,  
Unless he seek to thrust you out perforce. [*They retire.*]

YORK. The queen, this day, here holds her parliament,  
But little thinks we shall be of her council:  
By words, or blows, here let us win our right.

RICH. Arm'd as we are, let's stay within this house.

WAR. The bloody parliament shall this be call'd,  
Unless Plantagenet, duke of York, be king;  
And bashful Henry depos'd, whose cowardice  
Hath made us by-words to our enemies.

YORK. Then leave me not, my lords; be resolute;  
I mean to take possession of my right.

WAR. Neither the king, nor he that loves him best,  
The proudest he that holds up Lancaster,  
Dares stir a wing if Warwick shake his bells.  
I'll plant Plantagenet, root him up who dares:—  
Resolve thee, Richard; claim the English crown.

[*WARWICK leads YORK to the throne, who seats himself.*]

*Flourish.* Enter KING HENRY, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND,  
WESTMORELAND, EXETER, and others, with red roses in their  
hats.

K. HEN. My lords, look where the sturdy rebel sits,  
Even in the chair of state! belike, he means  
(Back'd by the power of Warwick, that false peer)  
To aspire unto the crown, and reign as king.  
Earl of Northumberland, he slew thy father;  
And thine, lord Clifford; and you both have vow'd revenge  
On him, his sons, his favourites, and his friends.

NORTH. If I be not, Heaven be reveng'd on me!

CLIF. The hope thereof makes Clifford mourn in steel.

WEST. What, shall we suffer this? let's pluck him down:  
My heart for anger burns, I cannot brook it.

K. HEN. Be patient, gentle earl of Westmoreland.

CLIF. Patience is for poltroons, and such as he;  
He durst not sit there had your father liv'd.  
My gracious lord, here in the parliament  
Let us assail the family of York.

NORTH. Well hast thou spoken, cousin; be it so.

K. HEN. Ah, know you not the city favours them,  
And they have troops of soldiers at their beck?

EXE. But when the duke is slain they'll quickly fly.

K. HEN. Far be the thought of this from Henry's heart,  
To make a shambles of the parliament-house!  
Cousin of Exeter, frowns, words, and threats,  
Shall be the war that Henry means to use.—

*[They advance to the Duke.]*

Thou factious duke of York, descend my throne,  
And kneel for grace and mercy at my feet;  
I am thy sovereign.

YORK. I am thine.

EXE. For shame, come down; he made thee duke of York.

YORK. It was my inheritance, as the earldom was.

EXE. Thy father was a traitor to the crown.

WAR. Exeter, thou art a traitor to the crown,  
In following this usurping Henry.

CLIF. Whom should he follow but his natural king?

WAR. True, Clifford; and that's Richard, duke of York.

K. HEN. And shall I stand, and thou sit in my throne?

YORK. It must and shall be so. Content thyself.

WAR. Be duke of Lancaster, let him be king.

WEST. He is both king and duke of Lancaster;  
And that the lord of Westmoreland shall maintain.

WAR. And Warwick shall disprove it. You forget  
That we are those which chas'd you from the field,  
And slew your fathers, and with colours spread  
March'd through the city to the palace gates.

NORTH. Yes, Warwick, I remember it to my grief;  
And, by his soul, thou and thy house shall rue it.

WEST. Plantagenet, of thee, and these thy sons,  
Thy kinsmen and thy friends, I'll have more lives  
Than drops of blood were in my father's veins.

CLIF. Urge it no more: lest that, instead of words,  
I send thee, Warwick, such a messenger  
As shall revenge his death before I stir.

WAR. Poor Clifford! how I scorn his worthless threats!

YORK. Will you, we show our title to the crown?  
If not, our swords shall plead it in the field.

K. HEN. What title hast thou, traitor, to the crown?  
Thy father was, as thou art, duke of York;  
Thy grandfather Roger Mortimer, earl of March:  
I am the son of Henry the fifth,  
Who made the dauphin and the French to stoop,  
And seiz'd upon their towns and provinces.

WAR. Talk not of France, sith thou hast lost it all.

K. HEN. The lord protector lost it, and not I;  
When I was crown'd I was but nine months old.

RICH. You are old enough now, and yet methinks you  
lose:—

Father, tear the crown from the usurper's head.

EDW. Sweet father, do so; set it on your head.

MONT. Good brother [to YORK], as thou lov'st and  
honourest arms,

Let's fight it out, and not stand cavilling thus.

RICH. Sound drums and trumpets, and the king will fly.

YORK. Sons, peace!

K. HEN. Peace thou! and give king Henry leave to speak.

WAR. Plantagenet shall speak first:—hear him, lords;  
And be you silent and attentive too,  
For he that interrupts him shall not live.

K. HEN. Think'st thou that I will leave my kingly throne  
Wherein my grandsire and my father sat?  
No: first shall war unpeople this my realm;  
Ay, and their colours—often borne in France,  
And now in England, to our heart's great sorrow—  
Shall be my winding-sheet.—Why faint you, lords?  
My title's good, and better far than his.

WAR. Prove it, Henry, and thou shalt be king.

K. HEN. Henry the fourth by conquest got the crown.

YORK. 'T was by rebellion against his king.

K. HEN. I know not what to say; my title's weak.

[*Aside.*

Tell me, may not a king adopt an heir?

YORK. What then?

K. HEN. An if he may, then am I lawful king:  
For Richard, in the view of many lords,  
Resign'd the crown to Henry the fourth;  
Whose heir my father was, and I am his.

YORK. He rose against him, being his sovereign,  
And made him to resign his crown perforce.

WAR. Suppose, my lords, he did it unconstrain'd,  
Think you 't were prejudicial to his crown?

EXE. No; for he could not so resign his crown,  
But that the next heir should succeed and reign.

K. HEN. Art thou against us, duke of Exeter?

EXE. His is the right, and therefore pardon me.

YORK. Why whisper you, my lords, and answer not?

EXE. My conscience tells me he is lawful king.

K. HEN. All will revolt from me, and turn to him.

NORTH. Plantagenet, for all the claim thou lay'st,  
Think not that Henry shall be so depos'd.

WAR. Depos'd he shall be, in despite of all.

NORTH. Thou art deceiv'd: 't is not thy southern power,  
Of Essex, Norfolk, Suffolk, nor of Kent,—  
Which makes thee thus presumptuous and proud,—  
Can set the duke up, in despite of me.

CLIF. King Henry, be thy title right or wrong,  
Lord Clifford vows to fight in thy defence:  
May that ground gape, and swallow me alive,  
Where I shall kneel to him that slew my father!

K. HEN. O Clifford, how thy words revive my heart!

YORK. Henry of Lancaster, resign thy crown:  
What mutter you, or what conspire you, lords?

WAR. Do right unto this princely duke of York;  
Or I will fill the house with armed men,  
And over the chair of state, where now he sits,  
Write up his title with usurping blood.

[*He stamps, and the Soldiers show themselves.*

K. HEN. My lord of Warwick, hear me but one word;—

Let me, for this my lifetime, reign as king.

YORK. Confirm the crown to me, and to mine heirs,  
And thou shalt reign in quiet while thou liv'st.

K. HEN. I am content: Richard Plantagenet,  
Enjoy the kingdom after my decease.

CLIF. What wrong is this unto the prince your son!

WAR. What good is this to England, and himself!

WEST. Base, fearful, and despairing Henry!

CLIF. How hast thou injur'd both thyself and us!

WEST. I cannot stay to hear these articles.

NORTH. Nor I.

CLIF. Come, cousin, let us tell the queen these news.

WEST. Farewell, faint-hearted and degenerate king,  
In whose cold blood no spark of honour bides.

NORTH. Be thou a prey unto the house of York,  
And die in bands for this unmanly deed!

CLIF. In dreadful war mayst thou be overcome!  
Or live in peace, abandon'd, and despis'd!

[*Exeunt* NORTHUMBERLAND, CLIFFORD, and  
WESTMORELAND.

WAR. Turn this way, Henry, and regard them not.

EXE. They seek revenge, and therefore will not yield.

K. HEN. Ah, Exeter!

WAR. Why should you sigh, my lord?

K. HEN. Not for myself, lord Warwick, but my son,  
Whom I unnaturally shall disinherit.

But, be it as it may:—I here entail

The crown to thee, and to thine heirs for ever;

Conditionally, that here thou take an oath

To cease this civil war, and, whilst I live,

To honour me as thy king and sovereign;

And neither by treason, nor hostility,

To seek to put me down, and reign thyself.

YORK. This oath I willingly take, and will perform.

[*Coming from the throne.*

WAR. Long live king Henry!—Plantagenet, embrace him.

K. HEN. And long live thou, and these thy forward sons!

YORK. Now York and Lancaster are reconcil'd.

EXE. Accurs'd be he that seeks to make them foes!

[*Senet. The Lords come forward.*



YORK. Farewell, my gracious lord; I'll to my castle.

WAR. And I'll keep London, with my soldiers.

NORF. And I to Norfolk, with my followers.

MONT. And I unto the sea, from whence I came.

[*Exeunt YORK and his SONS, WARWICK, NORFOLK,  
MONTAGUE, Soldiers, and Attendants.*]

K. HEN. And I, with grief and sorrow, to the court.

*Enter QUEEN MARGARET and the PRINCE OF WALES.*

EXE. Here comes the queen, whose looks bewray her  
anger:

I'll steal away.

K. HEN. Exeter, so will I.

[*Going.*]

Q. MAR. Nay, go not from me, I will follow thee.

K. HEN. Be patient, gentle queen, and I will stay.

Q. MAR. Who can be patient in such extremes?

Ah, wretched man! 'would I had died a maid,  
And never seen thee, never borne thee son,  
Seeing thou hast prov'd so unnatural a father!  
Hath he deserv'd to lose his birthright thus?  
Hadst thou but lov'd him half so well as I;  
Or felt that pain which I did for him once;  
Or nourish'd him, as I did with my blood;  
Thou wouldst have left thy dearest heart-blood there,  
Rather than have made that savage duke thine heir,  
And disinherited thine only son.

PRINCE. Father, you cannot disinherit me:  
If you be king, why should not I succeed?

K. HEN. Pardon me, Margaret; pardon me, sweet son;  
The earl of Warwick and the duke enforc'd me.

Q. MAR. Enforc'd thee! art thou king, and wilt be forc'd?  
I shame to hear thee speak. Ah, timorous wretch!  
Thou hast undone thyself, thy son, and me;  
And given unto the house of York such head,  
As thou shalt reign but by their sufferance.  
To entail him and his heirs unto the crown,  
What is it, but to make thy sepulchre,  
And creep into it far before thy time?  
Warwick is chancellor, and the lord of Calais;  
Stern Faulconbridge commands the narrow seas;

The duke is made protector of the realm;  
And yet shalt thou be safe? such safety finds  
The trembling lamb environed with wolves.  
Had I been there, which am a silly woman,  
The soldiers should have toss'd me on their pikes,  
Before I would have granted to that act.  
But thou preferr'st thy life before thine honour:  
And, seeing thou dost, I here divorce myself,  
Both from thy table, Henry, and thy bed,  
Until that act of parliament be repeal'd,  
Whereby my son is disinherited.  
The northern lords, that have forsworn thy colours,  
Will follow mine, if once they see them spread:  
And spread they shall be; to thy foul disgrace,  
And utter ruin of the house of York.  
Thus do I leave thee:—Come, son, let's away;  
Our army is ready; come, we'll after them.

K. HEN. Stay, gentle Margaret, and hear me speak.

Q. MAR. Thou hast spoke too much already; get thee gone.

K. HEN. Gentle son Edward, thou wilt stay with me?

Q. MAR. Ay, to be murther'd by his enemies.

PRINCE. When I return with victory from the field  
I'll see your grace: till then, I'll follow her.

Q. MAR. Come, son, away; we may not linger thus.

[*Exeunt* QUEEN MARGARET and the PRINCE]

K. HEN. Poor queen! how love to me, and to her son,  
Hath made her break out into terms of rage!  
Reveng'd may she be on that hateful duke;  
Whose haughty spirit, winged with desire,  
Will cost my crown, and, like an empty eagle,  
Tire on the flesh of me and of my son!  
The loss of those three lords torments my heart:  
I'll write unto them, and entreat them fair;—  
Come, cousin, you shall be the messenger.

EXE. And I, I hope, shall reconcile them all.

[*Exeunt*]

SCENE II.—*A Room in Sandal Castle, near Wakefield, in  
Yorkshire.*

*Enter EDWARD, RICHARD, and MONTAGUE.*

RICH. Brother, though I be youngest, give me leave.

EDW. No, I can better play the orator.

MONT. But I have reasons strong and forcible.

*Enter YORK.*

YORK. Why, how now, sons and brother, at a strife?  
What is your quarrel? how began it first?

EDW. No quarrel, but a slight contention.

YORK. About what?

RICH. About that which concerns your grace, and us;  
The crown of England, father, which is yours.

YORK. Mine, boy? not till king Henry be dead.

RICH. Your right depends not on his life, or death.

EDW. Now you are heir, therefore enjoy it now:  
By giving the house of Lancaster leave to breathe,  
It will outrun you, father, in the end.

YORK. I took an oath that he should quietly reign.

EDW. But for a kingdom any oath may be broken:  
I would break a thousand oaths to reign one year.

RICH. No; God forbid your grace should be forsworn.

YORK. I shall be if I claim by open war.

RICH. I 'll prove the contrary, if you 'll hear me speak.

YORK. Thou canst not, son; it is impossible.

RICH. An oath is of no moment, being not took  
Before a true and lawful magistrate,  
That hath authority over him that swears:  
Henry had none, but did usurp the place;  
Then, seeing 't was he that made you to depose,  
Your oath, my lord, is vain and frivolous.  
Therefore, to arms. And, father, do but think  
How sweet a thing it is to wear a crown;  
Within whose circuit is Elysium,  
And all that poets feign of bliss and joy.  
Why do we linger thus? I cannot rest,  
Until the white rose that I wear be dyed

Even in the lukewarm blood of Henry's heart.

YORK. Richard, enough; I will be king, or die.  
Brother, thou shalt to London presently,  
And whet on Warwick to this enterprise.  
Thou, Richard, shalt unto the Duke of Norfolk,  
And tell him privily of our intent.  
You, Edward, shall unto my lord Cobham,  
With whom the Kentishmen will willingly rise:  
In them I trust; for they are soldiers,  
Witty, courteous, liberal, full of spirit.  
While you are thus employed, what resteth more,  
But that I seek occasion how to rise,  
And yet the king not privy to my drift,  
Nor any of the house of Lancaster?

*Enter a Messenger.*

But, stay; What news? why com'st thou in such post?

Mess. The queen, with all the northern earls and lords,  
Intend here to besiege you in your castle:  
She is hard by with twenty thousand men;  
And therefore fortify your hold, my lord.

YORK. Ay, with my sword. What! think'st thou that  
we fear them?

Edward and Richard, you shall stay with me;  
My brother Montague shall post to London:  
Let noble Warwick, Cobham, and the rest,  
Whom we have left protectors of the king,  
With powerful policy strengthen themselves,  
And trust not simple Henry, nor his oaths.

MONT. Brother, I go; I'll win them, fear it not:  
And thus most humbly I do take my leave.

[*Exit.*]

*Enter SIR JOHN and SIR HUGH MORTIMER.*

YORK. Sir John, and sir Hugh Mortimer, mine uncles!  
You are come to Sandal in a happy hour;  
The army of the queen mean to besiege us.

SIR JOHN. She shall not need, we'll meet her in the field.

YORK. What, with five thousand men?

RICH. Ay, with five hundred, father, for a need.  
A woman's general; what should we fear?

[*A march afar off.*]

EDW. I hear their drums; let's set our men in order;  
And issue forth, and bid them battle straight.

YORK. Five men to twenty!—though the odds be great,  
I doubt not, uncle, of our victory.  
Many a battle have I won in France,  
When as the enemy hath been ten to one;  
Why should I not now have the like success?

[*Alarum. Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*Plains near Sandal Castle.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter RUTLAND, and his Tutor.*

RUT. Ah, whither shall I fly to 'scape their hands?  
Ah, tutor! look where bloody Clifford comes!

*Enter CLIFFORD and Soldiers.*

CLIF. Chaplain, away! thy priesthood saves thy life.  
As for the brat of this accursed duke,  
Whose father slew my father, he shall die.

TUT. And I, my lord, will bear him company.

CLIF. Soldiers, away with him.

TUT. Ah, Clifford! murder not this innocent child,  
Lest thou be hated both of God and man.

[*Exit, forced off by Soldiers*]

CLIF. How now! is he dead already? Or is it fear  
That makes him close his eyes?—I'll open them.

RUT. So looks the pent-up lion o'er the wretch  
That trembles under his devouring paws:  
And so he walks, insulting o'er his prey;  
And so he comes, to rend his limbs asunder.  
Ah, gentle Clifford, kill me with thy sword,  
And not with such a cruel threat'ning look.  
Sweet Clifford, hear me speak before I die:  
I am too mean a subject for thy wrath;  
Be thou reveng'd on men, and let me live.

CLIF. In vain thou speak'st, poor boy; my father's blood  
Hath stopp'd the passage where thy words should enter.

RUT. Then let my father's blood open it again;  
He is a man, and, Clifford, cope with him.

CLIF. Had I thy brethren here, their lives and thine  
Were not revenge sufficient for me;  
No, if I digg'd up thy forefathers' graves,  
And hung their rotten coffins up in chains,  
It could not slake mine ire, nor ease my heart.  
The sight of any of the house of York  
Is as a fury to torment my soul;  
And till I root out their accursed line,  
And leave not one alive, I live in hell.  
Therefore—

[*Lifting his hand.*]

RUT. O, let me pray before I take my death:—  
To thee I pray: Sweet Clifford, pity me!

CLIF. Such pity as my rapier's point affords.

RUT. I never did thee harm: Why wilt thou slay me?

CLIF. Thy father hath.

RUT. But 't was ere I was born.  
Thou hast one son, for his sake pity me;  
Lest in revenge thereof,—sith God is just,—  
He be as miserably slain as I.  
Ah, let me live in prison all my days;  
And when I give occasion of offence,  
Then let me die, for now thou hast no cause.

CLIF. No cause?  
Thy father slew my father; therefore, die.

[CLIFFORD *stabs him.*]

RUT. *Di faciant, laudis summa sit ista tuæ!*

[*Dies.*]

CLIF. Plantagenet! I come, Plantagenet!  
And this thy son's blood, cleaving to my blade,  
Shall rust upon my weapon, till thy blood,  
Congeal'd with this, do make me wipe off both.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE IV.—*The same.*

*Alarum. Enter YORK.*

YORK. The army of the queen hath got the field;  
My uncles both are slain in rescuing me;  
And all my followers to the eager foe  
Turn back, and fly, like ships before the wind,

Or lambs pursued by hunger-starved wolves.  
My sons—God knows what hath bechanced them:  
But this I know,—they have demean'd themselves  
Like men born to renown, by life, or death.  
Three times did Richard make a lane to me;  
And thrice cried,—“Courage, father! fight it out!”  
And full as oft came Edward to my side,  
With purple faulchion, painted to the hilt  
In blood of those that had encounter'd him:  
And when the hardiest warriors did retire,  
Richard cried,—“Charge! and give no foot of ground!”  
And cried,—“A crown, or else a glorious tomb!  
A sceptre, or an earthly sepulchre!”  
With this, we charg'd again: but, out, alas!  
We bodg'd again; as I have seen a swan  
With bootless labour swim against the tide,  
And spend her strength with over-matching waves.

[*A short alarum within.*]

Ah, hark! the fatal followers do pursue;  
And I am faint, and cannot fly their fury:  
And were I strong I would not shun their fury:  
The sands are number'd that make up my life;  
Here must I stay, and here my life must end.

*Enter* QUEEN MARGARET, CLIFFORD, NORTHUMBERLAND,  
and Soldiers

Come, bloody Clifford,—rough Northumberland,—  
I dare your quenchless fury to more rage;  
I am your butt, and I abide your shot.

NORTH. Yield to our mercy, proud Plantagenet.

CLIF. Ay, to such mercy as his ruthless arm,  
With downright payment, show'd unto my father.  
Now Phaëton hath tumbled from his car,  
And made an evening at the noontide prick.

YORK. My ashes, as the phoenix, may bring forth  
A bird that will revenge upon you all:  
And in that hope I throw mine eyes to heaven,  
Scorning whate'er you can afflict me with.

Why come you not? what! multitudes, and fear?

CLIF. So cowards fight, when they can fly no further;

So doves do peck the falcon's piercing talons;  
So desperate thieves, all hopeless of their lives,  
Breathe out invectives 'gainst the officers.

YORK. O Clifford, but bethink thee once again,  
And in thy thought o'errun my former time:  
And, if thou canst for blushing, view this face;  
And bite thy tongue, that slanders him with cowardice,  
Whose frown hath made thee faint and fly ere this.

CLIF. I will not handy with thee word for word;  
But buckle with thee blows, twice two for one. *[Draws.]*

Q. MAR. Hold, valiant Clifford! for a thousand causes,  
I would prolong awhile the traitor's life:—  
Wrath makes him deaf: speak thou, Northumberland.

NORTH. Hold, Clifford; do not honour him so much  
To prick thy finger, though to wound his heart:  
What valour were it when a cur doth grin  
For one to thrust his hand between his teeth,  
When he might spurn him with his foot away?  
It is war's prize to take all vantages;  
And ten to one is no impeach of valour.

*[They lay hands on YORK, who struggles.]*

CLIF. Ay, ay, so strives the woodcock with the gin.

NORTH. So doth the coney struggle in the net.

*[YORK is taken prisoner.]*

YORK. So triumph thieves upon their conquer'd booty;  
So true men yield, with robbers so o'ermatch'd.

NORTH. What would your grace have done unto him now?

Q. MAR. Brave warriors, Clifford and Northumberland,  
Come, make him stand upon this molehill here;  
That raught at mountains with outstretched arms,  
Yet parted but the shadow with his hand.  
What! was it you that would be England's king?  
Was't you that revell'd in our parliament,  
And made a preachment of your high descent?  
Where are your mess of sons, to back you now?  
The wanton Edward, and the lusty George?  
And where's that valiant crook-back prodigy,  
Dicky your boy, that, with his grumbling voice,  
Was wont to cheer his dad in mutinies?  
Or, with the rest, where is your darling Rutland?



Look, York; I stain'd this napkin with the blood  
That valiant Clifford, with his rapier's point,  
Made issue from the bosom of the boy:  
And, if thine eyes can water for his death,  
I give thee this to dry thy cheeks withal.  
Alas, poor York! but that I hate thee deadly,  
I should lament thy miserable state.  
I prithee, grieve, to make me merry, York.  
What, hath thy fiery heart so parch'd thine entrails,  
That not a tear can fall for Rutland's death?  
Why art thou patient, man? thou shouldst be mad;  
And I, to make thee mad, do mock thee thus.  
Stamp, rave, and fret, that I may sing and dance.  
Thou wouldst be fee'd, I see, to make me sport;  
York cannot speak unless he wear a crown.  
A crown for York;—and, lords, bow low to him.  
Hold you his hands, whilst I do set it on.

*[Putting a paper crown on his head.]*

Ay, marry, sir, now looks he like a king!  
Ay, this is he that took king Henry's chair;  
And this is he was his adopted heir.  
But how is it that great Plantagenet  
Is crown'd so soon, and broke his solemn oath?  
As I bethink me you should not be king  
Till our king Henry had shook hands with death.  
And will you pale your head in Henry's glory,  
And rob his temples of the diadem,  
Now in his life, against your holy oath?  
O, 't is a fault too, too unpardonable!  
Off with the crown; and, with the crown, his head;  
And, whilst we breathe, take time to do him dead.

CLIF. That is my office, for my father's sake.

Q. MAR. Nay, stay; let's hear the orisons he makes.

YORK. She-wolf of France, but worse than wolves of  
France,

Whose tongue more poisons than the adder's tooth!  
How ill-beseeming is it in thy sex  
To triumph, like an Amazonian trull,  
Upon their woes whom fortune captivates!  
But that thy face is, visor-like, unchanging,

Made impudent with use of evil deeds,  
I would assay, proud queen, to make thee blush:  
To tell thee whence thou cam'st, of whom deriv'd,  
Were shame enough to shame thee, wert thou not shameless.  
Thy father bears the type of king of Naples,  
Of both the Sicils, and Jerusalem,  
Yet not so wealthy as an English yeoman.  
Hath that poor monarch taught thee to insult?  
It needs not, nor it boots thee not, proud queen;  
Unless the adage must be verified,  
That beggars, mounted, run their horse to death.  
'Tis beauty that doth oft make women proud;  
But God he knows thy share thereof is small:  
'Tis virtue that doth make them most admir'd;  
The contrary doth make thee wonder'd at:  
'Tis government that makes them seem divine;  
The want thereof makes thee abominable:  
Thou art as opposite to every good  
As the Antipodes are unto us,  
Or as the south to the septentrion.  
O, tiger's heart, wrapp'd in a woman's hide!  
How couldst thou drain the life-blood of the child,  
To bid the father wipe his eyes withal,  
And yet be seen to bear a woman's face?  
Women are soft, mild, pitiful, and flexible;  
Thou, stern, obdurate, flinty, rough, remorseless.  
Bidd'st thou me rage? why, now thou hast thy wish:  
Wouldst have me weep? why, now thou hast thy will:  
For raging wind blows up incessant showers,  
And when the rage allays the rain begins.  
These tears are my sweet Rutland's obsequies;  
And every drop cries vengeance for his death,  
'Gainst thee, fell Clifford, and thee, false Frenchwoman.

NORTH. Beshrew me, but his passions move me so  
That hardly can I check my eyes from tears.

YORK. That face of his the hungry cannibals  
Would not have touch'd, would not have stain'd with blood:  
But you are more inhuman, more inexorable,  
O, ten times more, than tigers of Hyrcania.  
See, ruthless queen, a hapless father's tears:

This cloth thou dipp'dst in blood of my sweet boy,  
And I with tears do wash the blood away.  
Keep thou the napkin, and go boast of this:

[*He gives back the handkerchief.*]

And, if thou tell'st the heavy story right,  
Upon my soul, the hearers will shed tears;  
Yea, even my foes will shed fast-falling tears,  
And say,—Alas, it was a piteous deed!—  
There, take the crown, and with the crown my curse;  
And, in thy need, such comfort come to thee  
As now I reap at thy too cruel hand!  
Hard-hearted Clifford, take me from the world;  
My soul to heaven, my blood upon your heads!

NORTH. Had he been slaughterman to all my kin,  
I should not for my life but weep with him,  
To see how inly sorrow gripes his soul.

Q. MAR. What, weeping-ripe, my lord Northumberland?  
Think but upon the wrong he did us all,  
And that will quickly dry thy melting tears.

CLIF. Here 's for my oath, here 's for my father's death.

[*Stabbing him.*]

Q. MAR. And here 's to right our gentle-hearted king.

[*Stabbing him.*]

YORK. Open thy gate of mercy, gracious God!  
My soul flies through these wounds to seek out thee. [*Dies.*]

Q. MAR. Off with his head, and set it on York gates;  
So York may overlook the town of York. [*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—*A plain near Mortimer's Cross in Herefordshire.*

*Drums.* Enter EDWARD and RICHARD, with their Forces,  
*marching.*

EDW. I wonder how our princely father 'scap'd;  
Or whether he be 'scap'd away, or no,

From Clifford's and Northumberland's pursuit;  
Had he been ta'en, we should have heard the news,  
Had he been slain, we should have heard the news;  
Or, had he 'scap'd, methinks we should have heard  
The happy tidings of his good escape.

How fares my brother? why is he so sad?

RICH. I cannot joy, until I be resolv'd  
Where our right valiant father is become.  
I saw him in the battle range about;  
And watch'd him, how he singled Clifford forth.  
Methought, he bore him in the thickest troop  
As doth a lion in a herd of neat:  
Or as a bear, encompass'd round with dogs;  
Who having pinch'd a few, and made them cry,  
The rest stand all aloof, and bark at him.  
So far'd our father with his enemies;  
So fled his enemies my warlike father;  
Methinks, 't is prize enough to be his son.  
See how the morning opes her golden gates,  
And takes her farewell of the glorious sun!  
How well resembles it the prime of youth,  
Trimm'd like a younker, prancing to his love.

Edw. Dazzle mine eyes, or do I see three suns?

RICH. Three glorious suns, each one a perfect sun;  
Not separated with the racking clouds,  
But sever'd in a pale clear-shining sky.  
See, see! they join, embrace, and seem to kiss,  
As if they vow'd some league inviolable:  
Now are they but one lamp, one light, one sun.  
In this the heaven figures some event.

Edw. 'T is wondrous strange, the like yet never heard of.  
I think it cites us, brother, to the field;  
Each one already blazing by our meeds,  
Should, notwithstanding, join our lights together,  
And overshine the earth, as this the world.  
Whate'er it bodes, henceforward will I bear  
Upon my target three fair shining suns.

RICH. Nay, bear three daughters; by your leave I speak it,  
You love the breeder better than the male.

*Enter a Messenger.*

But what art thou, whose heavy looks foretell  
Some dreadful story hanging on thy tongue?

MESS. Ah, one that was a woful looker on,  
When as the noble duke of York was slain,  
Your princely father, and my loving lord.

EDW. O, speak no more! for I have heard too much.

RICH. Say how he died, for I will hear it all.

MESS. Environed he was with many foes;  
And stood against them, as the hope of Troy  
Against the Greeks that would have enter'd Troy.  
But Hercules himself must yield to odds;  
And many strokes, though with a little axe,  
Hew down and fell the hardest-timber'd oak.  
By many hands your father was subdued;  
But only slaughter'd by the ireful arm  
Of unrelenting Clifford and the queen:  
Who crown'd the gracious duke, in high despite;  
Laugh'd in his face; and, when with grief he wept,  
The ruthless queen gave him, to dry his cheeks,  
A napkin steeped in the harmless blood  
Of sweet young Rutland, by rough Clifford slain:  
And, after many scorns, many foul taunts,  
They took his head, and on the gates of York  
They set the same; and there it doth remain,  
The saddest spectacle that e'er I view'd.

EDW. Sweet duke of York, our prop to lean upon,  
Now thou art gone, we have no staff, no stay!  
O Clifford, boist'rous Clifford, thou hast slain  
The flower of Europe for his chivalry;  
And treacherously hast thou vanquish'd him,  
For, hand to hand, he would have vanquish'd thee!  
Now my soul's palace is become a prison:  
Ah, would she break from hence! that this my body  
Might in the ground be closed up in rest:  
For never henceforth shall I joy again,  
Never, O never, shall I see more joy.

RICH. I cannot weep; for all my body's moisture  
Scarce serves to quench my furnace-burning heart:

Nor can my tongue unload my heart's great burthen;  
For self-same wind, that I should speak withal,  
Is kindling coals that fire all my breast,  
And burn me up with flames that tears would quench.  
To weep is to make less the depth of grief:  
Tears, then, for babes; blows and revenge for me!—  
Richard, I bear thy name, I'll venge thy death,  
Or die renowned by attempting it.

EDW. His name that valiant duke hath left with thee;  
His dukedom and his chair with me is left.

RICH. Nay, if thou be that princely eagle's bird,  
Show thy descent by gazing 'gainst the sun:  
For chair and dukedom, throne and kingdom say;  
Either that is thine, or else thou wert not his.

*March. Enter WARWICK and MONTAGUE, with Forces.*

WAR. How now, fair lords? What fare? what news abroad?

RICH. Great lord of Warwick, if we should recount  
Our baleful news, and at each word's deliverance  
Stab poniards in our flesh, till all were told,  
The words would add more anguish than the wounds.  
O valiant lord, the duke of York is slain.

EDW. O Warwick! Warwick! that Plantagenet  
Which held thee dearly as his soul's redemption,  
Is by the stern lord Clifford done to death.

WAR. Ten days ago I drown'd these news in tears:  
And now, to add more measure to your woes,  
I come to tell you things sith then befallen.  
After the bloody fray at Wakefield fought,  
Where your brave father breath'd his latest gasp,  
Tidings, as swiftly as the posts could run,  
Were brought me of your loss, and his depart.  
I then in London, keeper of the king,  
Muster'd my soldiers, gather'd flocks of friends,  
And very well appointed, as I thought,  
March'd towards St. Albans to intercept the queen,  
Bearing the king in my behalf along:  
For by my scouts I was advertised  
That she was coming with a full intent  
To dash our late decree in parliament,

Touching king's Henry's oath and your succession.  
Short tale to make,—we at St. Albans met,  
Our battles join'd, and both sides fiercely fought:  
But, whether 't was the coldness of the king,  
Who look'd full gently on his warlike queen,  
That robb'd my soldiers of their heated spleen;  
Or whether 't was report of her success;  
Or more than common fear of Clifford's rigour,  
Who thunders to his captives—blood and death,  
I cannot judge: but, to conclude with truth,  
Their weapons like to lightning came and went;  
Our soldiers'—like the night-owl's lazy flight,  
Or like a lazy thresher with a flail—  
Fell gently down, as if they struck their friends.  
I cheer'd them up with justice of our cause,  
With promise of high pay and great rewards:  
But all in vain; they had no heart to fight,  
And we, in them, no hope to win the day,  
So that we fled: the king unto the queen;  
Lord George your brother, Norfolk, and myself,  
In haste, post-haste, are come to join with you;  
For in the marches here, we heard, you were  
Making another head to fight again.

EDW. Where is the duke of Norfolk, gentle Warwick?  
And when came George from Burgundy to England?

WAR. Some six miles off the duke is with the soldiers:  
And for your brother, he was lately sent  
From your kind aunt, duchess of Burgundy,  
With aid of soldiers to this needful war.

RICH. 'T was odds, belike, when valiant Warwick fled:  
Oft have I heard his praises in pursuit,  
But ne'er till now, his scandal of retire.

WAR. Nor now my scandal, Richard, dost thou hear;  
For thou shalt know, this strong right hand of mine  
Can pluck the diadem from faint Henry's head,  
And wring the awful sceptre from his fist,  
Were he as famous and as bold in war,  
As he is fam'd for mildness, peace, and prayer.

RICH. I know it well, lord Warwick: blame me not;  
'T is love I bear thy glories makes me speak.

But, in this troublous time, what 's to be done?  
Shall we go throw away our coats of steel,  
And wrap our bodies in black mourning gowns,  
Numbering our Ave-Marias with our beads?  
Or shall we on the helmets of our foes  
Tell our devotion with revengeful arms?  
If for the last, say, Ay, and to it, lords.

WAR. Why, therefore Warwick came to seek you out;  
And therefore comes my brother Montague.  
Attend me, lords. The proud insulting queen,  
With Clifford and the haught Northumberland,  
And of their feather many more proud birds,  
Have wrought the easy melting king like wax.  
He swore consent to your succession,  
His oath enrolled in the parliament;  
And now to London all the crew are gone,  
To frustrate both his oath, and what beside  
May make against the house of Lancaster.  
Their power, I think, is thirty thousand strong:  
Now, if the help of Norfolk, and myself,  
With all the friends that thou, brave earl of March,  
Amongst the loving Welshmen canst procure,  
Will but amount to five-and-twenty thousand,  
Why, *Via!* to London will we march amain;  
And once again bestride our foaming steeds,  
And once again cry—Charge upon our foes  
But never once again turn back and fly.

RICH. Ay, now, methinks, I hear great Warwick speak:  
Ne'er may he live to see a sunshine day  
That cries—Retire, if Warwick bid him stay.

EDW. Lord Warwick, on thy shoulder will I lean;  
And when thou fail'st (as God forbid the hour!)  
Must Edward fall, which peril Heaven forefend!

WAR. No longer earl of March, but duke of York;  
The next degree is England's royal throne:  
For king of England shalt thou be proclaim'd  
In every borough as we pass along;  
And he that throws not up his cap for joy  
Shall for the fault make forfeit of his head.  
King Edward, valiant Richard, Montague,



Stay we no longer dreaming of renown,  
But sound the trumpets, and about our task.

RICH. Then, Clifford, were thy heart as hard as steel,  
(As thou hast shown it flinty by thy deeds,)  
I come to pierce it, or to give thee mine.

EDW. Then strike up, drums;—God, and Saint George,  
for us!

*Enter a Messenger.*

WAR. How now? what news?

MESS. The duke of Norfolk sends you word by me,  
The queen is coming with a puissant host;  
And craves your company for speedy counsel.

WAR. Why, then it sorts, brave warriors; Let's away.

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE II.—*Before York.*

*Enter KING HENRY, QUEEN MARGARET, the PRINCE OF WALES,  
CLIFFORD, and NORTHUMBERLAND, with Forces.*

Q. MAR. Welcome, my lord, to this brave town of York.  
Yonder's the head of that arch-enemy  
That sought to be encompass'd with your crown:  
Doth not the object cheer your heart, my lord?

K. HEN. Ay, as the rocks cheer them that fear their  
wrack;—

To see this sight, it irks my very soul.  
Withhold revenge, dear God! 't is not my fault,  
Nor wittingly have I infring'd my vow.

CLIF. My gracious liege, this too much lenity  
And harmful pity must be laid aside.  
To whom do lions cast their gentle looks?  
Not to the beast that would usurp their den.  
Whose hand is that the forest bear doth lick?  
Not his that spoils her young before her face.  
Who 'scapes the lurking serpent's mortal sting?  
Not he that sets his foot upon her back.  
The smallest worm will turn being trodden on;  
And doves will peck in safeguard of their brood.  
Ambitious York did level at thy crown,  
Thou smiling, while he knit his angry brows:

He, but a duke, would have his son a king,  
And raise his issue, like a loving sire;  
Thou, being a king, bless'd with a goodly son,  
Didst yield consent to disinherit him,  
Which argued thee a most unloving father.  
Unreasonable creatures feed their young;  
And though man's face be fearful to their eyes,  
Yet, in protection of their tender ones,  
Who hath not seen them (even with those wings  
Which sometime they have used with fearful flight)  
Make war with him that climb'd unto their nest,  
Offering their own lives in their young's defence?  
For shame, my liege, make them your precedent!  
Were it not pity that this goodly boy  
Should lose his birthright by his father's fault;  
And long hereafter say unto his child,—  
“What my great-grandfather and grandsire got,  
My careless father fondly gave away”?  
Ah, what a shame were this! Look on the boy;  
And let his manly face, which promiseth  
Successful fortune, steel thy melting heart  
To hold thine own, and leave thine own with him.

K. HEN. Full well hath Clifford play'd the orator,  
Inferring arguments of mighty force.  
But, Clifford, tell me, didst thou never hear  
That things ill got had ever bad success?  
And happy always was it for that son,  
Whose father for his hoarding went to hell?  
I'll leave my son my virtuous deeds behind;  
And 'would my father had left me no more!  
For all the rest is held at such a rate  
As brings a thousand-fold more care to keep,  
Than in possession any jot of pleasure.  
Ah, cousin York! 'would thy best friends did know  
How it doth grieve me that thy head is here!

Q. MAR. My lord, cheer up your spirits; our foes are  
nigh,  
And this soft courage makes your followers faint.  
You promis'd knighthood to our forward son;  
Unsheathe your sword, and dub him presently.

Edward, kneel down.

K. HEN. Edward Plantagenet, arise a knight;  
And learn this lesson,—Draw thy sword in right.

PRINCE. My gracious father, by your kingly leave,  
I'll draw it as apparent to the crown,  
And in that quarrel use it to the death.

CLIF. Why, that is spoken like a toward prince.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. Royal commanders, be in readiness:  
For, with a band of thirty thousand men,  
Comes Warwick backing of the duke of York;  
And in the towns, as they do march along,  
Proclaims him king, and many fly to him;  
Darraign your battle, for they are at hand.

CLIF. I would your highness would depart the field;  
The queen hath best success when you are absent.

Q. MAR. Ay, good my lord, and leave us to our fortune.

K. HEN. Why, that's my fortune too; therefore I'll stay.

NORTH. Be it with resolution then to fight.

PRINCE. My royal father, cheer these noble lords,  
And hearten those that fight in your defence!  
Unsheathe your sword, good father; cry, "Saint George!"

*March. Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, WARWICK,  
NORFOLK, MONTAGUE, and Soldiers.*

EDW. Now, perjur'd Henry! wilt thou kneel for grace,  
And set thy diadem upon my head;  
Or bide the mortal fortune of the field?

Q. MAR. Go, rate thy minions, proud insulting boy!  
Becomes it thee to be thus bold in terms,  
Before thy sovereign, and thy lawful king?

EDW. I am his king, and he should bow his knee;  
I was adopted heir by his consent:  
Since when, his oath is broke; for, as I hear,  
You, that are king though he do wear the crown,  
Have caus'd him, by new act of parliament,  
To blot out me and put his own son in.

CLIF. And reason too;  
Who should succeed the father but the son?

RICH. Are you there, butcher?—O, I cannot speak!

CLIF. Ay, crook-back; here I stand, to answer thee,  
Or any be the proudest of thy sort.

RICH. 'T was you that kill'd young Rutland, was it not?

CLIF. Ay, and old York, and yet not satisfied.

RICH. For God's sake, lords, give signal to the fight.

WAR. What say'st thou, Henry, wilt thou yield the crown?

Q. MAR. Why, how now, long-tongued Warwick! dare you  
speak?

When you and I met at St. Albans last,  
Your legs did better service than your hands.

WAR. Then 't was my turn to fly, and now 't is thine.

CLIF. You said so much before, and yet you fled.

WAR. 'T was not your valour, Clifford, drove me thence.

NORTH. No, nor your manhood that durst make you stay.

RICH. Northumberland, I hold thee reverently;  
Break off the parley; for scarce I can refrain  
The execution of my big-swoln heart  
Upon that Clifford, that cruel child-killer.

CLIF. I slew thy father: Call'st thou him a child?

RICH. Ay, like a dastard, and a treacherous coward,  
As thou didst kill our tender brother Rutland;  
But, ere sunset, I 'll make thee curse the deed.

K. HEN. Have done with words, my lords, and hear me  
speak.

Q. MAR. Defy them then, or else hold close thy lips.

K. HEN. I prithee, give no limits to my tongue;  
I am a king, and privileg'd to speak.

CLIF. My liege, the wound that bred this meeting here  
Cannot be cur'd by words; therefore be still.

RICH. Then, executioner, unsheathe thy sword:  
By Him that made us all, I am resolv'd  
That Clifford's manhood lies upon his tongue.

EDW. Say, Henry, shall I have my right or no?  
A thousand men have broke their fasts to-day,  
That ne'er shall dine unless thou yield the crown.

WAR. If thou deny, their blood upon thy head;  
For York in justice puts his armour on.

PRINCE. If that be right which Warwick says is right,  
There is no wrong, but everything is right.

RICH. Whoever got thee, there thy mother stands;  
For, well I wot, thou hast thy mother's tongue.

Q. MAR. But thou art neither like thy sire nor dam;  
But like a foul mis-shapen stigmatic,  
Mark'd by the destinies to be avoided,  
As venom toads, or lizards' dreadful stings.

RICH. Iron of Naples, hid with English guilt,  
Whose father bears the title of a king,  
(As if a channel should be call'd the sea,)  
Sham'st thou not, knowing whence thou art extraught,  
To let thy tongue detect thy base-born heart?

EDW. A wisp of straw were worth a thousand crowns,  
To make this shameless callet know herself.  
Helen of Greece was fairer far than thou,  
Although thy husband may be Menelaus;  
And ne'er was Agamemnon's brother wrong'd  
By that false woman as this king by thee.  
His father revell'd in the heart of France,  
And tam'd the king, and made the dauphin stoop:  
And had he match'd according to his state,  
He might have kept that glory to this day:  
But when he took a beggar to his bed,  
And grac'd thy poor sire with his bridal day,  
Even then that sunshine brew'd a shower for him,  
That wash'd his father's fortunes forth of France,  
And heap'd sedition on his crown at home.  
For what hath broach'd this tumult but thy pride?  
Hadst thou been meek, our title still had slept:  
And we, in pity of the gentle king,  
Had slipp'd our claim until another age.

GEO. But when we saw our sunshine made thy spring,  
And that thy summer bred us no increase,  
We set the axe to thy usurping root:  
And though the edge hath something hit ourselves,  
Yet, know thou, since we have begun to strike,  
We'll never leave till we have hewn thee down,  
Or bath'd thy growing with our heated bloods.

EDW. And, in this resolution, I defy thee;  
Not willing any longer conference,  
Since thou deniest the gentle king to speak.

Sound trumpets!—let our bloody colours wave!—  
And either victory, or else a grave.

Q. MAR. Stay, Edward.

EDW. No, wrangling woman; we'll no longer stay;  
These words will cost ten thousand lives to-day. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*A Field of Battle between Towton and Saxton  
in Yorkshire.*

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter WARWICK.*

WAR. Forspent with toil, as runners with a race,  
I lay me down a little while to breathe:  
For strokes receiv'd, and many blows repaid,  
Have robb'd my strong-knit sinews of their strength,  
And, spite of spite, needs must I rest awhile.

*Enter EDWARD, running.*

EDW. Smile, gentle Heaven! or strike, ungentle death!  
For this world frowns, and Edward's sun is clouded.

WAR. How now, my lord? what hap? what hope of good?

*Enter GEORGE.*

\*GEO. Our hap is loss, our hope but sad despair;  
Our ranks are broke, and ruin follows us:  
What counsel give you, whither shall we fly?

EDW. Bootless is flight; they follow us with wings:  
And weak we are, and cannot shun pursuit.

*Enter RICHARD.*

RICH. Ah, Warwick, why hast thou withdrawn thyself?  
Thy brother's blood the thirsty earth hath drunk,  
Broach'd with the steely point of Clifford's lance:  
And, in the very pangs of death, he cried,—  
Like to a dismal clangour heard from far,—  
“Warwick, revenge! brother, revenge my death!”  
So underneath the belly of their steeds,  
That stain'd their fetlocks in his smoking blood,  
The noble gentleman gave up the ghost.

WAR. Then let the earth be drunken with our blood:  
I'll kill my horse, because I will not fly.

Why stand we like soft-hearted women here,  
Wailing our losses, whiles the foe doth rage;  
And look upon, as if the tragedy  
Were play'd in jest by counterfeiting actors?  
Here on my knee I vow to God above,  
I'll never pause again, never stand still,  
Till either death hath clos'd these eyes of mine,  
Or fortune given me measure of revenge.

EDW. O Warwick, I do bend my knee with thine;  
And, in this vow, do chain my soul to thine;  
And, ere my knee rise from the earth's cold face,  
I throw my hands, mine eyes, my heart to Thee,  
Thou setter-up and plucker-down of kings!  
Beseeching Thee, if with thy will it stands  
That to my foes this body must be prey,  
Yet that thy brazen gates of heaven may ope,  
And give sweet passage to my sinful soul!  
Now, lords, take leave until we meet again,  
Where'er it be, in heaven, or on earth.

RICH. Brother, give me thy hand;—and, gentle Warwick,  
Let me embrace thee in my weary arms;  
I, that did never weep, now melt with woe,  
That winter should cut off our spring-time so.

WAR. Away, away! Once more, sweet lords, farewell.

GEO. Yet let us all together to our troops,  
And give them leave to fly that will not stay;  
And call them pillars that will stand to us;  
And, if we thrive, promise them such rewards  
As victors wear at the Olympian games:  
This may plant courage in their quailing breasts;  
For yet is hope of life, and victory.  
Fore-slow no longer, make we hence amain.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—*The same. Another part of the Field.*

*Excursions. Enter RICHARD and CLIFFORD.*

RICH. Now, Clifford, I have singled thee alone:  
Suppose this arm is for the duke of York,  
And this for Rutland; both bound to revenge,  
Wert thou environ'd with a brazen wall.

CLIF. Now, Richard, I am with thee here alone;  
This is the hand that stabb'd thy father York;  
And this the hand that slew thy brother Rutland;  
And here's the heart that triumphs in their death,  
And cheers these hands that slew thy sire and brother,  
To execute the like upon thyself;  
And so, have at thee.

[*They fight. WARWICK enters; CLIFFORD flies.*

RICH. Nay, Warwick, single out some other chase;  
For I myself will hunt this wolf to death. [Exeunt.

SCENE V.—*Another part of the Field.*

*Alarum Enter KING HENRY.*

K. HEN. This battle fares like to the morning's war,  
When dying clouds contend with growing light;  
What time the shepherd, blowing of his nails,  
Can neither call it perfect day nor night.  
Now sways it this way, like a mighty sea,  
Forc'd by the tide to combat with the wind;  
Now sways it that way, like the self-same sea  
Forc'd to retire by fury of the wind:  
Sometime, the flood prevails; and then, the wind:  
Now, one the better; then, another best;  
Both tugging to be victors, breast to breast,  
Yet neither conqueror, nor conquered:  
So is the equal poise of this fell war.  
Here on this molehill will I sit me down.  
To whom God will, there be the victory!  
For Margaret my queen, and Clifford too,  
Have chid me from the battle; swearing both  
They prosper best of all when I am thence.  
'Would I were dead! if God's will were so:  
For what is in this world but grief and woe?  
O God! methinks it were a happy life,  
To be no better than a homely swain:  
To sit upon a hill, as I do now,  
To carve out dials quaintly, point by point,  
Thereby to see the minutes how they run:  
How many make the hour full complete,



How many hours bring about the day,  
How many days will finish up the year,  
How many years a mortal man may live.  
When this is known, then to divide the times:  
So many hours must I tend my flock;  
So many hours must I take my rest;  
So many hours must I contemplate;  
So many hours must I sport myself;  
So many days my ewes have been with young;  
So many weeks ere the poor fools will yeave;  
So many years ere I shall shear the fleece;  
So minutes, hours, days, weeks, months, and years,  
Pass'd over to the end they were created,  
Would bring white hairs unto a quiet grave.  
Ah, what a life were this! how sweet! how lovely!  
Gives not the hawthorn bush a sweeter shade  
To shepherds, looking on their silly sheep,  
Than doth a rich embroider'd canopy  
To kings, that fear their subjects' treachery?  
O, yes it doth; a thousand-fold it doth.  
And to conclude,—the shepherd's homely curds,  
His cold thin drink out of his leather bottle,  
His wonted sleep under a fresh tree's shade,  
All which secure and sweetly he enjoys,  
Is far beyond a prince's delicacies,  
His viands sparkling in a golden cup,  
His body couched in a curious bed,  
When care, mistrust, and treason wait on him.

*Alarum. Enter a Son that has killed his Father, dragging in the dead body.*

SON. Ill blows the wind that profits nobody.  
This man, whose hand in hand I slew in fight,  
May be possessed with some store of crowns:  
And I, that haply take them from him now,  
May yet ere night yield both my life and them  
To some man else, as this dead man doth me.  
Who's this?—O God! it is my father's face,  
Whom in this conflict I unawares have kill'd.  
O heavy times, begetting such events!

From London by the king was I press'd forth;  
My father, being the earl of Warwick's man,  
Came on the part of York, press'd by his master;  
And I, who at his hands receiv'd my life,  
Have by my hands of life bereaved him.  
Pardon me, God, I knew not what I did!  
And pardon, father, for I knew not thee!  
My tears shall wipe away these bloody marks;  
And no more words, till they have flow'd their fill.

K. HEN. O piteous spectacle! O bloody times!  
Whiles lions war, and battle for their dens,  
Poor harmless lambs abide their enmity.  
Weep, wretched man, I'll aid thee, tear for tear;  
And let our hearts, and eyes, like civil war,  
Be blind with tears, and break o'ercharg'd with grief.

*Enter a Father who has killed his Son, with the body in his arms.*

FATH. Thou that so stoutly hast resisted me,  
Give me thy gold, if thou hast any gold;  
For I have bought it with an hundred blows.  
But let me see:—is this our foeman's face?  
Ah, no, no, no, it is mine only son!  
Ah, boy, if any life be left in thee,  
Throw up thine eye; see, see, what showers arise,  
Blown with the windy tempest of my heart,  
Upon thy wounds, that kill mine eye and heart!  
O, pity, God, this miserable age!  
What stratagems, how fell, how butcherly,  
Erroneous, mutinous, and unnatural,  
This deadly quarrel daily doth beget!  
O boy, thy father gave thee life too soon,  
And hath bereft thee of thy life too late!

K. HEN. Woe above woe! grief more than common grief!  
O, that my death would stay these ruthful deeds!  
O pity, pity, gentle Heaven, pity!  
The red rose and the white are on his face,  
The fatal colours of our striving houses:  
The one, his purple blood right well resembles;  
The other, his pale cheeks, methinks, present:

Wither one rose, and let the other flourish!  
If you contend, a thousand lives must wither.

SON. How will my mother, for a father's death,  
Take on with me, and ne'er be satisfied!

FATH. How will my wife, for slaughter of my son,  
Shed seas of tears, and ne'er be satisfied!

K. HEN. How will the country, for these woful chances,  
Mis-think the king, and not be satisfied!

SON. Was ever son so rued a father's death?

FATH. Was ever father so bemoan'd a son?

K. HEN. Was ever king so griev'd for subjects' woe!  
Much is your sorrow; mine, ten times so much.

SON. I'll bear thee hence, where I may weep my fill.

*[Exit, with the body.]*

FATH. These arms of mine shall be thy winding-sheet;  
My heart, sweet boy, shall be thy sepulchre;  
For from my heart thine image ne'er shall go.  
My sighing breast shall be thy funeral bell;  
And so obsequious will thy father be,  
E'en, for the loss of thee, having no more,  
As Priam was for all his valiant sons.  
I'll bear thee hence; and let them fight that will,  
For I have murther'd where I should not kill.

*[Exit, with the body.]*

K. HEN. Sad-hearted men, much overgone with care,  
Here sits a king more woful than you are.

*Alarums: Excursions. Enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE  
OF WALES, and EXETER.*

PRINCE. Fly, father, fly! for all your friends are fled,  
And Warwick rages like a chafed bull:  
Away! for death doth hold us in pursuit.

Q. MAR. Mount you, my lord; towards Berwick post  
again:

Edward and Richard, like a brace of greyhounds  
Having the fearful flying hare in sight,  
With fiery eyes, sparkling for very wrath,  
And bloody steel grasp'd in their ireful hands,  
Are at our backs; and therefore hence amain.

EXE. Away! for vengeance comes along with them:

Nay, stay not to expostulate, make speed;  
Or else come after, I'll away before.

K. HEN. Nay, take me with thee, good sweet Exeter;  
Not that I fear to stay, but love to go  
Whither the queen intends. Forward; away! [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI.—*The same.*

*A loud Alarum. Enter CLIFFORD, wounded.*

CLIF. Here burns my candle out, ay, here it dies,  
Which, whiles it lasted, gave king Henry light.  
O, Lancaster! I fear thy overthrow,  
More than my body's parting with my soul.  
My love, and fear, glued many friends to thee:  
And, now I fall, thy tough commixtures melt.  
Impairing Henry, strength'ning mis-proud York,  
The common people swarm like summer flies:  
And whither fly the gnats but to the sun?  
And who shines now but Henry's enemies?  
O Phœbus! hadst thou never given consent  
That Phaëton should check thy fiery steeds,  
Thy burning car never had scorch'd the earth:  
And Henry, hadst thou sway'd as kings should do,  
Or as thy father, and his father, did,  
Giving no ground unto the house of York,  
They never then had sprung like summer flies;  
I, and ten thousand in this luckless realm,  
Had left no mourning widows for our death,  
And thou this day hadst kept thy chair in peace.  
For what doth cherish weeds, but gentle air?  
And what makes robbers bold, but too much lenity?  
Bootless are complaints, and cureless are my wounds:  
No way to fly, nor strength to hold out flight;  
The foe is merciless, and will not pity;  
For at their hands I have deserv'd no pity.  
The air hath got into my deadly wounds,  
And much effuse of blood doth make me faint:  
Come, York and Richard, Warwick, and the rest;  
I stabb'd your fathers' bosoms, split my breast. [*He faints.*]

*Alarum and retreat. Enter EDWARD, GEORGE, RICHARD, MONTAGUE, WARWICK, and Soldiers.*

EDW. Now breathe we, lords; good fortune bids us pause,  
And smooth the frowns of war with peaceful looks.  
Some troops pursue the bloody-minded queen;  
That led calm Henry, though he were a king,  
As doth a sail, fill'd with a fretting gust,  
Command an argosy to stem the waves.  
But think you, lords, that Clifford fled with them?

WAR. No, 't is impossible he should escape:  
For, though before his face I speak the words,  
Your brother Richard mark'd him for the grave:  
And, wheresoe'er he is, he's surely dead.

*[CLIFFORD groans, and dies.]*

EDW. Whose soul is that which takes her heavy leave?

RICH. A deadly groan, like life and death's departing.

EDW. See who it is: and, now the battle's ended,  
If friend, or foe, let him be gently used.

RICH. Revoke that doom of mercy, for 't is Clifford;  
Who, not contented that he lopp'd the branch  
In hewing Rutland when his leaves put forth,  
But set his murdering knife unto the root  
From whence that tender spray did sweetly spring,—  
I mean, our princely father, duke of York.

WAR. From off the gates of York fetch down the head,  
Your father's head, which Clifford placed there:  
Instead whereof let this supply the room;  
Measure for measure must be answered.

EDW. Bring forth that fatal screech-owl to our house,  
That nothing sung but death to us and ours:  
Now death shall stop his dismal threatening sound,  
And his ill-boding tongue no more shall speak.

*[Attendants bring the body forward.]*

WAR. I think his understanding is bereft:—  
Speak, Clifford, dost thou know who speaks to thee?—  
Dark cloudy death o'ershades his beams of life,  
And he nor sees, nor hears us what we say.

RICH. O, would he did! and so, perhaps, he doth;  
'T is but his policy to counterfeit,

Because he would avoid such bitter taunts  
Which in the time of death he gave our father.

GEO. If so thou think'st, vex him with eager words.

RICH. Clifford, ask mercy, and obtain no grace.

EDW. Clifford, repent in bootless penitence.

WAR. Clifford, devise excuses for thy faults.

GEO. While we devise fell tortures for thy faults.

RICH. Thou didst love York, and I am son to York.

EDW. Thou pitied'st Rutland, I will pity thee.

GEO. Where's captain Margaret, to fence you now?

WAR. They mock thee, Clifford! swear as thou wast wont.

RICH. What, not an oath? nay, then the world goes hard  
When Clifford cannot spare his friends an oath:  
I know by that he's dead: And, by my soul,  
If this right hand would buy two hours' life,  
That I in all despite might rail at him,  
This hand should chop it off; and with the issuing blood  
Stifle the villain, whose unstanched thirst  
York and young Rutland could not satisfy.

WAR. Ay, but he's dead: Off with the traitor's head,  
And rear it in the place your father's stands.  
And now to London with triumphant march,  
There to be crowned England's royal king.  
From whence shall Warwick cut the sea to France  
And ask the lady Bona for thy queen:  
So shalt thou sinew both these lands together;  
And, having France thy friend, thou shalt not dread  
The scatter'd foe, that hopes to rise again;  
For though they cannot greatly sting to hurt,  
Yet look to have them buzz, to offend thine ears.  
First, will I see the coronation;  
And then to Brittany I'll cross the sea,  
To effect this marriage, so it please my lord.

EDW. Even as thou wilt, sweet Warwick, let it be:  
For on thy shoulder do I build my seat;  
And never will I undertake the thing  
Wherein thy counsel and consent is wanting.  
Richard, I will create thee duke of Gloster;  
And George, of Clarence; Warwick, as ourself,  
Shall do, and undo, as him pleaseth best.

RICH. Let me be duke of Clarence; George, of Gloster;  
For Gloster's dukedom is too ominous.

WAR. Tut! that's a foolish observation;  
Richard, be duke of Gloster. Now to London,  
To see these honours in possession.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—*A Chase in the North of England.*

*Enter Two Keepers, with cross-bows in their hands.*

1 KEEP. Under this thick-grown brake we'll shroud ourselves;

For through this laund anon the deer will come;  
And in this covert will we make our stand,  
Culling the principal of all the deer.

2 KEEP. I'll stay above the hill, so both may shoot.

1 KEEP. That cannot be; the noise of thy cross-bow  
Will scare the herd, and so my shoot is lost.  
Here stand we both, and aim we at the best:  
And, for the time shall not seem tedious,  
I'll tell thee what befell me on a day,  
In this self-place where now we mean to stand.

2 KEEP. Here comes a man, let's stay till he be past.

*Enter KING HENRY, disguised, with a prayer-book.*

K. HEN. From Scotland am I stol'n, even of pure love,  
To greet mine own land with my wishful sight.  
No, Harry, Harry, 't is no land of thine;  
Thy place is fill'd, thy sceptre wrung from thee,  
Thy balm wash'd off, wherewith thou wast anointed:  
No bending knee will call thee Cæsar now,  
No humble suitors press to speak for right,  
No, not a man comes for redress of thee;  
For how can I help them, and not myself?

1 KEEP. Ay, here's a deer whose skin's a keeper's fee:  
This is the *quondam* king; let's seize upon him.

K. HEN. Let me embrace these sour adversities:  
For wise men say it is the wisest course.

2 KEEP. Why linger we? let us lay hands upon him.

1 KEEP. Forbear a while; we 'll hear a little more.

K. HEN. My queen and son are gone to France for aid;  
And, as I hear, the great commanding Warwick  
Is thither gone, to crave the French king's sister  
To wife for Edward: If this news be true,  
Poor queen and son, your labour is but lost;  
For Warwick is a subtle orator,  
And Lewis a prince soon won with moving words.  
By this account, then, Margaret may win him;  
For she's a woman to be pitied much:  
Her sighs will make a battery in his breast;  
Her tears will pierce into a marble heart;  
The tiger will be mild while she doth mourn;  
And Nero will be tainted with remorse,  
To hear, and see, her plaints, her brinish tears.  
Ay, but she's come to beg; Warwick, to give:  
She, on his left side, craving aid for Henry;  
He, on his right, asking a wife for Edward.  
She weeps, and says—her Henry is depos'd;  
He smiles, and says—his Edward is install'd;  
That she, poor wretch, for grief can speak no more;  
Whiles Warwick tells his title, smooths the wrong,  
Inferreth arguments of mighty strength;  
And, in conclusion, wins the king from her,  
With promise of his sister, and what else,  
To strengthen and support king Edward's place.  
O Margaret, thus 't will be; and thou, poor soul,  
Art then forsaken, as thou went'st forlorn.

2 KEEP. Say, what art thou that talk'st of kings and queens?

K. HEN. More than I seem, and less than I was born to:  
A man at least, for less I should not be;  
And men may talk of kings, and why not I?

2 KEEP. Ay, but thou talk'st as if thou wert a king.

K. HEN. Why, so I am, in mind; and that's enough.

2 KEEP. But if thou be a king, where is thy crown?

K. HEN. My crown is in my heart, not on my head;



Not deck'd with diamonds and Indian stones,  
Nor to be seen: my crown is call'd content;  
A crown it is that seldom kings enjoy.

2 KEEP. Well, if you be a king crown'd with content,  
Your crown content and you must be contented  
To go along with us: for, as we think,  
You are the king king Edward hath depos'd;  
And we his subjects, sworn in all allegiance,  
Will apprehend you as his enemy.

K. HEN. But did you never swear and break an oath?

2 KEEP. No, never such an oath; nor will not now.

K. HEN. Where did you dwell when I was king of Eng-  
land?

2 KEEP. Here in this country where we now remain.

K. HEN. I was anointed king at nine months old;  
My father, and my grandfather, were kings;  
And you were sworn true subjects unto me:  
And, tell me then, have you not broke your oaths?

1 KEEP. No;  
For we were subjects but while you were king.

K. HEN. Why, am I dead? do I not breathe a man?  
Ah, simple men, you know not what you swear.  
Look, as I blow this feather from my face,  
And as the air blows it to me again,  
Obeying with my wind when I do blow,  
And yielding to another when it blows,  
Commanded always by the greatest gust;  
Such is the lightness of you common men.  
But do not break your oaths; for, of that sin  
My mild entreaty shall not make you guilty.  
Go where you will, the king shall be commanded;  
And be you kings; command, and I'll obey.

1 KEEP. We are true subjects to the king, king Edward.

K. HEN. So would you be again to Henry,  
If he were seated as king Edward is.

1 KEEP. We charge you, in God's name, and in the king's,  
To go with us unto the officers.

K. HEN. In God's name, lead; your king's name be obey'd:  
And what God will, that let your king perform;  
And what he will, I humbly yield unto.

[*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* KING EDWARD, GLOSTER, CLARENCE, and LADY GREY

K. EDW. Brother of Gloster, at St. Albans' field  
This lady's husband, sir John Grey, was slain,  
His lands then seiz'd on by the conqueror:  
Her suit is now, to repossess those lands;  
Which we in justice cannot well deny,  
Because in quarrel of the house of York  
The worthy gentleman did lose his life.

GLO. Your highness shall do well to grant her suit;  
It were dishonour to deny it her.

K. EDW. It were no less; but yet I'll make a pause.

GLO. Yea! is it so?

I see the lady hath a thing to grant,  
Before the king will grant her humble suit.

CLAR. He knows the game: How true he keeps the wind!

[*Aside.*

GLO. Silence!

[*Aside.*

K. EDW. Widow, we will consider of your suit;  
And come some other time, to know our mind.

L. GREY. Right gracious lord, I cannot brook delay:  
May it please your highness to resolve me now;  
And what your pleasure is shall satisfy me.

GLO. [*Aside.*] Ay, widow? then I'll warrant you all your  
lands,

An if what pleases him shall pleasure you.

Fight closer, or, good faith, you'll catch a blow.

CLAR. I fear her not unless she chance to fall. [*Aside.*

GLO. God forbid that! for he'll take vantages. [*Aside.*

K. EDW. How many children hast thou, widow? tell me.

CLAR. I think he means to beg a child of her. [*Aside.*

GLO. Nay, then whip me; he'll rather give her two.

[*Aside.*

L. GREY. Three, my most gracious lord.

GLO. You shall have four, if you'll be rul'd by him.

[*Aside.*

K. EDW. 'T were pity they should lose their father's land.

L. GREY. Be pitiful, dread lord, and grant it then.

K. EDW. Lords, give us leave: I'll try this widow's wit.

GLO. Ay, good leave have you; for you will have leave  
Till youth take leave, and leave you to the crutch.

[GLOSTER and CLARENCE retire to the other side.

K. EDW. Now, tell me, madam, do you love your children?

L. GREY. Ay, full as dearly as I love myself.

K. EDW. And would you not do much to do them good?

L. GREY. To do them good I would sustain some harm.

K. EDW. Then get your husband's lands, to do them good.

L. GREY. Therefore I came unto your majesty.

K. EDW. I'll tell you how these lands are to be got.

L. GREY. So shall you bind me to your highness' service.

K. EDW. What service wilt thou do me, if I give them?

L. GREY. What you command that rests in me to do.

K. EDW. But you will take exceptions to my boon.

L. GREY. No, gracious lord, except I cannot do it.

K. EDW. Ay, but thou canst do what I mean to ask.

L. GREY. Why, then I will do what your grace commands.

GLO. He plies her hard; and much rain wears the marble.

[*Aside.*

CLAR. As red as fire! nay, then her wax must melt.

[*Aside.*

L. GREY. Why stops my lord? shall I not hear my task?

K. EDW. An easy task; 't is but to love a king.

L. GREY. That's soon perform'd, because I am a subject.

K. EDW. Why, then, thy husband's lands I freely give thee.

L. GREY. I take my leave with many thousand thanks.

GLO. The match is made; she seals it with a curt'sy.

[*Aside.*

K. EDW. But stay thee, 't is the fruits of love I mean.

L. GREY. The fruits of love I mean, my loving liege.

K. EDW. Ay, but, I fear me, in another sense.

What love think'st thou I sue so much to get?

L. GREY. My love till death, my humble thanks, my  
prayers;

That love which virtue begs and virtue grants.

K. EDW. No, by my troth, I did not mean such love.

L. GREY. Why, then you mean not as I thought you did.

K. EDW. But now you partly may perceive my mind.

L. GREY. My mind will never grant what I perceive

Your highness aims at, if I aim aright.

K. EDW. To tell thee plain, I aim to lie with thee.

L. GREY. To tell you plain, I had rather lie in prison.

K. EDW. Why, then thou shalt not have thy husband's lands.

L. GREY. Why, then mine honesty shall be my dower;  
For by that loss I will not purchase them.

K. EDW. Therein thou wrong'st thy children mightily.

L. GREY. Herein your highness wrongs both them and me.  
But, mighty lord, this merry inclination  
Accords not with the sadness of my suit;  
Please you dismiss me, either with ay or no.

K. EDW. Ay, if thou wilt say ay to my request:  
No, if thou dost say no to my demand.

L. GREY. Then, no, my lord. My suit is at an end.

GLO. The widow likes him not, she knits her brows.

[*Aside.*

CLAR. He is the bluntest wooer in Christendom. [*Aside.*

K. EDW. [*Aside.*] Her looks do argue her replete with  
modesty;

Her words do show her wit incomparable.

All her perfections challenge sovereignty:

One way, or other, she is for a king;

And she shall be my love, or else my queen.

Say, that king Edward take thee for his queen?

L. GREY. 'T is better said than done, my gracious lord:  
I am a subject fit to jest withal,  
But far unfit to be a sovereign.

K. EDW. Sweet widow, by my state I swear to thee,  
I speak no more than what my soul intends;  
And that is, to enjoy thee for my love.

L. GREY. And that is more than I will yield unto:  
I know I am too mean to be your queen,  
And yet too good to be your concubine.

K. EDW. You cavil, widow; I did mean my queen.

L. GREY. 'T will grieve your grace my son should call you  
father.

K. EDW. No more than when my daughters call thee  
mother.

Thou art a widow, and thou hast some children;

And, by God's mother, I, being but a bachelor,  
Have other some: why, 't is a happy thing  
To be the father unto many sons.

Answer no more, for thou shalt be my queen.

GLO. The ghostly father now hath done his shrift. [*Aside.*

CLAR. When he was made a shriver, 't was for shift.

[*Aside.*

K. EDW. Brothers, you muse what chat we two have had.

GLO. The widow likes it not, for she looks very sad.

K. EDW. You 'd think it strange if I should marry her.

CLAR. To whom, my lord?

K. EDW. Why, Clarence, to myself.

GLO. That would be ten days' wonder, at the least.

CLAR. That 's a day longer than a wonder lasts.

GLO. By so much is the wonder in extremes.

K. EDW. Well, jest on, brothers: I can tell you both  
Her suit is granted for her husband's lands.

*Enter a Nobleman.*

NOB. My gracious lord, Henry your foe is taken,  
And brought your prisoner to your palace gate.

K. EDW. See that he be convey'd unto the Tower:

And go we, brothers, to the man that took him,  
To question of his apprehension.

Widow, go you along; Lords, use her honourable.

[*Exeunt* KING EDWARD, LADY GREY, CLARENCE,  
and Lord.

GLO. Ay, Edward will use women honourably.  
'Would he were wasted, marrow, bones, and all,  
That from his loins no hopeful branch may spring,  
To cross me from the golden time I look for!  
And yet, between my soul's desire and me,  
(The lustful Edward's title buried,)  
Is Clarence, Henry, and his son young Edward,  
And all the unlook'd-for issue of their bodies,  
To take their rooms, ere I can place myself:  
A cold premeditation for my purpose!  
Why, then I do but dream on sovereignty;  
Like one that stands upon a promontory,  
And spies a far-off shore where he would tread,

Wishing his foot were equal with his eye;  
And chides the sea that sunders him from thence,  
Saying, he'll lade it dry to have his way:  
So do I wish the crown, being so far off;  
And so I chide the means that keep me from it;  
And so I say, I'll cut the causes off,  
Flattering me with impossibilities.  
My eye's too quick, my heart o'erweens too much,  
Unless my hand and strength could equal them.  
Well, say there is no kingdom then for Richard;  
What other pleasure can the world afford?  
I'll make my heaven in a lady's lap,  
And deck my body in gay ornaments,  
And witch sweet ladies with my words and looks.  
O miserable thought! and more unlikely  
Than to accomplish twenty golden crowns!  
Why, love forswore me in my mother's womb:  
And, for I should not deal in her soft laws,  
She did corrupt frail nature with some bribe  
To shrink mine arm up like a wither'd shrub;  
To make an envious mountain on my back,  
Where sits deformity to mock my body;  
To shape my legs of an unequal size;  
To disproportion me in every part,  
Like to a chaos, or an unlick'd bear-whelp,  
That carries no impression like the dam.  
And am I then a man to be lov'd?  
O, monstrous fault, to harbour such a thought!  
Then, since this earth affords no joy to me  
But to command, to check, to o'erbear such  
As are of better person than myself,  
I'll make my heaven to dream upon the crown;  
And, whiles I live, to account this world but hell,  
Until my mis-shap'd trunk, that bears this head,  
Be round impaled with a glorious crown.  
And yet I know not how to get the crown,  
For many lives stand between me and home;  
And I,—like one lost in a thorny wood,  
That rents the thorns, and is rent with the thorns,  
Seeking a way, and straying from the way;

Not knowing how to find the open air,  
But toiling desperately to find it out,—  
Torment myself to catch the English crown:  
And from that torment I will free myself,  
Or hew my way out with a bloody axe.  
Why, I can smile, and murder whiles I smile:  
And cry, content, to that which grieves my heart;  
And wet my cheeks with artificial tears,  
And frame my face to all occasions.  
I'll drown more sailors than the mermaid shall;  
I'll slay more gazers than the basilisk;  
I'll play the orator as well as Nestor;  
Deceive more slyly than Ulysses could;  
And, like a Sinon, take another Troy:  
I can add colours to the cameleon;  
Change shapes with Proteus, for advantages,  
And set the murderous Machiavel to school.  
Can I do this, and cannot get a crown?  
Tut! were it farther off I'll pluck it down. [Exit.

SCENE III.—France. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Flourish.* Enter LEWIS the French King, and LADY BONA, attended; the KING takes his state. Then enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE EDWARD her son, and the EARL OF OXFORD.

K. LEW. Fair queen of England, worthy Margaret,  
[Rising.

Sit down with us; it ill befits thy state  
And birth that thou shouldst stand, while Lewis doth sit.

Q. MAR. No, mighty king of France; now Margaret  
Must strike her sail, and learn awhile to serve,  
Where kings command. I was, I must confess,  
Great Albion's queen in former golden days:  
But now mischance hath trod my title down,  
And with dishonour laid me on the ground;  
Where I must take like seat unto my fortune,  
And to my humble seat conform myself.

K. LEW. Why, say, fair queen, whence springs this deep  
despair?

Q. MAR. From such a cause as fills mine eyes with tears,  
And stops my tongue, while heart is drown'd in cares.

K. LEW. Whate'er it be, be thou still like thyself,  
And sit thee by our side: yield not thy neck

*[Seats her by him.]*

To fortune's yoke, but let thy dauntless mind  
Still ride in triumph over all mischance.

Be plain, queen Margaret, and tell thy grief;  
It shall be eas'd if France can yield relief.

Q. MAR. Those gracious words revive my drooping thoughts,  
And give my tongue-tied sorrows leave to speak.

Now, therefore, be it known to noble Lewis,  
That Henry, sole possessor of my love,  
Is, of a king, become a banish'd man,  
And forc'd to live in Scotland a forlorn;  
While proud ambitious Edward, duke of York,  
Usurps the regal title, and the seat  
Of England's true-anointed lawful king.

This is the cause that I, poor Margaret,  
With this, my son, prince Edward, Henry's heir,  
Am come to crave thy just and lawful aid;  
And if thou fail us all our hope is done:  
Scotland hath will to help, but cannot help;  
Our people and our peers are both misled,  
Our treasure seiz'd, our soldiers put to flight,  
And, as thou seest, ourselves in heavy plight.

K. LEW. Renowned queen, with patience calm the storm,  
While we bethink a means to break it off.

Q. MAR. The more we stay the stronger grows our foe.

K. LEW. The more I stay the more I'll succour thee.

Q. MAR. O, but impatience waiteth on true sorrow:  
And see, where comes the breeder of my sorrow.

*Enter WARWICK, attended.*

K. LEW. What's he approacheth boldly to our presence?

Q. MAR. Our earl of Warwick, Edward's greatest friend.

K. LEW. Welcome, brave Warwick! What brings thee  
to France?

*[Descending from his state. QUEEN MARGARET rises.]*



Q. MAR. Ay, now begins a second storm to rise;  
For this is he that moves both wind and tide.

WAR. From worthy Edward, king of Albion,  
My lord and sovereign, and thy vowed friend,  
I come, in kindness and unfeigned love,  
First, to do greetings to thy royal person;  
And then to crave a league of amity:  
And, lastly, to confirm that amity  
With nuptial knot, if thou vouchsafe to grant  
That virtuous lady Bona, thy fair sister,  
To England's king in lawful marriage.

Q. MAR. If that go forward Henry's hope is done.

WAR. And, gracious madam [*to BONA*], in our king's  
behalf,

I am commanded, with your leave and favour,  
Humbly to kiss your hand, and with my tongue  
To tell the passion of my sovereign's heart;  
Where fame, late entering at his heedful ears,  
Hath plac'd thy beauty's image, and thy virtue.

Q. MAR. King Lewis, and lady Bona, hear me speak,  
Before you answer Warwick. His demand  
Springs not from Edward's well-meant honest love,  
But from deceit, bred by necessity;  
For how can tyrants safely govern home,  
Unless abroad they purchase great alliance?  
To prove him tyrant, this reason may suffice,  
That Henry liveth still: but were he dead,  
Yet here prince Edward stands, king Henry's son.  
Look therefore, Lewis, that by this league and marriage,  
Thou draw not on thy danger and dishonour:  
For though usurpers sway the rule awhile,  
Yet heavens are just, and time suppresseth wrongs.

WAR. Injurious Margaret!

PRINCE.

And why not queen?

WAR. Because thy father Henry did usurp;  
And thou no more art prince than she is queen.

OXF. Then Warwick disannuls great John of Gaunt,  
Which did subdue the greatest part of Spain;  
And, after John of Gaunt, Henry the fourth,  
Whose wisdom was a mirror to the wisest;

And, after that wise prince, Henry the fifth,  
Who by his prowess conquered all France:  
From these our Henry lineally descends.

WAR. Oxford, how haps it in this smooth discourse  
You told not, how Henry the sixth hath lost  
All that which Henry the fifth had gotten?  
Methinks, these peers of France should smile at that.  
But for the rest, you tell a pedigree  
Of threescore and two years; a silly time  
To make prescription for a kingdom's worth.

OXF. Why, Warwick, canst thou speak against thy liege,  
Whom thou obeyedst thirty and six years,  
And not bewray thy treason with a blush?

WAR. Can Oxford, that did ever fence the right,  
Now buckler falsehood with a pedigree?  
For shame! leave Henry, and call Edward king.

OXF. Call him my king, by whose injurious doom  
My elder brother, the lord Aubrey Vere,  
Was done to death? and more than so, my father,  
Even in the downfall of his mellow'd years,  
When nature brought him to the door of death?  
No, Warwick, no; while life upholds this arm,  
This arm upholds the house of Lancaster.

WAR. And I the house of York.

K. LEW. Queen Margaret, prince Edward, and Oxford,  
Vouchsafe at our request to stand aside,  
While I use further conference with Warwick.

Q. MAR. Heavens grant that Warwick's words bewitch  
him not! [*Retiring with the PRINCE and OXFORD.*]

K. LEW. Now, Warwick, tell me, even upon thy conscience,

Is Edward your true king? for I were loth  
To link with him that were not lawful chosen.

WAR. Thereon I pawn my credit and mine honour.

K. LEW. But is he gracious in the people's eye?

WAR. The more, that Henry was unfortunate.

K. LEW. Then further, all dissembling set aside,  
Tell me for truth the measure of his love  
Unto our sister Bona.

WAR. Such it seems

As may beseem a monarch like himself.  
Myself have often heard him say, and swear,  
That this his love was an eternal plant,  
Whereof the root was fix'd in virtue's ground,  
The leaves and fruit maintain'd with beauty's sun;  
Exempt from envy, but not from disdain,  
Unless the lady Bona quit his pain.

K. LEW. Now, sister, let us hear your firm resolve.

BONA. Your grant, or your denial, shall be mine:—  
Yet I confess [to WARWICK], that often ere this day,  
When I have heard your king's desert recounted,  
Mine ear hath tempted judgment to desire.

K. LEW. Then, Warwick, thus,—our sister shall be  
Edward's;

And now forthwith shall articles be drawn  
Touching the jointure that your king must make,  
With which her dowry shall be counterpois'd:  
Draw near, queen Margaret, and be a witness  
That Bona shall be wife to the English king.

PRINCE. To Edward, but not to the English king.

Q. MAR. Deceitful Warwick! it was thy device  
By this alliance to make void my suit;  
Before thy coming Lewis was Henry's friend.

K. LEW. And still is friend to him and Margaret:  
But if your title to the crown be weak,  
As may appear by Edward's good success,  
Then 't is but reason that I be releas'd  
From giving aid, which late I promised.  
Yet shall you have all kindness at my hand  
That your estate requires, and mine can yield.

WAR. Henry now lives in Scotland, at his ease;  
Where, having nothing, nothing he can lose.  
And as for you yourself, our *quondam* queen,  
You have a father able to maintain you;  
And better 't were you troubled him than France.

Q. MAR. Peace, impudent and shameless Warwick, peace  
Proud setter-up and puller-down of kings!  
I will not hence till with my talk and tears,  
Both full of truth, I make king Lewis behold  
Thy sly conveyance, and thy lord's false love;

For both of you are birds of self-same feather.

[*A horn sounded within.*]

K. LEW. Warwick, this is some post to us, or thee.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord ambassador, these letters are for you;  
Sent from your brother, marquis Montague;—  
These from our king unto your majesty;—  
And, madam, these for you; from whom—I know not.

[*To MARGARET. They all read their letters.*]

OXF. I like it well, that our fair queen and mistress  
Smiles at her news, while Warwick frowns at his.

PRINCE. Nay, mark, how Lewis stamps as he were nettled:  
I hope all's for the best.

K. LEW. Warwick, what are thy news? and yours, fair  
queen?

Q. MAR. Mine, such as fill my heart with unhop'd joys.

WAR. Mine, full of sorrow and heart's discontent.

K. LEW. What! has your king married the lady Grey?  
And now, to soothe your forgery and his,  
Sends me a paper to persuade me patience?  
Is this the alliance that he seeks with France?  
Dare he presume to scorn us in this manner?

Q. MAR. I told your majesty as much before:  
This proveth Edward's love and Warwick's honesty.

WAR. King Lewis, I here protest, in sight of Heaven,  
And by the hope I have of heavenly bliss,  
That I am clear from this misdeed of Edward's;  
No more my king, for he dishonours me;  
But most himself, if he could see his shame.  
Did I forget, that by the house of York  
My father came untimely to his death?  
Did I let pass the abuse done to my niece?  
Did I impale him with the regal crown?  
Did I put Henry from his native right;  
And am I guerdon'd at the last with shame?  
Shame on himself: for my desert is honour.  
And to repair my honour lost for him,  
I here renounce him, and return to Henry:  
My noble queen, let former grudges pass,

And henceforth I am thy true servitor;  
I will revenge his wrong to lady Bona,  
And replant Henry in his former state.

Q. MAR. Warwick, these words have turn'd my hate to  
love;

And I forgive and quite forget old faults,  
And joy that thou becom'st king Henry's friend.

WAR. So much his friend, ay, his unfeigned friend,  
That if king Lewis vouchsafe to furnish us  
With some few bands of chosen soldiers,  
I'll undertake to land them on our coast,  
And force the tyrant from his seat by war.

'T is not his new-made bride shall succour him:

And as for Clarence, as my letters tell me,  
He's very likely now to fall from him;

For matching more for wanton lust than honour,  
Or than for strength and safety of our country.

BONA. Dear brother, how shall Bona be reveng'd,  
But by thy help to this distressed queen?

Q. MAR. Renowned prince, how shall poor Henry live,  
Unless thou rescue him from foul despair?

BONA. My quarrel and this English queen's are one.

WAR. And mine, fair lady Bona, joins with yours.

K. LEW. And mine with hers, and thine, and Margaret's.  
Therefore, at last, I firmly am resolv'd,  
You shall have aid.

Q. MAR. Let me give humble thanks for all at once.

K. LEW. Then, England's messenger, return in post;  
And tell false Edward, thy supposed king,  
That Lewis of France is sending over maskers,  
To revel it with him and his new bride:  
Thou seest what's past, go fear thy king withal.

BONA. Tell him, in hope he'll prove a widower shortly,  
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.

Q. MAR. Tell him, my mourning weeds are laid aside,  
And I am ready to put armour on.

WAR. Tell him from me, that he hath done me wrong;  
And therefore I'll uncrown him, ere't be long.

There's thy reward; be gone. *[Exit Messenger]*

K. LEW.

But, Warwick, thou,

And Oxford, with five thousand men,  
Shall cross the seas, and bid false Edward battle:  
And, as occasion serves, this noble queen  
And prince shall follow with a fresh supply.  
Yet, ere thou go, but answer me one doubt;  
What pledge have we of thy firm loyalty?

WAR. This shall assure my constant loyalty:  
That if our queen and this young prince agree,  
I'll join mine eldest daughter, and my joy,  
To him forthwith in holy wedlock bands.

Q. MAR. Yes, I agree, and thank you for your motion:  
Son Edward, she is fair and virtuous,  
Therefore delay not, give thy hand to Warwick;  
And, with thy hand, thy faith irrevocable,  
That only Warwick's daughter shall be thine.

PRINCE. Yes, I accept her, for she well deserves it;  
And here, to pledge my vow, I give my hand.

*[He gives his hand to WARWICK.]*

K. LEW. Why stay we now? These soldiers shall be levied,  
And thou, lord Bourbon, our high admiral,  
Shall waft them over with our royal fleet.  
I long till Edward fall by war's mischance,  
For mocking marriage with a dame of France.

*[Exeunt all but WARWICK.]*

WAR. I came from Edward as ambassador,  
But I return his sworn and mortal foe:  
Matter of marriage was the charge he gave me,  
But dreadful war shall answer his demand.  
Had he none else to make a stale but me?  
Then none but I shall turn his jest to sorrow.  
I was the chief that rais'd him to the crown,  
And I'll be chief to bring him down again:  
Not that I pity Henry's misery,  
But seek revenge on Edward's mockery.

*[Exit.]*

## ACT IV.

SCENE I.—London. *A Room in the Palace.**Enter* GLOSTER, CLARENCE, SOMERSET, MONTAGUE, *and others.*

GLO. Now tell me, brother Clarence, what think you  
Of this new marriage with the lady Grey?  
Hath not our brother made a worthy choice?

CLAR. Alas, you know, 't is far from hence to France;  
How could he stay till Warwick made return?

SOM. My lords, forbear this talk; here comes the king.

*Flourish. Enter* KING EDWARD, *attended; LADY GREY, as*  
*Queen; PEMBROKE, STAFFORD, HASTINGS, and others.*

GLO. And his well-chosen bride.

CLAR. I mind to tell him plainly what I think.

K. EDW. Now, brother of Clarence, how like you our  
choice,

That you stand pensive, as half malcontent?

CLAR. As well as Lewis of France, or the earl of Warwick;  
Which are so weak of courage and in judgment,  
That they 'll take no offence at our abuse.

K. EDW. Suppose they take offence without a cause,  
They are but Lewis and Warwick; I am Edward,  
Your king and Warwick's, and must have my will.

GLO. And you shall have your will, because our king;  
Yet hasty marriage seldom proveth well.

K. EDW. Yea, brother Richard, are you offended too?

GLO. Not I: no.

God forbid that I should wish them sever'd  
Whom God hath join'd together: ay, and 't were pity  
To sunder them that yoke so well together.

K. EDW. Setting your scorns and your mislike aside,  
Tell me some reason, why the lady Grey  
Should not become my wife, and England's queen:  
And you too, Somerset and Montague,  
Speak freely what you think.

CLAR. Then this is my opinion, that king Lewis  
Becomes your enemy, for mocking him

About the marriage of the lady Bona.

GLO. And Warwick, doing what you gave in charge,  
Is now dishonoured by this new marriage.

K. EDW. What, if both Lewis and Warwick be appeas'd  
By such invention as I can devise?

MONT. Yet, to have join'd with France in such alliance,  
Would more have strengthen'd this our commonwealth  
'Gainst foreign storms, than any home-bred marriage.

HAST. Why, knows not Montague that of itself  
England is safe, if true within itself?

MONT. Yes, but the safer when it is back'd with France.

HAST. 'T is better using France than trusting France:  
Let us be back'd with God, and with the seas,  
Which he hath given for fence impregnable,  
And with their helps only defend ourselves;  
In them, and in ourselves, our safety lies.

CLAR. For this one speech, lord Hastings well deserves  
To have the heir of the lord Hungerford.

K. EDW. Ay, what of that? it was my will and grant;  
And, for this once, my will shall stand for law.

GLO. And yet, methinks, your grace hath not done well  
To give the heir and daughter of lord Scales  
Unto the brother of your loving bride;  
She better would have fitted me, or Clarence:  
But in your bride you bury brotherhood.

CLAR. Or else you would not have bestow'd the heir  
Of the lord Bonville on your new wife's son,  
And leave your brothers to go speed elsewhere.

K. EDW. Alas, poor Clarence! is it for a wife  
That thou art malcontent? I will provide thee.

CLAR. In choosing for yourself you show'd your judgment;

Which being shallow, you shall give me leave  
To play the broker in mine own behalf;  
And, to that end, I shortly mind to leave you.

K. EDW. Leave me, or tarry, Edward will be king,  
And not be tied unto his brother's will.

Q. ELIZ. My lords, before it pleas'd his majesty  
To raise my state to title of a queen,  
Do me but right, and you must all confess



That I was not ignoble of descent,  
And meaner than myself have had like fortune.  
But as this title honours me and mine,  
So your dislikes, to whom I would be pleasing,  
Do cloud my joys with danger and with sorrow.

K. EDW. My love, forbear to fawn upon their frowns:  
What danger or what sorrow can befall thee,  
So long as Edward is thy constant friend,  
And their true sovereign, whom they must obey?  
Nay, whom they shall obey, and love thee too,  
Unless they seek for hatred at my hands:  
Which if they do, yet will I keep thee safe,  
And they shall feel the vengeance of my wrath.

GLO. I hear, yet say not much, but think the more.

[*Aside.*

*Enter a Messenger.*

K. EDW. Now, messenger, what letters or what news from  
France?

MESS. My sovereign liege, no letters; and few words,  
But such as I, without your special pardon,  
Dare not relate.

K. EDW. Go to, we pardon thee: therefore, in brief,  
Tell me their words as near as thou canst guess them.  
What answer makes king Lewis unto our letters?

MESS. At my depart, these were his very words:  
“Go tell false Edward, thy supposed king,  
That Lewis of France is sending over maskers  
To revel it with him and his new bride.”

K. EDW. Is Lewis so brave? belike he thinks me Henry.  
But what said lady Bona to my marriage?

MESS. These were her words, utter'd with mild disdain:  
“Tell him, in hope he'll prove a widower shortly,  
I'll wear the willow garland for his sake.”

K. EDW. I blame not her, she could say little less;  
She had the wrong. But what said Henry's queen?  
For I have heard that she was there in place.

MESS. “Tell him,” quoth she, “my mourning weeds are  
done,  
And I am ready to put armour on.”

K. EDW. Belike she minds to play the Amazon.  
But what said Warwick to these injuries?

MESS. He, more incens'd against your majesty  
Than all the rest, discharg'd me with these words:  
"Tell him from me, that he hath done me wrong,  
And therefore I 'll uncrown him, ere 't be long."

K. EDW. Ha! durst the traitor breathe out so proud words?  
Well, I will arm me, being thus forewarn'd:  
They shall have wars, and pay for their presumption.  
But say, is Warwick friends with Margaret?

MESS. Ay, gracious sovereign; they are so link'd in  
friendship

That young prince. Edward marries Warwick's daughter.

CLAR. Belike, the elder; Clarence will have the younger.  
Now, brother king, farewell, and sit you fast,  
For I will hence to Warwick's other daughter;  
That, though I want a kingdom, yet in marriage  
I may not prove inferior to yourself.  
You that love me and Warwick follow me.

[*Exit CLARENCE, and SOMERSET follows.*]

GLO. Not I.

My thoughts aim at a further matter;  
I stay not for love of Edward, but the crown. [Aside.

K. EDW. Clarence and Somerset both gone to Warwick!  
Yet am I arm'd against the worst can happen;  
And haste is needful in this desperate case.  
Pembroke, and Stafford, you in our behalf  
Go levy men, and make prepare for war.  
They are already, or quickly will be, landed:  
Myself in person will straight follow you.

[*Exeunt PEMBROKE and STAFFORD.*]

But, ere I go, Hastings, and Montague,  
Resolve my doubt. You twain, of all the rest,  
Are near to Warwick by blood, and by alliance:  
Tell me, if you love Warwick more than me?  
If it be so, then both depart to him;  
I rather wish you foes than hollow friends;  
But if you mind to hold your true obedience,  
Give me assurance with some friendly vow,  
That I may never have you in suspect.

MONT. So God help Montague, as he proves true!

HAST. And Hastings, as he favours Edward's cause!

K. EDW. Now, brother Richard, will you stand by us?

GLO. Ay, in despite of all that shall withstand you.

K. EDW. Why so; then am I sure of victory.

Now therefore let us hence; and lose no hour,

Till we meet Warwick with his foreign power. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*A Plain in Warwickshire.*

*Enter WARWICK and OXFORD, with French and other Forces.*

WAR. Trust me, my lord, all hitherto goes well;  
The common people by numbers swarm to us.

*Enter CLARENCE and SOMERSET.*

But, see, where Somerset and Clarence come;  
Speak suddenly, my lords; are we all friends?

CLAR. Fear not that, my lord.

WAR. Then, gentle Clarence, welcome unto Warwick;  
And welcome, Somerset: I hold it cowardice,  
To rest mistrustful where a noble heart  
Hath pawn'd an open hand in sign of love;  
Else might I think that Clarence, Edward's brother,  
Were but a feigned friend to our proceedings:  
But welcome, sweet Clarence; my daughter shall be thine.  
And now what rests, but, in night's coverture,  
Thy brother being carelessly encamp'd,  
His soldiers lurking in the towns about,  
And but attended by a simple guard,  
We may surprise and take him at our pleasure?  
Our scouts have found the adventure very easy:  
That as Ulysses, and stout Diomedes,  
With slight and manhood stole to Rhesus' tents,  
And brought from thence the Thracian fatal steeds;  
So we, well cover'd with the night's black mantle,  
At unawares may beat down Edward's guard,  
And seize himself: I say not, slaughter him,  
For I intend but only to surprise him.  
You that will follow me to this attempt

Applaud the name of Henry, with your leader.

[*They all cry Henry!*]

Why, then, let 's on our way in silent sort:

For Warwick and his friends, God and saint George!

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—Edward's *Camp near Warwick.*

*Enter certain Watchmen, to guard the King's tent.*

1 WATCH. Come on, my masters, each man take his stand;  
The king, by this, is set him down to sleep.

2 WATCH. What, will he not to bed?

1 WATCH. Why, no: for he hath made a solemn vow  
Never to lie and take his natural rest  
Till Warwick, or himself, be quite suppress'd

2 WATCH. To-morrow then, belike, shall be the day,  
If Warwick be so near as men report.

3 WATCH. But say, I pray, what nobleman is that  
That with the king here resteth in his tent?

1 WATCH. 'T is the lord Hastings, the king's chiefest  
friend.

3 WATCH. O, is it so? But why commands the king  
That his chief followers lodge in towns about him,  
While he himself keepeth in the cold field?

2 WATCH. 'T is the more honour, because more dangerous.

3 WATCH. Ay; but give me worship, and quietness,  
I like it better than a dangerous honour.

If Warwick knew in what estate he stands,  
'T is to be doubted he would waken him.

1 WATCH. Unless our halberds did shut up his passage.

2 WATCH. Ay; wherefore else guard we his royal tent,  
But to defend his person from night foes?

*Enter WARWICK, CLARENCE, OXFORD, SOMERSET, and Forces.*

WAR. This is his tent; and see, where stands his guard.  
Courage, my masters: honour now, or never!  
But follow me, and Edward shall be ours.

1 WATCH. Who goes there?

2 WATCH. Stay, or thou diest.

[WARWICK, and the rest, cry all—Warwick! Warwick!  
and set upon the Guard; who fly, crying—Arm!  
Arm! WARWICK, and the rest, following them.]

*The drum beating, and trumpets sounding, re-enter WARWICK,  
and the rest, bringing the KING out in a gown, sitting in a  
chair: GLOSTER and HASTINGS fly.*

SOM.

What are they that fly there?

WAR. Richard and Hastings: let them go, here is the duke.

K. EDW. The duke! why, Warwick, when we parted last,  
Thou call'dst me king.

WAR.

Ay, but the case is alter'd:

When you disgrac'd me in my ambassade,  
Then I degraded you from being king,  
And come now to create you duke of York.  
Alas! how should you govern any kingdom,  
That know not how to use ambassadors;  
Nor how to be contented with one wife;  
Nor how to use your brothers brotherly;  
Nor how to study for the people's welfare;  
Nor how to shroud yourself from enemies?

K. EDW. Yea, brother of Clarence, art thou here too?  
Nay, then I see that Edward needs must down.  
Yet, Warwick, in despite of all mischance,  
Of thee thyself, and all thy complices,  
Edward will always bear himself as king:  
Though fortune's malice overthrow my state,  
My mind exceeds the compass of her wheel.

WAR. Then, for his mind, be Edward England's king:

[Takes off his crown.]

But Henry now shall wear the English crown,  
And be true king indeed; thou but the shadow.  
My lord of Somerset, at my request,  
See that forthwith duke Edward be convey'd  
Unto my brother, archbishop of York.  
When I have fought with Pembroke and his fellows,  
I'll follow you, and tell what answer  
Lewis, and the lady Bona, send to him:  
Now, for a while, farewell, good duke of York.

K. EDW. What fates impose, that men must needs abide  
It boots not to resist both wind and tide.

[*Exit KING EDWARD, led out; SOMERSET with him*]

OXF. What now remains, my lords, for us to do,  
But march to London with our soldiers?

WAR. Ay, that 's the first thing that we have to do -  
To free king Henry from imprisonment,  
And see him seated in the regal throne. [*Exeunt*]

SCENE IV.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH and RIVERS.*

RIV. Madam, what makes you in this sudden change?

Q. ELIZ. Why, brother Rivers, are you yet to learn  
What late misfortune is befall'n king Edward?

RIV. What, loss of some pitch'd battle against Warwick?

Q. ELIZ. No, but the loss of his own royal person.

RIV. Then is my sovereign slain?

Q. ELIZ. Ay, almost slain, for he is taken prisoner;  
Either betray'd by falsehood of his guard,  
Or by his foe surpris'd at unawares:  
And, as I further have to understand,  
Is new committed to the bishop of York,  
Fell Warwick's brother, and by that our foe.

RIV. These news, I must confess, are full of grief:  
Yet, gracious madam, bear it as you may;  
Warwick may lose, that now hath won the day.

Q. ELIZ. Till then, fair hope must hinder life's decay.  
And I the rather wean me from despair,  
For love of Edward's offspring in my womb:  
This is it that makes me bridle passion,  
And bear with mildness my misfortune's cross;  
Ay, ay, for this I draw in many a tear,  
And stop the rising of blood-sucking sighs,  
Lest with my sighs or tears I blast or drown  
King Edward's fruit, true heir to the English crown.

RIV. But, madam, where is Warwick then become?

Q. ELIZ. I am informed that he comes towards London,  
To set the crown once more on Henry's head:  
Guess thou the rest; king Edward's friends must down.

But to prevent the tyrant's violence,  
(For trust not him that hath once broken faith,)  
I'll hence forthwith unto the sanctuary,  
To save at least the heir of Edward's right;  
There shall I rest secure from force and fraud.  
Come therefore, let us fly, while we may fly;  
If Warwick take us we are sure to die. [Exeunt.]

SCENE V.—A Park near Middleham Castle in Yorkshire.

*Enter GLOSTER, HASTINGS, SIR WILLIAM STANLEY, and others.*

GLO. Now, my lord Hastings, and sir William Stanley,  
Leave off to wonder why I drew you hither,  
Into this chiefest thicket of the park.  
Thus stands the case: You know our king, my brother,  
Is prisoner to the bishop here, at whose hands  
He hath good usage and great liberty;  
And often, but attended with weak guard,  
Comes hunting this way to disport himself.  
I have advertis'd him by secret means,  
That if, about this hour, he make this way,  
Under the colour of his usual game,  
He shall here find his friends, with horse and men,  
To set him free from his captivity.

*Enter KING EDWARD, and a Huntsman.*

HUNT. This way, my lord; for this way lies the game.

K. EDW. Nay, this way, man; see where the huntsmen stand.

Now, brother of Gloster, lord Hastings, and the rest,  
Stand you thus close to steal the bishop's deer?

GLO. Brother, the time and case requireth haste;  
Your horse stands ready at the park corner.

K. EDW. But whither shall we then?

HAST. To Lynn, my lord; and ship from thence to Flanders.

GLO. Well guess'd, believe me; for that was my meaning.

K. EDW. Stanley, I will requite thy forwardness.

GLO. But wherefore stay we? 't is no time to talk.

K. EDW. Huntsman, what say'st thou? wilt thou go along?

HUNT. Better do so than tarry and be hang'd.

GLO. Come then, away; let 's have no more ado.

K. EDW. Bishop, farewell: shield thee from Warwick's frown;

And pray that I may repossess the crown.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI.—*A Room in the Tower.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, CLARENCE, WARWICK, SOMERSET, young RICHMOND, OXFORD, MONTAGUE, Lieutenant of the Tower, and Attendants.

K. HEN. Master lieutenant, now that God and friends  
Have shaken Edward from the regal seat,  
And turn'd my captive state to liberty,  
My fear to hope, my sorrows unto joys,  
At our enlargement what are thy due fees?

LIEU. Subjects may challenge nothing of their sovereigns;  
But, if an humble prayer may prevail,  
I then crave pardon of your majesty.

K. HEN. For what, lieutenant? for well using me?  
Nay, be thou sure, I 'll well requite thy kindness,  
For that it made my imprisonment a pleasure:  
Ay, such a pleasure as incaged birds  
Conceive, when, after many moody thoughts,  
At last, by notes of household harmony,  
They quite forget their loss of liberty.  
But, Warwick, after God, thou sett'st me free,  
And chiefly therefore I thank God and thee;  
He was the author, thou the instrument.  
Therefore, that I may conquer fortune's spite,  
By living low where fortune cannot hurt me;  
And that the people of this blessed land  
May not be punish'd with my thwarting stars;  
Warwick, although my head still wear the crown,  
I here resign my government to thee,  
For thou art fortunate in all thy deeds.

WAR. Your grace hath still been fam'd for virtuous;  
And now may seem as wise as virtuous,



By spying and avoiding fortune's malice,  
For few men rightly temper with the stars:  
Yet in this one thing let me blame your grace,  
For choosing me, when Clarence is in place.

CLAR. No, Warwick, thou art worthy of the sway,  
To whom the Heavens, in thy nativity,  
Adjudg'd an olive branch, and laurel crown,  
As likely to be bless'd in peace, and war;  
And therefore I yield thee my free consent.

WAR. And I choose Clarence only for protector.

K. HEN. Warwick and Clarence, give me both your hands;  
Now join your hands, and with your hands your hearts,  
That no dissension hinder government:  
I make you both protectors of this land;  
While I myself will lead a private life,  
And in devotion spend my latter days,  
To sin's rebuke, and my Creator's praise.

WAR. What answers Clarence to his sovereign's will?

CLAR. That he consents, if Warwick yield consent;  
For on thy fortune I repose myself.

WAR. Why, then, though loth, yet must I be content:  
We'll yoke together, like a double shadow  
To Henry's body, and supply his place;  
I mean, in bearing weight of government,  
While he enjoys the honour, and his ease.  
And, Clarence, now then it is more than needful,  
Forthwith that Edward be pronounc'd a traitor,  
And all his lands and goods be confiscate.

CLAR. What else? and that succession be determin'd.

WAR. Ay, therein Clarence shall not want his part.

K. HEN. But, with the first of all your chief affairs,  
Let me entreat (for I command no more)  
That Margaret your queen, and my son Edward,  
Be sent for, to return from France with speed:  
For, till I see them here, by doubtful fear  
My joy of liberty is half eclips'd.

CLAR. It shall be done, my sovereign, with all speed.

K. HEN. My lord of Somerset, what youth is that,  
Of whom you seem to have so tender care?

SOM. My liege, it is young Henry, earl of Richmond.

K. HEN. Come hither, England's hope: If secret powers  
[*Lays his hand on his head.*]

Suggest but truth to my divining thoughts,  
This pretty lad will prove our country's bliss.  
His looks are full of peaceful majesty.  
His head by nature fram'd to wear a crown,  
His hand to wield a sceptre; and himself  
Likely, in time, to bless a regal throne.  
Make much of him, my lords; for this is he  
Must help you more than you are hurt by me.

*Enter a Messenger.*

WAR. What news, my friend?

MESS. That Edward is escaped from your brother,  
And fled, as he hears since, to Burgundy.

WAR. Unsavoury news: But how made he escape?

MESS. He was convey'd by Richard duke of Gloster,  
And the lord Hastings, who attended him  
In secret ambush on the forest side,  
And from the bishop's huntsmen rescued him;  
For hunting was his daily exercise.

WAR. My brother was too careless of his charge.  
But let us hence, my sovereign, to provide  
A salve for any sore that may betide.

[*Exeunt* K. HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE,  
Lieutenant, and Attendants.

SOM. My lord, I like not of this flight of Edward's:  
For doubtless Burgundy will yield him help;  
And we shall have more wars before 't be long.  
As Henry's late presaging prophecy  
Did glad my heart with hope of this young Richmond;  
So doth my heart misgive me, in these conflicts  
What may befall him, to his harm and ours:  
Therefore, lord Oxford, to prevent the worst,  
Forthwith we'll send him hence to Brittany,  
Till storms be past of civil enmity.

OXF. Ay; for if Edward repossess the crown,  
'T is like that Richmond with the rest shall down.

SOM. It shall be so; he shall to Brittany.  
Come, therefore, let's about it speedily.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VII.—*Before York.*

*Enter* KING EDWARD, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *and Forces.*

K. EDW. Now, brother Richard, lord Hastings, and the  
rest,

Yet thus far fortune maketh us amends,  
And says, that once more I shall interchange  
My waned state for Henry's regal crown.  
Well have we pass'd, and now repass'd the seas,  
And brought desired help from Burgundy:  
What then remains, we being thus arriv'd  
From Ravenspurg haven before the gates of York,  
But that we enter as into our dukedom?

GLO. The gates made fast!—Brother, I like not this;  
For many men that stumble at the threshold  
Are well foretold that danger lurks within.

K. EDW. Tush, man! abodements must not now affright  
us:

By fair or foul means we must enter in,  
For hither will our friends repair to us.

HAST. My liege, I'll knock once more to summon them.

*Enter on the walls the Mayor of York, and his brethren.*

MAY. My lords, we were forewarned of your coming,  
And shut the gates for safety of ourselves;  
For now we owe allegiance unto Henry.

K. EDW. But, master mayor, if Henry be your king,  
Yet Edward, at the least, is duke of York.

MAY. True, my good lord; I know you for no less.

K. EDW. Why, and I challenge nothing but my dukedom,  
As being well content with that alone.

GLO. But when the fox hath once got in his nose,  
He'll soon find means to make the body follow. [*Aside.*]

HAST. Why, master mayor, why stand you in a doubt?  
Open the gates, we are king Henry's friends.

MAY. Ay, say you so? the gates shall then be open'd.

[*Exeunt from above.*]

GLO. A wise stout captain, and soon persuaded!

HAST. The good old man would fain that all were well,

So 't were not 'long of him: but, being enter'd,  
I doubt not, I, but we shall soon persuade  
Both him and all his brothers unto reason.

*Re-enter the Mayor, and two Aldermen, below.*

K. EDW. So, master mayor: these gates must not be shut  
But in the night, or in the time of war.  
What! fear not, man, but yield me up the keys;  
*[Takes his keys]*

For Edward will defend the town, and thee,  
And all those friends that deign to follow me.

*Drum. Enter MONTGOMERY, and Forces, marching.*

GLO. Brother, this is sir John Montgomery,  
Our trusty friend, unless I be deceiv'd.

K. EDW. Welcome, sir John! But why come you in arms?

MONT. To help king Edward in his time of storm,  
As every loyal subject ought to do.

K. EDW. Thanks, good Montgomery: But we now forget  
Our title to the crown; and only claim  
Our dukedom, till God please to send the rest.

MONT. Then fare you well, for I will hence again;  
I came to serve a king, and not a duke.  
Drummer, strike up, and let us march away.

*[A march begun.]*

K. EDW. Nay, stay, sir John, awhile; and we'll debate  
By what safe means the crown may be recover'd.

MONT. What talk you of debating? in few words,  
If you'll not here proclaim yourself our king  
I'll leave you to your fortune; and be gone,  
To keep them back that come to succour you:  
Why should we fight if you pretend no title?

GLO. Why, brother, wherefore stand you on nice points?

K. EDW. When we grow stronger, then we'll make our  
claim:

Till then, 't is wisdom to conceal our meaning.

HAST. Away with scrupulous wit! now arms must rule.

GLO. And fearless minds climb soonest unto crowns.  
Brother, we will proclaim you out of hand;  
The bruit thereof will bring you many friends.

K. EDW. Then be it as you will: for 't is my right,  
And Henry but usurps the diadem.

MONT. Ay, now my sovereign speaketh like himself;  
And now will I be Edward's champion.

HAST. Sound, trumpet; Edward shall be here proclaim'd:  
Come, fellow soldier, make thou proclamation.

[*Gives him a paper. Flourish.*]

SOLD. [*Reads.*] "Edward the fourth, by the grace of God  
king of England and France, and lord of Ireland," &c.

MONT. And whosoe'er gainsays king Edward's right,  
By this I challenge him to single fight.

[*Throws down his gauntlet.*]

ALL. Long live Edward the fourth!

K. EDW. Thanks, brave Montgomery;—and thanks unto  
you all.

If fortune serve me I'll requite this kindness.

Now, for this night, let's harbour here in York:

And, when the morning sun shall raise his car  
Above the border of this horizon,

We'll forward towards Warwick, and his mates;

For well I wot that Henry is no soldier.

Ah, froward Clarence!—how evil it beseems thee

To flatter Henry, and forsake thy brother!

Yet, as we may, we'll meet both thee and Warwick.

Come on, brave soldiers; doubt not of the day;

And that once gotten, doubt not of large pay. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VIII.—London. *A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* KING HENRY, WARWICK, CLARENCE, MONTAGUE, EXETER,  
and OXFORD.

WAR. What counsel, lords? Edward from Belgia,  
With hasty Germans, and blunt Hollanders,  
Hath pass'd in safety through the narrow seas,  
And with his troops doth march amain to London;  
And many giddy people flock to him.

OXF. Let's levy men, and beat him back again.

CLAR. A little fire is quickly trodden out;  
Which, being suffer'd, rivers cannot quench.

WAR. In Warwickshire I have true-hearted friends,

Not mutinous in peace, yet bold in war;  
Those will I muster up: and thou, son Clarence,  
Shall stir up in Suffolk, Norfolk, and in Kent,  
The knights and gentlemen to come with thee:  
Thou, brother Montague, in Buckingham,  
Northampton, and in Leicestershire, shalt find  
Men well inclin'd to hear what thou command'st:  
And thou, brave Oxford, wondrous well belov'd,  
In Oxfordshire shalt muster up thy friends.  
My sovereign, with the loving citizens,  
Like to his island girt in with the ocean,  
Or modest Dian circled with her nymphs,  
Shall rest in London, till we come to him.  
Fair lords, take leave, and stand not to reply.  
Farewell, my sovereign.

K. HEN. Farewell, my Hector, and my Troy's true hope.

CLAR. In sign of truth I kiss your highness' hand.

K. HEN. Well-minded Clarence, be thou fortunate.

MONT. Comfort, my lord;—and so I take my leave.

OXF. And thus [*kissing HENRY's hand*] I seal my truth,  
and bid adieu.

K. HEN. Sweet Oxford, and my loving Montague,  
And all at once, once more a happy farewell.

WAR. Farewell, sweet lords; let's meet at Coventry.

[*Exeunt WARWICK, CLARENCE, OXFORD, and MONTAGUE*]

K. HEN. Here at the palace will I rest a while.  
Cousin of Exeter, what thinks your lordship?  
Methinks the power that Edward hath in field  
Should not be able to encounter mine.

EXE. The doubt is that he will seduce the rest.

K. HEN. That's not my fear, my meed hath got me fame.  
I have not stopp'd mine ears to their demands,  
Nor posted off their suits with slow delays;  
My pity hath been balm to heal their wounds,  
My mildness hath allay'd their swelling griefs,  
My mercy dried their water-flowing tears;  
I have not been desirous of their wealth,  
Nor much oppress'd them with great subsidies,  
Nor forward of revenge, though they much err'd;  
Then why should they love Edward more than me?

No, Exeter, these graces challenge grace:  
And when the lion fawns upon the lamb,  
The lamb will never cease to follow him.

[*Shout within.* A Lancaster! A Lancaster!

EXE. Hark, hark, my lord! what shouts are these?

*Enter* KING EDWARD, GLOSTER, *and* Soldiers.

K. EDW. Seize on the shame-fac'd Henry, bear him hence,  
And once again proclaim us king of England.  
You are the fount that makes small brooks to flow;  
Now stops thy spring; my sea shall suck them dry,  
And swell so much the higher by their ebb.  
— Hence with him to the Tower; let him not speak.

[*Exeunt some with* KING HENRY.

And, lords, towards Coventry bend we our course,  
Where peremptory Warwick now remains:  
The sun shines hot, and if we use delay  
Cold-biting winter mars our hop'd-for hay.

GLO. Away betimes, before his forces join,  
And take the great-grown traitor unawares:  
Brave warriors, march amain towards Coventry. [*Exeunt.*

---

## ACT V.

### SCENE I.—Coventry.

*Enter upon the walls,* WARWICK, *the Mayor of Coventry, two*  
*Messengers, and others.*

WAR. Where is the post that came from valiant Oxford?  
How far hence is thy lord, mine honest fellow?

1 MESS. By this at Dunsmore, marching hitherward.

WAR. How far off is our brother Montague?  
Where is the post that came from Montague?

2 MESS. By this at Daintry, with a puissant troop.

*Enter* SIR JOHN SOMERVILLE.

WAR. Say, Somerville, what says my loving son?  
And, by thy guess, how nigh is Clarence now?

SOM. At Southam I did leave him with his forces,  
And do expect him here some two hours hence.

[*Drum heard.*]

WAR. Then Clarence is at hand, I hear his drum.

SOM. It is not his, my lord; here Southam lies;  
The drum your honour hears marcheth from Warwick.

WAR. Who should that be? belike, unlooked-for friends.

SOM. They are at hand, and you shall quickly know.

*Drums. Enter* KING EDWARD, GLOSTER, and *Forces,*  
*marching.*

K. EDW. Go, trumpet, to the walls, and sound a parle.

GLO. See, how the surly Warwick mauns the wall.

WAR. O, unbid spite! is sportful Edward come?  
Where slept our scouts, or how are they seduc'd,  
That we could hear no news of his repair?

K. EDW. Now, Warwick, wilt thou ope the city gates,—  
Speak gentle words, and humbly bend thy knee,—  
Call Edward king, and at his hands beg mercy?—  
And he shall pardon thee these outrages.

WAR. Nay, rather wilt thou draw thy forces hence,—  
Confess who set thee up and pluck'd thee down,—  
Call Warwick patron, and be penitent?—  
And thou shalt still remain the duke of York.

GLO. I thought, at least, he would have said the king;  
Or did he make the jest against his will?

WAR. Is not a dukedom, sir, a goodly gift?

GLO. Ay, by my faith, for a poor earl to give;  
I'll do thee service for so good a gift.

WAR. 'T was I that gave the kingdom to thy brother.

K. EDW. Why, then 't is mine, if but by Warwick's gift.

WAR. Thou art no Atlas for so great a weight:  
And, weakling, Warwick takes his gift again;  
And Henry is my king, Warwick his subject.

K. EDW. But Warwick's king is Edward's prisoner:  
And, gallant Warwick, do but answer this,



What is the body when the head is off?

GLO. Alas, that Warwick had no more forecast,  
But whiles he thought to steal the single ten,  
The king was slily finger'd from the deck!  
You left poor Henry at the bishop's palace,  
And, ten to one, you 'll meet him in the Tower.

K. EDW. 'T is even so; yet you are Warwick still.

GLO. Come, Warwick, take the time, kneel down, kneel  
down:

Nay, when? strike now, or else the iron cools.

WAR. I had rather chop this hand off at a blow,  
And with the other fling it at thy face,  
Than bear so low a sail to strike to thee.

K. EDW. Sail how thou canst, have wind and tide thy  
friend;  
This hand, fast wound about thy coal-black hair,  
Shall, whiles thy head is warm, and new cut off,  
Write in the dust this sentence with thy blood,—  
“Wind-changing Warwick now can change no more.”

*Enter OXFORD, with drum and colours.*

WAR. O cheerful colours! see, where Oxford comes!

OXF. Oxford, Oxford, for Lancaster!

*[OXFORD and his Forces enter the City.]*

GLO. The gates are open, let us enter too.

K. EDW. So other foes may set upon our backs.  
Stand we in good array; for they, no doubt,  
Will issue out again and bid us battle:  
If not, the city being but of small defence,  
We 'll quickly rouse the traitors in the same.

WAR. O, welcome, Oxford! for we want thy help.

*Enter MONTAGUE, with drum and colours.*

MONT. Montague, Montague, for Lancaster!

*[He and his Forces enter the City.]*

GLO. Thou and thy brother both shall buy this treason  
Even with the dearest blood your bodies bear.

K. EDW. The harder match'd, the greater victory:  
My mind presageth happy gain, and conquest.

*Enter SOMERSET, with drum and colours.*

SOM. Somerset, Somerset, for Lancaster!

*[He and his Forces enter the City.]*

GLO. Two of thy name, both dukes of Somerset,  
Have sold their lives unto the house of York;  
And thou shalt be the third, if this sword hold.

*Enter CLARENCE, with drum and colours.*

WAR. And lo, where George of Clarence sweeps along,  
Of force enough to bid his brother battle;  
With whom an upright zeal to right prevails,  
More than the nature of a brother's love:  
Come, Clarence, come; thou wilt if Warwick call.

CLAR. Father of Warwick, know you what this means?

*[Taking the red rose out of his cap.]*

Look here, I throw my infamy at thee:  
I will not ruinate my father's house,  
Who gave his blood to lime the stones together,  
And set up Lancaster. Why, trow'st thou, Warwick,  
That Clarence is so harsh, so blunt, unnatural,  
To bend the fatal instruments of war  
Against his brother and his lawful king?  
Perhaps, thou wilt object my holy oath:  
To keep that oath were more impiety  
Than Jephtha's, when he sacrific'd his daughter.  
I am so sorry for my trespass made,  
That, to deserve well at my brother's hands,  
I here proclaim myself thy mortal foe;  
With resolution, wheresoe'er I meet thee,  
(As I will meet thee if thou stir abroad,)  
To plague thee for thy foul misleading me.  
And so, proud-hearted Warwick, I defy thee,  
And to my brother turn my blushing cheeks.  
Pardon me, Edward, I will make amends;  
And, Richard, do not frown upon my faults,  
For I will henceforth be no more unconstant.

K. EDW. Now welcome more, and ten times more belov'd,  
Than if thou never hadst deserv'd our hate.

GLO. Welcome, good Clarence; this is brother-like.

WAR. O passing traitor, perjur'd, and unjust!

K. EDW. What, Warwick, wilt thou leave the town and fight?

Or shall we beat the stones about thine ears?

WAR. Alas! I am not coop'd here for defence:

I will away towards Barnet presently,

And bid thee battle, Edward, if thou dar'st.

K. EDW. Yes, Warwick, Edward dares, and leads the way:  
Lords, to the field; saint George, and victory.

[*March. Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*A Field of Battle near Barnet.*

*Alarums and Excursions. Enter KING EDWARD, bringing in WARWICK, wounded.*

K. EDW. So, lie thou there: die thou, and die our fear;

For Warwick was a bug that fear'd us all.

Now, Montague, sit fast; I seek for thee,

That Warwick's bones may keep thine company. [Exit.

WAR. Ah, who is nigh? come to me, friend or foe,

And tell me who is victor, York, or Warwick?

Why ask I that? my mangled body shows,

My blood, my want of strength, my sick heart shows,

That I must yield my body to the earth,

And, by my fall, the conquest to my foe.

Thus yields the cedar to the axe's edge,

Whose arms gave shelter to the princely eagle;

Under whose shade the ramping lion slept;

Whose top-branch overpeer'd Jove's spreading tree,

And kept low shrubs from winter's powerful wind.

These eyes, that now are dimm'd with death's black veil,

Have been as piercing as the mid-day sun

To search the secret treasons of the world:

The wrinkles in my brows, now fill'd with blood,

Were liken'd oft to kingly sepulchres;

For who liv'd king but I could dig his grave?

And who durst smile when Warwick bent his brow?

Lo, now my glory smear'd in dust and blood!

My parks, my walks, my manors that I had,

Even now forsake me; and of all my lands

Is nothing left me but my body's length!  
Why, what is pomp, rule, reign, but earth and dust?  
And, live we how we can, yet die we must.

*Enter OXFORD and SOMERSET.*

SOM. Ah, Warwick, Warwick! wert thou as we are,  
We might recover all our loss again.  
The queen from France hath brought a puissant power;  
Even now we heard the news: Ah, couldst thou fly!

WAR. Why, then I would not fly.—Ah, Montague,  
If thou be there, sweet brother, take my hand,  
And with thy lips keep in my soul awhile!  
Thou lov'st me not; for, brother, if thou didst,  
Thy tears would wash this cold congealed blood  
That glues my lips, and will not let me speak.  
Come, quickly, Montague, or I am dead.

SOM. Ah, Warwick, Montague hath breath'd his last;  
And to the latest gasp cried out for Warwick,  
And said, Commend me to my valiant brother.  
And more he would have said: and more he spoke,  
Which sounded like a cannon in a vault,  
That might not be distinguish'd; but, at last,  
I well might hear, deliver'd with a groan,  
O, farewell, Warwick!

WAR. Sweet rest to his soul!—  
Fly, lords, and save yourselves; for Warwick bids  
You all farewell, to meet in heaven.

[*Dies.*

OXF. Away, away, to meet the queen's great power.

[*Exeunt, bearing off WARWICK's body.*

SCENE III.—*Another Part of the Field.*

*Flourish.* Enter KING EDWARD, in triumph; with CLARENCE,  
GLOSTER, and the rest.

K. EDW. Thus far our fortune keeps an upward course,  
And we are grac'd with wreaths of victory,  
But, in the midst of this bright-shining day,  
I spy a black, suspicious, threat'ning cloud,  
That will encounter with our glorious sun,  
Ere he attain his easeful western bed:

I mean, my lords, those powers that the queen  
Hath rais'd in Gallia have arriv'd our coast,  
And, as we hear, march on to fight with us.

CLAR. A little gale will soon disperse that cloud,  
And blow it to the 'source from whence it came:  
Thy very beams will dry those vapours up;  
For every cloud engenders not a storm.

GLO. The queen is valued thirty thousand strong,  
And Somerset, with Oxford, fled to her;  
If she have time to breathe, be well assur'd  
Her faction will be full as strong as ours.

K. EDW. We are advertis'd by our loving friends,  
That they do hold their course toward Tewksbury;  
We, having now the best at Barnet field,  
Will thither straight, for willingness rids way:  
And, as we march, our strength will be augmented  
In every county as we go along.

Strike up the drum; cry, Courage! and away. [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—*Plains near Tewksbury.*

*March.* Enter QUEEN MARGARET, PRINCE EDWARD, SOMERSET,  
OXFORD, and Soldiers.

Q. MAR. Great lords, wise men ne'er sit and wail their loss,  
But cheerly seek how to redress their harms.  
What, though the mast be now blown overboard,  
The cable broke, the holding anchor lost,  
And half our sailors swallow'd in the flood,  
Yet lives our pilot still: Is 't meet that he  
Should leave the helm, and, like a fearful lad,  
With tearful eyes add water to the sea,  
And give more strength to that which hath too much;  
Whiles, in his moan, the ship splits on the rock,  
Which industry and courage might have sav'd?  
Ah, what a shame! ah, what a fault were this!  
Say, Warwick was our anchor; what of that?  
And Montague our top-mast; what of him?  
Our slaughter'd friends the tackles; what of these?  
Why, is not Oxford here another anchor?  
And Somerset another goodly mast?

The friends of France our shrouds and tacklings?  
And, though unskilful, why not Ned and I  
For once allow'd the skilful pilot's charge?  
We will not from the helm, to sit and weep;  
But keep our course, though the rough wind say no,  
From shelves and rocks that threaten us with wrack.  
As good to chide the waves as speak them fair.  
And what is Edward but a ruthless sea?  
What Clarence, but a quicksand of deceit?  
And Richard, but a ragged fatal rock?  
All these the enemies to our poor bark.  
Say, you can swim; alas! 't is but a while:  
Tread on the sand; why, there you quickly sink:  
Bestride the rock; the tide will wash you off,  
Or else you famish, that 's a threefold death.  
This speak I, lords, to let you understand,  
If case some one of you would fly from us,  
That there's no hop'd-for mercy with the brothers,  
More than with ruthless waves, with sands, and rocks.  
Why, courage, then! what cannot be avoided  
'T were childish weakness to lament or fear.

PRINCE. Methinks a woman of this valiant spirit  
Should, if a coward hear her speak these words,  
Infuse his breast with magnanimity,  
And make him, naked, foil a man at arms.  
I speak not this as doubting any here:  
For did I but suspect a fearful man,  
He should have leave to go away betimes;  
Lest, in our need, he might infect another,  
And make him of like spirit to himself.  
If any such be here, as God forbid!  
Let him depart, before we need his help.

OXF. Women and children of so high a courage?  
And warriors faint! why, 't were perpetual shame.  
O, brave young prince! thy famous grandfather  
Doth live again in thee: Long mayst thou live  
To bear his image, and renew his glories!

SOM. And he that will not fight for such a hope  
Go home to bed, and, like the owl by day,  
If he arise, be mock'd and wonder'd at.

Q. MAR. Thanks, gentle Somerset;—sweet Oxford, thanks.  
PRINCE. And take his thanks that yet hath nothing else.

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. Prepare you, lords, for Edward is at hand,  
Ready to fight; therefore be resolute.

OXF. I thought no less: it is his policy  
To haste thus fast, to find us unprovided.

SOM. But he's deceiv'd, we are in readiness.

Q. MAR. This cheers my heart, to see your forwardness.

OXF. Here pitch our battle; hence we will not budge.

*March. Enter, at a distance, KING EDWARD, CLARENCE,  
GLOSTER, and Forces.*

K. EDW. Brave followers, yonder stands the thorny wood,  
Which, by the Heavens' assistance, and your strength,  
Must by the roots be hewn up yet ere night.  
I need not add more fuel to your fire,  
For well I wot ye blaze to burn them out:  
Give signal to the fight, and to it, lords.

Q. MAR. Lords, knights, and gentlemen, what I should  
say  
My tears gainsay; for every word I speak,  
Ye see, I drink the waters of mine eyes.  
Therefore, no more but this: Henry, your sovereign,  
Is prisoner to the foe; his state usurp'd,  
His realm a slaughterhouse, his subjects slain,  
His statutes cancell'd, and his treasure spent;  
And yonder is the wolf that makes this spoil.  
You fight in justice; then, in God's name, lords,  
Be valiant, and give signal to the fight. [*Exeunt both armies.*]

SCENE V.—*Another Part of the same.*

*Alarums: Excursions: and afterwards a retreat. Then enter  
KING EDWARD, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, and Forces; with  
QUEEN MARGARET, OXFORD, and SOMERSET, prisoners.*

K. EDW. Now, here a period of tumultuous broils.  
Away with Oxford to Hammes' castle straight:  
For Somerset, off with his guilty head.

Go, bear them hence; I will not hear them speak.

OXF. For my part, I'll not trouble thee with words.

SOM. Nor I, but stoop with patience to my fortune.

*[Exeunt OXFORD and SOMERSET, guarded.]*

Q. MAR. So part we sadly in this troublous world,  
To meet with joy in sweet Jerusalem.

K. EDW. Is proclamation made, that who finds Edward  
Shall have a high reward, and he his life?

GLO. It is: and lo, where youthful Edward comes.

*Enter Soldiers, with PRINCE EDWARD.*

K. EDW. Bring forth the gallant, let us hear him speak.  
What! can so young a thorn begin to prick?  
Edward, what satisfaction canst thou make  
For bearing arms, for stirring up my subjects,  
And all the trouble thou hast turn'd me to?

PRINCE. Speak like a subject, proud ambitious York!  
Suppose that I am now my father's mouth;  
Resign thy chair, and, where I stand, kneel thou,  
Whilst I propose the self-same words to thee,  
Which, traitor, thou wouldst have me answer to.

Q. MAR. Ah, that thy father had been so resolv'd!

GLO. That you might still have worn the petticoat,  
And ne'er have stol'n the breech from Lancaster.

PRINCE. Let Æsop fable in a winter's night;  
His currish riddles sort not with this place.

GLO. By Heaven, brat, I'll plague you for that word.

Q. MAR. Ay, thou wast born to be a plague to men.

GLO. For God's sake, take away this captive scold.

PRINCE. Nay, take away this scolding crook-back rather.

K. EDW. Peace, wilful boy, or I will charm your tongue.

CLAR. Untutor'd lad, thou art too malapert.

PRINCE. I know my duty, you are all undutiful:  
Lascivious Edward, and thou perjur'd George,  
And thou misshapen Dick, I tell ye all,  
I am your better, traitors as ye are;  
And thou usurp'st my father's right and mine.

K. EDW. Take that, the likeness of this railer here.

*[Stabs him.]*



GLO. Sprawl'st thou? take that, to end thy agony.

[GLO. *stabs him.*

CLAR. And there 's for twitting me with perjury.

[CLAR. *stabs him.*

Q. MAR. O, kill me too!

GLO. Marry, and shall.

[*Offers to kill her.*

K. EDW. Hold, Richard, hold, for we have done too much.

GLO. Why should she live to fill the world with words?

K. EDW. What! doth she swoon? use means for her recovery.

GLO. Clarence, excuse me to the king my brother;

I 'll hence to London on a serious matter:

Ere ye come there, be sure to hear some news.

CLAR. What? what?

GLO. The Tower! the Tower!

[*Exit.*

Q. MAR. O, Ned, sweet Ned! speak to thy mother, boy!

Canst thou not speak?—O traitors! murtherers!—

They that stabb'd Cæsar shed no blood at all,

Did not offend, nor were not worthy blame,

If this foul deed were by, to equal it.

He was a man: this, in respect, a child;

And men ne'er spend their fury on a child.

What's worse than murtherer, that I may name it?

No, no; my heart will burst, an if I speak:

And I will speak, that so my heart may burst.

Butchers and villains, bloody cannibals!

How sweet a plant have you untimely cropp'd!

You have no children, butchers! if you had,

The thought of them would have stirr'd up remorse:

But, if you ever chance to have a child,

Look in his youth to have him so cut off,

As, deathsmen! you have rid this sweet young prince!

K. EDW. Away with her; go, bear her hence perforce.

Q. MAR. Nay, never bear me hence, despatch me here;

Here sheathe thy sword, I 'll pardon thee my death:

What! wilt thou not?—then, Clarence, do it thou.

CLAR. By Heaven, I will not do thee so much ease.

Q. MAR. Good Clarence, do; sweet Clarence, do thou do it.

CLAR. Didst thou not hear me swear I would not do it?

Q. MAR. Ay, but thou usest to forswear thyself:

'T was sin before, but now 't is charity.

What! wilt thou not? Where is that devil's butcher,  
Richard,

Hard-favour'd Richard? Richard, where art thou

Thou art not here: Murther is thy alms-deed;

Petitioners for blood thou ne'er putt'st back.

K. EDW. Away, I say; I charge ye, bear her hence.

Q. MAR. So come to you, and yours, as to this prince!

[*Exit, led out forcibly.*]

K. EDW. Where 's Richard gone?

CLAR. To London, all in post; and, as I guess,  
To make a bloody supper in the Tower.

K. EDW. He 's sudden, if a thing comes in his head

Now march we hence: discharge the common sort

With pay and thanks, and let 's away to London,

And see our gentle queen how well she fares:

By this, I hope, she hath a son for me.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE VI.—London. *A Room in the Tower.*

KING HENRY is discovered sitting, with a book in his hand:  
*the Lieutenant attending. Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. Good day, my lord! What, at your book so hard!

K. HEN. Ay, my good lord: My lord, I should say, rather:  
'T is sin to flatter, good was little better:

Good Gloster and good devil were alike,

And both preposterous; therefore, not good lord.

GLO. Sirrah, leave us to ourselves: we must confer.

[*Exit Lieutenant*]

K. HEN. So flies the reckless shepherd from the wolf:

So first the harmless sheep doth yield his fleece,

And next his throat unto the butcher's knife.

What scene of death hath Roscius now to act?

GLO. Suspicion always haunts the guilty mind;

The thief doth fear each bush an officer.

K. HEN. The bird that hath been limed in a bush,

With trembling wings misdoubteth every bush:

And I, the hapless male to one sweet bird,

Have now the fatal object in my eye,

Where my poor young was lim'd, was caught, and kill'd.

GLO. Why, what a peevish fool was that of Crete,  
That taught his son the office of a fowl;  
And yet, for all his wings, the fool was drown'd!

K. HEN. I, Dædalus; my poor boy, Icarus;  
Thy father, Minos, that denied our course;  
The sun, that sear'd the wings of my sweet boy,  
Thy brother Edward; and thyself, the sea,  
Whose envious gulf did swallow up his life.  
Ah, kill me with thy weapon, not with words!  
My breast can better brook thy dagger's point,  
Than can my ears that tragic history.  
But wherefore dost thou come? is 't for my life?

GLO. Think'st thou I am an executioner?

K. HEN. A persecutor, I am sure, thou art;  
If murdering innocents be executing,  
Why, then thou art an executioner.

GLO. Thy son I kill'd for his presumption.

K. HEN. Hadst thou been kill'd when first thou didst  
presume,  
Thou hadst not liv'd to kill a son of mine.  
And thus I prophesy,—that many a thousand,  
Which now mistrust no parcel of my fear;  
And many an old man's sigh, and many a widow's,  
And many an orphan's water-standing eye,—  
Men for their sons', wives for their husbands',  
And orphans for their parents' timeless death,—  
Shall rue the hour that ever thou wast born.  
The owl shriek'd at thy birth, an evil sign;  
The night-crow cried, aboding luckless time;  
Dogs howl'd, and hideous tempests shook down trees;  
The raven rook'd her on the chimney's top,  
And chattering pies in dismal discords sung.  
Thy mother felt more than a mother's pain,  
And yet brought forth less than a mother's hope;  
To wit, an indigest deformed lump,  
Not like the fruit of such a goodly tree.  
Teeth hadst thou in thy head when thou wast born,  
To signify thou cam'st to bite the world;  
And, if the rest be true which I have heard,  
Thou cam'st—

GLO. I 'll hear no more:—Die, prophet, in thy speech:  
[*Stabs him.*]

For this, amongst the rest, was I ordain'd.

K. HEN. Ay, and for much more slaughter after this.  
O God! forgive my sins, and pardon thee! [*Dies*]

GLO. What, will the aspiring blood of Lancaster  
Sink in the ground? I thought it would have mounted.  
See how my sword weeps for the poor king's death!  
O, may such purple tears be always shed  
From those that wish the downfall of our house!  
If any spark of life be yet remaining,  
Down, down to hell; and say I sent thee thither,—  
[*Stabs him again.*]

I, that have neither pity, love, nor fear.  
Indeed, 't is true that Henry told me of;  
For I have often heard my mother say  
I came into the world with my legs forward:  
Had I not reason, think ye, to make haste,  
And seek their ruin that usurp'd our right?  
The midwife wonder'd: and the women cried,  
"O, Jesus bless us, he is born with teeth!"  
And so I was; which plainly signified  
That I should snarl, and bite, and play the dog.  
Then, since the Heavens have shap'd my body so,  
Let hell make crook'd my mind to answer it.  
I have no brother, I am like no brother:  
And this word love, which greybeards call divine,  
Be resident in men like one another,  
And not in me; I am myself alone.  
Clarence, beware; thou keep'st me from the light;  
But I will sort a pitchy day for thee:  
For I will buzz abroad such prophecies,  
That Edward shall be fearful of his life;  
And then, to purge his fear, I 'll be thy death.  
King Henry and the prince his son are gone:  
Clarence, thy turn is next, and then the rest,  
Counting myself but bad till I be best.  
I 'll throw thy body in another room,  
And triumph, Henry, in thy day of doom.

[*Exit*]

SCENE VII.—*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

KING EDWARD *is discovered sitting on his throne*; QUEEN ELIZABETH, *with the infant* PRINCE, CLARENCE, GLOSTER, HASTINGS, *and others, near him.*

K. EDW. Once more we sit in England's royal throne,  
Re-purchas'd with the blood of enemies.  
What valiant foemen, like to autumn's corn,  
Have we mow'd down, in tops of all their pride!  
Three dukes of Somerset, threefold renown'd  
For hardy and undoubted champions:  
Two Cliffords, as the father and the son;  
And two Northumberlands: two braver men  
Ne'er spurr'd their coursers at the trumpet's sound:  
With them, the two brave bears, Warwick and Montague,  
That in their chains fetter'd the kingly lion,  
And made the forest tremble when they roar'd.  
Thus have we swept suspicion from our seat,  
And made our footstool of security.  
Come hither, Bess, and let me kiss my boy:  
Young Ned, for thee, thine uncles and myself  
Have in our armours watch'd the winter's night;  
Went all afoot in summer's scalding heat,  
That thou might'st repossess the crown in peace;  
And of our labours thou shalt reap the gain.

GLO. I 'll blast his harvest, if your head were laid;  
For yet I am not look'd on in the world.  
This shoulder was ordain'd so thick to heave;  
And heave it shall some weight, or break my back:  
Work thou the way, and thou shalt execute. [*Aside.*]

K. EDW. Clarence, and Gloster, love my lovely queen,  
And kiss your princely nephew, brothers both.

CLAR. The duty that I owe unto your majesty  
I seal upon the lips of this sweet babe.

K. EDW. Thanks, noble Clarence; worthy brother, thanks.

GLO. And, that I love the tree from whence thou sprang'st,  
Witness the loving kiss I give the fruit:  
To say the truth, so Judas kiss'd his Master;  
And cried—All hail! when as he meant—all harm. [*Aside.*]

K. EDW. Now am I seated as my soul delights,  
Having my country's peace, and brothers' loves.

CLAR. What will your grace have done with Margaret?  
Reignier, her father, to the king of France  
Hath pawn'd the Sicils and Jerusalem,  
And hither have they sent it for her ransom.

K. EDW. Away with her, and waft her hence to France.  
And now what rests, but that we spend the time  
With stately triumphs, mirthful comic shows,  
Such as befit the pleasure of the court?  
Sound, drums and trumpets!—farewell, sour annoy!  
For here, I hope, begins our lasting joy. [*Exeunt.*

## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

"Let me embrace *thee*, sour *Adversity*."

(Act III., Sc. 1.)

The original has "the sour adversaries." The above is Mr. Dyce's excellent suggestion.

We have given the line as it is usually printed, according to Pope's correction.

"My mildness has allay'd their swelling griefs,  
My mercy dried their *bitter-flowing* tears."

(Act IV., Sc. 8.)

Mr. Collier gives the above correction, saying "*water-flowing*" seems a poor and tautological epithet for "tears."

We agree with Mr. White that "*water-flowing tears*" are tears that flow like water.

---

## GLOSSARY.

---

**ATTENDED.** Act IV., Sc. 6.

"And the lord Hastings, who attended him."

*Attended him* is used in the sense of waited for him.

**BEWRAY.** Act I., Sc. 1.

"Whose looks bewray her anger."

*Bewray* is to discover or reveal. Chaucer, in 'The Knightes Tale,' has—

"Mine harte may not mine harmes bewraie."

**BODG'D.** Act I., Sc. 4.

"We bodg'd again."

*Bodged* Dr. Johnson thinks is a misprint for *budged*. Steevens thinks it here means *boggled*, made bungling work of our attempt to rally.

**BRUIT.** Act IV., Sc. 7.

“The bruit thereof will bring you many friends.”

*Bruit* is report, common talk. In the Bible (Jeremiah, x. 22), we have—

“Behold, the noise of the bruit is come.”

**BUG.** Act V., Sc. 2.

“For Warwick was a bug that fear’d us all.”

*Bug* is used several times by Shakspeare in the sense of *bugbear*. In the ‘*Faerie Queene*,’ also, we have—

“For all that here on earth we dreadful hold,  
Be but as bugs to fearen babes withal.”

And in both passages the verb *fear* is used in its active sense.

**CALLET.** Act II., Sc. 2.

“To make this shameless callet know herself.”

*Callet* is a scold, but is also applied to a woman of loose character. In ‘*Gammer Gurton’s Needle*’ we have—

“Thinks the callet thus to keep the neele me fro.”

And in ‘*Henry VI., Part II.*’ (Act I., Sc. 3.), Margaret terms the Duchess of Gloucester a “contemptuous base-born callet.”

**CHANNEL.** Act II., Sc. 2.

“As if a channel should be called the sea.”

*Channel*, according to Malone, here signifies what we now call a *kennel*.

**CONVEYANCE.** Act III., Sc. 3.

“Thy sly conveyance.”

*Conveyance* is here used for juggling, artifice.

**DARRAIGN.** Act II., Sc. 2.

“Darraign your battle, for they are at hand.”

*Darraign* is to prepare for battle, either by single combat or with an army. Chaucer, in the ‘*Knights Tale*,’ has—

“— two harneis hath he dight,  
Both suffisant and mete to darreine  
The bataille in the feld betwix hem tweine.”

And Spenser, in the ‘*Faerie Queene*’—

“Redoubled battle ready to darraine.

**DECK.** Act V., Sc. 1.

“The king was slyly finger’d from the deck.”

Formerly a pack of cards was called a *deck*. In ‘*Selimus*, 1594, there is the following instance :—

“Well, if I chance but once to get the deck,  
To deal about and shuffle as I would.”



EAGER. Act II., Sc. 6.

“Vex him with eager words.”

*Eager*, from the French *aigre*, is sour, sharp.

FEAR. Act III., Sc. 3.

“Go fear thy king withal.”

*Fear* is used in its active sense of affright.

FORE-SLOW. Act II., Sc. 3.

“Fore-slow no longer, make we hence amain.”

To *fore-slow* is to delay, to loiter.

FORSPENT. Act II., Sc. 3.

“Forspent with toil, as runners with a race.”

*Forspent* is exhausted, strength totally expended. In ‘King John’ we have *forwearied*.

IN PLACE. Act IV., Sc. 1.

“For I have heard that she was there in place.”

*In place* was a common form among our old writers for being *there present*. It occurs in Sc. 6 of this Act—

“For choosing me, when Clarence is in place.”

LAUND. Act III., Sc. 1.

“Through this laund anon the deer will come.”

*Laund*, according to Camden, is “a plain among trees.” Phillips says, “Laund or Lawn, a plain (in a park), untilled ground.”

MEEDS. Act II., Sc. 1.

“Each one already blazing by our meeds.”

*Meeds* are merits, deserts; sometimes rewards.

OBSEQUIOUS. Act II., Sc. 5.

“And so obsequious will thy father be.”

*Obsequious* is the act of performing obsequies: it is the “obsequious sorrow” of Hamlet.

PALE. Act I., Sc. 4.

“And will you pale your head in Henry’s glory?”

*Pale* is here to impale, or encircle.

PASSING. Act V., Sc. 1.

“O passing traitor, perjurd, and unjust!”

*Passing* is used for surpassing, as was often done by our old writers.

RAUGHT. Act I., Sc. 4. See ‘Henry V.’

SADNESS. Act III., Sc. 2.

“Accords not with the sadness of my suit.”

*Sadness* is used, as *sad* often was, in the sense of seriousness.

STALE. Act III., Sc. 3.

“Had he none else to make a stale but me?”

*Stale* is stalking-horse, as in the ‘Comedy of Errors’—

“Poor I am but his stale.”

Ford, however, has used the word in a sense that seems to mean a laughing-stock, in ‘Love’s Sacrifice’ (Act II., Sc. 1)—

“A subject fit  
To be the stale of laughter.”

STIGMATIC. Act II., Sc. 2. See ‘Henry VI.’ Part II.’

STRATAGEMS. Act II., Sc. 5.

“What stratagems, how fell, how butcherly.”

*Stratagems* does not here mean merely the events of war, its surprises and snares, but its disasters, as has been shown by M. Mason.

WISP. Act II., Sc. 2.

“A wisp of straw were worth a thousand crowns.”

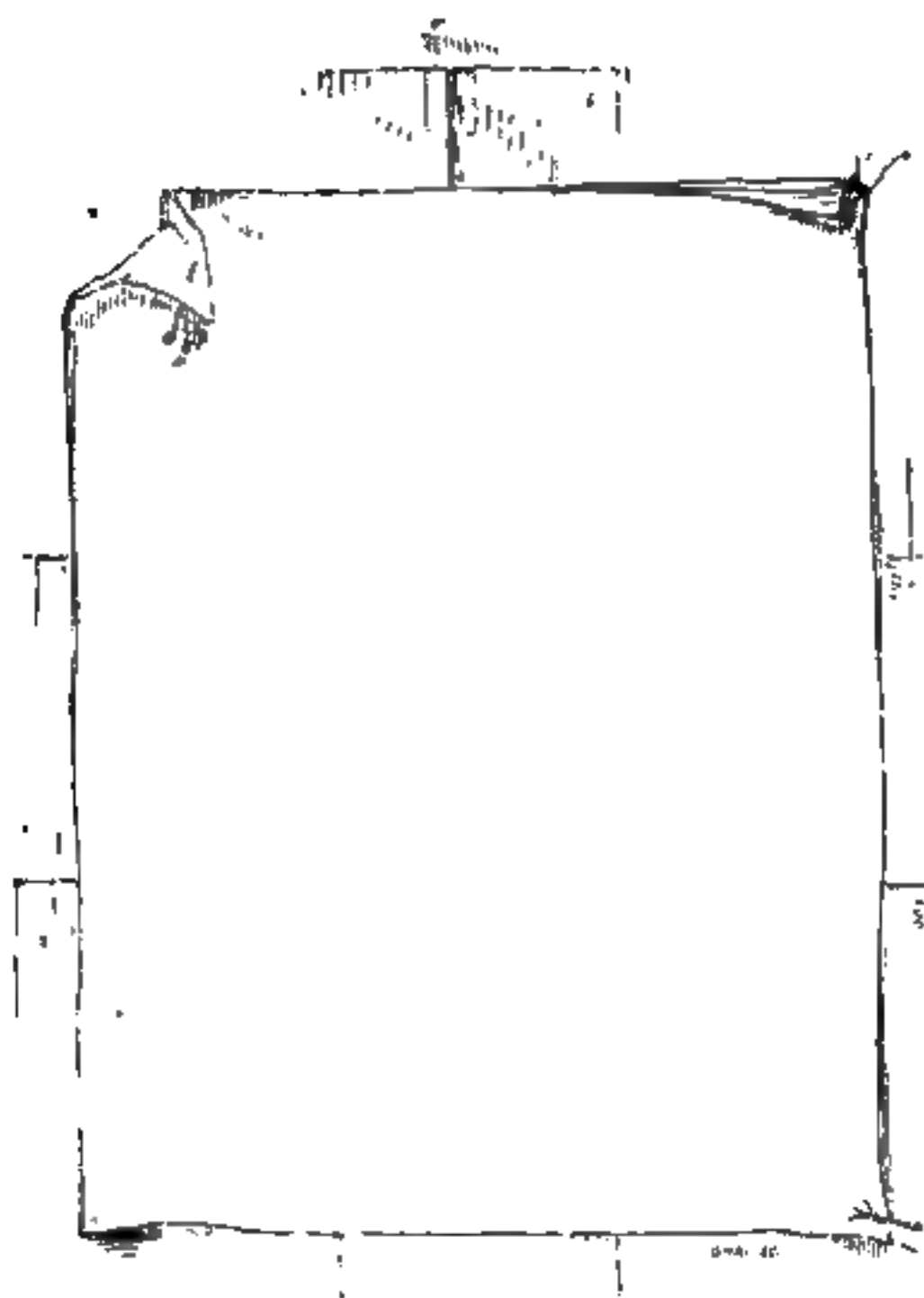
*Wisp*, it has been conjectured by Capell, is an allusion to the queen’s alleged incontinency, to which the word *callet* also refers.

“A wisp, a wisp, you kitchen-stuff wrangler!”  
is similarly applied in Nash’s ‘Apology of Pierce Penniless.’

WITTY. Act I., Sc. 2.

“Witty, courteous, liberal, full of spirit.”

*Witty* is used in the sense of possessing good judgment, sound understanding.



KING  
Richard  
III.



## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING EDWARD IV.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 1.

EDWARD, PRINCE OF WALES, *afterwards* King Edward V., *son to the King*.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 1.

RICHARD, *Duke of York, son to the King*.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1.

GEORGE, *Duke of Clarence, brother to the King*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 4.

RICHARD, *Duke of Gloster, afterwards* King Richard III., *brother to the King*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2.

Act III. sc. 1; sc. 4; sc. 5; sc. 7. Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4.

Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.

A young Son of Clarence.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 2.

HENRY, *Earl of Richmond, afterwards* King Henry VII.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4.

CARDINAL BOUCHIER, *Archbishop of Canterbury*.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 1.

THOMAS ROTHERHAM, *Archbishop of York*.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4.

JOHN MORTON, *Bishop of Ely*.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 4.

DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2.

Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4; sc. 5; sc. 7. Act IV. sc. 2. Act V. sc. 1.

DUKE OF NORFOLK.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.

EARL OF SURREY, *son to the Duke of Norfolk*.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 3.

EARL RIVERS, *brother to King Edward's Queen*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act III. sc. 3.

MARQUIS OF DORSET, *son to King Edward's Queen*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1.

LORD GREY, *son to King Edward's Queen*.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 3.

EARL OF OXFORD.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 2; sc. 3.

LORD HASTINGS.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2.

Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4.

LORD STANLEY.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 4.

Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4; sc. 5. Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.

LORD LOVELL.

*Appears, Act III. sc. 4; sc. 5.*

SIR THOMAS VAUGHAN.

*Appears, Act III. sc. 3.*

SIR RICHARD RATCLIFF.

*Appears, Act II. sc. 2. Act III. sc. 3; sc. 4; sc. 5. Act IV. sc. 3; sc. 4. Act V. sc. 3.*

SIR WILLIAM CATESBY.

*Appears, Act I. sc. 3. Act III. sc. 2; sc. 5; sc. 7. Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act V. sc. 3; sc. 4.*

SIR JAMES TYRREL.

*Appears, Act IV. sc. 2; sc. 3.*

SIR JAMES BLOUNT.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 2.*

SIR WALTER HERBERT.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 2.*

SIR ROBERT BRAKENBURY, *Lieutenant of the Tower.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1.*

CHRISTOPHER URSWICK, *a Priest.*

*Appears, Act IV. sc. 5.*

A Priest.

*Appears, Act III. sc. 2.*

Lord Mayor of London.

*Appears, Act III. sc. 5; sc. 7.*

Sheriff of Wiltshire.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 1.*

ELIZABETH, *Queen of King Edward IV.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 3. Act II. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 4.*

MARGARET, *widow of King Henry VI.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 3. Act IV. sc. 4.*

DUCHESS OF YORK, *mother to King Edward IV., Clarence, and Gloster.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 1; sc. 4.*

LADY ANNE, *widow of Edward, Prince of Wales, son to King Henry VI., afterwards married to the Duke of Gloster.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1.*

A young Daughter of Clarence.

*Appears, Act II. sc. 2. Act IV. sc. 1.*

*Lords, and other Attendants; two Gentlemen, a Pursuivant, Scrivener, Citizens, Murderers, Messengers, Ghosts, Soldiers, &c.*

SCENE,—ENGLAND.

---

This History was originally published in 1597. It was reprinted four times in quarto previous to its appearance in the folio of 1623. To understand the character of the 'Richard III.' of Shakspeare, we must have traced its development by the author of the previous plays.

# KING RICHARD III.

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *A Street.*

*Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. Now is the winter of our discontent  
Made glorious summer by this sun of York;  
And all the clouds that low'r'd upon our house  
In the deep bosom of the ocean buried.  
Now are our brows bound with victorious wreaths;  
Our bruised arms hung up for monuments;  
Our stern alarums chang'd to merry meetings;  
Our dreadful marches to delightful measures.  
Grim-visag'd war hath smooth'd his wrinkled front;  
And now, instead of mounting barbed steeds,  
To fright the souls of fearful adversaries,  
He capers nimbly in a lady's chamber,  
To the lascivious pleasing of a lute.  
But I, that am not shap'd for sportive tricks,  
Nor made to court an amorous looking-glass;—  
I, that am rudely stamp'd, and want love's majesty  
To strut before a wanton ambling nymph;—  
I, that am curtail'd of this fair proportion,  
Cheated of feature by dissembling nature,  
Deform'd, unfinish'd, sent before my time  
Into this breathing world, scarce half made up,  
And that so lamely and unfashionable  
That dogs bark at me as I halt by them;  
Why I, in this weak piping time of peace,  
Have no delight to pass away the time,  
Unless to see my shadow in the sun,

And descant on mine own deformity.  
And therefore, since I cannot prove a lover  
To entertain these fair well-spoken days,  
I am determined to prove a villain,  
And hate the idle pleasures of these days.  
Plots have I laid, inductions dangerous,  
By drunken prophecies, libels, and dreams,  
To set my brother Clarence and the king  
In deadly hate the one against the other:  
And, if king Edward be as true and just  
As I am subtle, false, and treacherous,  
This day should Clarence closely be mew'd up,  
About a prophecy, which says that G  
Of Edward's heirs the murderer shall be.  
Dive, thoughts, down to my soul! here Clarence comes.

*Enter CLARENCE, guarded, and BRAKENBURY.*

Brother, good day: What means this armed guard  
That waits upon your grace?

CLAR. His majesty,  
Tendering my person's safety, hath appointed  
This conduct to convey me to the Tower.

GLO. Upon what cause?

CLAR. Because my name is George.

GLO. Alack, my lord, that fault is none of yours;  
He should, for that, commit your godfathers:—  
O, belike, his majesty hath some intent  
That you should be new christen'd in the Tower.  
But what's the matter, Clarence? may I know?

CLAR. Yea, Richard, when I know; for I protest  
As yet I do not: But, as I can learn,  
He hearkens after prophecies and dreams;  
And from the cross-row plucks the letter G,  
And says, a wizard told him, that by G  
His issue disinherited should be;  
And, for my name of George begins with G,  
It follows in his thought that I am he:  
These, as I learn, and such-like toys as these,  
Have mov'd his highness to commit me now.

GLO. Why, this it is when men are rul'd by women:



'T is not the king that sends you to the Tower;  
My lady Grey his wife, Clarence, 't is she  
That tempers him to this extremity.  
Was it not she and that good man of worship,  
Antony Woodville, her brother there,  
That made him send lord Hastings to the Tower;  
From whence this present day he is deliver'd?  
We are not safe, Clarence, we are not safe.

CLAR. By Heaven, I think there is no man secure  
But the queen's kindred, and night-walking heralds  
That trudge betwixt the king and mistress Shore.  
Heard you not what an humble suppliant  
Lord Hastings was to her for his delivery?

GLO. Humbly complaining to her deity  
Got my lord chamberlain his liberty.  
I'll tell you what,—I think it is our way,  
If we will keep in favour with the king,  
To be her men and wear her livery:  
The jealous o'er-worn widow, and herself,  
Since that our brother dubb'd them gentlewomen,  
Are mighty gossips in our monarchy.

BRAK. I beseech your graces both to pardon me;  
His majesty hath straitly given in charge  
That no man shall have private conference,  
Of what degree soever, with his brother.

GLO. Even so; an please your worship, Brakenbury,  
You may partake of anything we say:  
We speak no treason, man:—we say, the king  
Is wise and virtuous; and his noble queen  
Well struck in years, fair, and not jealous:—  
We say, that Shore's wife hath a pretty foot,  
A cherry lip, a bonny eye, a passing pleasing tongue;  
And the queen's kindred are made gentlefolks;  
How say you, sir? can you deny all this?

BRAK. With this, my lord, myself have nought to do.

GLO. Naught to do with mistress Shore? I tell thee,  
fellow,  
He that doth naught with her, excepting one,  
Were best to do it secretly, alone.

BRAK. What one, my lord?

GLO. Her husband, knave:—Wouldst thou betray me?

BRAK. I do beseech your grace to pardon me; and, withal,  
Forbear your conference with the noble duke.

CLAR. We know thy charge, Brakenbury, and will obey.

GLO. We are the queen's abjects, and must obey.  
Brother, farewell; I will unto the king;  
And whatsoe'er you will employ me in,—  
Were it to call king Edward's widow sister,—  
I will perform it, to enfranchise you.  
Meantime, this deep disgrace in brotherhood  
Touches me deeper than you can imagine.

CLAR. I know it pleaseth neither of us well.

GLO. Well, your imprisonment shall not be long;  
I will deliver you, or else lie for you:  
Meantime, have patience.

CLAR. I must perforce; farewell.

[*Exeunt CLARENCE, BRAKENBURY, and Guard.*]

GLO. Go, tread the path that thou shalt ne'er return,  
Simple, plain Clarence! I do love thee so,  
That I will shortly send thy soul to heaven,  
If Heaven will take the present at our hands.  
But who comes here? the new-deliver'd Hastings.

*Enter HASTINGS.*

HAST. Good time of day unto my gracious lord!

GLO. As much unto my good lord chamberlain!  
Well are you welcome to this open air.  
How hath your lordship brook'd imprisonment?

HAST. With patience, noble lord, as prisoners must:  
But I shall live, my lord, to give them thanks  
That were the cause of my imprisonment.

GLO. No doubt, no doubt, and so shall Clarence too;  
For they that were your enemies are his,  
And have prevail'd as much on him as you.

HAST. More pity that the eagle should be mew'd,  
While kites and buzzards prey at liberty.

GLO. What news abroad?

HAST. No news so bad abroad as this at home;  
The king is sickly, weak, and melancholy,  
And his physicians fear him mightily.

GLO. Now, by St. Paul, this news is bad indeed.  
O, he hath kept an evil diet long,  
And over-much consum'd his royal person;  
'T is very grievous to be thought upon.  
Where is he? in his bed?

HAST. He is.

GLO. Go you before, and I will follow you.

[*Exit* HASTINGS.

He cannot live, I hope; and must not die  
Till George be pack'd with posthorse up to heaven.  
I 'll in, to urge his hatred more to Clarence,  
With lies well steel'd with weighty arguments:  
And, if I fail not in my deep intent,  
Clarence hath not another day to live:  
Which done, God take king Edward to his mercy,  
And leave the world for me to bustle in!  
For then I 'll marry Warwick's youngest daughter.  
What though I kill'd her husband and her father,  
The readiest way to make the wench amends  
Is, to become her husband and her father:  
The which will I: not all so much for love  
As for another secret close intent,  
By marrying her, which I must reach unto.  
But yet I run before my horse to market:  
Clarence still breathes; Edward still lives and reigns;  
When they are gone then must I count my gains. [Exit.

SCENE II.—*The same. Another Street.*

*Enter the corpse of KING HENRY THE SIXTH, borne in an open coffin, Gentlemen bearing halberds to guard it; and LADY ANNE as mourner, TRESSSEL, and BERKLEY.*

ANNE. Set down, set down your honourable load,—  
If honour may be shrouded in a hearse,—  
Whilst I awhile obsequiously lament  
The untimely fall of virtuous Lancaster.  
Poor key-cold figure of a holy king!  
Pale ashes of the house of Lancaster!  
Thou bloodless remnant of that royal blood!  
Be it lawful that I invoke thy ghost,

To hear the lamentations of poor Anne,  
Wife to thy Edward, to thy slaughter'd son,  
Stabb'd by the self-same hand that made these wounds!  
Lo, in these windows that let forth thy life,  
I pour the helpless balm of my poor eyes:  
O, cursed be the hand that made these holes!  
Cursed the heart that had the heart to do it!  
Cursed the blood that let this blood from hence!  
More direful hap betide that hated wretch,  
That makes us wretched by the death of thee,  
Than I can wish to adders, spiders, toads,  
Or any creeping venom'd thing that lives!  
If ever he have child, abortive be it,  
Prodigious, and untimely brought to light,  
Whose ugly and unnatural aspect  
May fright the hopeful mother at the view;  
And that be heir to his unhappiness!  
If ever he have wife, let her be made  
More miserable by the death of him,  
Than I am made by my young lord, and thee!  
Come now, toward Chertsey with your holy load,  
Taken from Paul's to be interred there;  
And, still as you are weary of the weight,  
Rest you, whiles I lament king Henry's corse.

*[The bearers take up the corpse, and advance.]*

*Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. Stay, you that bear the corse, and set it down.

ANNE. What black magician conjures up this fiend,  
To stop devoted charitable deeds?

GLO. Villains, set down the corse; or, by Saint Paul,  
I'll make a corse of him that disobeys!

1 GENT. My lord, stand back, and let the coffin pass.

GLO. Unmanner'd dog! stand thou when I command:  
Advance thy halberd higher than my breast,  
Or, by Saint Paul, I'll strike thee to my foot,  
And spurn upon thee, beggar, for thy boldness.

*[The bearers set down the coffin.]*

ANNE. What, do you tremble? are you all afraid?  
Alas, I blame you not; for you are mortal,

And mortal eyes cannot endure the devil.  
Avaunt, thou dreadful minister of hell !  
Thou hadst but power over his mortal body,  
His soul thou canst not have; therefore be gone.

GLO. Sweet saint, for charity, be not so curst.

ANNE. Foul devil, for God's sake, hence, and trouble us  
not;

For thou hast made the happy earth thy hell,  
Fill'd it with cursing cries, and deep exclaims.

If thou delight to view thy heinous deeds,  
Behold this pattern of thy butcheries.

O, gentlemen, see, see! dead Henry's wounds  
Open their congeal'd mouths and bleed afresh!  
Blush, blush, thou lump of foul deformity;  
For 't is thy presence that exhales this blood  
From cold and empty veins, where no blood dwells;  
Thy deed, inhuman and unnatural,  
Provokes this deluge most unnatural.

O God, which this blood mad'st, revenge his death!  
O earth, which this blood drink'st, revenge his death!  
Either, Heaven, with lightning strike the murtherer dead;  
Or, earth, gape open wide and eat him quick,  
As thou dost swallow up this good king's blood,  
Which his hell-govern'd arm hath butchered!

GLO. Lady, you know no rules of charity,  
Which renders good for bad, blessings for curses.

ANNE. Villain, thou know'st no law of God nor man;  
No beast so fierce but knows some touch of pity.

GLO. But I know none, and therefore am no beast.

ANNE. O wonderful, when devils tell the truth!

GLO. More wonderful, when angels are so angry!  
Vouchsafe, divine perfection of a woman,  
Of these supposed crimes to give me leave,  
By circumstance, but to acquit myself.

ANNE. Vouchsafe, diffus'd infection of a man,  
For these known evils but to give me leave,  
By circumstance, to curse thy cursed self.

GLO. Fairer than tongue can name thee, let me have  
Some patient leisure to excuse myself.

ANNE. Fouler than heart can think thee, thou canst make

No excuse current, but to hang thyself.

GLO. By such despair I should accuse myself.

ANNE. And by despairing shalt thou stand excus'd,  
For doing worthy vengeance on thyself,  
That didst unworthy slaughter upon others.

GLO. Say, that I slew them not.

ANNE. Then say, they were not slain.  
But dead they are, and, devilish slave, by thee.

GLO. I did not kill your husband.

ANNE. Why, then he is alive.

GLO. Nay, he is dead; and slain by Edward's hand.

ANNE. In thy foul throat thou liest; queen Margaret saw  
Thy murderous faulchion smoking in his blood;  
The which thou once didst bend against her breast,  
But that thy brothers beat aside the point.

GLO. I was provoked by her slanderous tongue,  
That laid their guilt upon my guiltless shoulders.

ANNE. Thou wast provoked by thy bloody mind,  
That never dream'st on aught but butcheries:  
Didst thou not kill this king?

GLO. I grant ye.

ANNE. Dost grant me, hedgehog? then, God grant me too,  
Thou mayst be damned for that wicked deed!  
O, he was gentle, mild, and virtuous.

GLO. The fitter for the King of Heaven that hath him.

ANNE. He is in heaven, where thou shalt never come.

GLO. Let him thank me that help to send him thither;  
For he was fitter for that place than earth.

ANNE. And thou unfit for any place but hell.

GLO. Yes, one place else, if you will hear me name it.

ANNE. Some dungeon.

GLO. Your bed-chamber.

ANNE. Ill rest betide the chamber where thou liest!

GLO. So will it, madam, till I lie with you.

ANNE. I hope so.

GLO. I know so.—But, gentle lady Anne,  
To leave this keen encounter of our wits,  
And fall somewhat into a slower method,  
Is not the causer of the timeless deaths  
Of these Plantagenets, Henry and Edward,

As blameful as the executioner?

ANNE. Thou wast the cause, and most accurs'd effect.

GLO. Your beauty was the cause of that effect;  
Your beauty, that did haunt me in my sleep,  
To undertake the death of all the world,  
So I might live one hour in your sweet bosom.

ANNE. If I thought that, I tell thee, homicide,  
These nails should rend that beauty from my cheeks.

GLO. These eyes could not endure that beauty's wrack;  
You should not blemish it if I stood by:  
As all the world is cheered by the sun,  
So I by that; it is my day, my life.

ANNE. Black night o'ershade thy day, and death thy life!

GLO. Curse not thyself, fair creature; thou art both.

ANNE. I would I were, to be reveng'd on thee.

GLO. It is a quarrel most unnatural,  
To be reveng'd on him that loveth thee.

ANNE. It is a quarrel just and reasonable,  
To be reveng'd on him that kill'd my husband.

GLO. He that bereft thee, lady, of thy husband,  
Did it to help thee to a better husband.

ANNE. His better doth not breathe upon the earth.

GLO. He lives that loves thee better than he could.

ANNE. Name him.

GLO. Plantagenet.

ANNE. Why, that was he.

GLO. The self-same name, but one of better nature.

ANNE. Where is he?

GLO. Here [*She spits at him*]: Why dost thou spit at me!

ANNE. 'Would it were mortal poison, for thy sake!

GLO. Never came poison from so sweet a place.

ANNE. Never hung poison on a fouler toad.  
Out of my sight! thou dost infect mine eyes.

GLO. Thine eyes, sweet lady, have infected mine.

ANNE. 'Would they were basilisks, to strike thee dead!

GLO. I would they were, that I might die at once;  
For now they kill me with a living death.

Those eyes of thine from mine have drawn salt tears:  
Sham'd their aspects with store of childish drops:  
These eyes, which never shed remorseful tear,

No, when my father York and Edward wept  
To hear the piteous moan that Rutland made,  
When black-fac'd Clifford shook his sword at him;  
Nor when thy warlike father, like a child,  
Told the sad story of my father's death,  
And twenty times made pause, to sob and weep,  
That all the standers-by had wet their cheeks,  
Like trees bedash'd with rain: in that sad time  
My manly eyes did scorn an humble tear;  
And what these sorrows could not thence exhale,  
Thy beauty hath, and made them blind with weeping.  
I never sued to friend, nor enemy;  
My tongue could never learn sweet smoothing word;  
But now thy beauty is propos'd my fee,  
My proud heart sues, and prompts my tongue to speak.

*[She looks scornfully at him.]*

Teach not thy lip such scorn; for it was made  
For kissing, lady, not for such contempt.  
If thy revengeful heart cannot forgive,  
Lo! here I lend thee this sharp-pointed sword;  
Which if thou please to hide in this true breast,  
And let the soul forth that adareth thee,  
I lay it naked to the deadly stroke,  
And humbly beg the death upon my knee.

*[He lays his breast open; she offers at it with his sword.]*

Nay, do not pause; for I did kill king Henry;—  
But 't was thy beauty that provoked me.  
Nay, now despatch; 't was I that stabb'd young Edward;—  
*[She again offers at his breast.]*  
But 't was thy heavenly face that set me on.

*[She lets fall the sword.]*

Take up the sword again, or take up me.

ANNE. Arise, dissembler: though I wish thy death,  
I will not be thy executioner.

GLO. Then bid me kill myself, and I will do it.

ANNE. I have already.

GLO. That was in thy rage:  
Speak it again, and even with the word,  
This hand, which for thy love did kill thy love,



Shall for thy love kill a far truer love;  
To both their deaths shalt thou be accessary.

ANNE. I would I knew thy heart.

GLO. 'T is figur'd in my tongue.

ANNE. I fear me, both are false.

GLO. Then never man was true.

ANNE. Well, well, put up your sword.

GLO. Say, then, my peace is made.

ANNE. That shalt thou know hereafter.

GLO. But shall I live in hope?

ANNE. All men, I hope, live so.

GLO. Vouchsafe to wear this ring.

ANNE. To take is not to give. [*She puts on the ring.*]

GLO. Look, how my ring encompasseth thy finger,  
Even so thy breast encloseth my poor heart;  
Wear both of them, for both of them are thine.  
And if thy poor devoted servant may  
But beg one favour at thy gracious hand,  
Thou dost confirm his happiness for ever.

ANNE. What is it?

GLO. That it may please you leave these sad designs  
To him that hath most cause to be a mourner,  
And presently repair to Crosby-house:  
Where, after I have solemnly interr'd,  
At Chertsey monastery, this noble king,  
And wet his grave with my repentant tears,  
I will with all expedient duty see you:  
For divers unknown reasons, I beseech you  
Grant me this boon.

ANNE. With all my heart; and much it joys me too  
To see you are become so penitent.  
Tressel, and Berkley, go along with me.

GLO. Bid me farewell.

ANNE. 'T is more than you deserve:  
But, since you teach me how to flatter you,  
Imagine I have said farewell already.

[*Exeunt LADY ANNE, TRESSEL, and BERKLEY.*]

GLO. Take up the corse, sirs.

GENT. Towards Chertsey, noble lord?

GLO. No, to White-Friars; there attend my coming.

*[Exeunt the rest, with the corn.]*

Was ever woman in this humour woo'd?

Was ever woman in this humour won?

I'll have her, but I will not keep her long.

What! I, that kill'd her husband and his father,

To take her in her heart's extremest hate;

With curses in her mouth, tears in her eyes,

The bleeding witness of her hatred by;

Having God, her conscience, and these bars against me,

And I no friends to back my suit withal,

But the plain devil, and dissembling looks,

And yet to win her,—all the world to nothing!

Ha!

Hath she forgot already that brave prince,

Edward, her lord, whom I, some three months since,

Stabb'd in my angry mood at Tewksbury?

A sweeter and a lovelier gentleman,

Fram'd in the prodigality of nature,

Young, valiant, wise, and, no doubt, right royal,

The spacious world cannot again afford:

And will she yet abase her eyes on me,

That cropp'd the golden prime of this sweet prince,

And made her widow to a woful bed?

On me, whose all not equals Edward's moiety?

On me, that halt, and am misshapen thus?

My dukedom to a beggarly'denier,

I do mistake my person all this while:

Upon my life, she finds, although I cannot,

Myself to be a marvellous proper man.

I'll be at charges for a looking-glass;

And entertain a score or two of tailors

To study fashions to adorn my body:

Since I am crept in favour with myself,

I will maintain it with some little cost.

But, first, I'll turn yon' fellow in his grave;

And then return lamenting to my love.

Shine out, fair sun, till I have bought a glass,

That I may see my shadow as I pass.

*[Exit.]*

SCENE III.—*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* QUEEN ELIZABETH, LORD RIVERS, *and* LORD GREY.

RIV. Have patience, madam; there's no doubt his majesty  
Will soon recover his accustom'd health.

GREY. In that you brook it ill it makes him worse:  
Therefore, for God's sake, entertain good comfort,  
And cheer his grace with quick and merry words.

Q. ELIZ. If he were dead, what would betide on me?

GREY. No other harm but loss of such a lord.

Q. ELIZ. The loss of such a lord includes all harms.

GREY. The Heavens have bless'd you with a goodly son,  
To be your comforter when he is gone.

Q. ELIZ. Ah, he is young; and his minority  
Is put unto the trust of Richard Gloster,  
A man that loves not me, nor none of you.

RIV. Is it concluded he shall be protector?

Q. ELIZ. It is determin'd, not concluded yet:  
But so it must be if the king miscarry.

*Enter* BUCKINGHAM *and* STANLEY.

GREY. Here come the lords of Buckingham and Stanley.

BUCK. Good time of day unto your royal grace!

STAN. God make your majesty joyful as you have been!

Q. ELIZ. The countess Richmond, good my lord of Stanley  
To your good prayer will scarcely say amen.  
Yet, Stanley, notwithstanding she's your wife,  
And loves not me, be you, good lord, assur'd  
I hate not you for her proud arrogance.

STAN. I do beseech you, either not believe  
The envious slanders of her false accusers;  
Or, if she be accus'd on true report,  
Bear with her weakness, which, I think, proceeds  
From wayward sickness, and no grounded malice.

Q. ELIZ. Saw you the king to-day, my lord of Stanley?

STAN. But now, the Duke of Buckingham and I  
Are come from visiting his majesty.

Q. ELIZ. What likelihood of his amendment, lords?

BUCK. Madam, good hope; his grace speaks cheerfully.

Q. ELIZ. God grant him health! did you confer with him?

BUCK. Ay, madam: he desires to make atonement  
Between the duke of Gloster and your brothers,  
And between them and my lord chamberlain;  
And sent to warn them to his royal presence.

Q. ELIZ. 'Would all were well!—but that will never be.  
I fear our happiness is at the height.

*Enter GLOSTER, HASTINGS, and DORSET.*

GLO. They do me wrong, and I will not endure it:  
Who are they that complain unto the king,  
That I, forsooth, am stern and love them not?  
By holy Paul, they love his grace but lightly  
That fill his ears with such dissensious rumours.  
Because I cannot flatter, and look fair,  
Smile in men's faces, smooth, deceive, and cog,  
Duck with French nods and apish courtesy,  
I must be held a rancorous enemy.  
Cannot a plain man live, and think no harm,  
But thus his simple truth must be abus'd  
By silken, sly, insinuating Jacks?

GREY. To whom in all this presence speaks your grace?

GLO. To thee, that hast nor honesty nor grace.  
When have I injur'd thee? when done thee wrong?—  
Or thee?—or thee?—or any of your faction?  
A plague upon you all! His royal grace,—  
Whom God preserve better than you would wish!—  
Cannot be quiet scarce a breathing-while,  
But you must trouble him with lewd complaints.

Q. ELIZ. Brother of Gloster, you mistake the matter:  
The king, of his own royal disposition,  
And not provok'd by any suitor else;  
Aiming, belike, at your interior hatred,  
That in your outward action shows itself  
Against my children, brothers, and myself,  
Makes him to send; that thereby he may gather  
The ground of your ill-will, and so remove it.

GLO. I cannot tell;—The world is grown so bad  
That wrens make prey where eagles dare not perch:  
Since every Jack became a gentleman,

There's many a gentle person made a Jack.

Q. ELIZ. Come, come, we know your meaning, brother  
Gloster;

You envy my advancement, and my friends';  
God grant we never may have need of you!

GLO. Meantime, God grants that we have need of you;  
Our brother is imprison'd by your means,  
Myself disgrac'd, and the nobility  
Held in contempt; while great promotions  
Are daily given, to ennoble those  
That scarce, some two days since, were worth a noble.

Q. ELIZ. By Him that rais'd me to this careful height  
From that contented hap which I enjoy'd,  
I never did incense his majesty  
Against the duke of Clarence, but have been  
An earnest advocate to plead for him.  
My lord, you do me shameful injury  
Falsely to draw me in these vile suspects.

GLO. You may deny that you were not the mean  
Of my lord Hastings' late imprisonment.

Riv. She may, my lord; for——

GLO. She may, lord Rivers?—why, who knows not so?  
She may do more, sir, than denying that:  
She may help you to many fair preferments;  
And then deny her aiding hand therein,  
And lay those honours on your high desert.  
What may she not? She may,—ay, marry, may she,—

Riv. What, marry, may she?

GLO. What, marry, may she? marry with a king,  
A bachelor, and a handsome stripling too:  
I wis your grandam had a worser match.

Q. ELIZ. My lord of Gloster, I have too long borne  
Your blunt upbraidings and your bitter scoffs:  
By Heaven, I will acquaint his majesty  
Of those gross taunts that oft I have endur'd.  
I had rather be a country servant-maid  
Than a great queen, with this condition,  
To be so baited, scorn'd, and stormed at:  
Small joy have I in being England's queen.

*Enter QUEEN MARGARET, behind.*

Q. MAR. And lessen'd be that small, God, I beseech him!  
Thy honour, state, and seat, is due to me.

GLO. What? threat you me with telling of the king?  
Tell him, and spare not: look, what I have said  
I will avouch, in presence of the king:  
I dare adventure to be sent to the Tower.

'T is time to speak, my pains are quite forgot.

Q. MAR. Out, devil! I do remember them too well:  
Thou kill'dst my husband Henry in the Tower,  
And Edward, my poor son, at Tewksbury.

GLO. Ere you were queen, ay, or your husband king,  
I was a packhorse in his great affairs;  
A weeder-out of his proud adversaries,  
A liberal rewarder of his friends;  
To royalise his blood I spilt mine own.

Q. MAR. Ay, and much better blood than his, or thine.

GLO. In all which time, you, and your husband Grey,  
Were factious for the house of Lancaster;—  
And, Rivers, so were you:—Was not your husband  
In Margaret's battle at St. Albans slain?  
Let me put in your minds, if you forget,  
What you have been ere this, and what you are;  
Withal, what I have been, and what I am.

Q. MAR. A murtherous villain, and so still thou art.

GLO. Poor Clarence did forsake his father Warwick,  
Ay, and forswore himself,—which Jesu pardon!—

Q. MAR. Which God revenge!

GLO. To fight on Edward's party, for the crown;  
And, for his meed, poor lord, he is mew'd up;  
I would to God my heart were flint like Edward's,  
Or Edward's soft and pitiful like mine;  
I am too childish-foolish for this world.

Q. MAR. Hie thee to hell for shame, and leave this world,  
Thou cacodæmon! there thy kingdom is.

Riv. My lord of Gloster, in those busy days,  
Which here you urge to prove us enemies,  
We follow'd then our lord, our sovereign king;

So should we you, if you should be our king.

GLO. If I should be?—I had rather be a pedlar:  
Far be it from my heart, the thought thereof!

Q. ELIZ. As little joy, my lord, as you suppose  
You should enjoy, were you this country's king;  
As little joy you may suppose in me  
That I enjoy, being the queen thereof.

Q. MAR. A little joy enjoys the queen thereof;  
For I am she, and altogether joyless.  
I can no longer hold me patient.— [Advancing.  
Hear me, you wrangling pirates, that fall out  
In sharing that which you have pill'd from me:  
Which of you trembles not that looks on me?  
If not, that I being queen you bow like subjects,  
Yet that by you depos'd you quake like rebels?—  
Ah, gentle villain, do not turn away!

GLO. Foul wrinkled witch, what mak'st thou in my sight?

Q. MAR. But repetition of what thou hast marr'd;  
That will I make, before I let thee go.

GLO. Wert thou not banished on pain of death?

Q. MAR. I was; but I do find more pain in banishment  
Than death can yield me here by my abode.  
A husband, and a son, thou ow'st to me,—  
And thou, a kingdom;—all of you, allegiance:  
This sorrow that I have, by right is yours;  
And all the pleasures you usurp are mine.

GLO. The curse my noble father laid on thee,  
When thou didst crown his warlike brows with paper,  
And with thy scorns drew'st rivers from his eyes,  
And then, to dry them, gav'st the duke a clout,  
Steep'd in the faultless blood of pretty Rutland;—  
His curses, then from bitterness of soul  
Denounc'd against thee, are all fallen upon thee;  
And God, not we, hath plagued thy bloody deed.

Q. ELIZ. So just is God, to right the innocent.

HAST. O, 't was the foulest deed, to slay that babe,  
And the most merciless, that e'er was heard of.

RIV. Tyrants themselves wept when it was reported.

DOR. No man but prophesied revenge for it.

BUCK. Northumberland, then present, wept to see it.

Q. MAR. What! were you snarling all, before I came,  
Ready to catch each other by the throat,  
And turn you all your hatred now on me?  
Did York's dread curse prevail so much with Heaven,  
That Henry's death, my lovely Edward's death,  
Their kingdom's loss, my woful banishment,  
Should all but answer for that peevish brat?  
Can curses pierce the clouds, and enter heaven?—  
Why, then give way, dull clouds, to my quick curses!  
Though not by war, by surfeit die your king,  
As ours by murther, to make him a king!  
Edward, thy son, that now is prince of Wales,  
For Edward, our son, that was prince of Wales,  
Die in his youth by like untimely violence!  
Thyself a queen, for me that was a queen,  
Outlive thy glory, like my wretched self!  
Long mayst thou live, to wail thy children's death,  
And see another, as I see thee now,  
Deck'd in thy rights, as thou art stall'd in mine!  
Long die thy happy days before thy death;  
And, after many lengthen'd hours of grief,  
Die neither mother, wife, nor England's queen!  
Rivers, and Dorset, you were standers by,—  
And so wast thou, lord Hastings,—when my son  
Was stabb'd with bloody daggers: God, I pray him,  
That none of you may live your natural age,  
But by some unlook'd accident cut off!

GLO. Have done thy charm, thou hateful wither'd hag.

Q. MAR. And leave out thee? stay, dog, for thou shalt  
hear me.

If heavens have any grievous plague in store,  
Exceeding those that I can wish upon thee,  
O, let them keep it, till thy sins be ripe,  
And then hurl down their indignation  
On thee, the troubler of the poor world's peace!  
The worm of conscience still be-gnaw thy soul!  
Thy friends suspect for traitors while thou liv'st,  
And take deep traitors for thy dearest friends!  
No sleep close up that deadly eye of thine,  
Unless it be while some tormenting dream



Affrights thee with a hell of ugly devils!  
Thou elvish-mark'd, abortive, rooting hog!  
Thou that wast seal'd in thy nativity  
The slave of nature, and the son of hell!  
Thou slander of thy heavy mother's womb!  
Thou loathed issue of thy father's loins!  
Thou rag of honour! thou detested——

GLO. Margaret.

Q. MAR. Richard!

GLO. Ha?

Q. MAR. I call thee not.

GLO. I cry thee mercy then; for I did think  
That thou hadst call'd me all these bitter names.

Q. MAR. Why, so I did; but look'd for no reply.  
O, let me make the period to my curse.

GLO. 'T is done by me; and ends in—Margaret.

Q. ELIZ. Thus have you breath'd your curse against  
yourself.

Q. MAR. Poor painted queen, vain flourish of my fortune!  
Why strew'st thou sugar on that bottled spider,  
Whose deadly web ensnareth thee about?  
Fool, fool! thou whett'st a knife to kill thyself.  
The day will come that thou shalt wish for me  
To help thee curse this pois'nous bunch-back'd toad.

HAST. False-boding woman, end thy frantic curse,  
Lest to thy harm thou move our patience.

Q. MAR. Foul shame upon you! you have all mov'd mine.

RIV. Were you well serv'd, you would be taught your duty.

Q. MAR. To serve me well, you all should do me duty,  
Teach me to be your queen, and you my subjects;  
O, serve me well, and teach yourselves that duty.

DOR. Dispute not with her, she is lunatic.

Q. MAR. Peace, master marquis, you are malapert:  
Your fire-new stamp of honour is scarce current:  
O, that your young nobility could judge  
What't were to lose it, and be miserable!  
They that stand high have many blasts to shake them;  
And if they fall they dash themselves to pieces.

GLO. Good counsel, marry; learn it, learn it, marquis.

DOR. It touches you, my lord, as much as me.

GLO. Ay, and much more: But I was born so high,  
Our aiery buildeth in the cedar's top,  
And dallies with the wind, and scorns the sun.

Q. MAR. And turns the sun to shade;—alas! alas!  
Witness my son, now in the shade of death;  
Whose bright out-shining beams thy cloudy wrath  
Hath in eternal darkness folded up.  
Your aiery buildeth in our aiery's nest:  
O God, that seest it, do not suffer it;  
As it was won with blood, lost be it so!

BUCK. Peace, peace, for shame, if not for charity.

Q. MAR. Urge neither charity nor shame to me;  
Uncharitably with me have you dealt,  
And shamefully my hopes by you are butcher'd.  
My charity is outrage, life my shame,—  
And in that shame still live my sorrow's rage!

BUCK. Have done, have done.

Q. MAR. O princely Buckingham, I'll kiss thy hand,  
In sign of league and amity with thee:  
Now fair befall thee and thy noble house!  
Thy garments are not spotted with our blood,  
Nor thou within the compass of my curse.

BUCK. Nor no one here; for curses never pass  
The lips of those that breathe them in the air.

Q. MAR. I will not think but they ascend the sky  
And there awake God's gentle-sleeping peace.  
O Buckingham, take heed of yonder dog;  
Look, when he fawns he bites; and, when he bites,  
His venom tooth will rankle to the death:  
Have not to do with him, beware of him;  
Sin, death, and hell have set their marks on him;  
And all their ministers attend on him.

GLO. What doth she say, my lord of Buckingham?

BUCK. Nothing that I respect, my gracious lord.

Q. MAR. What, dost thou scorn me for my gentle counsel,  
And soothe the devil that I warn thee from?  
O, but remember this another day,  
When he shall split thy very heart with sorrow;  
And say, poor Margaret was a prophetess.  
Live each of you the subjects to his hate,

And he to yours, and all of you to God's! [Exit.

HAST. My hair doth stand on end to hear her curses.

RIV. And so doth mine; I muse why she's at liberty.

GLO. I cannot blame her, by God's holy mother;  
She hath had too much wrong, and I repent  
My part thereof, that I have done to her.

Q. ELIZ. I never did her any, to my knowledge.

GLO. Yet you have all the vantage of her wrong.  
I was too hot to do somebody good,  
That is too cold in thinking of it now.

Marry, as for Clarence, he is well repaid;  
He is frank'd up to fattening for his pains;  
God pardon them that are the cause thereof!

RIV. A virtuous and a Christianlike conclusion,  
To pray for them that have done seath to us.

GLO. So do I ever, being well advis'd:—  
For had I curs'd now, I had curs'd myself. [Aside.

*Enter CATESBY.*

CATES. Madam, his majesty doth call for you,—  
And for your grace,—and you, my noble lord.

Q. ELIZ. Catesby, I come:—Lords, will you go with me?

RIV. We wait upon your grace.

[Exeunt all but GLOSTER.

GLO. I do the wrong, and first begin to brawl.  
The secret mischiefs that I set abroad  
I lay unto the grievous charge of others.  
Clarence,—whom I, indeed, have cast in darkness,—  
I do beweepe to many simple gulls;  
Namely, to Stanley, Hastings, Buckingham;  
And tell them, 't is the queen and her allies  
That stir the king against the duke my brother.  
Now they believe it; and withal whet me  
To be reveng'd on Rivers, Dorset, Grey:  
But then I sigh, and, with a piece of scripture,  
Tell them, that God bids us do good for evil:  
And thus I clothe my naked villainy  
With odd old ends, stolen forth of holy writ:  
And seem a saint, when most I play the devil.

*Enter two Murderers.*

But soft, here come my executioners.  
How now, my hardy, stout, resolved mates?  
Are you now going to despatch this thing?

1 MURD. We are, my lord; and come to have the warrant,  
That we may be admitted where he is.

GLO. Well thought upon, I have it here about me:

*[Gives the warrant.]*

When you have done, repair to Crosby-place.  
But, sirs, be sudden in the execution,  
Withal obdurate, do not hear him plead;  
For Clarence is well-spoken, and, perhaps,  
May move your hearts to pity, if you mark him.

1 MURD. Tut, tut, my lord, we will not stand to prate;  
Talkers are no good doers; be assur'd  
We go to use our hands, and not our tongues.

GLO. Your eyes drop millstones, when fools' eyes fall  
tears:

I like you, lads;—about your business straight;  
Go, go, despatch.

2 MURD. We will, my noble lord.

*[Exeunt.]*

SCENE IV.—*The same. A Room in the Tower.*

*Enter CLARENCE and BRAKENBURY.*

BRAK. Why looks your grace so heavily to-day?

CLAR. O, I have pass'd a miserable night,  
So full of fearful dreams, of ugly sights,  
That, as I am a Christian faithful man,  
I would not spend another such a night,  
Though 't were to buy a world of happy days;  
So full of dismal terror was the time.

BRAK. What was your dream, my lord? I pray you, tell  
me.

CLAR. Methought that I had broken from the Tower,  
And was embark'd to cross to Burgundy;  
And in my company my brother Gloster:  
Who from my cabin tempted me to walk  
Upon the hatches; there we look'd toward England,

And cited up a thousand heavy times,  
During the wars of York and Lancaster,  
That had befall'n us. As we pac'd along  
Upon the giddy footing of the hatches,  
Methought that Gloster stumbled; and, in falling,  
Struck me, that thought to stay him, overboard,  
Into the tumbling billows of the main.  
O Lord! methought what pain it was to drown!  
What dreadful noise of water in mine ears!  
What sights of ugly death within mine eyes!  
Methought I saw a thousand fearful wracks;  
A thousand men that fishes gnaw'd upon;  
Wedges of gold, great anchors, heaps of pearl,  
Inestimable stones, unvalued jewels,  
All scatter'd in the bottom of the sea.  
Some lay in dead men's skulls; and in those holes  
Where eyes did once inhabit there were crept,  
As 't were in scorn of eyes, reflecting gems,  
That woo'd the slimy bottom of the deep,  
And mock'd the dead bones that lay scatter'd by.

BRAK. Had you such leisure in the time of death  
To gaze upon these secrets of the deep?

CLAR. Methought I had; and often did I strive  
To yield the ghost: but still the envious flood  
Stopt in my soul, and would not let it forth  
To find the empty, vast, and wand'ring air;  
But smother'd it within my panting bulk,  
Which almost burst to belch it in the sea.

BRAK. Awak'd you not in this sore agony?

CLAR. No, no, my dream was lengthen'd after life;  
O, then began the tempest to my soul!  
I pass'd, methought, the melancholy flood  
With that sour ferryman which poets write of,  
Unto the kingdom of perpetual night.  
The first that there did greet my stranger soul  
Was my great father-in-law, renowned Warwick;  
Who spake aloud,—“What scourge for perjury  
Can this dark monarchy afford false Clarence?”  
And so he vanish'd: Then came wandering by  
A shadow like an angel, with bright hair

Dabbled in blood; and he shriek'd out aloud,—  
 “Clarence is come,—~~false~~, fleeting, perjur'd Clarence,—  
 That stabb'd me in the field by Tewksbury;  
 Seize on him, furies, take him unto torment!”—  
 With that, methought, a legion of foul fiends  
 Environ'd me, and howled in mine ears  
 Such hideous cries, that, with the very noise,  
 I trembling wak'd, and, for a season after,  
 Could not believe but that I was in hell;  
 Such terrible impression made my dream.

BRAK. No marvel, lord, though it affrighted you;  
 I am afraid, methinks, to hear you tell it.

CLAR. O, Brakenbury, I have done these things,—  
 That now give evidence against my soul,—  
 For Edward's sake; and see how he requites me!  
 O God! if my deep prayers cannot appease thee,  
 But thou wilt be aveng'd on my misdeeds,  
 Yet execute thy wrath on me alone:  
 O, spare my guiltless wife and my poor children!  
 I pray thee, gentle keeper, stay by me;  
 My soul is heavy, and I fain would sleep.

BRAK. I will, my lord: God give your grace good rest!—

[CLARENCE retires.]

Sorrow breaks seasons and reposing hours,—  
 Makes the night morning, and the noontide night.  
 Princes have but their titles for their glories,  
 An outward honour for an inward toil;  
 And, for unfelt imaginations,  
 They often feel a world of restless cares:  
 So that, between their titles, and low name,  
 There's nothing differs but the outward fame.

*Enter the two Murderers.*

1 MURD. Ho! who's here?

BRAK. What wouldst thou, fellow? and how cam'st thou hither?

1 MURD. I would speak with Clarence, and I came hither on my legs.

BRAK. What, so brief?

2 MURD. 'T is better, sir, than to be tedious:—let him see our commission, and talk no more.

*[A paper is delivered to BRAKENBURY, who reads it.]*

BRAK. I am, in this, commanded to deliver  
The noble duke of Clarence to your hands:  
I will not reason what is meant hereby,  
Because I will be guiltless of the meaning.  
There lies the duke asleep,—and there, the keys.  
I'll to the king; and signify to him  
That thus I have resigu'd to you my charge.

1 MURD. You may, sir; 't is a point of wisdom:  
Fare you well. *[Exit BRAKENBURY.]*

2 MURD. What, shall we stab him as he sleeps?

1 MURD. No; he'll say 't was done cowardly, when he wakes.

2 MURD. Why, he shall never wake until the great judgment-day.

1 MURD. Why, then he'll say we stabb'd him sleeping.

2 MURD. The urging of that word, judgment, hath bred a kind of remorse in me.

1 MURD. What! art thou afraid?

2 MURD. Not to kill him, having a warrant; but to be damned for killing him, from the which no warrant can defend me.

1 MURD. I thought thou hadst been resolute.

2 MURD. So I am, to let him live.

1 MURD. I'll back to the duke of Gloster, and tell him so.

2 MURD. Nay, I prithee, stay a little: I hope this passionate humour of mine will change: it was wont to hold me but while one tells twenty.

1 MURD. How dost thou feel thyself now?

2 MURD. Some certain dregs of conscience are yet within me.

1 MURD. Remember our reward, when the deed's done.

2 MURD. Come, he dies; I had forgot the reward.

1 MURD. Where's thy conscience now?

2 MURD. Oh, in the duke of Gloster's purse.

1 MURD. When he opens his purse to give us our reward, thy conscience flies out.

2 MURD. 'T is no matter; let it go; there's few, or none, will entertain it.

1 MURD. What if it come to thee again?

2 MURD. I'll not meddle with it, it is a dangerous thing, it makes a man a coward; a man cannot steal but it accuseth him; a man cannot swear but it checks him; a man cannot lie with his neighbour's wife but it detects him: 'T is a blushing shame-faced spirit that mutinies in a man's bosom; it fills one full of obstacles: it made me once restore a purse of gold that by chance I found; it beggars any man that keeps it: it is turned out of towns and cities for a dangerous thing; and every man that means to live well endeavours to trust to himself, and live without it.

1 MURD. It is now even at my elbow, persuading me not to kill the duke.

2 MURD. Take the devil in thy mind, and believe him not; he would insinuate with thee, but to make thee sigh.

1 MURD. I am strong framed, he cannot prevail with me.

2 MURD. Spoken like a tall fellow that respects his reputation. Come, shall we fall to work?

1 MURD. Take him on the costard with the hilts of thy sword, and then throw him into the malmsey-butt, in the next room.

2 MURD. O excellent device! and make a sop of him.

1 MURD. Soft! he wakes.

2 MURD. Strike.

1 MURD. No, we'll reason with him.

CLAR. Where art thou, keeper? give me a cup of wine.

1 MURD. You shall have wine enough, my lord, anon.

CLAR. In God's name, what art thou?

1 MURD. A man, as you are.

CLAR. But not, as I am, royal.

2 MURD. Nor you, as we are, loyal.

CLAR. Thy voice is thunder, but thy looks are humble.

1 MURD. My voice is now the king's, my looks mine own.

CLAR. How darkly, and how deadly, dost thou speak!

Your eyes do menace me: Why look you pale?

Who sent you hither? Wherefore do you come?

2 MURD. To, to, to——

CLAR. To murder me?



BOTH MURD. Ay, ay.

CLAR. You scarcely have the hearts to tell me so,  
And therefore cannot have the hearts to do it.  
Wherein, my friends, have I offended you?

1 MURD. Offended us you have not, but the king.

CLAR. I shall be reconcil'd to him again.

2 MURD. Never, my lord; therefore, prepare to die.

CLAR. Are you drawn forth among a world of men,  
To slay the innocent? What is my offence?  
Where is the evidence that doth accuse me?  
What lawful quest have given their verdict up  
Unto the frowning judge, or who pronounc'd  
The bitter sentence of poor Clarence' death?  
Before I be convict by course of law,  
To threaten me with death is most unlawful.  
I charge you, as you hope for any goodness,  
That you depart, and lay no hands on me;  
The deed you undertake is damnable.

1 MURD. What we will do we do upon command.

2 MURD. And he that hath commanded is our king.

CLAR. Erroneous vassal! the great King of kings  
Hath in the table of his law commanded,  
That thou shalt do no murder: Will you then  
Spurn at his edict, and fulfil a man's?  
Take heed; for he holds vengeance in his hand,  
To hurl upon their heads that break his law.

2 MURD. And that same vengeance doth he hurl on thee,  
For false forswearing, and for murder too:  
Thou didst receive the sacrament to fight  
In quarrel of the house of Lancaster.

1 MURD. And, like a traitor to the name of God,  
Didst break that vow; and with thy treacherous blade  
Unripp'dst the bowels of thy sovereign's son.

2 MURD. Whom thou wast sworn to cherish and defend.

1 MURD. How canst thou urge God's dreadful law to us,  
When thou hast broke it in such dear degree?

CLAR. Alas! for whose sake did I that ill deed?  
For Edward, for my brother, for his sake:  
He sends you not to murder me for this;  
For in that sin he is as deep as I.

If God will be avenged for the deed,  
O, know you, yet he doth it publicly;  
Take not the quarrel from his powerful arm;  
He needs no indirect or lawless course,  
To cut off those that have offended him.

1 MURD. Who made thee then a bloody minister,  
When gallant-springing brave Plantagenet,  
That princely novice, was struck dead by thee?

CLAR. My brother's love, the devil, and my rage.

1 MURD. Thy brother's love, our duty, and thy faults,  
Provoke us hither now to slaughter thee.

CLAR. If you do love my brother, hate not me;  
I am his brother, and I love him well.  
If you are hir'd for meed, go back again,  
And I will send you to my brother Gloster;  
Who shall reward you better for my life  
Than Edward will for tidings of my death.

2 MURD. You are deceiv'd, your brother Gloster hates  
you.

CLAR. O, no; he loves me, and he holds me dear;  
Go you to him from me.

BOTH MURD. Ay, so we will.

CLAR. Tell him, when that our princely father York  
Bless'd his three sons with his victorious arm,  
And charg'd us from his soul to love each other,  
He little thought of this divided friendship:  
Bid Gloster think on this, and he will weep.

1 MURD. Ay, millstones; as he lesson'd us to weep.

CLAR. O, do not slander him, for he is kind.

1 MURD. Right, as snow in harvest.—Come, you deceive  
yourself;

'T is he that sends us to destroy you here.

CLAR. It cannot be, for he bewept my fortune,  
And hugg'd me in his arms, and swore, with sobs,  
That he would labour my delivery.

1 MURD. Why, so he doth, when he delivers you  
From this earth's thralldom to the joys of heaven.

2 MURD. Make peace with God, for you must die, my  
lord.

CLAR. Have you that holy feeling in your souls,

To counsel me to make my peace with God,  
And are you yet to your own souls so blind,  
That you will war with God, by murdering me?  
Oh, sirs, consider, they that set you on  
To do this deed will hate you for the deed.

2 MURD. What shall we do?

CLAR. Relent, and save your souls.  
Which of you, if you were a prince's son,  
Being pent from liberty, as I am now,  
If two such murderers as yourselves came to you,  
Would not entreat for life,—as you would beg  
Were you in my distress?

1 MURD. Relent! No. 'T is cowardly and womanish.

CLAR. Not to relent, is beastly, savage, devilish.—  
My friend, I spy some pity in thy looks;  
O, if thine eye be not a flatterer,  
Come thou on my side, and entreat for me:  
A begging prince, what beggar pities not?

2 MURD. Look behind you, my lord.

1 MURD. Take that, and that; if all this will not do,  
[Stabs him.

I'll drown you in the malmsey-butt within.

[Exit, with the body.

2 MURD. A bloody deed, and desperately despatch'd!  
How fain, like Pilate, would I wash my hands  
Of this most grievous murder!

*Re-enter first Murderer.*

1 MURD. How now? what mean'st thou, that thou help'st  
me not?

Ey Heaven, the duke shall know how slack you have been.

2 MURD. I would he knew that I had sav'd his brother!

Take thou the fee, and tell him what I say;

For I repent me that the duke is slain.

[Exit.

1 MURD. So do not I; go, coward as thou art.

Well, I'll go hide the body in some hole,

Till that the duke give order for his burial;

And when I have my meed, I will away;

For this will out, and then I must not stay.

[Exit.

## ACT II.

SCENE I.—*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter* KING EDWARD (*led in sick*), QUEEN ELIZABETH, DORSET, RIVERS, HASTINGS, BUCKINGHAM, GREY, and others.

K. EDW. Why, so:—now have I done a good day's work;—

You peers, continue this united league:  
I every day expect an embassy  
From my Redeemer to redeem me hence;  
And more to peace my soul shall part to heaven,  
Since I have made my friends at peace on earth.  
Rivers and Hastings, take each other's hand;  
Dissemble not your hatred, swear your love.

RIV. By Heaven, my soul is purg'd from grudging hate;  
And with my hand I seal my true heart's love.

HAST. So thrive I, as I truly swear the like!

K. EDW. Take heed you dally not before your king;  
Lest He that is the supreme King of kings  
Confound your hidden falsehood, and award  
Either of you to be the other's end.

HAST. So prosper I, as I swear perfect love!

RIV. And I, as I love Hastings with my heart!

K. EDW. Madam, yourself are not exempt in this,—  
Nor you, son Dorset,—Buckingham, nor you;—  
You have been factious one against the other.  
Wife, love lord Hastings, let him kiss your hand;  
And what you do, do it unfeignedly.

Q. ELIZ. There, Hastings;—I will never more remember  
Our former hatred, so thrive I and mine!

K. EDW. Dorset, embrace him,—Hastings, love lord marquis.

DOR. This interchange of love, I here protest,  
Upon my part shall be inviolable.

HAST. And so swear I.

[*Embraces* DORSET.]

K. EDW. Now, princely Buckingham, seal thou this league  
With thy embracements to my wife's allies,

And make me happy in your unity.

BUCK. Whenever Buckingham doth turn his hate  
Upon your grace [*to the QUEEN*], but with all duteous love  
Doth cherish you, and yours, God punish me  
With hate in those where I expect most love!  
When I have most need to employ a friend,  
And most assured that he is a friend,  
Deep, hollow, treacherous, and full of guile,  
Be he unto me! this do I beg of Heaven,  
When I am cold in love to you or yours.

[*Embracing RIVERS, &c.*]

K. EDW. A pleasing cordial, princely Buckingham,  
Is this thy vow unto my sickly heart.

There wanteth now our brother Gloster here,  
To make the blessed period of this peace.

BUCK. And, in good time, here comes the noble duke.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

GLO. Good morrow to my sovereign king, and queen;  
And, princely peers, a happy time of day!

K. EDW. Happy, indeed, as we have spent the day:  
Gloster, we have done deeds of charity;  
Made peace of enmity, fair love of hate,  
Between these swelling wrong-incensed peers.

GLO. A blessed labour, my most sovereign lord.—  
Among this princely heap, if any here,  
By false intelligence or wrong surmise,  
Hold me a foe;  
If I unwittingly, or in my rage,  
Have aught committed that is hardly borne  
By any in this presence, I desire  
To reconcile me to his friendly peace;  
'T is death to me to be at enmity;  
I hate it, and desire all good men's love.  
First, madam, I entreat true peace of you,  
Which I will purchase with my duteous service;  
Of you, my noble cousin Buckingham,  
If ever any grudge were lodg'd between us;  
Of you, and you, Lord Rivers, and of Dorset—  
That all without desert have frown'd on me;—

Of you, lord Woodville, and lord Scales, of you;—  
Dukes, earls, lords, gentlemen; indeed, of all,  
I do not know that Englishman alive  
With whom my soul is any jot at odds,  
More than the infant that is born to-night:  
I thank my God for my humility.

Q. ELIZ. A holy-day shall this be kept hereafter:  
I would to God all strifes were well compounded.  
My sovereign lord, I do beseech your highness  
To take our brother Clarence to your grace.

GLO. Why, madam, have I offer'd love for this,  
To be so flouted in this royal presence?  
Who knows not that the gentle duke is dead?

*[They all start]*

You do him injury to scorn his corse.

K. EDW. Who knows not he is dead! who knows he is!

Q. ELIZ. All-seeing Heaven, what a world is this!

BUCK. Look I so pale, lord Dorset, as the rest?

DOR. Ay, my good lord; and no man in the presence,  
But his red colour hath forsook his cheeks.

K. EDW. Is Clarence dead? the order was revers'd.

GLO. But he, poor man, by your first order died,  
And that a winged Mercury did bear;  
Some tardy cripple bore the countermand,  
That came too lag to see him buried:  
God grant that some, less noble and less loyal,  
Nearer in bloody thoughts, and not in blood,  
Deserve not worse than wretched Clarence did,  
And yet go current from suspicion!

*Enter STANLEY.*

STAN. A boon, my sovereign, for my service done!

K. EDW. I prithee, peace; my soul is full of sorrow.

STAN. I will not rise unless your highness hear me.

K. EDW. Then say at once, what is it thou request'st.

STAN. The forfeit, sovereign, of my servant's life:  
Who slew to-day a riotous gentleman,  
Lately attendant on the duke of Norfolk.

K. EDW. Have I a tongue to doom my brother's death,

And shall that tongue give pardon to a slave?  
My brother kill'd no man, his fault was thought,  
And yet his punishment was bitter death.  
Who sued to me for him? who, in my wrath,  
Kneel'd at my feet, and bade me be advis'd?  
Who spoke of brotherhood? who spoke of love?  
Who told me how the poor soul did forsake  
The mighty Warwick, and did fight for me?  
Who told me in the field at Tewksbury,  
When Oxford had me down, he rescued me,  
And said, "Dear brother, live, and be a king"?  
Who told me, when we both lay in the field,  
Frozen almost to death, how he did lap me  
Even in his garments; and did give himself,  
All thin and naked, to the numb-cold night?  
All this from my remembrance brutish wrath  
Sinfully pluck'd, and not a man of you  
Had so much grace to put it in my mind.  
But, when your carters, or your waiting-vassals,  
Have done a drunken slaughter, and defac'd  
The precious image of our dear Redeemer,  
You straight are on your knees for pardon, pardon;  
And I, unjustly too, must grant it you:—  
But for my brother not a man would speak,  
Nor I (ungracious) speak unto myself  
For him, poor soul. The proudest of you all  
Have been beholden to him in his life;  
Yet none of you would once plead for his life.  
O God! I fear thy justice will take hold  
On me, and you, and mine, and yours, for this.  
Come, Hastings, help me to my closet.  
Ah! poor Clarence!

[*Exeunt* KING, QUEEN, HAST., RIV., DOR., and GREY.]

GLO. This is the fruit of rashness! Mark'd you not  
How that the guilty kindred of the queen  
Look'd pale, when they did hear of Clarence' death?  
O! they did urge it still unto the king:  
God will revenge it. Come, lords; will you go,  
To comfort Edward with our company?

BUCK. We wait upon your grace.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*The same.*

*Enter the DUCHESS OF YORK, with a Son and Daughter of CLARENCE.*

SON. Good grandam, tell us, is our father dead?

DUCH. No, boy.

DAUGH. Why do you weep so oft? and beat your breast;  
And cry—"O Clarence, my unhappy son!"

SON. Why do you look on us, and shake your head,  
And call us orphans, wretches, castaways,  
If that our noble father were alive?

DUCH. My pretty cousins, you mistake me both;  
I do lament the sickness of the king,  
As loth to lose him, not your father's death;  
It were lost sorrow to wail one that's lost.

SON. Then you conclude, my grandam, he is dead.  
The king my uncle is to blame for this:  
God will revenge it; whom I will importune  
With earnest prayers all to that effect.

DAUGH. And so will I.

DUCH. Peace, children, peace! the king doth love you  
well:

Incapable and shallow innocents,  
You cannot guess who caus'd your father's death.

SON. Grandam, we can: for my good uncle Gloster  
Told me, the king, provok'd to 't by the queen,  
Devis'd impeachments to imprison him:  
And when my uncle told me so, he wept,  
And pitied me, and kindly kiss'd my cheek;  
Bade me rely on him as on my father,  
And he would love me dearly as his child.

DUCH. Ah, that deceit should steal such gentle shapes,  
And with a virtuous visor hide deep vice!  
He is my son, ay, and therein my shame,  
Yet from my dugs he drew not this deceit.

SON. Think you my uncle did dissemble, grandam?

DUCH. Ay, boy.

SON. I cannot think it. Hark! what noise is this?



*Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH, distractedly; RIVERS and DORSET following her.*

Q. ELIZ. Ah! who shall hinder me to wail and weep?  
To chide my fortune, and torment myself?  
I'll join with black despair against my soul,  
And to myself become an enemy.

DUCH. What means this scene of rude impatience?

Q. ELIZ. To make an act of tragic violence.  
Edward, my lord, thy son, our king, is dead.  
Why grow the branches when the root is gone?  
Why wither not the leaves that want their sap?  
If you will live, lament; if die, be brief;  
That our swift-winged souls may catch the king's;  
Or, like obedient subjects, follow him  
To his new kingdom of ne'er-changing night.

DUCH. Ah, so much interest have I in thy sorrow,  
As I had title in thy noble husband!  
I have bewept a worthy husband's death,  
And liv'd by looking on his images:  
But now, two mirrors of his princely semblance  
Are crack'd in pieces by malignant death;  
And I for comfort have but one false glass,  
That grieves me when I see my shame in him.  
Thou art a widow; yet thou art a mother,  
And hast the comfort of thy children left;  
But death hath snatch'd my husband from mine arms,  
And pluck'd two crutches from my feeble hands,  
Clarence and Edward. O, what cause have I  
(Thine being but a moiety of my moan)  
To over-go thy woes, and drown thy cries!

SON. Ah, aunt! you wept not for our father's death;  
How can we aid you with our kindred tears?

DAUGH. Our fatherless distress was left unmoan'd;  
Your widow-dolour likewise be unwept!

Q. ELIZ. Give me no help in lamentation;  
I am not barren to bring forth complaints:  
All springs reduce their currents to mine eyes,  
That I, being govern'd by the watery moon,  
May send forth plenteous tears to drown the world!

Ah, for my husband, for my dear lord Edward!

CHIL. Ah, for our father, for our dear lord Clarence!

DUCH. Alas, for both, both mine, Edward and Clarence!

Q. ELIZ. What stay had I but Edward? and he's gone.

CHIL. What stay had we but Clarence? and he's gone.

DUCH. What stays had I but they? and they are gone.

Q. ELIZ. Was never widow had so dear a loss.

CHIL. Were never orphans had so dear a loss.

DUCH. Was never mother had so dear a loss.

Alas! I am the mother of these griefs;

Their woes are parcell'd, mine are general.

She for an Edward weeps, and so do I;

I for a Clarence weep, so doth not she;

These babes for Clarence weep, and so do I;

I for an Edward weep, so do not they:—

Alas! you three on me, threefold distress'd,

Pour all your tears, I am your sorrow's nurse,

And I will pamper it with lamentations.

DOR. Comfort, dear mother: God is much displeas'd

That you take with unthankfulness his doing:

In common worldly things 't is called ungrateful,

With dull unwillingness to repay a debt,

Which with a bounteous hand was kindly lent;

Much more to be thus opposite with Heaven,

For it requires the royal debt it lent you.

RIV. Madam, bethink you, like a careful mother,

Of the young prince your son: send straight for him,

Let him be crown'd; in him your comfort lives:

Drown desperate sorrow in dead Edward's grave,

And plant your joys in living Edward's throne.

*Enter GLOSTER, BUCKINGHAM, STANLEY, HASTINGS, RATCLIFF,  
and others.*

GLO. Sister, have comfort: all of us have cause

To wail the dimming of our shining star;

But none can help our harms by wailing them.

Madam, my mother, I do cry you mercy,

I did not see your grace:—Humbly on my knee

I crave your blessing.

DUCH. God bless thee, and put meekness in thy breast,

Love, charity, obedience, and true duty!

GLO. Amen; and make me die a good old man!  
That is the butt-end of a mother's blessing;  
I marvel that her grace did leave it out.

[*Aside.*

BUCK. You cloudy princes, and heart-sorrowing peers,  
That bear this heavy mutual load of moan,  
Now cheer each other in each other's love:  
Though we have spent our harvest of this king,  
We are to reap the harvest of his son.

The broken rancour of your high swoln hates,  
But lately splinter'd, knit, and join'd together,  
Must gently be preserv'd, cherish'd, and kept:  
Me seemeth good, that, with some little train,  
Forthwith from Ludlow the young king be fet  
Hither to London, to be crown'd our king.

RIV. Why with some little train, my lord of Buckingham?

BUCK. Marry, my lord, lest by a multitude,  
The new-heal'd wound of malice should break out;  
Which would be so much the more dangerous,  
By how much the estate is green and yet ungovern'd:  
Where every horse bears his commanding rein,  
And may direct his course as please himself,  
As well the fear of harm, as harm apparent,  
In my opinion, ought to be prevented.

GLO. I hope the king made peace with all of us;  
And the compact is firm, and true, in me.

RIV. And so in me; and so, I think, in all:  
Yet, since it is but green, it should be put  
To no apparent likelihood of breach,  
Which, haply, by much company might be urg'd:  
Therefore I say, with noble Buckingham,  
That it is meet so few should fetch the prince.

HAST. And so say I.

GLO. Then be it so; and go we to determine  
Who they shall be that straight shall post to Ludlow.  
Madam, and you my sister, will you go  
To give your censures in this weighty business?

[*Exeunt all but BUCKINGHAM and GLOSTER.*

BUCK. My lord, whoever journeys to the prince,  
For God's sake, let not us two stay at home:

For, by the way, I'll sort occasion,  
As index to the story we late talk'd of,  
To part the queen's proud kindred from the prince.

GLO. My other self, my counsel's consistory,  
My oracle, my prophet!—My dear cousin,  
I, as a child, will go by thy direction.  
Towards Ludlow then, for we'll not stay behind. [Exeunt.]

SCENE III.—*The same. A Street.*

*Enter two Citizens, meeting.*

1 Crr. Good morrow, neighbour: Whither away so fast?

2 Crr. I promise you, I scarcely know myself:  
Hear you the news abroad?

1 Crr. Yes; that the king is dead.

2 Crr. Ill news, by 'r lady; seldom comes the better:  
I fear, I fear, 't will prove a giddy world.

*Enter another Citizen.*

3 Crr. Neighbours, God speed!

1 Crr. Give you good morrow, sir.

3 Crr. Doth the news hold of good king Edward's death?

2 Crr. Ay, sir, it is too true; God help, the while!

3 Crr. Then, masters, look to see a troublous world.

1 Crr. No, no; by God's good grace his son shall reign.

3 Crr. Woe to that land that 's govern'd by a child!

2 Crr. In him there is a hope of government;  
That in his nonage council under him,  
And in his full and ripen'd years himself,  
No doubt, shall then, and till then, govern well.

1 Crr. So stood the state when Henry the sixth  
Was crown'd in Paris but at nine months old.

3 Crr. Stood the state so? no, no, good friends, God wot;  
For then this land was famously enrich'd  
With politic grave counsel; then the king  
Had virtuous uncles to protect his grace.

1 Crr. Why, so hath this, both by his father and mother.

3 Crr. Better it were they all came by his father;  
Or, by his father, there were none at all:  
For emulations who shall now be nearest

Will touch us all too near, if God prevent not.  
O, full of danger is the duke of Gloster;  
And the queen's sons and brothers haught and proud:  
And were they to be rul'd, and not to rule,  
This sickly land might solace as before.

1 Crr. Come, come, we fear the worst; all will be well.

3 Crr. When clouds are seen wise men put on their cloaks;  
When great leaves fall then winter is at hand;  
When the sun sets who doth not look for night?  
Untimely storms make men expect a dearth:  
All may be well; but, if God sort it so,  
'T is more than we deserve, or I expect.

2 Crr. Truly, the hearts of men are full of fear:  
You cannot reason almost with a man  
That looks not heavily and full of dread.

3 Crr. Before the days of change, still is it so:  
By a divine instinct, men's minds mistrust  
Ensuing danger; as, by proof, we see  
The waters swell before a boist'rous storm.  
But leave it all to God. Whither away?

2 Crr. Marry, we were sent for to the justices.

3 Crr. And so was I; I'll bear you company. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—*The same. A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter the ARCHBISHOP OF YORK, the young DUKE OF YORK,  
QUEEN ELIZABETH, and the DUCHESS OF YORK.*

ARCH. Last night, I hear, they lay at Northampton;  
At Stony-Stratford will they be to-night:  
To-morrow, or next day, they will be here.

DUCH. I long with all my heart to see the prince.  
I hope he is much grown since last I saw him.

Q. ELIZ. But I hear, no; they say, my son of York  
Has almost overta'en him in his growth.

YORK. Ay, mother, but I would not have it so.

DUCH. Why, my good cousin? it is good to grow.

YORK. Grandam, one night, as we did sit at supper,  
My uncle Rivers talk'd how I did grow  
More than my brother: "Ay," quoth my uncle Gloster,  
"Small herbs have grace, great weeds do grow apace:"

And since, methinks, I would not grow so fast,  
Because sweet flowers are slow, and weeds make haste.

DUCH. 'Good faith, 'good faith, the saying did not hold  
In him that did object the same to thee :

He was the wretched'st thing, when he was young,  
So long a growing, and so leisurely,

That, if his rule were true, he should be gracious.

ARCH. And so, no doubt, he is, my gracious madam.

DUCH. I hope he is; but yet let mothers doubt.

YORK. Now, by my troth, if I had been remember'd,  
I could have given my uncle's grace a flout,  
To touch his growth nearer than he touch'd mine.

DUCH. How, my young York? I prithee let me hear it.

YORK. Marry, they say, my uncle grew so fast,  
That he could gnaw a crust at two hours old;  
'T was full two years ere I could get a tooth.

Grandam, this would have been a biting jest.

DUCH. I prithee, pretty York, who told thee this?

YORK. Grandam, his nurse.

DUCH. His nurse! why, she was dead ere thou wast born.

YORK. If 't were not she, I cannot tell who told me.

Q. ELIZ. A parlous boy: Go to, you are too shrewd.

ARCH. Good madam, be not angry with the child.

Q. ELIZ. Pitchers have ears.

*Enter a Messenger,*

ARCH. Here comes a messenger :

What news?

MESS. Such news, my lord, as grieves me to report.

Q. ELIZ. How doth the prince?

MESS. Well, madam, and in health.

DUCH. What is thy news?

MESS. Lord Rivers, and lord Grey, are sent to Pomfret,  
And with them sir Thomas Vaughan, prisoners.

DUCH. Who hath committed them?

MESS. The mighty dukes, Gloster and Buckingham.

ARCH. For what offence?

MESS. The sum of all I can I have disclos'd ;  
Why, or for what, the nobles were committed,  
Is all unknown to me, my gracious lord.

Q. ELIZ. Ah me, I see the ruin of my house!  
The tiger now hath seiz'd the gentle hind;  
Insulting tyranny begins to jet  
Upon the innocent and awless throne:  
Welcome, destruction, blood, and massacre!  
I see, as in a map, the end of all.

DUCH. Accursed and unquiet wrangling days,  
How many of you have mine eyes beheld!  
My husband lost his life to get the crown;  
And often up and down my sons were toss'd,  
For me to joy, and weep, their gain and loss:  
And being seated, and domestic broils  
Clean over-blown, themselves, the conquerors,  
Make war upon themselves; brother to brother,  
Blood to blood, self against self: O, preposterous  
And frantic outrage, end thy damned spleen:  
Or let me die, to look on death no more!

Q. ELIZ. Come, come, my boy, we will to sanctuary.  
Madam, farewell.

DUCH. Stay, I will go with you.

Q. ELIZ. You have no cause.

ARCH. My gracious lady, go,  
[To the QUEEN.]

And thither bear your treasure and your goods.  
For my part, I'll resign unto your grace  
The seal I keep: And so betide to me,  
As well I tender you, and all of yours!  
Go, I'll conduct you to the sanctuary.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—London. *A Street.*

*The trumpets sound. Enter the PRINCE OF WALES, GLOSTER, BUCKINGHAM, CARDINAL BOUCHIER, and others.*

BUCK. Welcome, sweet prince, to London, to your chamber.

GLO. Welcome, dear cousin, my thoughts' sovereign:  
The weary way hath made you melancholy.

PRINCE. No, uncle; but our crosses on the way  
Have made it tedious, wearisome, and heavy:  
I want more uncles here to welcome me.

GLO. Sweet prince, the untainted virtue of your years  
Hath not yet div'd into the world's deceit:  
No more can you distinguish of a man  
Than of his outward show; which, God he knows,  
Seldom or never jumpeth with the heart.  
Those uncles which you want were dangerous;  
Your grace attended to their sugar'd words,  
But look'd not on the poison of their hearts:  
God keep you from them, and from such false friends!

PRINCE. God keep me from false friends! but they were  
none.

GLO. My lord, the mayor of London comes to greet you.

*Enter the Lord Mayor, and his Train.*

MAY. God bless your grace with health and happy days!

PRINCE. I thank you, good my lord;—and thank you all—  
[*Exeunt Mayor, &c.*]

I thought my mother and my brother York  
Would long ere this have met us on the way:  
Fie, what a slug is Hastings! that he comes not  
To tell us whether they will come, or no.

*Enter HASTINGS.*

BUCK. And in good time, here comes the sweating lord.

PRINCE. Welcome, my lord: What, will our mother come?

HAST. On what occasion, God he knows, not I,  
The queen your mother, and your brother York,  
Have taken sanctuary: The tender prince  
Would fain have come with me to meet your grace,  
But by his mother was perforce withheld.

BUCK. Fie! what an indirect and peevish course  
Is this of hers!—Lord cardinal, will your grace  
Persuade the queen to send the duke of York  
Unto his princely brother presently?  
If she deny, lord Hastings, go with him,  
And from her jealous arms pluck him perforce.

CARD. My lord of Buckingham, if my weak oratory



Can from his mother win the duke of York,  
Anon expect him here: But if she be obdurate  
To mild entreaties, God in heaven forbid  
We should infringe the holy privilege  
Of blessed sanctuary! not for all this land  
Would I be guilty of so great a sin.

BUCK. You are too senseless-obstinate, my lord,  
Too ceremonious and traditional:  
Weigh it but with the grossness of this age,  
You break not sanctuary in seizing him.  
The benefit thereof is always granted  
To those whose dealings have deserv'd the place,  
And those who have the wit to claim the place:  
This prince hath neither claim'd it, nor deserv'd it;  
And therefore, in mine opinion, cannot have it:  
Then, taking him from thence that is not there,  
You break no privilege nor charter there.  
Oft have I heard of sanctuary men;  
But sanctuary children ne'er till now.

CARD. My lord, you shall o'er-rule my mind for once.  
Come on, lord Hastings, will you go with me?

HAST. I go, my lord.

PRINCE. Good lords, make all the speedy haste you may.

[*Exeunt CARDINAL and HASTINGS.*]

Say, uncle Gloster, if our brother come,  
Where shall we sojourn till our coronation?

GLO. Where it seems best unto your royal self.  
If I may counsel you, some day or two  
Your highness shall repose you at the Tower:  
Then where you please, and shall be thought most fit  
For your best health and recreation.

PRINCE. I do not like the Tower, of any place:—  
Did Julius Cæsar build that place, my lord?

GLO. He did, my gracious lord, begin that place;  
Which, since, succeeding ages have re-edified.

PRINCE. Is it upon record? or else reported  
Successively from age to age, he built it?

BUCK. Upon record, my gracious lord.

PRINCE. But say, my lord, it were not register'd;  
Methinks, the truth should live from age to age,

As 't were retail'd to all posterity,  
Even to the general all-ending day.

GLO. So wise so young, they say, do never live long.

[*Aside*

PRINCE. What say you, uncle?

GLO. I say, without characters, fame lives long.  
Thus, like the formal Vice Iniquity, }  
I moralise two meanings in one word. }

[*Aside*

PRINCE. That Julius Cæsar was a famous man:  
With what his valour did enrich his wit,  
His wit set down to make his valour live:  
Death makes no conquest of this conqueror:  
For now he lives in fame, though not in life.—  
I'll tell you what, my cousin Buckingham.

BUCK. What, my gracious lord?

PRINCE. An if I live until I be a man,  
I'll win our ancient right in France again,  
Or die a soldier, as I liv'd a king.

GLO. Short summers lightly have a forward spring. [*Aside*

*Enter YORK, HASTINGS, and the CARDINAL*

BUCK. Now, in good time, here comes the duke of York.

PRINCE. Richard of York! how fares our noble brother?

YORK. Well, my dread lord; so must I call you now.

PRINCE. Ay, brother; to our grief, as it is yours:  
Too late he died, that might have kept that title,  
Which by his death hath lost much majesty.

GLO. How fares our cousin, noble lord of York?

YORK. I thank you, gentle uncle. O, my lord,  
You said that idle weeds are fast in growth;  
The prince my brother hath outgrown me far.

GLO. He hath, my lord.

YORK. And therefore is he idle?

GLO. O, my fair cousin, I must not say so.

YORK. Then he is more beholden to you than I.

GLO. He may command me, as my sovereign:  
But you have power in me, as in a kinsman.

YORK. I pray you, uncle, give me this dagger.

GLO. My dagger, little cousin? with all my heart.

PRINCE. A beggar, brother?

YORK. Of my kind uncle, that I know will give;  
And, being but a toy, which is no grief to give.

GLO. A greater gift than that I'll give my cousin.

YORK. A greater gift? O, that's the sword to it.

GLO. Ay, gentle cousin, were it light enough.

YORK. O then, I see, you will part but with light gifts;  
In weightier things you'll say a beggar, nay.

GLO. It is too weighty for your grace to wear.

YORK. I weigh it lightly, were it heavier.

GLO. What, would you have my weapon, little lord?

YORK. I would, that I might thank you as you call me.

GLO. How?

YORK. Little.

PRINCE. My lord of York will still be cross in talk;  
Uncle, your grace knows how to bear with him.

YORK. You mean, to bear me, not to bear with me:  
Uncle, my brother mocks both you and me;  
Because that I am little, like an ape,  
He thinks that you should bear me on your shoulders.

BUCK. With what a sharp-provided wit he reasons!  
To mitigate the scorn he gives his uncle,  
He prettily and aptly taunts himself:  
So cunning, and so young, is wonderful.

GLO. My lord, will't please you pass along?  
Myself, and my good cousin Buckingham,  
Will to your mother, to entreat of her  
To meet you at the Tower, and welcome you.

YORK. What, will you go unto the Tower, my lord?

PRINCE. My lord protector needs will have it so.

YORK. I shall not sleep in quiet at the Tower.

GLO. Why, what should you fear?

YORK. Marry, my uncle Clarence' angry ghost;  
My grandam told me he was murther'd there.

PRINCE. I fear no uncles dead.

GLO. Nor none that live, I hope.

PRINCE. An if they live, I hope I need not fear.  
But come, my lord, and, with a heavy heart,  
Thinking on them, go I unto the Tower.

[*Exeunt* PRINCE, YORK, HASTINGS, CARDINAL,  
and Attendants.]

BUCK. Think you, my lord, this little prating York  
Was not insensed by his subtle mother  
To taunt and scorn you thus opprobriously?

GLO. No doubt, no doubt: O, 't is a parlous boy;  
Bold, quick, ingenious, forward, capable;  
He's all the mother's, from the top to toe.

BUCK. Well, let them rest.  
Come hither, Catesby; thou art sworn  
As deeply to effect what we intend,  
As closely to conceal what we impart:  
Thou know'st our reasons urg'd upon the way;  
What think'st thou? is it not an easy matter  
To make William lord Hastings of our mind,  
For the instalment of this noble duke  
In the seat royal of this famous isle?

CATE. He, for his father's sake, so loves the prince,  
That he will not be won to aught against him.

BUCK. What think'st thou then of Stanley? will not he?

CATE. He will do all in all as Hastings doth.

BUCK. Well then, no more but this: Go, gentle Catesby,  
And, as it were far off, sound thou lord Hastings  
How he doth stand affected to our purpose;  
And summon him to-morrow to the Tower,  
To sit about the coronation.  
If thou dost find him tractable to us,  
Encourage him, and tell him all our reasons:  
If he be leaden, icy, cold, unwilling,  
Be thou so too; and so break off the talk,  
And give us notice of this inclination:  
For we to-morrow hold divided councils,  
Wherein thyself shalt highly be employ'd.

GLO. Commend me to lord William: tell him, Catesby,  
His ancient knot of dangerous adversaries  
To-morrow are let blood at Pomfret-castle;  
And bid my lord, for joy of this good news,  
Give mistress Shore one gentle kiss the more.

BUCK. Good Catesby, go, effect this business soundly.

CATE. My good lords both, with all the heed I can.

GLO. Shall we hear from you, Catesby, ere we sleep?

CATE. You shall, my lord.

GLO. At Crosby-house, there shall you find us both.

[*Exit* CATESBY.]

BUCK. Now, my lord, what shall we do, if we perceive Lord Hastings will not yield to our complots?

GLO. Chop off his head;—something we will determine:—  
And, look, when I am king, claim thou of me  
The earldom of Hereford, and all the moveables  
Whereof the king my brother was possess'd.

BUCK. I'll claim that promise at your grace's hand.

GLO. And look to have it yielded with all kindness.  
Come, let us sup betimes; that afterwards  
We may digest our complots in some form. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE II.—*Before Lord Hastings's House.*

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My lord, my lord!

[*Knocking.*]

HAST. [*Within.*] Who knocks?

MESS. One from the lord Stanley.

HAST. [*Within.*] What is 't o'clock?

MESS. Upon the stroke of four.

*Enter HASTINGS.*

HAST. Cannot my lord Stanley sleep these tedious nights?

MESS. So it appears by that I have to say.

First, he commends him to your noble self.

HAST. What then?

MESS. Then certifies your lordship, that this night  
He dreamt the boar had rased off his helm:  
Besides, he says, there are two councils kept;  
And that may be determin'd at the one,  
Which may make you and him to rue at th' other.  
Therefore he sends to know your lordship's pleasure,—  
If you will presently take horse with him,  
And with all speed post with him towards the north,  
To shun the danger that his soul divines.

HAST. Go, fellow, go, return unto thy lord:  
Bid him not fear the separated councils:  
His honour and myself are at the one,  
And at the other is my good friend Catesby;

Where nothing can proceed that toucheth us  
Whereof I shall not have intelligence.  
Tell him, his fears are shallow, without instance:  
And, for his dreams, I wonder he 's so simple  
To trust the mockery of unquiet slumbers:  
To fly the boar, before the boar pursues,  
Were to incense the boar to follow us,  
And make pursuit where he did mean no chase.  
Go, bid thy master rise and come to me;  
And we will both together to the Tower,  
Where, he shall see, the boar will use us kindly.

MESS. I 'll go, my lord, and tell him what you say. [*Exit.*]

*Enter CATESBY.*

CATE. Many good morrows to my noble lord!

HAST. Good morrow, Catesby; you are early stirring:  
What news, what news, in this our tottering state?

CATE. It is a reeling world, indeed, my lord;  
And I believe will never stand upright  
Till Richard wear the garland of the realm.

HAST. How! wear the garland! dost thou mean the  
crown?

CATE. Ay, my good lord.

HAST. I 'll have this crown of mine cut from my shoulders  
Before I 'll see the crown so foul misplac'd.  
But canst thou guess that he doth aim at it?

CATE. Ay, on my life; and hopes to find you forward  
Upon his party, for the gain thereof:  
And, thereupon, he sends you this good news,—  
That, this same very day, your enemies,  
The kindred of the queen, must die at Pomfret.

HAST. Indeed, I am no mourner for that news,  
Because they have been still my adversaries:  
But, that I 'll give my voice on Richard's side,  
To bar my master's heirs in true descent,  
God knows, I will not do it, to the death.

CATE. God keep your lordship in that gracious mind!

HAST. But I shall laugh at this a twelvemonth hence,  
That they which brought me in my master's hate,  
I live to look upon their tragedy.

Well, Catesby, ere a fortnight make me older,  
I'll send some packing that yet think not on 't.

CATE. 'T is a vile thing to die, my gracious lord,  
When men are unprepar'd, and look not for it.

HAST. O monstrous, monstrous! and so falls it out  
With Rivers, Vaughan, Grey: and so 't will do  
With some men else, who think themselves as safe  
As thou and I; who, as thou know'st, are dear  
To princely Richard, and to Buckingham.

CATE. The princes both make high account of you,—  
For they account his head upon the bridge. [*Aside.*]

HAST. I know they do; and I have well deserv'd it.

*Enter STANLEY.*

Come on, come on; where is your boar-spear, man?  
Fear you the boar, and go so unprovided?

STAN. My lord, good morrow; and good morrow, Cates-  
by:—

You may jest on, but, by the holy rood,  
I do not like these several councils, I.

HAST. My lord, I hold my life as dear as yours;  
And never, in my days, I do protest,  
Was it so precious to me as 't is now:  
Think you, but that I know our state secure,  
I would be so triumphant as I am?

STAN. The lords at Pomfret, when they rode from London,  
Were jocund, and suppos'd their states were sure,  
And they, indeed, had no cause to mistrust;  
But yet, you see, how soon the day o'ercast.  
This sudden stab of rancour I misdoubt;  
Pray God, I say, I prove a needless coward!  
What, shall we toward the Tower? the day is spent.

HAST. Come, come, have with you.—Wot you what, my  
lord?

To-day the lords you talk of are beheaded.

STAN. They, for their truth, might better wear their heads,  
Than some that have accus'd them wear their hats.  
But come, my lord, let's away

*Enter a Pursuivant.*

HAST. Go on before, I'll talk with this good fellow.

*[Exeunt STANLEY and CATESBY.]*

How now, sirrah? how goes the world with thee?

PURS. The better that your lordship please to ask.

HAST. I tell thee, man, 't is better with me now,  
Than when thou mett'st me last where now we meet:  
Then was I going prisoner to the Tower,  
By the suggestion of the queen's allies:  
But now, I tell thee, (keep it to thyself,)  
This day those enemies are put to death,  
And I in better state than e'er I was.

PURS. God hold it, to your honour's good content!

HAST. Gramercy, fellow: There, drink that for me.

*[Throwing him his purse.]*

PURS. I thank your honour.

*[Exit Pursuivant.]*

*Enter a Priest*

PR. Well met, my lord; I am glad to see your honour.

HAST. I thank thee, good sir John, with all my heart.  
I am in your debt for your last exercise;  
Come the next Sabbath, and I will content you.

PR. I'll wait upon your lordship.

*Enter BUCKINGHAM.*

BUCK. What, talking with a priest, lord chamberlain?  
Your friends at Pomfret they do need the priest;  
Your honour hath no shriving work in hand.

HAST. 'Good faith, and when I met this holy man,  
The men you talk of came into my mind.  
What, go you toward the Tower?

BUCK. I do, my lord; but long I cannot stay there:  
I shall return before your lordship thence.

HAST. Nay, like enough, for I stay dinner there.

BUCK. And supper too, although thou know'st it not.

*[Aside.]*

Come, will you go? .

HAST. I'll wait upon your lordship. *[Exeunt.]*



SCENE III.—Pomfret. *Before the Castle.*

*Enter RATCLIFF, with a guard, conducting RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN, to execution.*

RIV. Sir Richard Ratcliff, let me tell thee this,—  
To-day shalt thou behold a subject die,  
For truth, for duty, and for loyalty.

GREY. God keep the prince from all the pack of you!  
A knot you are of damned bloodsuckers.

VAUGH. You live that shall cry woe for this hereafter.

RAT. Despatch; the limit of your lives is out.

RIV. O Pomfret, Pomfret! O thou bloody prison,  
Fatal and ominous to noble peers!  
Within the guilty closure of thy walls  
Richard the second here was hack'd to death:  
And, for more slander to thy dismal seat,  
We give to thee our guiltless blood to drink.

GREY. Now Margaret's curse is fallen upon our heads,  
When she exclaim'd on Hastings, you, and I,  
For standing by when Richard stabb'd her son.

RIV. Then curs'd she Richard, then curs'd she Bucking-  
ham,  
Then curs'd she Hastings:—O, remember, God,  
To hear her prayer for them, as now for us!  
And for my sister, and her princely sons,  
Be satisfied, dear God, with our true blood,  
Which, as thou know'st, unjustly must be spilt!

RAT. Make haste, the hour of death is expiate.

RIV. Come, Grey,—come, Vaughan,—let us here embrace:  
Farewell, until we meet again in heaven. *[Exeunt.]*

SCENE IV.—London. *A Room in the Tower.*

BUCKINGHAM, STANLEY, HASTINGS, *the* BISHOP OF ELY,  
RATCLIFF, LOVEL, *and others, sitting at a table: Officers of  
the council attending.*

HAST. Now, noble peers, the cause why we are met  
Is, to determine of the coronation:  
In God's name, speak, when is the royal day?

BUCK. Are all things ready for that royal time?

STAN. They are; and wants but nomination.

ELY. To-morrow then I judge a happy day.

BUCK. Who knows the lord protector's mind herein?  
Who is most inward with the noble duke?

ELY. Your grace, we think, should soonest know his mind.

BUCK. We know each other's faces: for our hearts,  
He knows no more of mine than I of yours;  
Nor I of his, my lord, than you of mine:  
Lord Hastings, you and he are near in love.

HAST. I thank his grace, I know he loves me well:  
But, for his purpose in the coronation,  
I have not sounded him, nor he deliver'd  
His gracious pleasure any way therein:  
But you, my honourable lords, may name the time;  
And in the duke's behalf I'll give my voice,  
Which, I presume, he'll take in gentle part.

*Enter GLOSTER.*

ELY. In happy time, here comes the duke himself.

GLO. My noble lords and cousins all, good morrow:  
I have been long a sleeper; but, I trust,  
My absence doth neglect no great design,  
Which by my presence might have been concluded.

BUCK. Had you not come upon your cue, my lord,  
William lord Hastings had pronounc'd your part,—  
I mean, your voice,—for crowning of the king.

GLO. Than my lord Hastings no man might be bolder;  
His lordship knows me well, and loves me well.  
My lord of Ely, when I was last in Holborn,  
I saw good strawberries in your garden there;  
I do beseech you send for some of them.

ELY. Marry and will, my lord, with all my heart.

*[Exit ELY.]*

GLO. Cousin of Buckingham, a word with you.

*[Takes him aside.]*

Catesby hath sounded Hastings in our business;  
And finds the testy gentleman so hot  
That he will lose his head, ere give consent

His master's child, as worshipfully he terms it,  
Shall lose the royalty of England's throne.

BUCK. Withdraw yourself awhile, I'll go with you.

*[Exeunt GLOSTER and BUCKINGHAM.]*

STAN. We have not yet set down this day of triumph.  
To-morrow, in my judgment, is too sudden;  
For I myself am not so well provided,  
As else I would be, were the day prolong'd.

*Re-enter BISHOP OF ELY.*

ELY. Where is my lord the duke of Gloster? I have sent  
for these strawberries.

HAST. His grace looks cheerfully and smooth this morn-  
ing;

There's some conceit or other likes him well,  
When that he bids good morrow with such spirit.  
I think there's ne'er a man in Christendom  
Can lesser hide his love or hate than he;  
For by his face straight shall you know his heart.

STAN. What of his heart perceive you in his face,  
By any livelihood he show'd to day?

HAST. Marry, that with no man here he is offended;  
For were he, he had shown it in his looks.

*Re-enter GLOSTER and BUCKINGHAM.*

GLO. I pray you all, tell me what they deserve  
That do conspire my death with devilish plots  
Of damned witchcraft; and that have prevail'd  
Upon my body with their hellish charms?

HAST. The tender love I bear your grace, my lord,  
Makes me most forward in this princely presence  
To doom the offenders, whosoe'er they be:  
I say, my lord, they have deserved death.

GLO. Then be your eyes the witness of their evil!  
Look how I am bewitch'd; behold mine arm  
Is like a blasted sapling, wither'd up:  
And this is Edward's wife, that monstrous witch,  
Consorted with that harlot-strumpet Shore,  
That by their witchcraft thus have marked me.

HAST. If they have done this deed, my noble lord,—

GLO. If? thou protector of this damned strumpet,  
Talk'st thou to me of ifs?—Thou art a traitor:—  
Off with his head:—now, by saint Paul I swear,  
I will not dine until I see the same!  
Lovel and Ratcliff, look that it be done;  
The rest that love me, rise, and follow me.

[*Exeunt* Council, *with* GLOSTER and BUCKINGHAM.]

HAST. Woe, woe, for England! not a whit for me;  
For I, too fond, might have prevented this:  
Stanley did dream the boar did rase his helm;  
And I did scorn it, and disdain'd to fly.  
Three times to-day my foot-cloth horse did stumble,  
And started, when he look'd upon the Tower,  
As loth to bear me to the slaughterhouse.  
O, now I need the priest that spake to me:  
I now repent I told the pursuivant,  
As too triumphing, how mine enemies  
To-day at Pomfret bloodily were butcher'd,  
And I myself secure in grace and favour.  
O, Margaret, Margaret! now thy heavy curse  
Is lighted on poor Hastings' wretched head.

RAT. Come, come, despatch, the duke would be at dinner;  
Make a short shrift, he longs to see your head.

HAST. O momentary grace of mortal men,  
Which we more hunt for than the grace of God!  
Who builds his hope in air of your good looks,  
Lives like a drunken sailor on a mast;  
Ready, with every nod, to tumble down  
Into the fatal bowels of the deep.

LOV. Come, come, despatch; 't is bootless to exclaim.

HAST. O, bloody Richard!—miserable England!  
I prophesy the fearfull'st time to thee  
That ever wretched age hath look'd upon.  
Come, lead me to the block, bear him my head:  
They smile at me who shortly shall be dead.

[*Exeunt*]

SCENE V.—*The same. The Tower Walls.*

*Enter GLOSTER and BUCKINGHAM, in rotten armour, marvellous ill-favoured.*

GLO. Come, cousin, canst thou quake and change thy colour,

Murder thy breath in middle of a word,  
And then again begin, and stop again,  
As if thou wert distraught and mad with terror?

BUCK. Tut, I can counterfeit the deep tragedian;  
Speak, and look back, and pry on every side,  
Tremble and start at wagging of a straw,  
Intending deep suspicion: ghastly looks  
Are at my service, like enforced smiles;  
And both are ready in their offices,  
At any time, to grace my stratagems.  
But what, is Catesby gone?

GLO. He is; and, see, he brings the mayor along.

*Enter the Lord Mayor and CATESBY.*

BUCK. Lord mayor,—

GLO. Look to the drawbridge there.

BUCK. Hark! a drum.

GLO. Catesby, o'erlook the walls.

BUCK. Lord mayor, the reason we have sent—

GLO. Look back, defend thee, here are enemies.

BUCK. God and our innocency defend and guard us!

*Enter LOVEL and RATCLIFF, with HASTINGS's head.*

GLO. Be patient, they are friends; Ratcliff and Lovel.

LOV. Here is the head of that ignoble traitor,  
The dangerous and unsuspected Hastings.

GLO. So dear I lov'd the man, that I must weep.  
I took him for the plainest harmless creature  
That breath'd upon the earth a Christian;  
Made him my book, wherein my soul recorded  
The history of all her secret thoughts:  
So smooth he daub'd his vice with show of virtue,  
That, his apparent open guilt omitted,—

I mean, his conversation with Shore's wife,—  
He liv'd from all attainder of suspects.

BUCK. Well, well, he was the covert'st shelter'd traitor  
That ever liv'd.

Would you imagine, or almost believe,  
(Were 't not that, by great preservation,  
We live to tell it you,) the subtle traitor  
This day had plotted, in the council-house,  
To murder me, and my good lord of Gloster?

MAY. Had he done so?

GLO. What! think you we are Turks or infidels?  
Or that we would, against the form of law,  
Proceed thus rashly in the villain's death,  
But that the extreme peril of the case,  
The peace of England, and our persons' safety,  
Enforc'd us to this execution?

MAY. Now, fair befall you! he deserv'd his death;  
And your good graces both have well proceeded,  
To warn false traitors from the like attempts.  
I never look'd for better at his hands,  
After he once fell in with mistress Shore.

GLO. Yet had we not determin'd he should die,  
Until your lordship came to see his end;  
Which now the loving haste of these our friends,  
Something against our meaning, hath prevented:  
Because, my lord, we would have had you heard  
The traitor speak, and timorously confess  
The manner and the purpose of his treasons;  
That you might well have signified the same  
Unto the citizens, who, haply, may  
Misconster us in him, and wail his death.

MAY. But, my good lord, your grace's word shall serve  
As well as I had seen and heard him speak:  
And do not doubt, right noble princes both,  
But I'll acquaint our duteous citizens  
With all your just proceedings in this case.

GLO. And to that end we wish'd your lordship here,  
To avoid the censures of the carping world.

BUCK. But since you came too late of our intent,  
Yet witness what you hear we did intend:

And so, my good lord mayor, we bid farewell.

[*Exit* Lord Mayor.]

GLO. Go after, after, cousin Buckingham.  
The mayor towards Guildhall hies him in all post:  
There, at your meetest vantage of the time,  
Infer the bastardy of Edward's children:  
Tell them, how Edward put to death a citizen,  
Only for saying he would make his son  
Heir to the crown; meaning, indeed, his house,  
Which by the sign thereof was termed so.  
Moreover, urge his hateful luxury,  
And bestial appetite in change of lust;  
Which stretch'd unto their servants, daughters, wives,  
Even where his raging eye, or savage heart,  
Without control lusted to make a prey.  
Nay, for a need, thus far come near my person:—  
Tell them, when that my mother went with child  
Of that insatiate Edward, noble York,  
My princely father, then had wars in France:  
And, by true computation of the time,  
Found that the issue was not his begot;  
Which well appeared in his lineaments,  
Being nothing like the noble duke my father:  
Yet touch this sparingly, as 't were far off;  
Because, my lord, you know my mother lives.

BUCK. Doubt not, my lord: I'll play the orator,  
As if the golden fee for which I plead  
Were for myself: and so, my lord, adieu.

GLO. If you thrive well, bring them to Baynard's castle;  
Where you shall find me well accompanied  
With reverend fathers, and well-learned bishops.

BUCK. I go; and, towards three or four o'clock,  
Look for the news that the Guildhall affords.

[*Exit* BUCKINGHAM.]

GLO. Go, Lovel, with all speed to doctor Shaw.  
Go thou [*to* CATE.] to friar Penker;—bid them both  
Meet me within this hour, at Baynard's castle.

[*Exeunt* LOVEL and CATESBY.]

Now will I go, to take some privy order  
To draw the brats of Clarence out of sight;

And to give order, that no manner person  
Have, any time, recourse unto the princes.

[*Erit.*]

SCENE VI.—*A Street.*

*Enter a Scrivener.*

SCRIV. Here is the indictment of the good lord Hastings;  
Which in a set hand fairly is engross'd,  
That it may be to-day read o'er in Paul's  
And mark how well the sequel hangs together:  
Eleven hours I have spent to write it over,  
For yesternight by Catesby was it sent me;  
The precedent was full as long a doing:  
And yet within these five hours Hastings liv'd,  
Untainted, unexamin'd, free, at liberty.  
Here 's a good world the while! Who is so gross  
That cannot see this palpable device?  
Yet who so bold but says he sees it not?  
Bad is the world; and all will come to nought,  
When such ill dealing must be seen in thought.

[*Erit.*]

SCENE VII.—*The same. Court of Baynard's Castle.*

*Enter GLOSTER and BUCKINGHAM, meeting.*

GLO. How now, how now? what say the citizens?

BUCK. Now by the holy mother of our Lord,  
The citizens are mum, say not a word.

GLO. Touch'd you the bastardy of Edward's children?

BUCK. I did; with his contract with lady Lucy,  
And his contract by deputy in France:  
The insatiate greediness of his desire,  
And his enforcement of the city wives;  
His tyranny for trifles; his own bastardy,  
As being got, your father then in France;  
And his resemblance being not like the duke.  
Withal, I did infer your lineaments,  
Being the right idea of your father,  
Both in your form and nobleness of mind:  
Laid open all your victories in Scotland,  
Your discipline in war, wisdom in peace,



Your bounty, virtue, fair humility;  
Indeed, left nothing fitting for your purpose  
Untouch'd, or slightly handled, in discourse.  
And, when my oratory grew toward end,  
I bade them that did love their country's good  
Cry—"God save Richard, England's royal king!"

GLO. And did they so?

BUCK. No, so God help me, they spake not a word;  
But, like dumb statuas or breathing stones,  
Star'd each on other, and look'd deadly pale.  
Which when I saw I reprehended them;  
And ask'd the mayor, what meant this wilful silence:  
His answer was, the people were not used  
To be spoke to but by the recorder.  
Then he was urg'd to tell my tale again;—  
"Thus saith the duke, thus hath the duke inferr'd;"  
But nothing spoke in warrant from himself.  
When he had done, some followers of mine own,  
At lower end o' the hall, hurl'd up their caps,  
And some ten voices cried, "God save king Richard!"  
And thus I took the vantage of those few,—  
"Thanks, gentle citizens, and friends," quoth I;  
"This general applause, and cheerful shout,  
Argues your wisdom, and your love to Richard:"  
And even here brake off, and came away.

GLO. What tongueless blocks were they! Would they not  
speak?

Will not the mayor then and his brethren come?

BUCK. The mayor is here at hand; intend some fear;  
Be not you spoke with but by mighty suit:  
And look you, get a prayer-book in your hand,  
And stand between two churchmen, good my lord;  
For on that ground I'll make a holy descant:  
And be not easily won to our requests;  
Play the maid's part, still answer nay, and take it.

GLO. I go: And if you plead as well for them  
As I can say nay to thee for myself,  
No doubt we'll bring it to a happy issue.

BUCK. Go, go, up to the leads; the lord mayor knocks.

[Exit GLOSTER.]

*Enter the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and Citizens.*

Welcome, my lord: I dance attendance here;  
I think the duke will not be spoke withal.

*Enter from the castle, CATESBY.*

Now, Catesby! what says your lord to my request?

CATE. He doth entreat your grace, my noble lord,  
To visit him to-morrow, or next day:  
He is within, with two right reverend fathers,  
Divinely bent to meditation:  
And in no worldly suits would he be mov'd,  
To draw him from his holy exercise.

BUCK. Return, good Catesby, to the gracious duke;  
Tell him, myself, the mayor, and aldermen,  
In deep designs, in matter of great moment,  
No less importing than our general good,  
Are come to have some conference with his grace.

CATE. I'll signify so much unto him straight. *[Exit]*

BUCK. Ah, ah, my lord, this prince is not an Edward!  
He is not lulling on a lewd love-bed,  
But on his knees at meditation;  
Not dallying with a brace of courtezans,  
But meditating with two deep divines;  
Not sleeping, to engross his idle body,  
But praying, to enrich his watchful soul:  
Happy were England would this virtuous prince  
Take on his grace the sovereignty thereof:  
But, sure, I fear we shall not win him to it.

MAY. Marry, God defend his grace should say us nay!

BUCK. I fear he will: Here Catesby comes again;—

*Re-enter CATESBY.*

Now, Catesby, what says his grace?

CATE. He wonders to what end you have assembled  
Such troops of citizens to come to him,  
His grace not being warn'd thereof before;  
He fears, my lord, you mean no good to him.

BUCK. Sorry I am my noble cousin should  
Suspect me, that I mean no good to him:

By Heaven, we come to him in perfect love;  
And so once more return and tell his grace. [*Exit CATESBY.*  
When holy and devout religious men  
Are at their beads, 't is much to draw them thence;  
So sweet is zealous contemplation.

*Enter GLOSTER, in a gallery above, between Two Bishops.  
CATESBY returns.*

MAY. See, where his grace stands 'tween two clergymen!

BUCK. Two props of virtue for a Christian prince,  
To stay him from the fall of vanity;  
And, see, a book of prayer in his hand;  
True ornaments to know a holy man.  
Famous Plantagenet, most gracious prince,  
Lend favourable ear to our requests;  
And pardon us the interruption  
Of thy devotion and right Christian zeal.

GLO. My lord, there needs no such apology;  
I do beseech your grace to pardon me,  
Who, earnest in the service of my God,  
Deferr'd the visitation of my friends.

But, leaving this, what is your grace's pleasure?

BUCK. Even that, I hope, which pleaseth God above,  
And all good men of this ungovern'd isle.

GLO. I do suspect I have done some offence,  
That seems disgracious in the city's eye;  
And that you come to reprehend my ignorance.

BUCK. You have, my lord: Would it might please your  
grace,  
On our entreaties, to amend your fault!

GLO. Else wherefore breathe I in a Christian land?

BUCK. Know, then, it is your fault, that you resign  
The supreme seat, the throne majestic,  
The sceptred office of your ancestors,  
Your state of fortune, and your due of birth,  
The lineal glory of your royal house,  
To the corruption of a blemish'd stock:  
Whiles, in the mildness of your sleepy thoughts,  
(Which here we waken to our country's good,)  
The noble isle doth want her proper limbs;  
Her face defac'd with scars of infamy,

Her royal stock graft with ignoble plants,  
And almost shoulder'd in the swallowing gulf  
Of dark forgetfulness and deep oblivion.  
Which to recure we heartily solicit  
Your gracious self to take on you the charge  
And kingly government of this your land:  
Not as protector, steward, substitute,  
Or lowly factor for another's gain;  
But as successively, from blood to blood,  
Your right of birth, your empery, your own.  
For this, consorted with the citizens,  
Your very worshipful and loving friends,  
And by their vehement instigation,  
In this just cause come I to move your grace.

GLO. I cannot tell, if to depart in silence,  
Or bitterly to speak in your reproof,  
Best fitteth my degree, or your condition:  
If not to answer, you might haply think,  
Tongue-tied ambition, not replying, yielded  
To bear the golden yoke of sovereignty,  
Which fondly you would here impose on me;  
If to reprove you for this suit of yours,  
So season'd with your faithful love to me,  
Then, on the other side, I check'd my friends.  
Therefore,—to speak, and to avoid the first;  
And then, in speaking, not to incur the last,—  
Definitively thus I answer you.  
Your love deserves my thanks; but my desert  
Unmeritable shuns your high request.  
First, if all obstacles were cut away,  
And that my path were even to the crown,  
As the ripe revenue and due of birth;  
Yet so much is my poverty of spirit,  
So mighty, and so many, my defects,  
That I would rather hide me from my greatness,  
Being a bark to brook no mighty sea,  
Than in my greatness covet to be hid,  
And in the vapour of my glory smother'd.  
But, God be thank'd, there is no need of me;  
(And much I need to help you, were there need;)  
The royal tree hath left us royal fruit,

Which, mellow'd by the stealing hours of time,  
Will well become the seat of majesty,  
And make, no doubt, us happy by his reign.  
On him I lay that you would lay on me,  
The right and fortune of his happy stars,  
Which God defend that I should wring from him!

BUCK. My lord, this argues conscience in your grace;  
But the respects thereof are nice and trivial,  
All circumstances well considered.

You say that Edward is your brother's son;  
So say we too, but not by Edward's wife:  
For first was he contract to lady Lucy,—  
Your mother lives a witness to his vow;  
And afterwards by substitute betroth'd  
To Bona, sister to the king of France.  
These both put off, a poor petitioner,  
A care-craz'd mother to a many sons,  
A beauty-waning and distressed widow,  
Even in the afternoon of her best days,  
Made prize and purchase of his wanton eye,  
Seduc'd the pitch and height of his degree  
To base declension and loath'd bigamy;  
By her, in his unlawful bed, he got  
This Edward, whom our manners call the prince.  
More bitterly could I expostulate,  
Save that, for reverence to some alive,  
I give a sparing limit to my tongue.  
Then, good my lord, take to your royal self  
This proffer'd benefit of dignity:  
If not to bless us and the land withal,  
Yet to draw forth your noble ancestry  
From the corruption of abusing time,  
Unto a lineal true-derived course.

MAY. Do, good my lord; your citizens entreat you.

BUCK. Refuse not, mighty lord, this proffer'd love.

CATE. O make them joyful, grant their lawful suit.

GLO. Alas, why would you heap this care on me?

I am unfit for state and majesty:

I do beseech you, take it not amiss;

I cannot, nor I will not, yield to you.

BUCK. If you refuse it,—as in love and zeal,  
Loth to depose the child, your brother's son,  
As well we know your tenderness of heart,  
And gentle, kind, effeminate remorse,  
Which we have noted in you to your kindred,  
And equally, indeed, to all estates,—  
Yet know, whe'r you accept our suit or no,  
Your brother's son shall never reign our king;  
But we will plant some other in the throne,  
To the disgrace and downfall of your house.  
And in this resolution here we leave you;—  
Come, citizens, we will entreat no more.

[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM and Citizens.

CATE. Call them again, sweet prince, accept their suit;  
If you deny them, all the land will rue it.

GLO. Will you enforce me to a world of cares?  
Call them again; I am not made of stone,  
But penetrable to your kind entreaties, [Exit CATESBY.  
Albeit against my conscience and my soul.

*Re-enter* BUCKINGHAM, and the rest.

Cousin of Buckingham, and sage grave men,  
Since you will buckle fortune on my back,  
To bear her burthen, whe'r I will or no,  
I must have patience to endure the load:  
But if black scandal, or foul-fac'd reproach,  
Attend the sequel of your imposition,  
Your mere enforcement shall acquittance me  
From all the impure blots and stains thereof:  
For God doth know, and you may partly see,  
How far I am from the desire of this.

MAY. God bless your grace! we see it, and will say it.

GLO. In saying so you shall but say the truth.

BUCK. Then I salute you with this royal title,—  
Long live king Richard, England's worthy king!

ALL. Amen.

BUCK. To-morrow may it please you to be crown'd?

GLO. Even when you please, for you will have it so.

BUCK. To-morrow, then, we will attend your grace;  
And so most joyfully we take our leave.

GLO. Come, let us to our holy work again:—  
[ *To the Bishops.*  
Farewell, my cousin;—farewell, gentle friends. [ *Exeunt.*

---

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I.—*Before the Tower.*

*Enter on one side, QUEEN ELIZABETH, DUCHESS OF YORK, and MARQUIS OF DORSET; on the other, ANNE DUCHESS OF GLOSTER, leading LADY MARGARET PLANTAGENET, CLARENCE's young daughter.*

DUCH. Who meets us here?—my niece Plantagenet,  
Led in the hand of her kind aunt of Gloster?  
Now, for my life, she's wand'ring to the Tower,  
On pure heart's love, to greet the tender prince.  
Daughter, well met.

ANNE. God give your graces both  
A happy and a joyful time of day!

Q. ELIZ. As much to you, good sister! Whither away?

ANNE. No further than the Tower; and, as I guess,  
Upon the like devotion as yourselves,  
To gratulate the gentle princes there.

Q. ELIZ. Kind sister, thanks; we'll enter all together:

### *Enter BRAKENBURY.*

And, in good time, here the lieutenant comes.  
Master lieutenant, pray you, by your leave,  
How doth the prince, and my young son of York?

BRAK. Right well, dear madam: By your patience,  
I may not suffer you to visit them;  
The king hath strictly charg'd the contrary.

Q. ELIZ. The king! who's that?

BRAK. I mean the lord protector.

Q. ELIZ. The Lord protect him from that kingly title!  
Hath he set bounds between their love and me?

I am their mother, who shall bar me from them?

DUCH. I am their father's mother, I will see them.

ANNE. Their aunt I am in law, in love their mother :  
Then bring me to their sights; I'll bear thy blame,  
And take thy office from thee, on my peril.

BRAK. No, madam, no, I may not leave it so ;  
I am bound by oath, and therefore pardon me.

[*Exit BRAKENBURY.*]

*Enter STANLEY.*

STAN. Let me but meet you, ladies, one hour hence,  
And I'll salute your grace of York as mother,  
And reverend looker-on, of two fair queens.  
Come, madam, you must straight to Westminster.

[*To the DUCHESS OF GLOSTER*

There to be crowned Richard's royal queen.

Q. ELIZ. Ah, cut my lace asunder!  
That my pent heart may have some scope to beat,  
Or else I swoon with this dead-killing news.

ANNE. Despiteful tidings! O unpleasing news!

DOR. Be of good cheer: Mother, how fares your grace?

Q. ELIZ. O Dorset, speak not to me, get thee gone,  
Death and destruction dog thee at thy heels;  
Thy mother's name is ominous to children:  
If thou wilt outstrip death, go cross the seas,  
And live with Richmond, from the reach of hell.  
Go, hie thee, hie thee, from this slaughterhouse,  
Lest thou increase the number of the dead;  
And make me die the thrall of Margaret's curse,—  
Nor mother, wife, nor England's counted queen.

STAN. Full of wise care is this your counsel, madam:  
Take all the swift advantage of the hours;  
You shall have letters from me to my son  
In your behalf, to meet you on the way:  
Be not ta'en tardy by unwise delay.

DUCH. O ill-dispersing wind of misery!  
O my accursed womb, the bed of death;  
A cockatrice hast thou hatch'd to the world,  
Whose unavowed eye is murtherous!

STAN. Come, madam, come; I in all haste was sent.



ANNE. And I with all unwillingness will go.  
O, would to God that the inclusive verge  
Of golden metal that must round my brow  
Were red-hot steel, to sear me to the brain!  
Anointed let me be with deadly venom;  
And die, ere men can say—God save the queen!

Q. ELIZ. Go, go, poor soul, I envy not thy glory,  
To feed my humour: wish thyself no harm.

ANNE. No! why?—When he that is my husband now  
Came to me, as I follow'd Henry's corse:  
When scarce the blood was well wash'd from his hands,  
Which issued from my other angel husband,  
And that dear saint which then I weeping follow'd;  
O, when, I say, I look'd on Richard's face,  
This was my wish,—“Be thou,” quoth I, “accurs'd,  
For making me, so young, so old a widow!  
And when thou wedd'st let sorrow haunt thy bed;  
And be thy wife (if any be so mad)  
More miserable by the life of thee,  
Than thou hast made me by my dear lord's death!”  
Lo, ere I can repeat this curse again,  
Within so small a time, my woman's heart  
Grossly grew captive to his honey words,  
And prov'd the subject of mine own soul's curse;  
Which hitherto hath held mine eyes from rest:  
For never yet one hour in his bed  
Did I enjoy the golden dew of sleep,  
But with his timorous dreams was still awak'd.  
Besides, he hates me for my father Warwick;  
And will, no doubt, shortly be rid of me.

Q. ELIZ. Poor heart, adieu! I pity thy complaining.

ANNE. No more than with my soul I mourn for yours.

DOR. Farewell, thou woful welcomer of glory!

ANNE. Adieu, poor soul, that tak'st thy leave of it!

DUCH. Go thou to Richmond, and good fortune guide  
thee! [To DORSET.

Go thou to Richard, and good angels tend thee!

[To ANNE.

Go thou to sanctuary, and good thoughts possess thee!

[To Q. ELIZABETH.

I to my grave, where peace and rest lie with me!  
Eighty odd years of sorrow have I seen,  
And each hour's joy wrack'd with a week of teen.

Q. ELIZ. Stay; yet look back, with me, unto the Tower.  
Pity, you ancient stones, those tender babes,  
Whom envy hath immur'd within your walls!  
Rough cradle for such little pretty ones!  
Rude ragged nurse! old sullen playfellow  
For tender princes, use my babies well!  
So foolish sorrow bids your stones farewell. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—*A room of State in the Palace.*

*Flourish of Trumpets.* RICHARD, as King, upon his throne;  
BUCKINGHAM, CATESBY, a Page, and others.

K. RICH. Stand all apart. Cousin of Buckingham,—

BUCK. My gracious sovereign.

K. RICH. Give me thy hand. Thus high, by thy advice,  
And thy assistance, is king Richard seated:  
But shall we wear these glories for a day?  
Or shall they last, and we rejoice in them?

BUCK. Still live they, and for ever let them last!

K. RICH. Ah, Buckingham, now do I play the touch,  
To try if thou be current gold, indeed:  
Young Edward lives:—Think now what I would speak.

BUCK. Say on, my loving lord.

K. RICH. Why, Buckingham, I say I would be king.

BUCK. Why, so you are, my thrice-renowned lord.

K. RICH. Ha! am I king? 'T is so: but Edward lives.

BUCK. True, noble prince.

K. RICH. O bitter consequence,  
That Edward still should live!—True, noble prince!—  
Cousin, thou wast not wont to be so dull:  
Shall I be plain? I wish the bastards dead;  
And I would have it suddenly perform'd.  
What say'st thou now? speak suddenly, be brief.

BUCK. Your grace may do your pleasure.

K. RICH. Tut, tut, thou art all ice, thy kindness freezes:  
Say, have I thy consent that they shall die?

BUCK. Give me some little breath, some pause, dear lord,

Before I positively speak in this:

I will resolve you herein presently. *[Exit BUCK.]*

CATE. The king is angry; see, he gnaws his lip. *[Aside.]*

K. RICH. I will converse with iron-witted fools,  
*[Descends from his throne.]*

And unrespective boys; none are for me  
That look into me with considerate eyes.  
High-reaching Buckingham grows circumspect.  
Boy!

PAGE. My lord.

K. RICH. Know'st thou not any whom corrupting gold  
Would tempt unto a close exploit of death?

PAGE. I know a discontented gentleman,  
Whose humble means match not his haughty spirit:  
Gold were as good as twenty orators,  
And will, no doubt, tempt him to anything.

K. RICH. What is his name?

PAGE. His name, my lord, is Tyrrel.

K. RICH. I partly know the man: Go, call him hither,  
boy. *[Exit PAGE.]*

The deep-revolving witty Buckingham  
No more shall be the neighbour to my counsels:  
Hath he so long held out with me untir'd,  
And stops he now for breath?—well, be it so.—

*Enter STANLEY.*

How now, lord Stanley? what's the news?

STAN. Know, my loving lord,  
The marquis Dorset, as I hear, is fled  
To Richmond, in the parts where he abides.

K. RICH. Come hither, Catesby: rumour it abroad  
That Anne, my wife, is very grievous sick;  
I will take order for her keeping close.  
Inquire me out some mean poor gentleman,  
Whom I will marry straight to Clarence' daughter.—  
The boy is foolish, and I fear not him.—  
Look, how thou dream'st!—I say again, give out  
That Anne my queen is sick, and like to die:  
About it; for it stands me much upon,

To stop all hopes whose growth may damage me.

[*Exit* CATESBY.]

I must be married to my brother's daughter,  
Or else my kingdom stands on brittle glass:  
Murder her brothers, and then marry her!  
Uncertain way of gain! But I am in  
So far in blood, that sin will pluck on sin.  
Tear-falling pity dwells not in this eye.

*Re-enter* Page, *with* TYRREL.

Is thy name Tyrrel?

TYR. James Tyrrel, and your most obedient subject.

K. RICH. Art thou, indeed?

TYR. Prove me, my gracious lord.

K. RICH. Dar'st thou resolve to kill a friend of mine?

TYR. Please you, but I had rather kill two enemies.

K. RICH. Why, then thou hast it; two deep enemies,  
Foes to my rest, and my sweet sleep's disturbers,  
Are they that I would have thee deal upon:  
Tyrrel, I mean those bastards in the Tower.

TYR. Let me have open means to come to them,  
And soon I'll rid you from the fear of them.

K. RICH. Thou sing'st sweet music. Hark, come hither,  
Tyrrel:

Go, by this token:—Rise, and lend thine ear: [Whisper  
There is no more but so:—Say, it is done,  
And I will love thee, and prefer thee for it.

TYR. I will despatch it straight. [*Exit*

*Re-enter* BUCKINGHAM.

BUCK. My lord, I have consider'd in my mind  
The late request that you did sound me in.

K. RICH. Well, let that rest. Dorset is fled to Richmond.

BUCK. I hear the news, my lord.

K. RICH. Stanley, he is your wife's son:—Well look  
unto it.

BUCK. My lord, I claim the gift, my due by promise,  
For which your honour and your faith is pawn'd;

The earldom of Hereford, and the moveables,  
Which you have promised I shall possess.

K. RICH. Stanley, look to your wife; if she convey  
Letters to Richmond, you shall answer it.

BUCK. What says your highness to my just request?

K. RICH. I do remember me,—Henry the sixth  
Did prophesy that Richmond should be king,  
When Richmond was a little peevish boy.

A king!—perhaps——

BUCK. My lord,——

K. RICH. How chance the prophet could not at that time  
Have told me, I being by, that I should kill him?

BUCK. My lord, your promise for the earldom,——

K. RICH. Richmond!—When last I was at Exeter,  
The mayor in courtesy show'd me the castle,  
And call'd it Rouge-mont: at which name I started,  
Because a bard of Ireland told me once  
I should not live long after I saw Richmond.

BUCK. My lord,——

K. RICH. Ay, what's o'clock?

BUCK. I am thus bold to put your grace in mind  
Of what you promis'd me.

K. RICH. Well, but what's o'clock?

BUCK. Upon the stroke of ten.

K. RICH. Well, let it strike.

BUCK. Why, let it strike?

K. RICH. Because that, like a Jack, thou keep'st the  
stroke

Betwixt thy begging and my meditation.

I am not in the giving vein to-day.

BUCK. Why, then resolve me whether you will, or no.

K. RICH. Thou troublest me; I am not in the vein.

[*Exeunt KING RICHARD and Train.*]

BUCK. And is it thus? repays he my deep service  
With such contempt? made I him king for this?  
O, let me think on Hastings; and be gone  
To Brecknock, while my fearful head is on.

[*Exit.*]

SCENE III.—*The same.**Enter TYRREL.*

TYR. The tyrannous and bloody act is done;  
The most arch deed of piteous massacre  
That ever yet this land was guilty of.  
Dighton and Forrest, whom I did suborn  
To do this piece of ruthless butchery,  
Albeit they were flesh'd villains, bloody dogs,  
Melting with tenderness and mild compassion,  
Wept like to children, in their death's sad story.  
"O thus," quoth Dighton, "lay the gentle babes,"—  
"Thus, thus," quoth Forrest, "girdling one another  
Within their alabaster innocent arms:  
Their lips were four red roses on a stalk,  
And, in their summer beauty, kiss'd each other.  
A book of prayers on their pillow lay:  
Which once," quoth Forrest, "almost chang'd my mind:  
But, O, the devil"—there the villain stopp'd;  
When Dighton thus told on,—"we smothered  
The most replenished sweet work of Nature,  
That, from the prime creation, e'er she fram'd."—  
Hence both are gone with conscience and remorse;  
They could not speak: and so I left them both,  
To bear this tidings to the bloody king.

*Enter KING RICHARD.*

And here he comes:—All health, my sovereign lord!

K. RICH. Kind Tyrrel! am I happy in thy news?

TYR. If to have done the thing you gave in charge  
Beget your happiness, be happy then,  
For it is done.

K. RICH. But didst thou see them dead?

TYR. I did, my lord.

K. RICH. And buried, gentle Tyrrel?

TYR. The chaplain of the Tower hath buried them;  
But where, to say the truth, I do not know.

K. RICH. Come to me, Tyrrel, soon, at after supper,  
When thou shalt tell the process of their death.

Meantime, but think how I may do thee good,  
And be inheritor of thy desire.  
Farewell till then.

TYR. I humbly take my leave. [Exit.

K. RICH. The son of Clarence have I pent up close;  
His daughter meanly have I match'd in marriage;  
The sons of Edward sleep in Abraham's bosom;  
And Anne my wife hath bid this world good night.  
Now, for I know the Bretagne Richmond aims  
At young Elizabeth, my brother's daughter,  
And, by that knot, looks proudly on the crown,  
To her go I, a jolly thriving wooer.

*Enter RATCLIFF.*

RAT. My lord!

K. RICH. Good or bad news, that thou com'st in so  
bluntly?

RAT. Bad news, my lord: Morton is fled to Richmond;  
And Buckingham, back'd with the hardy Welshmen,  
Is in the field, and still his power increaseth.

K. RICH. Ely with Richmond troubles me more near  
Than Buckingham and his rash-levied strength.  
Come,—I have learn'd that fearful commenting  
Is leaden servitor to dull delay;  
Delay leads impotent and snail-pac'd beggary:  
Then fiery expedition be my wing,  
Jove's Mercury, and herald for a king!  
Go, muster men: my counsel is my shield;  
We must be brief when traitors brave the field. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—*The same. Before the Palace.*

*Enter QUEEN MARGARET.*

Q. MAR. So, now prosperity begins to mellow,  
And drop into the rotten mouth of death.  
Here in these confines slily have I lurk'd,  
To watch the waning of mine enemies.  
A dire induction am I witness to,  
And will to France; hoping the consequence

Will prove as bitter, black, and tragical.

Withdraw thee, wretched Margaret! who comes here?

*Enter QUEEN ELIZABETH and the DUCHESS OF YORK.*

Q. ELIZ. Ah, my poor princes! ah, my tender babes!  
My unblown flowers, new-appearing sweets!  
If yet your gentle souls fly in the air,  
And be not fix'd in doom perpetual,  
Hover about me with your airy wings,  
And hear your mother's lamentation!

Q. MAR. Hover about her; say, that right for right  
Hath dimm'd your infant morn to aged night.

DUCH. So many miseries have craz'd my voice,  
That my woe-wearied tongue is still and mute.  
Edward Plantagenet, why art thou dead?

Q. MAR. Plantagenet doth quit Plantagenet,  
Edward for Edward pays a dying debt.

Q. ELIZ. Wilt thou, O God, fly from such gentle lambs,  
And throw them in the entrails of the wolf?  
When didst thou sleep when such a deed was done?

Q. MAR. When holy Harry died, and my sweet son.

DUCH. Dead life, blind sight, poor mortal-living ghost,  
Woe's scene, world's shame, grave's due by life usurp'd,  
Brief abstract and record of tedious days,  
Rest thy unrest on England's lawful earth,     *[Sitting down.*  
Unlawfully made drunk with innocent blood!

Q. ELIZ. Ah, that thou wouldst as soon afford a grave,  
As thou canst yield a melancholy seat;  
Then would I hide my bones, not rest them here!  
Ah, who hath any cause to mourn but we?

*[Sitting down by her.*

Q. MAR. If ancient sorrow be most reverent,  
Give mine the benefit of seniory,  
And let my griefs frown on the upper hand.  
If sorrow can admit society,     *[Sitting down with them.*  
Tell o'er your woes again by viewing mine:—  
I had an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him;  
I had a husband, till a Richard kill'd him:  
Thou hadst an Edward, till a Richard kill'd him:  
Thou hadst a Richard, till a Richard kill'd him.



DUCH. I had a Richard too, and thou didst kill him ;  
I had a Rutland too, thou holp'st to kill him.

Q. MAR. Thou hadst a Clarence too, and Richard kill'd him.  
From forth the kennel of thy womb hath crept  
A hell-hound, that doth hunt us all to death :  
That dog, that had his teeth before his eyes  
To worry lambs, and lap their gentle blood ;  
That foul defacer of God's handiwork,  
That reigns in galled eyes of weeping souls ;  
That excellent grand tyrant of the earth,  
Thy womb let loose, to chase us to our graves.  
O upright, just, and true-disposing God,  
How do I thank thee, that this carnal cur  
Preys on the issue of his mother's body,  
And makes her pew-fellow with others' moan !

DUCH. O, Harry's wife, triumph not in my woes ;  
God witness with me, I have wept for thine.

Q. MAR. Bear with me ; I am hungry for revenge,  
And now I cloy me with beholding it.  
Thy Edward he is dead that kill'd my Edward ;  
The other Edward dead, to quit my Edward ;  
Young York he is but boot, because both they  
Match not the high perfection of my loss.  
Thy Clarence he is dead that stabb'd my Edward ;  
And the beholders of this frantic play,  
The adulterate Hastings, Rivers, Vaughan, Grey,  
Untimely smother'd in their dusky graves.  
Richard yet lives, hell's black intelligencer ;  
Only reserv'd their factor, to buy souls,  
And send them thither : But at hand, at hand,  
Ensues his piteous and unpitied end :  
Earth gapes, hell burns, fiends roar, saints pray,  
To have him suddenly convey'd from hence :  
Cancel his bond of life, dear God, I pray,  
That I may live to say, the dog is dead !

Q. ELIZ. O, thou didst prophesy the time would come  
That I should wish for thee to help me curse  
That bottled spider, that foul bunch-back'd toad.

Q. MAR. I call'd thee then, vain flourish of my fortune ;  
I call'd thee then, poor shadow, painted queen ;

The presentation of but what I was,  
The flattering index of a direful pageant,  
One heav'd a-high, to be hurl'd down below:  
A mother only mock'd with two fair babes;  
A dream of what thou wast; a garish flag,  
To be the aim of every dangerous shot;  
A sign of dignity, a breath, a bubble;  
A queen in jest, only to fill the scene.  
Where is thy husband now? where be thy brothers?  
Where be thy two sons? wherein dost thou joy?  
Who sues, and kneels, and says—God save the Queen?  
Where be the bending peers that flatter'd thee?  
Where be the thronging troops that follow'd thee?  
Decline all this, and see what now thou art.  
For happy wife, a most distressed widow;  
For joyful mother, one that wails the name;  
For one being sued to, one that humbly sues;  
For queen, a very caitiff crown'd with care;  
For she that scorn'd at me, now scorn'd of me;  
For she being fear'd of all, now fearing one;  
For she commanding all, obey'd of none.  
Thus hath the course of justice whirl'd about,  
And left thee but a very prey to time;  
Having no more but thought of what thou wast,  
To torture thee the more, being what thou art.  
Thou didst usurp my place, and dost thou not  
Usurp the just proportion of my sorrow?  
Now thy proud neck bears half my burthen'd yoke;  
From which even here I slip my wearied head,  
And leave the burthen of it all on thee.  
Farewell, York's wife,—and queen of sad mischance,—  
These English woes shall make me smile in France.

Q. ELIZ. O thou well skill'd in curses, stay a while,  
And teach me how to curse mine enemies.

Q. MAR. Forbear to sleep the night, and fast the day;  
Compare dead happiness with living woe;  
Think that thy babes were fairer than they were,  
And he that slew them fouler than he is:  
Bettering thy loss makes the bad-causer worse;  
Revolving this will teach thee how to curse.

Q. ELIZ. My words are dull, O quicken them with thine!

Q. MAR. Thy woes will make them sharp, and pierce like mine. [Exit QUEEN MARGARET.]

DUCH. Why should calamity be full of words?

Q. ELIZ. Windy attorneys to their client woes,  
Airy succeders of intestate joys,  
Poor breathing orators of miseries!  
Let them have scope: though what they do impart  
Help nothing else, yet do they ease the heart.

DUCH. If so, then be not tongue-tied: go with me,  
And in the breath of bitter words let's smother  
My damned son, that thy two sweet sons smother'd.

[Trumpets within]  
The trumpet sounds,—be copious in exclams.

*Enter KING RICHARD, and his Train, marching.*

K. RICH. Who intercepts me in my expedition?

DUCH. O, she that might have intercepted thee,  
By strangling thee in her accursed womb,  
From all the slaughters, wretch, that thou hast done.

Q. ELIZ. Hid'st thou that forehead with a golden crown,  
Where should be branded, if that right were right,  
The slaughter of the prince that ow'd that crown,  
And the dire death of my poor sons and brothers?  
Tell me, thou villain-slave, where are my children?

DUCH. Thou toad, thou toad, where is thy brother Clarence?  
And little Ned Plantagenet, his son?

Q. ELIZ. Where is the gentle Rivers, Vaughan, Grey?

DUCH. Where is kind Hastings?

K. RICH. A flourish, trumpets!—strike alarum, drums!  
Let not the heavens hear these tell-tale women  
Rail on the Lord's anointed: Strike, I say. [Flourish. Alarums.  
Either be patient, and entreat me fair,  
Or with the clamorous report of war  
Thus will I drown your exclamations.

DUCH. Art thou my son?

K. RICH. Ay; I thank God, my father, and yourself.

DUCH. Then patiently hear my impatience.

K. RICH. Madam, I have a touch of your condition,

That cannot brook the accent of reproof.

DUCH. O, let me speak.

K. RICH. Do, then; but I'll not hear.

DUCH. I will be mild and gentle in my words.

K. RICH. And brief, good mother; for I am in haste.

DUCH. Art thou so hasty? I have stay'd for thee,  
God knows, in torment and in agony.

K. RICH. And came I not at last to comfort you?

DUCH. No, by the holy rood, thou know'st it well.  
Thou cam'st on earth to make the earth my hell.  
A grievous burthen was thy birth to me;  
Tetchy and wayward was thy infancy;  
Thy school-days frightful, desperate, wild, and furious;  
Thy prime of manhood daring, bold, and venturous;  
Thy age confirm'd, proud, subtle, sly, and bloody,  
More mild, but yet more harmful, kind in hatred:  
What comfortable hour canst thou name,  
That ever grac'd me in thy company?

K. RICH. 'Faith, none, but Humphrey Hower, that call'd  
your grace  
To breakfast once, forth of my company.  
If I be so disgracious in your eye,  
Let me march on, and not offend you, madam.—  
Strike up the drum.

DUCH. I prithee, hear me speak.

K. RICH. You speak too bitterly.

DUCH. Hear me a word,  
For I shall never speak to thee again.

K. RICH. So.

DUCH. Either thou wilt die, by God's just ordinance,  
Ere from this war thou turn a conqueror;  
Or I with grief and extreme age shall perish,  
And never more behold thy face again.  
Therefore, take with thee my most grievous curse;  
Which, in the day of battle, tire thee more  
Than all the complete armour that thou wear'st!  
My prayers on the adverse party fight:  
And there the little souls of Edward's children  
Whisper the spirits of thine enemies,  
And promise them success and victory.

Bloody thou art, bloody will be thy end;  
Shame serves thy life, and doth thy death attend. [*Exit.*

Q. ELIZ. Though far more cause, yet much less spirit to  
curse

Abides in me; I say amen to her. [*Going.*

K. RICH. Stay, madam, I must talk a word with you.

Q. ELIZ. I have no more sons of the royal blood  
For thee to slaughter: for my daughters, Richard,  
They shall be praying nuns, not weeping queens;  
And therefore level not to hit their lives.

K. RICH. You have a daughter call'd Elizabeth,  
Virtuous and fair, royal and gracious.

Q. ELIZ. And must she die for this? O, let her live,  
And I'll corrupt her manners, stain her beauty;  
Slander myself, as false to Edward's bed;  
Throw over her the veil of infamy;  
So she may live unscarr'd of bleeding slaughter,  
I will confess she was not Edward's daughter.

K. RICH. Wrong not her birth, she is a royal princess.

Q. ELIZ. To save her life, I'll say she is not so.

K. RICH. Her life is safest only in her birth.

Q. ELIZ. And only in that safety died her brothers.

K. RICH. Lo, at their births good stars were opposite.

Q. ELIZ. No, to their lives ill friends were contrary.

K. RICH. All unavoided is the doom of destiny.

Q. ELIZ. True, when avoided grace makes destiny:  
My babes were destin'd to a fairer death,  
If grace had bless'd thee with a fairer life.

K. RICH. You speak as if that I had slain my cousins.

Q. ELIZ. Cousins, indeed; and by their uncle cozen'd  
Of comfort, kingdom, kindred, freedom, life.  
Whose hands soever lanc'd their tender hearts,  
Thy head, all indirectly, gave direction:  
No doubt the murderous knife was dull and blunt,  
Till it was whetted on thy stone-hard heart,  
To revel in the entrails of my lambs.  
But that still use of grief makes wild grief tame,  
My tongue should to thy ears not name my boys,  
Till that my nails were anchor'd in thine eyes;  
And I, in such a desperate bay of death,

Like a poor bark, of sails and tackling reft,  
Rush all to pieces on thy rocky bosom.

K. RICH. Madam, so thrive I in my enterprise,  
And dangerous success of bloody wars,  
As I intend more good to you and yours,  
Than ever you and yours by me were harm'd!

Q. ELIZ. What good is cover'd with the face of heaven,  
To be discover'd, that can do me good?

K. RICH. The advancement of your children, gentle lady.

Q. ELIZ. Up to some scaffold, there to lose their heads?

K. RICH. Unto the dignity and height of fortune,  
The high imperial type of this earth's glory.

Q. ELIZ. Flatter my sorrow with report of it;  
Tell me, what state, what dignity, what honour,  
Canst thou demise to any child of mine?

K. RICH. Even all I have; ay, and myself and all,  
Will I withal endow a child of thine;  
So in the Lethe of thy angry soul  
Thou drown the sad remembrance of those wrongs  
Which thou supposest I have done to thee.

Q. ELIZ. Be brief, lest that the process of thy kindness  
Last longer telling than thy kindness' date.

K. RICH. Then know, that, from my soul, I love thy  
daughter.

Q. ELIZ. My daughter's mother thinks it with her soul.

K. RICH. What do you think?

Q. ELIZ. That thou dost love my daughter, from thy soul:  
So, from thy soul's love, didst thou love her brothers;  
And, from my heart's love, I do thank thee for it.

K. RICH. Be not so hasty to confound my meaning;  
I mean, that with my soul I love thy daughter,  
And do intend to make her queen of England.

Q. ELIZ. Well then, who dost thou mean shall be her  
king?

K. RICH. Even he that makes her queen: Who else should  
be?

Q. ELIZ. What, thou?

K. RICH. Even so: How think you of it?

Q. ELIZ. How canst thou woo her?

K. RICH. That I would learn of you,

As one being best acquainted with her humour.

Q. ELIZ. And wilt thou learn of me?

K. RICH. Madam, with all my heart.

Q. ELIZ. Send to her, by the man that slew her brothers,  
A pair of bleeding hearts; thereon engrave  
Edward, and York; then, haply, will she weep:  
Therefore present to her,—as sometime Margaret  
Did to thy father, steep'd in Rutland's blood,—  
A handkerchief; which, say to her, did drain  
The purple sap from her sweet brother's body,  
And bid her wipe her weeping eyes withal.  
If this inducement move her not to love,  
Send her a letter of thy noble deeds;  
Tell her, thou mad'st away her uncle Clarence,  
Her uncle Rivers; ay, and, for her sake,  
Mad'st quick conveyance with her good aunt Anne.

K. RICH. You mock me, madam; this is not the way  
To win your daughter.

Q. ELIZ. There is no other way;  
Unless thou couldst put on some other shape,  
And not be Richard that hath done all this.

K. RICH. Say, that I did all this for love of her?

Q. ELIZ. Nay, then indeed, she cannot choose but hate  
thee,

Having bought love with such a bloody spoil.

K. RICH. Look, what is done cannot be now amended;  
Men shall deal unadvisedly sometimes,  
Which after-hours give leisure to repent.  
If I did take the kingdom from your sons,  
To make amends, I'll give it to your daughter.  
If I have kill'd the issue of your womb,  
To quicken your increase, I will beget  
Mine issue of your blood upon your daughter.  
A grandam's name is little less in love  
Than is the doting title of a mother;  
They are as children but one step below,  
Even of your mettle, of your very blood;  
Of all one pain,—save for a night of groans  
Endur'd of her, for whom you bid like sorrow  
Your children were vexation to your youth,

If thou hadst fear'd to break an oath by Him,  
The imperial metal, circling now thy head,  
Had grac'd the tender temples of my child;  
And both the princes had been breathing here,  
Which now, two tender bedfellows for dust,  
Thy broken faith hath made the prey for worms.  
What canst thou swear by now?

K. RICH.

The time to come.

Q. ELIZ. That thou hast wronged in the time o'er-past;  
For I myself have many tears to wash  
Hereafter time, for time past, wrong'd by thee.  
The children live whose fathers thou hast slaughter'd,  
Ungovern'd youth, to wail it in their age;  
The parents live whose children thou hast butcher'd,  
Old barren plants, to wail it with their age.  
Swear not by time to come; for that thou hast  
Misused ere used, by times ill-used o'er-past.

K. RICH. As I intend to prosper, and repent,  
So thrive I in my dangerous affairs  
Of hostile arms! myself myself confound!  
Heaven and fortune bar me happy hours!  
Day, yield me not thy light, nor, night, thy rest!  
Be opposite all planets of good luck  
To my proceeding! if, with dear heart's love,  
Immaculate devotion, holy thoughts,  
I tender not thy beauteous princely daughter!  
In her consists my happiness, and thine;  
Without her, follows to myself, and thee,  
Herself, the land, and many a Christian soul,  
Death, desolation, ruin, and decay:  
It cannot be avoided but by this;  
It will not be avoided but by this.  
Therefore, dear mother, (I must call you so,)  
Be the attorney of my love to her.  
Plead what I will be, not what I have been;  
Not my deserts, but what I will deserve:  
Urge the necessity and state of times,  
And be not peevish found in great designs.

Q. ELIZ. Shall I be tempted of the devil thus?

K. RICH. Ay, if the devil tempt thee to do good.



Q. ELIZ. Shall I forget myself, to be myself?

K. RICH. Ay, if yourself's remembrance wrong yourself.

Q. ELIZ. Yet, thou didst kill my children.

K. RICH. But in your daughter's womb I bury them:  
Where, in that nest of spicery, they will breed  
Selves of themselves to your recomforture.

Q. ELIZ. Shall I go win my daughter to thy will?

K. RICH. And be a happy mother by the deed.

Q. ELIZ. I go.—Write to me very shortly,  
And you shall understand from me her mind.

K. RICH. Bear her my true love's kiss, and so farewell.

[*Kissing her. Exit QUEEN ELIZABETH*

Relenting fool, and shallow changing woman!

How now? what news?

*Enter RATCLIFF; CATESBY following.*

RAT. Most mighty sovereign, on the western coast  
Rideth a puissant navy; to our shores  
Throng many doubtful hollow-hearted friends,  
Unarm'd, and unresolv'd to beat them back:  
'T is thought that Richmond is their admiral;  
And there they hull, expecting but the aid  
Of Buckingham to welcome them ashore.

K. RICH. Some light-foot friend post to the duke of Norfolk:—

Ratcliff, thyself,—or Catesby; where is he?

CATE. Here, my good lord.

K. RICH. Catesby, fly to the duke.

CATE. I will, my lord, with all convenient haste.

K. RICH. Ratcliff, come hither: Post to Salisbury;  
When thou com'st thither,—Dull unmindful villain,

[*To CATESBY*

Why stay'st thou here, and go'st not to the duke?

CATE. First, mighty liege, tell me your highness' pleasure,  
What from your grace I shall deliver to him.

K. RICH. O, true, good Catesby:—Bid him levy straight  
The greatest strength and power that he can make,  
And meet me suddenly at Salisbury.

CATE. I go.

[*Exit.*

RAT. What, may it please you, shall I do at Salisbury?

K. RICH. Why, what wouldst thou do there, before I go?

RAT. Your highness told me I should post before.

*Enter STANLEY.*

K. RICH. My mind is chang'd.—Stanley, what news with you?

STAN. None good, my liege, to please you with the hearing;

Nor none so bad but well may be reported.

K. RICH. Heyday, a riddle! neither good nor bad!  
What need'st thou run so many miles about,  
When thou mayst tell thy tale the nearest way?  
Once more, what news?

STAN. Richmond is on the seas.

K. RICH. There let him sink, and be the seas on him!  
White-liver'd runagate, what doth he there?

STAN. I know not, mighty sovereign, but by guess.

K. RICH. Well, as you guess?

STAN. Stirr'd up by Dorset, Buckingham, and Morton,  
He makes for England, here to claim the crown.

K. RICH. Is the chair empty? Is the sword unsway'd?  
Is the king dead? the empire unpossess'd?  
What heir of York is there alive but we?  
And who is England's king but great York's heir?  
Then, tell me, what makes he upon the seas?

STAN. Unless for that, my liege, I cannot guess.

K. RICH. Unless for that he comes to be your liege,  
You cannot guess wherefore the Welshman comes.  
Thou wilt revolt, and fly to him, I fear.

STAN. No, my good lord, therefore mistrust me not.

K. RICH. Where is thy power then, to beat him back?  
Where be thy tenants and thy followers?  
Are they not now upon the western shore,  
Safe-conducting the rebels from their ships?

STAN. No, my good lord, my friends are in the north.

K. RICH. Cold friends to me: What do they in the north,  
When they should serve their sovereign in the west?

STAN. They have not been commanded, mighty king:  
Pleaseth your majesty to give me leave,  
I'll muster up my friends, and meet your grace,

Where, and what time, your majesty shall please.

K. RICH. Ay, thou wouldst be gone to join with Richmond:

But I'll not trust thee.

STAN. Most mighty sovereign,  
You have no cause to hold my friendship doubtful;  
I never was, nor never will be, false.

K. RICH. Go then, and muster men. But leave behind  
Your son, George Stanley; look your heart be firm,  
Or else his head's assurance is but frail.

STAN. So deal with him as I prove true to you.

[*Exit* STANLEY.]

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. My gracious sovereign, now in Devonshire,  
As I by friends am well advertised,  
Sir Edward Courtney, and the haughty prelate,  
Bishop of Exeter, his elder brother,  
With many more confederates, are in arms.

*Enter another Messenger.*

2 MESS. In Kent, my liege, the Guilfords are in arms;  
And every hour more competitors  
Flock to the rebels, and their power grows strong.

*Enter another Messenger.*

3 MESS. My lord, the army of great Buckingham—

K. RICH. Out on ye, owls! nothing but songs of death?

[*He strikes him.*]

There, take thou that, till thou bring better news.

3 MESS. The news I have to tell your majesty  
Is,—that, by sudden floods and fall of waters,  
Buckingham's army is dispers'd and scatter'd;  
And he himself wander'd away alone,  
No man knows whither.

K. RICH. I cry thee mercy:  
There is my purse, to cure that blow of thine.  
Hath any well-advised friend proclaim'd

Reward to him that brings the traitor in?

3 MESS. Such proclamation hath been made, my liege.

*Enter another Messenger.*

4 MESS. Sir Thomas Lovel, and lord marquis Dorset,  
'T is said, my liege, in Yorkshire are in arms.  
But this good comfort bring I to your highness,—  
The Bretagne navy is dispers'd by tempest:  
Richmond, in Dorsetshire, sent out a boat  
Unto the shore, to ask those on the banks  
If they were his assistants, yea, or no;  
Who answer'd him, they came from Buckingham  
Upon his party: he, mistrusting them,  
Hois'd sail, and made his course again for Bretagne.

K. RICH. March on, march on, since we are up in arms;  
If not to fight with foreign enemies,  
Yet to beat down these rebels here at home.

*Enter CATESBY.*

CATE. My liege; the Duke of Buckingham is taken,  
That is the best news. That the earl of Richmond  
Is with a mighty power landed at Milford,  
Is colder news, but yet they must be told.

K. RICH. Away towards Salisbury; while we reason here  
A royal battle might be won and lost:  
Some one take order Buckingham be brought  
To Salisbury;—the rest march on with me. [*Exeunt*

SCENE V.—*A Room in Lord Stanley's House.*

*Enter STANLEY and SIR CHRISTOPHER URSWICK.*

STAN. Sir Christopher, tell Richmond this from me:—  
That, in the sty of this most bloody boar,  
My son George Stanley is frank'd up in hold;  
If I revolt, off goes young George's head;  
The fear of that holds off my present aid.  
So, get thee gone; commend me to thy lord.  
Withal, say, that the queen hath heartily consented  
He shall espouse Elizabeth her daughter.  
But, tell me, where is princely Richmond now?

CHRIS. At Pembroke, or at Ha'rford-west, in Wales.

STAN. What men of name resort to him?

CHRIS. Sir Walter Herbert, a renowned soldier;  
Sir Gilbert Talbot, sir William Stanley;  
Oxford, redoubted Pembroke, sir James Blunt,  
And Rice ap Thomas, with a valiant crew;  
And many other of great fame and worth:  
And towards London do they bend their power,  
If by the way they be not fought withal.

STAN. Well, hie thee to thy lord; I kiss his hand.  
My letter will resolve him of my mind.  
Farewell.

[*Exeunt.*]

---

## ACT V.

SCENE I.—Salisbury. *An open Place.*

*Enter the Sheriff and Guard, with BUCKINGHAM, led to execution.*

BUCK. Will not king Richard let me speak with him?

SHER. No, my good lord: therefore be patient.

BUCK. Hastings, and Edward's children, Grey, and Rivers,  
Holy king Henry, and thy fair son Edward,  
Vaughan, and all that have miscarried  
By underhand corrupted foul injustice!  
If that your moody discontented souls  
Do through the clouds behold this present hour,  
Even for revenge mock my destruction!  
This is All-Souls' day, fellow, is it not?

SHER. It is, my lord.

BUCK. Why, then All-Souls' day is my body's doomsday.  
This is the day which, in King Edward's time,  
I wish'd might fall on me, when I was found  
False to his children, and his wife's allies:  
This is the day wherein I wish'd to fall  
By the false faith of him whom I most trusted:

This, this All-Souls' day to my fearful soul,  
Is the determin'd respite of my wrongs.  
That high All-seer which I dallied with  
Hath turn'd my feigned prayer on my head,  
And given in earnest what I begg'd in jest.  
Thus doth he force the swords of wicked men  
To turn their own points on their masters' bosoms:  
Thus Margaret's curse falls heavy on my neck,—  
"When he," quoth she, "shall split thy heart with sorrow,  
Remember Margaret was a prophetess."—  
Come, lead me, officers, to the block of shame;  
Wrong hath but wrong, and blame the due of blame.  
[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM, &c.]

SCENE II.—*Plain near Tamworth.*

*Enter with drum and colours, RICHMOND, OXFORD, SIR JAMES BLUNT, SIR WALTER HERBERT, and others, with Forces, marching.*

RICHM. Fellows in arms, and my most loving friends,  
Bruis'd underneath the yoke of tyranny,  
Thus far into the bowels of the land  
Have we march'd on without impediment;  
And here receive we from our father Stanley  
Lines of fair comfort and encouragement.  
The wretched, bloody, and usurping boar,  
That spoil'd your summer fields and fruitful vines,  
Swills your warm blood like wash, and makes his trough  
In your embowell'd bosoms,—this foul swine  
Lies now even in the centre of this isle,  
Near to the town of Leicester, as we learn:  
From Tamworth thither is but one day's march.  
In God's name, cheerly on, courageous friends,  
To reap the harvest of perpetual peace  
By this one bloody trial of sharp war.

OXF. Every man's conscience is a thousand men,  
To fight against this bloody homicide.

HERB. I doubt not but his friends will turn to us.

BLUNT. He hath no friends but what are friends for fear;  
Which, in his dearest need, will fly from him.

RICHM. All for our vantage. Then, in God's name, march:  
True hope is swift, and flies with swallow's wings,  
Kings it makes gods, and meaner creatures kings. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—Bosworth *Field*.

*Enter* KING RICHARD *and Forces; the* DUKE OF NORFOLK,  
EARL OF SURREY, *and others.*

K. RICH. Here pitch our tent, even here in Bosworth field.  
My lord of Surrey, why look you so sad?

SUR. My heart is ten times lighter than my looks.

K. RICH. My lord of Norfolk!

NOR. Here, most gracious liege.

K. RICH. Norfolk, we must have knocks: Ha! must we not?

NOR. We must both give and take, my loving lord.

K. RICH. Up with my tent: Here will I lie to-night;  
[*Soldiers begin to set up the King's tent.*]

But where to-morrow?—Well, all 's one for that.—

Who hath descried the number of the traitors?

NOR. Six or seven thousand is their utmost power.

K. RICH. Why, our battalia trebles that account:  
Besides, the king's name is a tower of strength,  
Which they upon the adverse faction want.

Up with the tent.—Come, noble gentlemen,  
Let us survey the vantage of the ground;—

Call for some men of sound direction:

Let's lack no discipline, make no delay;

For, lords, to-morrow is a busy day. [*Exeunt.*]

*Enter, on the other side of the field, RICHMOND, SIR WILLIAM BRANDON, OXFORD, and other Lords. Some of the Soldiers pitch Richmond's tent.*

RICHM. The weary sun hath made a golden set,  
And, by the bright track of his fiery car,  
Gives token of a goodly day to-morrow.

Sir William Brandon, you shall bear my standard.

Give me some ink and paper in my tent;—

I'll draw the form and model of our battle,

Limit each leader to his several charge,

And part in just proportion our small power.  
My lord of Oxford, you, sir William Brandon,  
And you, sir Walter Herbert, stay with me:  
The earl of Pembroke keeps his regiment:  
Good captain Blunt, bear my good night to him,  
And by the second hour in the morning  
Desire the earl to see me in my tent:  
Yet one thing more, good captain, do for me;  
Where is lord Stanley quarter'd, do you know?

BLUNT. Unless I have mista'en his colours much,  
(Which well I am assur'd I have not done,)  
His regiment lies half a mile at least  
South from the mighty power of the king.

RICHM. If without peril it be possible,  
Sweet Blunt, make some good means to speak with him,  
And give him from me this most needful note.

BLUNT. Upon my life, my lord, I'll undertake it;  
And so, God give you quiet rest to-night!

RICHM. Good night, good captain Blunt. Come, gentlemen.  
Let us consult upon to-morrow's business;  
In to my tent, the dew is raw and cold.

*[They withdraw into the tent.]*

*Enter, to his tent, KING RICHARD, NORFOLK, RATCLIFF,  
and CATESBY.*

K. RICH. What is 't o'clock?

CATE. It's supper-time, my lord;  
It's nine o'clock.

K. RICH. I will not sup to-night.  
Give me some ink and paper.  
What, is my beaver easier than it was?  
And all my armour laid into my tent?

CATE. It is, my liege; and all things are in readiness.

K. RICH. Good Norfolk, hie thee to thy charge;  
Use careful watch, choose trusty sentinels.

NOR. I go, my lord.

K. RICH. Stir with the lark to-morrow, gentle Norfolk.

NOR. I warrant you, my lord.

*[Exit.]*

K. RICH. Ratcliff!

RAT. My lord?



K. RICH. Send out a pursuivant at arms  
To Stanley's regiment: bid him bring his power  
Before sunrising, lest his son George fall  
Into the blind cave of eternal night.  
Fill me a bowl of wine.—Give me a watch! [To CATESBY.  
Saddle white Surrey for the field to-morrow.—  
Look that my staves be sound, and not too heavy.  
Ratcliff!

RAT. My lord?

K. RICH. Saw'st thou the melancholy lord Northumber-  
land?

RAT. Thomas the earl of Surrey, and himself,  
Much about cock-shut time, from troop to troop,  
Went through the army cheering up the soldiers.

K. RICH. So, I am satisfied. Give me a bowl of wine:  
I have not that alacrity of spirit,  
Nor cheer of mind, that I was wont to have.  
Set it down.—Is ink and paper ready?

RAT. It is, my lord.

K. RICH. Bid my guard watch; leave me.  
Ratcliff, about the mid of night come to my tent,  
And help to arm me.—Leave me, I say.

[K. RICHARD retires into his tent. *Exeunt* RATCLIFF  
and CATESBY.]

*RICHMOND's tent opens, and discovers him and his Officers,  
&c. Enter STANLEY.*

STAN. Fortune and victory sit on thy helm!

RICHM. All comfort that the dark night can afford  
Be to thy person, noble father-in-law!  
Tell me how fares our noble mother?

STAN. I, by attorney, bless thee from thy mother,  
Who prays continually for Richmond's good:  
So much for that. The silent hours steal on,  
And flaky darkness breaks within the east.  
In brief, for so the season bids us be,  
Prepare thy battle early in the morning;  
And put thy fortune to the arbitrement  
Of bloody strokes, and mortal-staring war.  
I, as I may, (that which I would I cannot,)  
With best advantage will deceive the time,

And aid thee in this doubtful shock of arms:  
 But on thy side I may not be too forward,  
 Lest, being seen, thy brother, tender George,  
 Be executed in his father's sight.  
 Farewell: The leisure and the fearful time  
 Cuts off the ceremonious vows of love,  
 And ample interchange of sweet discourse,  
 Which so long sunder'd friends should dwell upon;  
 God give us leisure for these rites of love!  
 Once more, adieu:—be valiant, and speed well!

RICHM. Good lords, conduct him to his regiment;  
 I'll strive, with troubled thoughts, to take a nap;  
 Lest leaden slumber peise me down to-morrow,  
 When I should mount with wings of victory:  
 Once more, good night, kind lords and gentlemen.

[*Exeunt* Lords, &c., with STANLEY.

O Thou! whose captain I account myself,  
 Look on my forces with a gracious eye;  
 Put in their hands thy bruising irons of wrath,  
 That they may crush down with a heavy fall  
 The usurping helmets of our adversaries!  
 Make us thy ministers of chastisement,  
 That we may praise thee in thy victory!  
 To thee I do commend my watchful soul,  
 Ere I let fall the windows of mine eyes;  
 Sleeping, and waking, O, defend me still!

[*Sleeps.*

*The Ghost of PRINCE EDWARD, son to HENRY THE SIXTH,  
 rises between the two tents.*

GHOST. Let me sit heavy on thy soul to-morrow!

[*To* KING RICHARD.

Think, how thou stabb'dst me in my prime of youth  
 At Tewksbury: Despair therefore, and die!—

Be cheerful, Richmond; for the wronged souls  
 Of butcher'd princes fight in thy behalf:  
 King Henry's issue, Richmond, comforts thee.

*The Ghost of KING HENRY THE SIXTH rises*

GHOST. When I was mortal, my anointed body

[*To* KING RICHARD.

By thee was punched full of deadly holes:  
Think on the Tower and me: Despair, and die;  
Harry the sixth bids thee despair, and die!—

Virtuous and holy, be thou conqueror! [To RICHMOND.  
Harry, that prophesied thou shouldst be king,  
Doth comfort thee in thy sleep: Live, and flourish!

*The Ghost of CLARENCE rises.*

GHOST. Let me sit heavy on thy soul to-morrow!  
[To KING RICHARD.

I, that was wash'd to death with fulsome wine,  
Poor Clarence, by thy guile betray'd to death!  
To-morrow in the battle think on me,  
And fall thy edgeless sword: Despair, and die!—

Thou offspring of the house of Lancaster, [To RICHMOND.  
The wronged heirs of York do pray for thee;  
Good angels guard thy battle! Live, and flourish!

*The Ghosts of RIVERS, GREY, and VAUGHAN rise.*

Riv. Let me sit heavy on thy soul to-morrow,  
[To KING RICHARD.

Rivers, that died at Pomfret! Despair, and die!

GREY. Think upon Grey, and let thy soul despair!  
[To KING RICHARD.

VAUGHAN. Think upon Vaughan; and, with guilty fear,  
Let fall thy lance! Despair, and die! [To KING RICHARD.

ALL. Awake! and think, our wrongs in Richard's bosom  
[To RICHMOND.

Will conquer him;—awake, and win the day!

*The Ghost of HASTINGS rises.*

GHOST. Bloody and guilty, guiltily awake,  
[To KING RICHARD.

And in a bloody battle end thy days!  
Think on lord Hastings; and despair, and die!—

Quiet, untroubled soul, awake, awake! [To RICHMOND.  
Arm, fight, and conquer, for fair England's sake!

*The Ghosts of the two young Princes rise.*

GHOSTS. Dream on thy cousins smother'd in the Tower.  
Let us be laid within thy bosom, Richard,  
And weigh thee down to ruin, shame, and death!  
Thy nephews' souls bid thee despair, and die!—  
Sleep, Richmond, sleep in peace, and wake in joy;  
Good angels guard thee from the boar's annoy!  
Live, and beget a happy race of kings!  
Edward's unhappy sons do bid thee flourish.

*The Ghost of QUEEN ANNE rises.*

GHOST. Richard, thy wife, that wretched Anne thy wife,  
That never slept a quiet hour with thee,  
Now fills thy sleep with perturbations:  
To-morrow in the battle think on me,  
And fall thy edgeless sword: Despair, and die!—  
Thou, quiet soul, sleep thou a quiet sleep; [*To RICHMOND.*  
Dream of success and happy victory;  
Thy adversary's wife doth pray for thee.

*The Ghost of BUCKINGHAM rises.*

GHOST. The first was I that help'd thee to the crown;  
[*To KING RICHARD.*  
The last was I that felt thy tyranny:  
O, in the battle think on Buckingham,  
And die in terror of thy guiltiness!  
Dream on, dream on, of bloody deeds and death!  
Fainting, despair; despairing, yield thy breath!  
I died for hope, ere I could lend thee aid:  
[*To RICHMOND.*  
But cheer thy heart, and be thou not dismay'd:  
God and good angels fight on Richmond's side;  
And Richard fall in height of all his pride.

[*The Ghosts vanish. KING RICHARD starts out of his dream.*

K. RICH. Give me another horse,—bind up my wounds,—  
Have mercy, Jesu!—Soft; I did but dream.  
O coward conscience, how dost thou afflict me!  
The lights burn blue.—It is now dead midnight.

Cold fearful drops stand on my trembling flesh.  
What, do I fear myself? there's none else by:  
Richard loves Richard; that is, I am I.  
Is there a murderer here? No;—Yes; I am:  
Then fly.—What, from myself? Great reason: Why?  
Lest I revenge. What? Myself upon myself?  
Alack, I love myself. Wherefore? for any good  
That I myself have done unto myself?  
O, no: alas, I rather hate myself,  
For hateful deeds committed by myself.  
I am a villain: Yet I lie, I am not.  
Fool, of thyself speak well:—Fool, do not flatter.  
My conscience hath a thousand several tongues,  
And every tongue brings in a several tale,  
And every tale condemns me for a villain.  
Perjury, perjury, in the high'st degree,  
Murder, stern murder, in the dir'st degree;  
All several sins, all us'd in each degree,  
Throng to the bar, crying all,—Guilty! guilty!  
I shall despair.—There is no creature loves me;  
And if I die, no soul shall pity me:—  
Nay, wherefore should they? since that I myself  
Find in myself no pity to myself.  
Methought, the souls of all that I had murder'd  
Came to my tent: and every one did threat  
To-morrow's vengeance on the head of Richard.

*Enter RATCLIFF.*

RAT. My lord!

K. RICH. Who's there?

RAT. Ratcliff, my lord; 't is I. The early village cock  
Hath twice done salutation to the morn;  
Your friends are up, and buckle on their armour.

K. RICH. O, Ratcliff, I have dream'd a fearful dream!  
What thinkest thou, will our friends prove all true?

RAT. No doubt, my lord.

K. RICH. Ratcliff, I fear, I fear,—

RAT. Nay, good my lord, be not afraid of shadows.

K. RICH. By the apostle Paul, shadows to-night  
Have struck more terror to the soul of Richard,

Than can the substance of ten thousand soldiers,  
Armed in proof, and led by shallow Richmond.  
It is not yet near day. Come, go with me;  
Under our tents I'll play the eavesdropper,  
To hear if any mean to shrink from me.

[*Exeunt* K. RICHARD and RATCLIFF.

RICHMOND *wakes.* *Enter* OXFORD and others.

LORDS. Good morrow, Richmond.

RICHM. 'Cry mercy, lords, and watchful gentlemen,  
That you have ta'en a tardy sluggard here.

LORDS. How have you slept, my lord?

RICHM. The sweetest sleep, and fairest-boding dreams,  
That ever enter'd in a drowsy head  
Have I since your departure had, my lords.  
Methought, their souls whose bodies Richard murther'd,  
Came to my tent, and cried—On! victory!  
I promise you, my heart is very jocund  
In the remembrance of so fair a dream.  
How far into the morning is it, lords?

LORDS. Upon the stroke of four.

RICHM. Why, then, 't is time to arm, and give direction.—  
[*He advances to the troops.*

More than I have said, loving countrymen,  
The leisure and enforcement of the time  
Forbids to dwell upon: Yet remember this,—  
God, and our good cause, fight upon our side;  
The prayers of holy saints and wronged souls,  
Like high-rear'd bulwarks, stand before our faces;  
Richard except, those whom we fight against  
Had rather have us win, than him they follow.  
For what is he they follow? truly, gentlemen,  
A bloody tyrant, and a homicide;  
One rais'd in blood, and one in blood establish'd;  
One that made means to come by what he hath,  
And slaughter'd those that were the means to help him;  
A base foul stone, made precious by the foil  
Of England's chair, where he is falsely set;  
One that hath ever been God's enemy:  
Then, if you fight against God's enemy,

God will, in justice, ward you as his soldiers;  
If you do sweat to put a tyrant down,  
You sleep in peace, the tyrant being slain;  
If you do fight against your country's foes,  
Your country's fat shall pay your pains the hire;  
If you do fight in safeguard of your wives,  
Your wives shall welcome home the conquerors;  
If you do free your children from the sword,  
Your children's children quit it in your age.  
Then, in the name of God, and all these rights,  
Advance your standards, draw your willing swords:  
For me, the ransom of my bold attempt  
Shall be this cold corpse on the earth's cold face;  
But if I thrive, the gain of my attempt  
The least of you shall share his part thereof.  
Sound, drums and trumpets, boldly and cheerfully;  
God and saint George! Richmond and victory! [*Exeunt.*]

*Re-enter* KING RICHARD, RATCLIFF, Attendants, and Forces.

K. RICH. What said Northumberland, as touching Richmond?

RAT. That he was never trained up in arms.

K. RICH. He said the truth: And what said Surrey then?

RAT. He smil'd, and said, the better for our purpose.

K. RICH. He was i' the right! and so, indeed, it is.

[*Clock strikes.*]

Tell the clock, there.—Give me a calendar.—

Who saw the sun to-day?

RAT. Not I, my lord.

K. RICH. Then he disdains to shine; for, by the book,  
He should have brav'd the east an hour ago:

A black day will it be to somebody.—

Ratcliff,—

RAT. My lord?

K. RICH. The sun will not be seen to-day;  
The sky doth frown and lour upon our army.

I would these dewy tears were from the ground.

Not shine to-day! Why, what is that to me,

More than to Richmond? for the self-same heaven

That frowns on me looks sadly upon him.

*Enter NORFOLK.*

NOR. Arm, arm, my lord; the foe vaunts in the field.

K. RICH. Come, bustle, bustle:—Caparison my horse;—  
Call up lord Stanley, bid him bring his power:  
I will lead forth my soldiers to the plain,  
And thus my battle shall be ordered.  
My foreward shall be drawn out all in length,  
Consisting equally of horse and foot;  
Our archers shall be placed in the midst:  
John duke of Norfolk, Thomas earl of Surrey,  
Shall have the leading of the foot and horse.  
They thus directed, we will follow  
In the main battle: whose puissance on either side  
Shall be well winged with our chiefest horse.  
This, and saint George to boot!—What think'st thou, Norfolk?

NOR. A good direction, warlike sovereign.  
This found I on my tent this morning. [*Giving a scroll.*]

K. RICH. [*Reads.*] “Jockey of Norfolk, be not so bold,  
For Dickon thy master is bought and sold.”  
A thing devised by the enemy.—

Go, gentlemen, every man unto his charge:  
Let not our babbling dreams affright our souls;  
For conscience is a word that cowards use,  
Devis'd at first to keep the strong in awe;  
Our strong arms be our conscience, swords our law.  
March on, join bravely, let us to 't pell-mell;  
If not to heaven, then hand in hand to hell.

What shall I say more than I have inferr'd?  
Remember whom you are to cope withal;  
A sort of vagabonds, rascals, and runaways,  
A scum of Breagnes, and base lackey peasants,  
Whom their o'er-cloyed country vomits forth  
To desperate ventures and assur'd destruction.  
You sleeping safe, they bring you to unrest;  
You having lands, and bless'd with beauteous wives,  
They would restrain the one, distain the other.  
And who doth lead them but a paltry fellow,  
Long kept in Bretagne at our mother's cost?



A milksop, one that never in his life  
Felt so much cold as over shoes in snow?  
Let's whip these stragglers o'er the seas again;  
Lash hence these overweening rags of France,  
These famish'd beggars, weary of their lives;  
Who, but for dreaming on this fond exploit,  
For want of means, poor rats, had hang'd themselves.  
If we be conquer'd, let men conquer us,  
And not these bastard Breagnes, whom our fathers  
Have in their own land beaten, bobb'd, and thump'd,  
And, on record, left them the heirs of shame.  
Shall these enjoy our lands? lie with our wives?  
Ravish our daughters?—Hark, I hear their drum.

[*Drum afar off.*]

Fight, gentlemen of England! fight boldly, yeomen!  
Draw, archers, draw your arrows to the head!  
Spur your proud horses hard, and ride in blood;  
Amaze the welkin with your broken staves!

*Enter a Messenger.*

What says lord Stanley? will he bring his power?

Mess. My lord, he doth deny to come.

K. RICH. Off with his son George's head!

NOR. My lord, the enemy is pass'd the marsh;  
After the battle let George Stanley die.

K. RICH. A thousand hearts are great within my bosom:  
Advance our standards, set upon our foes;  
Our ancient word of courage, fair saint George,  
Inspire us with the spleen of fiery dragons!  
Upon them! Victory sits on our helms.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—*Another Part of the Field.*

*Alarum: Excursions. Enter NORFOLK, and Forces; to him*  
CATESBY.

CATE. Rescue, my lord of Norfolk, rescue, rescue!  
The king enacts more wonders than a man,  
Daring an opposite to every danger;  
His horse is slain, and all on foot he fights,

Seeking for Richmond in the throat of death:  
Rescue, fair lord, or else the day is lost!

*Alarum. Enter K. RICHARD.*

K. RICH. A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse!

CATE. Withdraw, my lord, I'll help you to a horse.

K. RICH. Slave, I have set my life upon a cast,  
And I will stand the hazard of the die:  
I think there be six Richmonds in the field,  
Five have I slain to-day, instead of him:  
A horse! a horse! my kingdom for a horse! [*Exeunt.*]

*Alarums. Enter KING RICHARD and RICHMOND; they fight;  
RICHARD is slain.*

*Retreat and flourish. Then enter RICHMOND, STANLEY bearing the crown, with divers other Lords, and Forces.*

RICH. God, and your arms, be prais'd, victorious friends;  
The day is ours, the bloody dog is dead.

STAN. Courageous Richmond, well hast thou acquit thee!  
Lo, here, these long-usurped royalties,  
From the dead temples of this bloody wretch  
Have I pluck'd off, to grace thy brows withal;  
Wear it, enjoy it, and make much of it.

RICHM. Great God of heaven, say, amen, to all!  
But, tell me, is young George Stanley living?

STAN. He is, my lord, and safe in Leicester town;  
Whither, if you please, we may withdraw us.

RICHM. What men of name are slain on either side?

STAN. John duke of Norfolk, Walter lord Ferrers,  
Sir Robert Brakenbury, and Sir William Brandon.

RICHM. Inter their bodies as becomes their births.  
Proclaim a pardon to the soldiers fled  
That in submission will return to us;  
And then, as we have ta'en the sacrament,  
We will unite the white rose and the red;  
Smile heaven upon this fair conjunction,  
That long hath frown'd upon their enmity!  
What traitor hears me, and says not amen?  
England hath long been mad, and scarr'd herself;

The brother blindly shed the brother's blood,  
The father rashly slaughter'd his own son,  
The son, compell'd, been butcher to the sire;  
All this divided York and Lancaster,  
Divided, in their dire division.  
O, now let Richmond and Elizabeth,  
The true succeders of each royal house,  
By God's fair ordinance conjoin together!  
And let their heirs (God, if thy will be so)  
Enrich the time to come with smooth-fac'd peace,  
With smiling plenty, and fair prosperous days!  
Abate the edge of traitors, gracious Lord,  
That would reduce these bloody days again,  
And make poor England weep in streams of blood!  
Let them not live to taste this land's increase,  
That would with treason wound this fair land's peace!  
Now civil wounds are stopp'd, peace lives again;  
That she may long live here, God say—Amen!      [*Exeunt.*]

## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

"I, that am curtail'd *thus* of fair proportion." ACT I., Sc. 1.

Richard has described himself as wanting "love's majesty;" and he adds—

"I, that am curtail'd of *this* fair proportion."

But then comes one who understands the "sportive tricks" of the stage; and makes the crook-back point to his hump—*thus*. So the Corrector.

Gray, in a letter to West, has quoted the passage in which this line occurs as an example of the beauties of Shakspeare's language—"Every word in him is a picture." The stage-manager Corrector has turned the picture into a caricature.

"The *stain* of nature and the *scorn* of hell." ACT I., Sc. 3.

The original has "*slave* of nature," and "*son* of hell." They "sound so flatly and tamely near the conclusion of the curse," says Mr. Collier, "that an impression rises at once in the mind that Shakspeare must have written something more fierce and vigorous. *Stain* and *scorn* must surely have been the language of our great dramatist."

We ask, with Mr. R. G. White, "could epithets be better applied," than those of the original? Other Correctors have tried their hands at these botchings. "The *slave* of nature" is one who is the lowest, the most servile, in the whole realm of nature. The American commentator happily compares the expression to the Irishman's "thief of the world."

"You are too *strict and abstinent*, my lord,

Too ceremonious and traditional:

Weigh it but with the *goodness* of *his* age,

You break not sanctuary in seizing him." ACT III., Sc. 1.

The original has "*senseless-obstinate*," which is called a "strange and unmannerly compound." We are also to change the "*grossness* of *this* age," to the above reading, which, says Mr. Collier, "refers to the youth and innocence of the prince."

The "compound" adjective is one of Shakspeare's mint-marks, which such correctors try to rub out. In the other line, is it not clear that Buckingham means by "the *grossness* of *this* age," the practical way in which what is "ceremonious and traditional" is set aside?

"Make haste, the hour of death is *expire*." ACT III., Sc. 3.

The first folio has, "the hour of death is *expiate*;" the second folio—"the hour of death is *now* expired." It is clear that the original *expiate* was not understood. *Expire* is the reading of Steevens.

We believe Steevens was right. Malone relies upon the authority of the 22nd Sonnet:—

"My glass shall not persuade me  
I am old,  
So long as youth and thou are of  
one date;  
But when in thee time's furrows I  
behold,  
Then look I death my days should  
*expiate*."

## GLOSSARY.

**BARBED.** ACT I., Sc. 1.

"Instead of mounting barbed steeds."

*Barbed* or *barded* was applied indifferently to a caparisoned horse. The *barde*, from the barbarous Latin *bardare*, was a sort of defensive armour for the horse, and thence applied to the ornamental trappings.

**BOOT.** ACT IV., Sc. 4.

"Young York he is but boot."

*Boot*, from the Anglo-Saxon *bote*, is something added. We retain the phrase *to boot*.

**CHARACTERS.** ACT III., Sc. 1.

"I say, without characters, fame lives long."

Without *characters* is without the help of letters.

**COCK-SHUT.** ACT V., Sc. 3.

"Much about cock-shut time."

*Cock-shut time* we think is equivalent to cock-roost time, the hour at which the cock goes to rest, twilight. As morning is cock-crow, evening may, by a parallel image, be cock-shut.

**COMPETITORS.** ACT IV., Sc. 4.

"And every hour more competitors."

*Competitors* are associates.

**COUSINS.** ACT II., Sc. 2. "My pretty cousins."

*Cousins* is here used in the sense of kindred, relations. The duchess was grandmother to the children.

DREAD. Act III., Sc. 1.

"Well, my dread lord ; so must I call you now."

*Dread*, most dread, was a royal title—*Rex metuendissimus*.

One of the old quartos reads *dear*, but this does not mark the new title by which York addresses his brother.

ENGROSS. Act III., Sc. 7.

"Not sleeping, to engross his idle body."

*Engross* is to make gross.

HUMPHREY HOWER. Act IV., Sc. 4.

"Faith, none, but Humphrey Hower."

Malone thinks this term is "merely used in ludicrous language for *hour*, like Tom Troth for truth." Other commentators believe that it is an allusion to the saying of dining with Duke Humphrey

IN. Act I., Sc. 2. "I'll turn yon' fellow in his grave."

*In* is used for *into*.

INSENSED. Act III., Sc. 1.

"Was not insensed by his subtle mother."

To *insense*, says Grose, is "to make a man understand a thing."

It is here instructed, tutored.

INSTANCE. Act III., Sc. 2.

"His fears are shallow, without instance."

*Instance* here, as elsewhere in Shakspeare, signifies example, proof, corroboration.

INTENDING. Act III., Sc. 5.

"Intending deep suspicion."

*Intending*, in the sense of pretending.

INWARD. Act III., Sc. 4.

"Who is most inward with the noble duke?"

*Inward* is intimate with, in the confidence of.

JACK. Act IV., Sc. 2.

"Because that, like a Jack, thou keep'st the stroke."

The "Jack of the Clock-house" was an automaton, which struck the hour upon a bell.

JET. Act II., Sc. 4. "Insulting tyranny begins to jet."

To *jet* is, as Mr. Dyce has pointed out, to encroach upon.

KEY-COLD. Act I., Sc. 2. "Poor key-cold figure of a holy king!"

*Key-cold* was an epithet common to our old writers. Shakspeare has used it in his 'Lucrece,' and Gurnall, in his 'Christian in complete Armour,' a popular work of the seventeenth century, has—"But for Christ, and obtaining an interest in him, O how key-cold are they."

**LATE** Act III., Sc. 1.

"Too late he died, that might have kept that title."

*Late*, used as an adverb, *lately*.

**LIE** Act I., Sc. 1. "I will deliver you, or else lie for you."

That is, I will be imprisoned in your stead.

**LIGHTLY**. Act III., Sc. 1.

"Short summers lightly have a forward spring."

*Lightly* is used in the sense of commonly.

**LIVELIHOOD**. Act III., Sc. 4. "By any livelihood he show'd to-day."

*Livelihood* is here used for liveliness, cheerfulness. In 'All's Well that Ends Well' (Act I., Sc. 1), it is used with a similar meaning:—"The tyranny of her sorrows takes all livelihood from her cheek."

**MANNER PERSON**. Act III., Sc. 5.

"And to give order, that no manner person."

This, in our old language, was a common idiom.

**NIECE**. Act IV., Sc. 1. "My niece Plantagenet."

*Niece* is used in the sense of relation. Clarence's young daughter was the duchess's grand-daughter.

**OBSEQUIOUSLY**. Act I., Sc. 2.

"Whilst I a while obsequiously lament."

*Obsequiously* is performing obsequies.

**PEISE** Act V., Sc. 3.

"Lest leaden slumber peise me down to-morrow."

*Peise*, from the French *peser*, is to weigh.

**PEW-FELLOW**. Act IV., Sc. 4.

"And makes her pew-fellow with others' moan."

*Pew-fellow* is companion, the occupier of the same seat.

**REASON**. Act II., Sc. 3. "You cannot reason almost with a man."

To *reason with* is to converse; the phrase is yet in use.

**REDUCE** Act V., Sc. 4.

"That would reduce these bloody days again."

*Reduce* is used in its Latin sense of bring back.

**RETAIL'D**. Act III., Sc. 1. "As 't were retail'd to all posterity."

*Retail* and *detail* are both, according to Horne Tooke, derived from the Anglo-Saxon *tale*, a number, reckoning, while the verb *tellan* or *talian* was to speak or recount, as well as to enumerate. In Milton's 'L'Allegro'—

"And every shepherd tells his tale,"

is not—tells his story—but, counts over the number of his sheep as he lets them out of their fold, in the earliest hour of the morning.

**SENIORY.** Act IV., Sc. 4.

"Give mine the benefit of seniory."

*Seniory* is seniority.

**STATUAS.** Act III., Sc. 7.

"Like dumb statuas or breathing stones."

*Statuas*, or *statues*, was probably used here, as well as in 'The Two Gentlemen of Verona' (Act IV., Sc. 4), for *pictures*, as distinguished from "breathing stones."

**TEEN.** Act IV., Sc. 1.

"And each hour's joy wrack'd with a week of teen."

*Teen*, from the Anglo-Saxon *teon*, is injury, and thence sorrow.

**TOUCH.** Act IV., Sc. 2.

"Now do I play the touch."

*Touch* is used for touchstone.

**UNRESPECTIVE.** Act IV., Sc. 2.

"Unrespective boys."

*Unrespective* is inconsiderate. "Away to heaven respective lenity" occurs in 'Romeo and Juliet,' Act III., Sc. 1.

**VICE, INIQUITY.** Act III., Sc. 1.

"Thus, like the formal Vice, Iniquity."

The Vice of the old drama was a perfect counterpart, says Gifford, "of the Harlequin of the modern stage, and had a twofold office; to instigate the hero of the piece to wickedness, and at the same time to protect him from the devil, whom he was permitted to buffet and battle with his wooden sword till the process of the story required that both the protector and the protected should be carried off by the fiend."

**WARN.** Act I., Sc. 3.

"Sent to warn them to his royal presence."

*Warn*, says Phillips, for one of its meanings, is to cite or summon to a court of justice.

**WATCH.** Act V., Sc. 3.

"Give me a watch!"

Richard is not here asking for a sentinel, as has been supposed, but a watch-light, as is proved by the use of the word *give*, and the subsequent expression—"Bid my guard watch." The night-candle was divided by marks to show the time it had burned.

**WHERE.** Act III., Sc. 1.

"Then where you please, and shall be thought most fit."

*Where* is understood between *and* and *shall*; there is then no obscurity in the sentence.



KING  
HENRY  
VIII:



## PERSONS REPRESENTED.

---

KING HENRY VIII.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act III. sc. 2.  
Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4.

CARDINAL WOLSEY.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 4.  
Act III. sc. 1; sc. 2.

CARDINAL CAMPEIUS.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 2; sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1.

CAPUCIUS, *ambassador from the Emperor Charles V.*

*Appears*, Act IV. sc. 2.

CRANMER, *archbishop of Canterbury.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2; sc. 4.

DUKE OF NORFOLK.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1; sc. 2. Act II. sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2.

DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1. Act II. sc. 1.

DUKE OF SUFFOLK.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 2. Act II. sc. 2. Act III. sc. 2. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

EARL OF SURREY.

*Appears*, Act III. sc. 2. Act V. sc. 2.

Lord Chamberlain.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 2; sc. 3. Act III. sc. 2.  
Act V. sc. 2; sc. 3.

Lord Chancellor.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 2.

GARDINER, *bishop of Winchester.*

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 2. Act V. sc. 1; sc. 2.

BISHOP OF LINCOLN.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 4.

LORD ABERGAVENNY.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 1.

LORD SANDS.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 1.

SIR HENRY GUILDFORD.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 4.

SIR THOMAS LOVELL.

*Appears*, Act I. sc. 2; sc. 3; sc. 4. Act II. sc. 1. Act III. sc. 2.  
Act V. sc. 1.

SIR ANTHONY DENNY.

*Appears*, Act V. sc. 1.

SIR NICHOLAS VAUX.

*Appears*, Act II. sc. 1.

Secretaries to Wolsey.

*Appear, Act I. sc. 1.*

CRONWELL, *servant to Wolsey.*

*Appears, Act III. sc. 2. Act V. sc. 2.*

GRIFFITH, *Gentleman-Usher to Queen Katharine.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 4. Act IV. sc. 2.*

Three Gentlemen.

*Appear, Act II. sc. 1. Act IV. sc. 1.*

DOCTOR BURTS, *physician to the King.*

*Appears, Act V. sc. 2.*

Garter King at Arms.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 3.*

Surveyor to the Duke of Buckingham.

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2.*

BRANDON.

*Appears, Act I. sc. 1.*

A Sergeant at Arms.

*Appears, Act I. sc. 1.*

Door-Keeper of the Council Chamber.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 2.*

Porter, and his Man.

*Appear, Act V. sc. 3.*

Page to Gardiner.

*Appears, Act V. sc. 1.*

A Crier.

*Appears, Act II. sc. 4.*

QUEEN KATHARINE, *wife to King Henry, afterwards divorced.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 2. Act II. sc. 4. Act III. sc. 1.*

*Act IV. sc. 2.*

ANNE BULLEN, *maid of honour to Queen Katharine, and afterwards Queen.*

*Appears, Act I. sc. 4. Act II. sc. 3.*

An old Lady, *friend to Anne Bullen.*

*Appears, Act II. sc. 3. Act V. sc. 1.*

PATIENCE, *woman to Queen Katharine.*

*Appears, Act IV. sc. 2.*

*Several Lords and Ladies in the dumb shows; Women attending upon the Queen; Spirits which appear to her; Scribes, Officers, Guards, and other Attendants.*

SCENE,—CHIEFLY IN LONDON AND WESTMINSTER; ONCE, AT KIMBOLTON.

The famous 'History of the Life of King Henry the Eighth' was first published in the folio collection of Shakspeare's works in 1623. The text, taken as a whole, is singularly correct: it contains, no doubt, some few typographical errors, but certainly not so many as those which deform the ordinary reprints.

# KING HENRY VIII.

---

## PROLOGUE.

I come no more to make you laugh ; things now,  
That bear a weighty and a serious brow,  
Sad, high, and working, full of state and woe,  
Such noble scenes as draw the eye to flow,  
We now present. Those that can pity, here  
May, if they think it well, let fall a tear ;  
The subject will deserve it. Such as give  
Their money out of hope they may believe,  
May here find truth too. Those that come to see  
Only a show or two, and so agree  
The play may pass, if they be still and willing  
I'll undertake may see away their shilling  
Richly in two short hours. Only they  
That come to hear a merry, bawdy play,  
A noise of targets ; or to see a fellow  
In a long motley coat, guarded with yellow,  
Will be deceiv'd : for, gentle hearers, know,  
To rank our chosen truth with such a show  
As fool and fight is, besides forfeiting  
Our own brains, and the opinion that we bring,  
(To make that only true we now intend,)  
Will leave us never an understanding friend.  
Therefore, for goodness' sake, and, as you are known  
The first and happiest hearers of the town,  
Be sad, as we would make you : Think, ye see  
The very persons of our noble story,  
As they were living ; think, you see them great,  
And follow'd with the general throng and sweat

Of thousand friends; then, in a moment, see  
How soon this mightiness meets misery!  
And if you can be merry then, I'll say  
A man may weep upon his wedding-day.

---

## ACT I.

SCENE I.—London. *An Antechamber in the Palace.*

*Enter the DUKE OF NORFOLK, at one door; at the other, the  
DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM and the LORD ABERGAVENNY.*

BUCK. Good morrow, and well met. How have you done  
Since last we saw in France?

NOR. I thank your grace:  
Healthful; and ever since a fresh admirer  
Of what I saw there.

BUCK. An untimely ague  
Stay'd me a prisoner in my chamber, when  
Those suns of glory, those two lights of men,  
Met in the vale of Andren.

NOR. 'Twixt Guynes and Arde:  
I was then present, saw them salute on horseback;  
Beheld them, when they lighted, how they clung  
In their embracement as they grew together;  
Which had they, what four thron'd ones could have weigh'd  
Such a compounded one?

BUCK. All the whole time  
I was my chamber's prisoner.

NOR. Then you lost  
The view of earthly glory: Men might say,  
Till this time pomp was single, but now married  
To one above itself. Each following day  
Became the next day's master, till the last  
Made former wonders its: To-day, the French,  
All clinquant, all in gold, like heathen gods,  
Shone down the English; and, to-morrow, they  
Made Britain, India: every man that stood

Show'd like a mine. Their dwarfish pages were  
As cherubins, all gilt: the madams too,  
Not us'd to toil, did almost sweat to bear  
The pride upon them, that their very labour  
Was to them as a painting: Now this mask  
Was cried incomparable; and the ensuing night  
Made it a fool, and beggar. The two kings,  
Equal in lustre, were now best, now worst,  
As presence did present them; him in eye  
Still him in praise: and, being present both,  
'T was said they saw but one: and no discerners  
Durst wag his tongue in censure. When these suns  
(For so they phrase them) by their heralds challeng'd  
The noble spirits to arms, they did perform  
Beyond thought's compass; that former fabulous story,  
Being now seen possible enough, got credit,  
That Bevis was believ'd.

BUCK. O, you go far.

NOR. As I belong to worship, and affect  
In honour honesty, the tract of everything  
Would by a good discourser lose some life,  
Which action's self was tongue to.

BUCK. All was royal;  
To the disposing of it nought rebell'd,  
Order gave each thing view; the office did  
Distinctly his full function. Who did guide?  
I mean, who set the body and the limbs  
Of this great sport together?

NOR. As you guess:  
One, certes, that promises no element  
In such a business.

BUCK. I pray you, who, my lord?

NOR. All this was order'd by the good discretion  
Of the right reverend cardinal of York.

BUCK. The devil speed him! no man's pie is freed  
From his ambitious finger. What had he  
To do in these fierce vanities? I wonder  
That such a keech can with his very bulk  
Take up the rays o' the beneficial sun,  
And keep it from the earth.

NOR. Surely, sir,  
There's in him stuff that puts him to these ends:  
For, being not propp'd by ancestry, whose grace  
Chalks successors their way; nor call'd upon  
For high feats done to the crown; neither allied  
To eminent assistants; but, spider-like,  
Out of his self-drawing web,—O! give us note!—  
The force of his own merit makes his way  
A gift that Heaven gives for him, which buys  
A place next to the king.

ABER. I cannot tell  
What Heaven hath given him, let some graver eye  
Pierce into that; but I can see his pride  
Peep through each part of him: Whence has he that?  
If not from hell, the devil is a niggard,  
Or has given all before, and he begins  
A new hell in himself.

BUCK. Why the devil,  
Upon this French going-out, took he upon him,  
Without the privity o' the king, to appoint  
Who should attend on him? He makes up the file  
Of all the gentry; for the most part such  
To whom as great a charge as little honour  
He meant to lay upon: and his own letter  
(The honourable board of council out)  
Must fetch him in he papers.

ABER. I do know  
Kinsmen of mine, three at the least, that have  
By this so sicken'd their estates, that never  
They shall abound as formerly.

BUCK. O, many  
Have broke their backs with laying manors on them  
For this great journey. What did this vanity,  
But minister communication of  
A most poor issue?

NOR. Grievingly I think,  
The peace between the French and us not values  
The cost that did conclude it.

BUCK. Every man,  
After the hideous storm that follow'd, was



A thing inspir'd ; and, not consulting, broke  
Into a general prophecy,—That this tempest,  
Dashing the garment of this peace, aboded  
The sudden breach on 't.

NOR. Which is budded out;  
For France hath flaw'd the league, and hath attach'd  
Our merchants' goods at Bourdeaux.

ABER. Is it therefore  
The ambassador is silenc'd ?

NOR. Marry, is 't.

ABER. A proper title of a peace ; and purchas'd  
At a superfluous rate !

BUCK. Why, all this business  
Our reverend cardinal carried.

NOR. 'Like it your grace,  
The state takes notice of the private difference  
Betwixt you and the cardinal. I advise you,  
(And take it from a heart that wishes towards you  
Honour and plenteous safety,) that you read  
The cardinal's malice and his potency  
Together: to consider further, that  
What his high hatred would effect wants not  
A minister in his power: You know his nature,  
That he's revengeful ; and I know his sword  
Hath a sharp edge: it's long, and 't may be said,  
It reaches far ; and where 't will not extend,  
Thither he darts it. Bosom up my counsel,  
You'll find it wholesome. Lo, where comes that rock  
That I advise your shunning.

*Enter CARDINAL WOLSEY, (the purse borne before him,) certain  
of the Guard, and Two Secretaries with papers. The CAR-  
DINAL in his passage fixeth his eye on BUCKINGHAM, and  
BUCKINGHAM on him, both full of disdain.*

WOL. The duke of Buckingham's surveyor? ha?  
Where's his examination?

1 SECR. Here, so please you.

WOL. Is he in person ready?

1 SECR. Ay, please your grace.

WOL. Well, we shall then know more; and Buckingham  
Shall lessen this big look. [*Exeunt WOLSEY and Train.*]

BUCK. This butcher's cur is venom-mouth'd, and I  
Have not the power to muzzle him; therefore, best  
Not wake him in his slumber. A beggar's book  
Out-worths a noble's blood.

NOR. What, are you chaf'd?  
Ask God for temperance; that's the appliance only  
Which your disease requires.

BUCK. I read in his looks  
Matter against me; and his eye revil'd  
Me, as his abject object; at this instant  
He bores me with some trick: He's gone to the king;  
I'll follow, and out-stare him.

NOR. Stay, my lord,  
And let your reason with your choler question  
What 't is you go about: To climb steep hills  
Requires slow pace at first: Anger is like  
A full-hot horse; who being allow'd his way,  
Self-mettle tires him. Not a man in England  
Can advise me like you: be to yourself  
As you would to your friend.

BUCK. I'll to the king:  
And from a mouth of honour quite cry down  
This Ipswich fellow's insolence; or proclaim  
There's difference in no persons.

NOR. Be advis'd.  
Heat not a furnace for your foe so hot  
That it do singe yourself: We may outrun,  
By violent swiftness, that which we run at,  
And lose by over-running. Know you not  
The fire that mounts the liquor till it run o'er,  
In seeming to augment it, wastes it? Be advis'd:  
I say again, there is no English soul  
More stronger to direct you than yourself;  
If with the sap of reason you would quench,  
Or but allay, the fire of passion.

BUCK. Sir,  
I am thankful to you; and I'll go along  
By your prescription: but this top-proud fellow,

(Whom from the flow of gall I name not, but  
From sincere motions,) by intelligence,  
And proofs, as clear as founts in July, when  
We see each grain of gravel, I do know  
To be corrupt and treasonous.

NOR. Say not treasonous.

BUCK. To thè king I'll say 't; and make my vouch as  
strong

As shore of rock. Attend. This holy fox,  
Or wolf, or both (for he is equal ravenous  
As he is subtle; and as prone to mischief,  
As able to perform it: his mind and place  
Infecting one another, yea, reciprocally),  
Only to show his pomp as well in France  
As here at home, suggests the king our master  
To this last costly treaty, the interview  
That swallow'd so much treasure, and like a glass  
Did break i' the rinsing.

NOR. 'Faith, and so it did.

BUCK. Pray, give me favour, sir. This cunning cardinal  
The articles o' the combination drew  
As himself pleas'd; and they were ratified,  
As he cried, Thus let be: to as much end,  
As give a crutch to the dead: But our count-cardinal  
Has done this, and 't is well; for worthy Wolsey,  
Who cannot err, he did it. Now this follows,  
(Which, as I take it, is a kind of puppy  
To the old dam, treason,)—Charles the emperor,  
Under pretence to see the queen his aunt,  
(For 't was, indeed, his colour; but he came  
To whisper Wolsey,) here makes visitation:  
His fears were, that the interview betwixt  
England and France might, through their amity,  
Breed him some prejudice; for from this league  
Peep'd harms that menac'd him; He privily  
Deals with our cardinal; and, as I trow,—  
Which I do well; for I am sure the emperor  
Paid ere he promis'd; whereby his suit was granted  
Ere it was ask'd;—but when the way was made,  
And pay'd with gold, the emperor thus desir'd,

That he would please to alter the king's course,  
And break the foresaid peace. Let the king know,  
(As soon he shall by me,) that thus the cardinal  
Does buy and sell his honour as he pleases,  
And for his own advantage.

NOR. I am sorry  
To hear this of him; and could wish he were  
Something mistaken in 't.

BUCK. No, not a syllable;  
I do pronounce him in that very shape  
He shall appear in proof.

*Enter BRANDON; a Serjeant-at-Arms before him, and two or three of the Guard.*

BRAN. Your office, serjeant; execute it,

SERJ. Sir,  
My lord the duke of Buckingham, and earl  
Of Hereford, Stafford, and Northampton, I  
Arrest thee of high treason, in the name  
Of our most sovereign king.

BUCK. Lo you, my lord,  
The net has fallen upon me; I shall perish  
Under device and practice.

BRAN. I am sorry  
To see you ta'en from liberty, to look on  
The business present: 'T is his highness' pleasure,  
You shall to the Tower.

BUCK. It will help me nothing  
To plead mine innocence; for that die is on me,  
Which makes my whitest part black. The will of Heaven  
Be done in this and all things!—I obey.—  
O my lord Aberga'ny, fare you well.

BRAN. Nay, he must bear you company:—The king  
[To ABERGAVENNY.  
Is pleas'd you shall to the Tower, till you know  
How he determines further.

ABER. As the duke said,  
The will of Heaven be done, and the king's pleasure  
By me obey'd.

BRAN. Here is a warrant from

The king, to attach lord Montacute; and the bodies  
Of the duke's confessor, John de la Car,  
One Gilbert Peck, his chancellor,—

BUCK.

So, so;

These are the limbs of the plot: no more, I hope.

BRAN. A monk o' the Chartreux.

BUCK.

O, Michael Hopkins?

BRAN.

He.

BUCK. My surveyor is false; the o'er-great cardinal  
Hath show'd him gold: my life is spann'd already:  
I am the shadow of poor Buckingham;  
Whose figure even this instant cloud puts on,  
By dark'ning my clear sun.—My lords, farewell. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—*The Council-Chamber.*

*Cornets. Enter KING HENRY, CARDINAL WOLSEY, the Lords of the Council, SIR THOMAS LOVELL, Officers, and Attendants. The KING enters, leaning on the CARDINAL's shoulder.*

K. HEN. My life itself, and the best heart of it,  
Thanks you for this great care: I stood i' the level  
Of a full-charg'd confederacy, and give thanks  
To you that chok'd it.—Let be call'd before us  
That gentleman of Buckingham's: in person  
I'll hear him his confessions justify;  
And point by point the treasons of his master  
He shall again relate.

*The KING takes his State. The Lords of the Council take their several places. The CARDINAL places himself under the KING's feet, on his right side.*

*A noise within, crying, Room for the Queen! Enter the QUEEN, ushered by the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK: she kneels. The KING riseth from his State, takes her up, kisses, and placeth her by him.*

Q. KATH. Nay, we must longer kneel: I am a suitor.

K. HEN. Arise, and take place by us:—Half your suit  
Never name to us; you have half our power;  
The other moiety, ere you ask, is given;

Repeat your will, and take it.

Q. KATH. Thank your majesty.

That you would love yourself, and, in that love,  
Not unconsider'd leave your honour, nor  
The dignity of your office, is the point  
Of my petition.

K. HEN. Lady mine, proceed.

Q. KATH. I am solicited, not by a few,  
And those of true condition, that your subjects  
Are in great grievance: there have been commissions  
Sent down among them, which have flaw'd the heart  
Of all their loyalties:—wherein, although,  
My good lord cardinal, they vent reproaches  
Most bitterly on you, as putter-on  
Of these exactions, yet the king our master,  
(Whose honour Heaven shield from soil!) even he escapes  
not

Language unmannerly, yea, such which breaks  
The sides of loyalty, and almost appears  
In loud rebellion.

NOR. Not almost appears,  
It doth appear: for, upon these taxations,  
The clothiers all, not able to maintain  
The many to them 'longing, have put off  
The spinsters, carders, fullers, weavers, who,  
Unfit for other life, compell'd by hunger,  
And lack of other means, in desperate manner  
Daring the event to the teeth, are all in uproar,  
And Danger serves among them.

K. HEN. Taxation!  
Wherein? and what taxation?—My lord cardinal,  
You that are blam'd for it alike with us,  
Know you of this taxation?

WOL. Please you, sir,  
I know but of a single part, in aught  
Pertains to the state; and front but in that file  
Where others tell steps with me.

Q. KATH. No, my lord,  
You know no more than others: but you frame  
Things, that are known alike, which are not wholesome

To those which would not know them, and yet must  
Perforce be their acquaintance. These exactions  
Whereof my sovereign would have note, they are  
Most pestilent to the hearing; and to bear them  
The back is sacrifice to the load. They say  
They are devis'd by you; or else you suffer  
Too hard an exclamation.

K. HEN. Still exaction!  
The nature of it? In what kind, let's know,  
Is this exaction?

Q. KATH. I am much too venturous  
In tempting of your patience; but am bolden'd  
Under your promis'd pardon. The subject's grief  
Comes through commissions, which compel from each  
The sixth part of his substance, to be levied  
Without delay; and the pretence for this  
Is nam'd, your wars in France: This makes bold mouths:  
Tongues spit their duties out; and cold hearts freeze  
Allegiance in them; their curses now  
Live where their prayers did; and it's come to pass,  
This tractable obedience is a slave  
To each incensed will. I would your highness  
Would give it quick consideration, for  
There is no primer baseness.

K. HEN. By my life  
This is against our pleasure.

WOL. And for me,  
I have no further gone in this, than by  
A single voice; and that not pass'd me, but  
By learned approbation of the judges. If I am  
Traduc'd by ignorant tongues, which neither know  
My faculties, nor person, yet will be  
The chronicles of my doing,—let me say  
'T is but the fate of place, and the rough brake  
That virtue must go through. We must not stint  
Our necessary actions, in the fear  
To cope malicious censurers; which ever,  
As ravenous fishes, do a vessel follow  
That is new trimm'd; but benefit no further  
Than vainly longing. What we oft do best,

By sick interpreters, once weak ones, is  
Not ours, or not allow'd; what worst, as oft,  
Hitting a grosser quality, is cried up  
For our best act. If we shall stand still,  
In fear our motion will be mock'd or carp'd at,  
We should take root here where we sit, or sit  
State statues only.

K. HEN. Things done well,  
And with a care, exempt themselves from fear;  
Things done without example, in their issue  
Are to be fear'd. Have you a precedent  
Of this commission? I believe not any.  
We must not rend our subjects from our laws,  
And stick them in our will. Sixth part of each?  
A trembling contribution! Why, we take  
From every tree, lop, bark, and part o' the timber;  
And, though we leave it with a root, thus hack'd  
The air will drink the sap. To every county,  
Where this is question'd, send our letters, with  
Free pardon to each man that has denied  
The force of this commission: Pray, look to 't;  
I put it to your care.

WOL. A word with you. [*To the Secretary.*  
Let there be letters writ to every shire,  
Of the king's grace and pardon. The griev'd commons  
Hardly conceive of me; let it be nois'd,  
That through our intercession this revokement  
And pardon comes: I shall anon advise you  
Further in the proceeding. [*Exit Secretary.*

*Enter Surveyor.*

Q. KATH. I am sorry that the duke of Buckingham  
Is run in your displeasure.

K. HEN. It grieves many:  
The gentleman is learn'd, and a most rare speaker,  
To nature none more bound; his training such  
That he may furnish and instruct great teachers,  
And never seek for aid out of himself. Yet see,  
When these so noble benefits shall prove  
Not well dispos'd, the mind growing once corrupt,



They turn to vicious forms, ten times more ugly  
Than ever they were fair. This man so complete,  
Who was enroll'd 'mongst wonders, and when we,  
Almost with ravish'd list'ning, could not find  
His hour of speech a minute; he, my lady,  
Hath into monstrous habits put the graces  
That once were his, and is become as black  
As if besmear'd in hell. Sit by us; you shall hear  
(This was his gentleman in trust) of him  
Things to strike honour sad.—Bid him recount  
The fore-recited practices; whereof  
We cannot feel too little, hear too much.

WOL. Stand forth; and with bold spirit relate what you,  
Most like a careful subject, have collected  
Out of the duke of Buckingham.

K. HEN. Speak freely.

SURV. First, it was usual with him, every day  
It would infect his speech, That if the king  
Should without issue die, he'd carry it so  
To make the sceptre his: These very words  
I have heard him utter to his son-in-law,  
Lord Aberga'ny; to whom by oath he menac'd  
Revenge upon the cardinal.

WOL. Please your highness, note  
This dangerous conception in this point.  
Not friended by his wish, to your high person  
His will is most malignant; and it stretches  
Beyond you, to your friends.

Q. KATH. My learn'd lord cardinal,  
Deliver all with charity.

K. HEN. Speak on:  
How grounded he his title to the crown,  
Upon our fail? to this point hast thou heard him  
At any time speak aught?

SURV. He was brought to this  
By a vain prophecy of Nicholas Henton.

K. HEN. What was that Henton?

SURV. Sir, a Chartreux friar,  
His confessor; who fed him every minute  
With words of sovereignty.

K. HEN.

How know'st thou this?

SURV. Not long before your highness sped to France,  
The duke, being at the Rose, within the parish  
Saint Lawrence Poultney, did of me demand  
What was the speech among the Londoners  
Concerning the French journey: I replied,  
Men fear'd the French would prove perfidious,  
To the king's danger. Presently the duke  
Said, 'T was the fear indeed; and that he doubted,  
'T would prove the verity of certain words  
Spoke by a holy monk: "that oft," says he,  
"Hath sent to me, wishing me to permit  
John de lar Car, my chaplain, a choice hour  
To hear from him a matter of some moment:  
Whom after under the confession's seal  
He solemnly had sworn, that, what he spoke,  
My chaplain to no creature living, but  
To me, should utter, with demure confidence  
This pausingly ensued—Neither the king, nor his heirs,  
(Tell you the duke,) shall prosper: bid him strive  
To gain the love of the commonalty; the duke  
Shall govern England."

Q. KATH.

If I know you well,

You were the duke's surveyor, and lost your office  
On the complaint o' the tenants: Take good heed  
You charge not in your spleen a noble person,  
And spoil your nobler soul! I say, take heed;  
Yes, heartily beseech you.

K. HEN.

Let him on:—

Go forward.

SURV. On my soul, I'll speak but truth.  
I told my lord the duke, by the devil's illusions  
The monk might be deceiv'd; and that 't was dangerous for  
him  
To ruminate on this so far, until  
It forg'd him some design, which, being believ'd,  
It was much like to do: He answer'd, "Tush!  
It can do me no damage:" adding further,  
That had the king in his last sickness fail'd,  
The cardinal's and sir Thomas Lovell's heads

Should have gone off.

K. HEN. Ha! what, so rank? Ah, ha!

There's mischief in this man: Canst thou say further?

SURV. I can, my liege.

K. HEN. Proceed.

SURV. Being at Greenwich,

After your highness had reprov'd the duke

About sir William Blomer,—

K. HEN. I remember of such a time—Being my sworn  
servant,

The duke retain'd him his.—But on; What hence?

SURV. "If," quoth he, "I for this had been committed,

As, to the Tower, I thought,—I would have play'd

The part my father meant to act upon

The usurper Richard; who, being at Salisbury,

Made suit to come in his presence; which, if granted,

As he made semblance of his duty, would

Have put his knife into him."

K. HEN. A giant traitor!

WOL. Now, madam, may his highness live in freedom,  
And this man out of prison?

Q. KATH. God mend all!

K. HEN. There's something more would out of thee?  
what say'st?

SURV. After—"the duke his father,"—with "the knife,"—  
He stretch'd him, and, with one hand on his dagger,  
Another spread on his breast, mounting his eyes,  
He did discharge a horrible oath; whose tenor  
Was,—were he evil us'd, he would outgo  
His father, by as much as a performance  
Does an irresolute purpose.

K. HEN. There's his period,  
To sheathe his knife in us. He is attach'd;  
Call him to present trial: if he may  
Find mercy in the law, 't is his; if none,  
Let him not seek 't of us: by day and night,  
He's traitor to the height.

[*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*A Room in the Palace.*

*Enter the Lord Chamberlain and LORD SANDS.*

CHAM. Is 't possible the spells of France should juggle  
Men into such strange mysteries?

SANDS. New customs,  
Though they be never so ridiculous,  
Nay, let them be unmanly, yet are follow'd.

CHAM. As far as I see, all the good our English  
Have got by the late voyage is but merely  
A fit or two o' the face; but they are shrewd ones;  
For when they hold them, you would swear directly  
Their very noses had been counsellors  
To Pepin, or Clotharius, they keep state so.

SANDS. They have all new legs, and lame ones; one would  
take it,  
That never saw them pace before, the spavin,  
A springhalt reign'd among them.

CHAM. Death! my lord,  
Their clothes are after such a pagan cut too,  
That, sure, they have worn out Christendom. How now!  
What news, sir Thomas Lovell?

*Enter SIR THOMAS LOVELL.*

LOV. 'Faith, my lord,  
I hear of none, but the new proclamation  
That's clapp'd upon the court-gate.

CHAM. What is 't for?

LOV. The reformation of our travell'd gallants,  
That fill the court with quarrels, talk, and tailors.

CHAM. I am glad 't is there; now I would pray our men-  
sieurs  
To think an English courtier may be wise,  
And never see the Louvre.

LOV. They must either  
(For so run the conditions) leave those remnants  
Of fool, and feather, that they got in France,  
With all their honourable points of ignorance  
Pertaining thereunto, (as fights, and fireworks;

Abusing better men than they can be,  
Out of a foreign wisdom,) renouncing clean  
The faith they have in tennis and tall stockings,  
Short blister'd breeches, and those types of travel,  
And understand again like honest men;  
Or pack to their old playfellows: there, I take it,  
They may, *cum privilegio*, wear away,  
The lag end of their lewdness, and be laugh'd at.

SANDS. 'T is time to give them physic, their diseases  
Are grown so catching.

CHAM. What a loss our ladies  
Will have of these trim vanities!

LOV. Ay, marry,  
There will be woe, indeed, lords; the sly whoresons  
Have got a speeding trick to lay down ladies;  
A French song, and a fiddle, has no fellow.

SANDS. The devil fiddle them! I am glad they are going;  
(For, sure, there 's no converting of them;) now,  
An honest country lord, as I am, beaten  
A long time out of play, may bring his plain-song,  
And have an hour of hearing; and, by 'r lady,  
Held current music too.

CHAM. Well said, lord Sands;  
Your colt's tooth is not cast yet.

SANDS. No, my lord;  
Nor shall not, while I have a stump.

CHAM. Sir Thomas,  
Whither were you a-going?

LOV. To the cardinal's;  
Your lordship is a guest too.

CHAM. O, 't is true:  
This night he makes a supper, and a great one,  
To many lords and ladies; there will be  
The beauty of this kingdom, I'll assure you.

LOV. That churchman bears a bounteous mind indeed,  
A hand as fruitful as the land that feeds us;  
His dews fall everywhere.

CHAM. No doubt he's noble;  
He had a black mouth that said other of him.

SANDS. He may, my lord; he has wherewithal; in him,

Sparing would show a worse sin than ill doctrine:  
Men of his way should be most liberal,  
They are set here for examples.

CHAM. True, they are so;  
But few now give so great ones. My barge stays;  
Your lordship shall along:—Come, good sir Thomas,  
We shall be late else; which I would not be,  
For I was spoke to, with sir Henry Guildford,  
This night to be comptrollers.

SANDS. I am your lordship's. [*Exeunt*]

SCENE IV.—*The Presence-Chamber in York-Place.*

*Hautboys. A small table under a state for the CARDINAL, a longer table for the guests. Enter at one door ANNE BULLEN, and divers Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, as guests; at another door, enter SIR HENRY GUILDFORD.*

GUILD. Ladies, a general welcome from his grace  
Salutes ye all: This night he dedicates  
To fair content, and you: none here, he hopes,  
In all this noble bevy, has brought with her  
One care abroad: he would have all as merry  
As first-good company, good wine, good welcome,  
Can make good people. O, my lord, you are tardy;

*Enter Lord Chamberlain, LORD SANDS, and SIR THOMAS LOVELL.*

The very thought of this fair company  
Clapp'd wings to me.

CHAM. You are young, sir Harry Guildford.

SANDS. Sir Thomas Lovell, had the cardinal  
But half my lay-thoughts in him, some of these  
Should find a running banquet ere they rested,  
I think would better please them: By my life,  
They are a sweet society of fair ones.

LOV. O, that your lordship were but now confessor  
To one or two of these!

SANDS. I would I were;  
They should find easy penance.

LOV. 'Faith, how easy?

SANDS. As easy as a down-bed would afford it.

CHAM. Sweet ladies, will it please you sit? Sir Harry,  
Place you that side, I'll take the charge of this:  
His grace is ent'ring.—Nay, you must not freeze:  
Two women plac'd together makes cold weather:—  
My lord Sands, you are one will keep them waking;  
Pray, sit between these ladies.

SANDS. By my faith,  
And thank your lordship.—By your leave, sweet ladies:  
[*Sits himself between ANNE BULLEN and another lady.*  
If I chance to talk a little wild, forgive me.  
I had it from my father.

ANNE. Was he mad, sir?

SANDS. O, very mad, exceeding mad, in love too:  
But he would bite none; just as I do now,  
He would kiss you twenty with a breath. [*Kisses her.*

CHAM. Well said, my lord.—  
So, now you are fairly seated:—Gentlemen,  
The penance lies on you, if these fair ladies  
Pass away frowning.

SANDS. For my little cure,  
Let me alone.

*Hautboys. Enter CARDINAL WOLSEY, attended; and  
takes his state.*

WOL. You are welcome, my fair guests; that noble lady,  
Or gentleman, that is not freely merry,  
Is not my friend: This, to confirm my welcome;  
And to you all good health. [*Drinks.*

SANDS. Your grace is noble:—  
Let me have such a bowl may hold my thanks,  
And save me so much talking.

WOL. My lord Sands,  
I am beholden to you: cheer your neighbours.  
Ladies, you are not merry;—Gentlemen,  
Whose fault is this?

SANDS. The red wine first must rise  
In their fair cheeks, my lord; then we shall have them  
Talk us to silence.

ANNE. You are a merry gamester,

My lord Sands.

SANDS. Yes, if I make my play.  
Here's to your ladyship: and pledge it, madam,  
For 't is to such a thing,—

ANNE. You cannot show me.

SANDS. I told your grace they would talk anon.

[*Drum and trumpets within. Chambers discharged.*]

WOL.

What's that?

CHAM. Look out there, some of ye. [*Exit a Servant.*]

WOL.

What warlike voice?

And to what end is this?—Nay, ladies, fear not;  
By all the laws of war ye are privileg'd.

*Re-enter Servant.*

CHAM. How now? what is 't?

SERV.

A noble troop of strangers;  
For so they seem; they have left their barge, and landed;  
And hither make, as great ambassadors  
From foreign princes.

WOL.

Good lord chamberlain,  
Go, give them welcome, you can speak the French tongue;  
And, pray, receive them nobly, and conduct them  
Into our presence, where this heaven of beauty  
Shall shine at full upon them:—Some attend him.—

[*Exit Chamberlain, attended. All arise, and tables removed.*]

You have now a broken banquet; but we'll mend it.  
A good digestion to you all: and, once more,  
I shower a welcome on you;—Welcome all.

*Hautboys. Enter the KING, and twelve others, as maskers habited like shepherds, with sixteen torchbearers; ushered by the Lord Chamberlain. They pass directly before the CARDINAL, and gracefully salute him.*

A noble company! what are their pleasures?

CHAM. Because they speak no English, thus they pray'd  
To tell your grace;—That, having heard by fame  
Of this so noble and so fair assembly  
This night to meet here, they could do no less,  
Out of the great respect they bear to beauty,



But leave their flocks; and, under your fair conduct,  
Crave leave to view these ladies, and entreat  
An hour of revels with them.

WOL. Say, lord chamberlain,  
They have done my poor house grace; for which I pay them  
A thousand thanks, and pray them take their pleasures.

[*Ladies chosen for the dance. The KING chooses*  
ANNE BULLEN.

K. HEN. The fairest hand I ever touch'd! O, beauty,  
Till now I never knew thee. [Music. Dance.

WOL. My lord.

CHAM. Your grace?

WOL. Pray, tell them thus much from me:  
There should be one amongst them, by his person,  
More worthy of this place than myself; to whom,  
If I but knew him, with my love and duty  
I would surrender it.

CHAM. I will, my lord.

[Chamberlain goes to the company, and returns.

WOL. What say they?

CHAM. Such a one, they all confess,  
There is, indeed; which they would have your grace  
Find out, and he will take it.

WOL. Let me see then.— [Comes from his state.  
By all your good leaves, gentlemen;—Here I'll make  
My royal choice.

K. HEN. You have found him, cardinal: [Unmasking.  
You hold a fair assembly; you do well, lord:  
You are a churchman, or I'll tell you, cardinal,  
I should judge now unhappily.

WOL. I am glad  
Your grace is grown so pleasant.

K. HEN. My lord chamberlain,  
Prithee, come hither: What fair lady's that?

CHAM. An't please your grace, sir Thomas Bullen's  
daughter,  
The viscount Rochford, one of her highness' women.

K. HEN. By Heaven, she is a dainty one,—Sweetheart,  
I were unmannerly to take you out,  
And not to kiss you.—A health, gentlemen,

Let it go round.

WOL. Sir Thomas Lovell, is the banquet ready  
I' the privy chamber?

LOV. Yes, my lord.

WOL. Your grace,  
I fear, with dancing is a little heated.

K. HEN. I fear, too much.

WOL. There's fresher air, my lord,  
In the next chamber.

K. HEN. Lead in your ladies, every one.—Sweet partner,  
I must not yet forsake you:—Let's be merry;—  
Good my lord cardinal, I have half a dozen healths  
To drink to these fair ladies, and a measure  
To lead them once again; and then let's dream  
Who's best in favour.—Let the music knock it.

*[Exeunt with trumpets.]*

---

## ACT II.

### SCENE I.—A Street.

*Enter Two Gentlemen, meeting.*

1 GENT. Whither away so fast?

2 GENT. O,—God save you!

Even to the hall, to hear what shall become  
Of the great duke of Buckingham.

1 GENT. I'll save you  
That labour, sir. All's now done, but the ceremony  
Of bringing back the prisoner.

2 GENT. Were you there?

1 GENT. Yes, indeed, was I.

2 GENT. Pray speak what has happen'd.

1 GENT. You may guess quickly what.

2 GENT. Is he found guilty?

1 GENT. Yes, truly is he, and condemn'd upon it.

2 GENT. I am sorry for 't.

1 GENT. So are a number more.

2 GENT. But, pray, how pass'd it?

1 GENT. I'll tell you in a little. The great duke  
Came to the bar; where to his accusations  
He pleaded still, not guilty, and alleg'd  
Many sharp reasons to defeat the law.  
The king's attorney, on the contrary,  
Urg'd on the examinations, proofs, confessions  
Of divers witnesses; which the duke desir'd  
To have brought *vivâ voce*, to his face:  
At which appear'd against him, his surveyor;  
Sir Gilbert Peck his chancellor; and John Car,  
Confessor to him; with that devil-monk,  
Hopkins, that made this mischief.

2 GENT. That was he  
That fed him with his prophecies?

1 GENT. The same.  
All these accus'd him strongly; which he fain  
Would have flung from him, but, indeed, he could not:  
And so his peers, upon this evidence,  
Have found him guilty of high treason. Much  
He spoke, and learnedly, for life; but all  
Was either pitied in him, or forgotten.

2 GENT. After all this, how did he bear himself?

1 GENT. When he was brought again to the bar, to hear  
His knell rung out, his judgment, he was stirr'd  
With such an agony, he sweat extremely,  
And something spoke in choler, ill, and hasty:  
But he fell to himself again, and sweetly  
In all the rest show'd a most noble patience.

2 GENT. I do not think he fears death.

1 GENT. Sure, he does not.  
He never was so womanish; the cause  
He may a little grieve at.

2 GENT. Certainly  
The cardinal is the end of this.

1 GENT. 'T is likely,  
By all conjectures: First, Kildare's attainder,  
Then deputy of Ireland; who remov'd,  
Earl Surrey was sent thither, and in haste too,  
Lest he should help his father.

2 GENT. That trick of state

Was a deep envious one.

1 GENT. At his return,  
No doubt he will requite it. This is noted,  
And generally, whoever the king favours,  
The cardinal instantly will find employment,  
And far enough from court too.

2 GENT. All the commons  
Hate him perniciously, and, o' my conscience,  
Wish him ten fathom deep: this duke as much  
They love and dote on; call him bounteous Buckingham,  
The mirror of all courtesy.

*Enter BUCKINGHAM from his arraignment; Tipstaves before him; the axe with the edge towards him; halberds on each side; accompanied with SIR THOMAS LOVELL, SIR NICHOLAS VAUX, SIR WILLIAM SANDS, and common people.*

1 GENT. Stay there, sir,  
And see the noble ruin'd man you speak of.

2 GENT. Let's stand close, and behold him.

BUCK. All good people,  
You that thus far have come to pity me,  
Hear what I say, and then go home and lose me.  
I have this day receiv'd a traitor's judgment,  
And by that name must die: Yet, Heaven bear witness,  
And if I have a conscience let it sink me,  
Even as the axe falls, if I be not faithful!  
The law I bear no malice for my death,  
It has done, upon the premises, but justice:  
But those that sought it I could wish more Christians:  
Be what they will, I heartily forgive them:  
Yet let them look they glory not in mischief,  
Nor build their evils on the graves of great men;  
For then my guiltless blood must cry against them.  
For further life in this world I ne'er hope,  
Nor will I sue, although the king have mercies  
More than I dare make faults. You few that lov'd me,  
And dare be bold to weep for Buckingham,  
His noble friends, and fellows, whom to leave  
Is only bitter to him, only dying,  
Go with me, like good angels, to my end;

And, as the long divorce of steel falls on me,  
Make of your prayers one sweet sacrifice,  
And lift my soul to heaven.—Lead on, o' God's name.

LOV. I do beseech your grace, for charity,  
If ever any malice in your heart  
Were hid against me, now to forgive me frankly.

BUCK. Sir Thomas Lovell, I as free forgive you  
As I would be forgiven: I forgive all;  
There cannot be those numberless offences  
'Gainst me that I cannot take peace with: No black envy  
Shall make my grave. Commend me to his grace;  
And if he speak of Buckingham, pray tell him,  
You met him half in heaven: my vows and prayers  
Yet are the king's; and, till my soul forsake,  
Shall cry for blessings on him: May he live  
Longer than I have time to tell his years!  
Ever belov'd, and loving, may his rule be!  
And, when old Time shall lead him to his end,  
Goodness and he fill up one monument!

LOV. To the water side I must conduct your grace;  
Then give my charge up to sir Nicholas Vaux,  
Who undertakes you to your end.

VAUX. Prepare there,  
The duke is coming; see the barge be ready;  
And fit it with such furniture as suits  
The greatness of his person.

BUCK. Nay, sir Nicholas,  
Let it alone; my state now will but mock me.  
When I came hither I was lord high constable,  
And duke of Buckingham; now, poor Edward Bohun:  
Yet I am richer than my base accusers,  
That never knew what truth meant: I now seal it;  
And with that blood will make them one day groan for 't.  
My noble father, Henry of Buckingham,  
Who first rais'd head against usurping Richard,  
Flying for succour to his servant Banister,  
Being distress'd, was by that wretch betray'd,  
And without trial fell; God's peace be with him!  
Henry the seventh succeeding, truly pitying  
My father's loss, like a most royal prince,

Restor'd me to my honours, and, out of ruins,  
Made my name once more noble. Now his son,  
Henry the eighth, life, honour, name, and all  
That made me happy, at one stroke has taken  
For ever from the world. I had my trial,  
And, must needs say, a noble one; which makes me  
A little happier than my wretched father:  
Yet thus far we are one in fortunes,—Both  
Fell by our servants, by those men we lov'd most;  
A most unnatural and faithless service!  
Heaven has an end in all: Yet, you that hear me,  
This from a dying man receive as certain:  
Where you are liberal of your loves and counsels,  
Be sure you be not loose; for those you make friends,  
And give your hearts to, when they once perceive  
The least rub in your fortunes, fall away  
Like water from ye, never found again  
But where they mean to sink ye. All good people,  
Pray for me! I must now forsake ye; the last hour  
Of my long weary life is come upon me.  
Farewell:

And when you would say something that is sad,  
Speak how I fell.—I have done; and God forgive me!

[*Exeunt* BUCKINGHAM and *Train*.]

1 GENT. O, this is full of pity!—Sir, it calls,  
I fear, too many curses on their heads  
That were the authors.

2 GENT. If the duke be guiltless,  
'T is full of woe: yet I can give you inkling  
Of an ensuing evil, if it fall,  
Greater than this.

1 GENT. Good angels keep it from us!  
What may it be? You do not doubt my faith, sir?

2 GENT. This secret is so weighty, 't will require  
A strong faith to conceal it.

1 GENT. Let me have it;  
I do not talk much.

2 GENT. I am confident;  
You shall, sir: Did you not of late days hear  
A buzzing, of a separation

Between the king and Katharine?

1 GENT. Yes, but it held not:  
For when the king once heard it, out of anger  
He sent command to the lord mayor, straight  
To stop the rumour, and allay those tongues  
That durst disperse it.

2 GENT. But that slander, sir,  
Is found a truth now: for it grows again  
Fresher than e'er it was; and held for certain  
The king will venture at it. Either the cardinal,  
Or some about him near, have, out of malice  
To the good queen, possess'd him with a scruple  
That will undo her: To confirm this too,  
Cardinal Campeius is arriv'd, and lately;  
As all think, for this business.

1 GENT. 'T is the cardinal;  
And merely to revenge him on the emperor,  
For not bestowing on him, at his asking,  
The archbishopric of Toledo, this is purpos'd.

2 GENT. I think you have hit the mark: But is 't not  
cruel  
That she should feel the smart of this? The cardinal  
Will have his will, and she must fall.

1 GENT. 'T is woful.  
We are too open here to argue this;  
Let's think in private more. [*Ereunt.*

SCENE II.—*An Antechamber in the Palace.*

*Enter the Lord Chamberlain, reading a letter.*

CHAM. "My lord,—The horses your lordship sent for, with  
all the care I had I saw well chosen, ridden, and furnished.  
They were young and handsome; and of the best breed in  
the north. When they were ready to set out for London, a  
man of my lord cardinal's, by commission, and main power,  
took 'em from me; with this reason,—His master would be  
served before a subject, if not before the king; which stopped  
our mouths, sir."

I fear, he will, indeed: Well, let him have them:  
He will have all, I think.

*Enter the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.*

NOR. Well met, my lord chamberlain.

CHAM. Good day to both your graces.

SUF. How is the king employ'd?

CHAM. I left him private,  
Full of sad thoughts and troubles.

NOR. What's the cause?

CHAM. It seems, the marriage with his brother's wife  
Has crept too near his conscience.

SUF. No, his conscience  
Has crept too near another lady.

NOR. 'T is so;  
This is the cardinal's doing, the king-cardinal:  
That blind priest, like the eldest son of fortune,  
Turns what he list. The king will know him one day.

SUF. Pray God he do! he'll never know himself else.

NOR. How holily he works in all his business!  
And with what zeal! For now he has crack'd the league  
Between us and the emperor, the queen's great nephew:  
He dives into the king's soul; and there scatters  
Dangers, doubts, wringing of the conscience,  
Fears, and despairs, and all these for his marriage:  
And out of all these to restore the king,  
He counsels a divorce: a loss of her  
That, like a jewel, has hung twenty years  
About his neck, yet never lost her lustre:  
Of her that loves him with that excellence  
That angels love good men with; even of her  
That when the greatest stroke of fortune falls  
Will bless the king: And is not this course pious?

CHAM. Heaven keep me from such counsel! 'T is most  
true

These news are everywhere; every tongue speaks them,  
And every true heart weeps for 't: All that dare  
Look into these affairs see this main end,—  
The French king's sister. Heaven will one day open  
The king's eyes, that so long have slept upon  
This bold bad man.

SUF. And free us from his slavery.



NOR. We had need pray,  
And heartily, for our deliverance;  
Or this imperious man will work us all  
From princes into pages: all men's honours  
Lie like one lump before him, to be fashion'd  
Into what pitch he please.

SUF. For me, my lords,  
I love him not, nor fear him; there's my creed:  
As I am made without him, so I'll stand,  
If the king please; his curses and his blessings  
Touch me alike, they are breath I not believe in.  
I knew him, and I know him; so I leave him  
To him that made him proud, the pope.

NOR. Let's in;  
And, with some other business, put the king  
From these sad thoughts, that work too much upon him:  
My lord, you'll bear us company?

CHAM. Excuse me;  
The king hath sent me other-where: besides,  
You'll find a most unfit time to disturb him:  
Health to your lordships.

NOR. Thanks, my good lord chamberlain.

[*Exit Lord Chamberlain.*]

NORFOLK *opens a folding door. The KING is discovered sitting, and reading pensively.*

SUF. How sad he looks! sure, he is much afflicted.

K. HEN. Who is there? ha?

NOR. 'Pray God he be not angry.

K. HEN. Who's there, I say? How dare you thrust your-  
selves

Into my private meditations?

Who am I? ha?

NOR. A gracious king, that pardons all offences  
Malice ne'er meant: our breach of duty, this way,  
Is business of estate; in which, we come  
To know your royal pleasure.

K. HEN. Ye are too bold;  
Go to; I'll make ye know your times of business:  
Is this an hour for temporal affairs? ha?

*Enter WOLSEY and CAMPEIUS.*

Who's there? my good lord cardinal?—O, my Wolsey,  
The quiet of my wounded conscience,  
Thou art a cure fit for a king.—You're welcome,

[*To CAMPEIUS.*

Most learned reverend sir, into our kingdom;  
Use us, and it:—My good lord, have great care  
I be not found a talker.

[*To WOLSEY.*

WOL. Sir, you cannot.  
I would your grace would give us but an hour  
Of private conference.

K. HEN. We are busy; go. [*To NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.*

NOR. This priest has no pride in him?

SUF. Not to speak of;

I would not be so sick though, for his place:  
But this cannot continue.

[*Aside.*

NOR. If it do,  
I'll venture one;—have at him.

SUF. I another.

[*Exeunt NORFOLK and SUFFOLK.*

WOL. Your grace has given a precedent of wisdom  
Above all princes, in committing freely  
Your scruple to the voice of Christendom:  
Who can be angry now? what envy reach you?  
The Spaniard, tied by blood and favour to her,  
Must now confess, if they have any goodness,  
The trial just and noble. All the clerks,  
I mean the learned ones, in Christian kingdoms,  
Have their free voices—Rome, the nurse of judgment,  
Invited by your noble self, hath sent  
One general tongue unto us, this good man,  
This just and learned priest, cardinal Campeius;  
Whom, once more, I present unto your highness.

K. HEN. And, once more, in mine arms I bid him  
welcome,

And thank the holy conclave for their loves;  
They have sent me such a man I would have wish'd for.

CAM. Your grace must needs deserve all strangers' loves,  
You are so noble: To your highness' hand

I tender my commission; by whose virtue,  
(The court of Rome commanding,) you, my lord  
Cardinal of York, are join'd with me their servant,  
In the impartial judging of this business.

K. HEN. Two equal men. The queen shall be acquainted,  
Forthwith, for what you come:—Where's Gardiner?

WOL. I know your majesty has always lov'd her  
So dear in heart, not to deny her that  
A woman of less place might ask by law,  
Scholars allow'd freely to argue for her.

K. HEN. Ay, and the best she shall have; and my favour  
To him that does best: God forbid else. Cardinal,  
Prithee call Gardiner to me, my new secretary;  
I find him a fit fellow. *[Exit WOLSEY.]*

*Re-enter WOLSEY with GARDINER.*

WOL. Give me your hand: much joy and favour to you;  
You are the king's now.

GARD. But to be commanded  
For ever by your grace, whose hand has rais'd me. *[Aside.]*

K. HEN. Come hither, Gardiner. *[They converse apart.]*

CAM. My lord of York, was not one doctor Pace  
In this man's place before him?

WOL. Yes, he was.

CAM. Was he not held a learned man?

WOL. Yes, surely.

CAM. Believe me, there's an ill opinion spread then  
Even of yourself, lord cardinal.

WOL. How! of me?

CAM. They will not stick to say you envied him;  
And fearing he would rise, he was so virtuous,  
Kept him a foreign man still; which so griev'd him,  
That he ran mad, and died.

WOL. Heaven's peace be with him!  
That's Christian care enough: for living murmurers  
There's places of rebuke. He was a fool;  
For he would needs be virtuous: That good fellow,  
If I command him, follows my appointment;  
I will have none so near else. Learn this, brother,  
We live not to be grip'd by meaner persons.

K. HEN. Deliver this with modesty to the queen.

[*Exit* GARDINER.]

The most convenient place that I can think of,  
For such receipt of learning, is Blackfriars;  
There ye shall meet about this weighty business;  
My Wolsey, see it furnish'd. O, my lord,  
Would it not grieve an able man, to leave  
So sweet a bedfellow? But, conscience, conscience,—  
O, 't is a tender place, and I must leave her. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*An Antechamber in the Queen's Apartments.*

*Enter ANNE BULLEN and an old Lady.*

ANNE. Not for that neither:—Here's the pang that  
pinches:

His highness having liv'd so long with her: and she  
So good a lady, that no tongue could ever  
Pronounce dishonour of her,—by my life,  
She never knew harm-doing;—O now, after  
So many courses of the sun enthron'd,  
Still growing in a majesty and pomp,—  
The which to leave a thousand-fold more bitter  
Than 't is sweet at first to acquire,—after this process,  
To give her the avaunt! it is a pity  
Would move a monster.

OLD L. Hearts of most hard temper  
Melt and lament for her.

ANNE. O, God's will! much better  
She ne'er had known pomp: though it be temporal,  
Yet, if that quarrel, fortune, do divorce  
It from the bearer, 't is a sufferance, panging  
As soul and body's severing.

OLD L. Alas, poor lady!  
She's a stranger now again.

ANNE. So much the more  
Must pity drop upon her. Verily,  
I swear, 't is better to be lowly born,  
And range with humble livers in content,  
Than to be perk'd up in a glistening grief,  
And wear a golden sorrow.

OLD L.                                      Our content  
Is our best having.

ANNE.                                      By my troth, and maidenhead,  
I would not be a queen.

OLD L.                                      Beshrew me, I would,  
And venture maidenhead for 't; and so would you,  
For all this spice of your hypocrisy:  
You, that have so fair parts of woman on you,  
Have too a woman's heart: which ever yet  
Affected eminence, wealth, sovereignty;  
Which, to say sooth, are blessings; and which gifts  
(Saving your mincing) the capacity  
Of your soft cheveril conscience would receive,  
If you might please to stretch it.

ANNE.    Nay, good troth,—

OLD L. Yes, troth, and troth,—You would not be a queen?

ANNE. No, not for all the riches under heaven.

OLD L. 'T is strange: a three-pence bow'd would hire me,  
Old as I am, to queen it: But, I pray you,  
What think you of a duchess? have you limbs  
To bear that load of title?

ANNE.    No, in truth.

OLD L. Then you are weakly made: Pluck off a little;  
I would not be a young count in your way,  
For more than blushing comes to: if your back  
Cannot vouchsafe this burthen, 't is too weak  
Ever to get a boy.

ANNE.    How you do talk!  
I swear again, I would not be a queen  
For all the world.

OLD L.                                      In faith, for little England  
You'd venture an emballing: I myself  
Would for Carnarvonshire, although there 'long'd  
No more to the crown but that. Lo, who comes here?

*Enter the Lord Chamberlain.*

CHAM. Good morrow, ladies. What were 't worth to know  
The secret of your conference?

ANNE.    My good lord,  
Not your demand; it values not your asking:

Our mistress' sorrows we were pitying.

CHAM. It was a gentle business, and becoming  
The action of good women: there is hope  
All will be well.

ANNE. Now I pray God, amen!

CHAM. You bear a gentle mind, and heavenly blessings  
Follow such creatures. That you may, fair lady,  
Perceive I speak sincerely, and high note's  
Ta'en of your many virtues, the king's majesty  
Commends his good opinion of you to you, and  
Does purpose honour to you no less flowing  
Than marchioness of Pembroke; to which title  
A thousand pound a-year, annual support,  
Out of his grace he adds.

ANNE. I do not know  
What kind of my obedience I should tender.  
More than my all is nothing; nor my prayers  
Are not words duly hallow'd, nor my wishes  
More worth than empty vanities; yet prayers, and wishes,  
Are all I can return. 'Beseech your lordship,  
Vouchsafe to speak my thanks, and my obedience,  
As from a blushing handmaid to his highness;  
Whose health and royalty I pray for.

CHAM. Lady,  
I shall not fail to improve the fair conceit  
The king hath of you.—I have perus'd her well; [Aside  
Beauty and honour in her are so mingled,  
That they have caught the king: and who knows yet,  
But from this lady may proceed a gem  
To lighten all this isle!—I'll to the king,  
And say I spoke with you.

ANNE. My honour'd lord. [*Exit Lord Chamberlain.*

OLD L. Why, this it is; see, see!  
I have been begging sixteen years in court,  
(Am yet a courtier beggarly,) nor could  
Come pat betwixt too early and too late,  
For any suit of pounds: and you, (O fate!)  
A very fresh-fish here, (fie, fie, fie upon  
This compell'd fortune!) have your mouth fill'd up,  
Before you open it.

ANNE. This is strange to me.

OLD L. How tastes it? is it bitter? forty pence, no.  
There was a lady once, ('t is an old story,)   
That would not be a queen, that would she not,   
For all the mud in Egypt: Have you heard it?

ANNE. Come, you are pleasant.

OLD L. With your theme, I could  
O'ermount the lark. The marchioness of Pembroke!  
A thousand pounds a-year! for pure respect;  
No other obligation: By my life,  
That promises more thousands: Honour's train  
Is longer than his foreskirt. By this time,  
I know, your back will bear a duchess;—Say,  
Are you not stronger than you were?

ANNE. Good lady,  
Make yourself mirth with your particular fancy,  
And leave me out on 't. 'Would I had no being  
If this salute my blood a jot; it faints me  
To think what follows.

The queen is comfortless, and we forgetful  
In our long absence: Pray, do not deliver  
What here you have heard, to her.

OLD L. What do you think me? [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE IV.—A Hall in Blackfriars.

*Trumpets, sennet, and cornets. Enter Two Vergers, with short silver wands; next them, Two Scribes, in the habits of doctors; after them, the ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY alone; after him, the BISHOPS OF LINCOLN, ELY, ROCHESTER, and SAINT ASAPH; next them, with some small distance, follows a Gentleman bearing the purse, with the great seal, and a cardinal's hat; then Two Priests, bearing each a silver cross; then a Gentleman-Usher bareheaded, accompanied with a Sergeant-at-Arms, bearing a silver mace; then Two Gentlemen, bearing two great silver pillars; after them, side by side, the Two Cardinals, WOLSEY and CAMPEIUS; Two Noblemen with the sword and mace. [Then enter the KING and QUEEN, and their Trains.] The KING takes place under the cloth of state; the Two Cardinals sit under him as*

*judges. The QUEEN takes place at some distance from the KING. The Bishops place themselves on each side the court, in manner of a consistory; below them, the Scribes. The Lords sit next the Bishops. The Crier and the rest of the Attendants stand in convenient order about the stage.*

WOL. Whilst our commission from Rome is read,  
Let silence be commanded.

K. HEN. What's the need?  
It hath already publicly been read,  
And on all sides the authority allow'd;  
You may then spare that time.

WOL. Be 't so:—Proceed.

SCRIBE. Say, Henry king of England, come into the court.

CRIER. Henry king of England, &c.

K. HEN. Here.

SCRIBE. Say, Katharine queen of England, come into the court.

CRIER. Katharine queen of England, &c.

*[The QUEEN makes no answer, rises out of her chair, goes about the court, comes to the KING, and kneels at his feet; then speaks.]*

Q. KATH. Sir, I desire you, do me right and justice;  
And to bestow your pity on me: for  
I am a most poor woman, and a stranger,  
Born out of your dominions; having here  
No judge indifferent, nor no more assurance  
Of equal friendship and proceeding. Alas, sir,  
In what have I offended you? what cause  
Hath my behaviour given to your displeasure,  
That thus you should proceed to put me off,  
And take your good grace from me? Heaven witness,  
I have been to you a true and humble wife,  
At all times to your will conformable:  
Ever in fear to kindle your dislike,  
Yea, subject to your countenance; glad, or sorry,  
As I saw it inclin'd. When was the hour,  
I ever contradicted your desire,  
Or made it not mine too? Or which of your friends  
Have I not strove to love, although I knew



He were mine enemy? What friend of mine  
That had to him deriv'd your anger, did I  
Continue in my liking? nay, gave notice  
He was from thence discharg'd? Sir, call to mind  
That I have been your wife, in this obedience,  
Upward of twenty years, and have been blest  
With many children by you: If, in the course  
And process of this time, you can report,  
And prove it too, against mine honour aught,  
My bond to wedlock, or my love and duty,  
Against your sacred person, in God's name,  
Turn me away; and let the foul'st contempt  
Shut door upon me, and so give me up  
To the sharpest kind of justice. Please you, sir,  
The king, your father, was reputed for  
A prince most prudent, of an excellent  
And unmatch'd wit and judgment: Ferdinand,  
My father, king of Spain, was reckon'd one  
The wisest prince, that there had reign'd by many  
A year before: It is not to be question'd  
That they had gather'd a wise council to them  
Of every realm, that did debate this business,  
Who deem'd our marriage lawful: Wherefore I humbly  
Beseech you, sir, to spare me, till I may  
Be by my friends in Spain advis'd; whose counsel  
[ will implore; if not, i' the name of God,  
Your pleasure be fulfill'd!

**WOL.** You have here, lady,  
(And of your choice,) these reverend fathers; men  
Of singular integrity and learning,  
Yea, the elect of the land, who are assembled  
To plead your cause: It shall be therefore bootless,  
That longer you desire the court; as well  
For your own quiet, as to rectify  
What is unsettled in the king.

CAM. His grace  
Hath spoken well, and justly: Therefore, madam,  
It's fit this royal session do proceed;  
And that, without delay, their arguments  
Be now produc'd and heard.

Q. KATH. Lord cardinal,  
To you I speak.

WOL. Your pleasure, madam?

Q. KATH. Sir,  
I am about to weep; but, thinking that  
We are a queen, (or long have dream'd so,) certain  
The daughter of a king, my drops of tears  
I'll turn to sparks of fire.

WOL. Be patient yet.

Q. KATH. I will, when you are humble; nay, before,  
Or God will punish me. I do believe,  
Induc'd by potent circumstances, that  
You are mine enemy; and make my challenge  
You shall not be my judge: for it is you  
Hath blown this coal betwixt my lord and me,  
Which God's dew quench!—Therefore, I say again,  
I utterly abhor, yea, from my soul  
Refuse you for my judge: whom, yet once more,  
I hold my most malicious foe, and think not  
At all a friend to truth.

WOL. I do profess  
You speak not like yourself; who ever yet  
Have stood to charity, and display'd the effects  
Of disposition gentle, and of wisdom  
O'ertopping woman's power. Madam, you do me wrong:  
I have no spleen against you; nor injustice  
For you, or any: how far I have proceeded,  
Or how far further shall, is warranted  
By a commission from the consistory,  
Yea, the whole consistory of Rome. You charge me  
That I have blown this coal: I do deny it:  
The king is present: if it be known to him  
That I gainsay my deed, how may he wound,  
And worthily, my falsehood! yea, as much  
As you have done my truth. If he know  
That I am free of your report, he knows  
I am not of your wrong. Therefore in him  
It lies to cure me: and the cure is, to  
Remove these thoughts from you: The which, before  
His highness shall speak in, I do beseech

You, gracious madam, to unthink your speaking,  
And to say so no more.

Q. KATH. My lord, my lord,  
I am a simple woman, much too weak  
To oppose your cunning. You are meek, and humble-  
mouth'd;

You sign your place and calling, in full seeming  
With meekness and humility: but your heart  
Is cramm'd with arrogancy, spleen, and pride.  
You have, by fortune, and his highness' favours,  
Gone slightly o'er low steps; and now are mounted  
Where powers are your retainers: and your words,  
Domestics to you, serve your will, as 't please  
Yourself pronounce their office. I must tell you,  
You tender more your person's honour than  
Your high profession spiritual: That again  
I do refuse you for my judge; and here,  
Before you all, appeal unto the pope,  
To bring my whole cause 'fore his holiness,  
And to be judg'd by him.

*[She curtsies to the KING, and offers to depart.]*

CAM. The queen is obstinate,  
Stubborn to justice, apt to accuse it, and  
Disdainful to be tried by it; 't is not well.  
She's going away.

K. HEN. Call her again.

CRIER. Katharine queen of England, come into the court.

GRIFF. Madam, you are call'd back.

Q. KATH. What need you note it? pray you, keep your  
way:

When you are call'd, return.—Now the Lord help,  
They vex me past my patience!—pray you, pass on:  
I will not tarry: no, nor ever more,  
Upon this business, my appearance make  
In any of their courts.

*[Exeunt QUEEN, GRIFFITH, and her other Attendants.]*

K. HEN. Go thy ways, Kate:  
The man i' the world who shall report he has  
A better wife, let him in nought be trusted,  
For speaking false in that: Thou art, alone,



Our daughter Mary: I' the progress of this business,  
Ere a determinate resolution, he  
(I mean the bishop) did require a respite;  
Wherein he might the king his lord advertise  
Whether our daughter were legitimate,  
Respecting this our marriage with the dowager,  
Sometime our brother's wife. This respite shook  
The bosom of my conscience, enter'd me,  
Yea, with a splitting power, and made to tremble  
The region of my breast; which forc'd such way,  
That many maz'd considerings did throng,  
And press'd in with this caution. First, methought,  
I stood not in the smile of Heaven; who had  
Commanded Nature, that my lady's womb,  
If it conceiv'd a male child by me, should  
Do no more offices of life to 't, than  
The grave does to the dead: for her male issue  
Or died where they were made, or shortly after  
This world had air'd them: Hence I took a thought  
This was a judgment on me; that my kingdom,  
Well worthy the best heir o' the world, should not  
Be gladdened in 't by me: Then follows, that  
I weigh'd the danger which my realms stood in  
By this my issue's fail: and that gave to me  
Many a groaning throe. Thus hulling in  
The wild sea of my conscience, I did steer  
Toward this remedy, whereupon we are  
Now present here together; that 's to say,  
I meant to rectify my conscience,—which  
I then did feel full sick, and yet not well,—  
By all the reverend fathers of the land,  
And doctors learn'd. First, I began in private  
With you, my lord of Lincoln; you remember  
How under my oppression I did reek,  
When I first mov'd you.

LIN. Very well, my liege.

K. HEN. I have spoke long; be pleas'd yourself to say  
How far you satisfied me.

LIN. So please your highness,  
The question did at first so stagger me,—

Bearing a state of mighty moment in't,  
And consequence of dread,—that I committed  
The daring'st counsel which I had, to doubt;  
And did entreat your highness to this course,  
Which you are running here.

K. HEN. I then mov'd you,  
My lord of Canterbury; and got your leave  
To make this present summons: Unsolicited  
I left no reverend person in this court;  
But by particular consent proceeded,  
Under your hands and seals. Therefore, go on;  
For no dislike i' the world against the person  
Of the good queen, but the sharp thorny points  
Of my alleged reasons, drive this forward:  
Prove but our marriage lawful, by my life,  
And kingly dignity, we are contented  
To wear our mortal state to come with her,  
Katharine our queen, before the primest creature  
That's paragon'd o' the world.

CAM. So please your highness,  
The queen being absent, 't is a needful fitness,  
That we adjourn this court till further day:  
Meanwhile must be an earnest motion  
Made to the queen, to call back her appeal  
She intends unto his holiness. [*They rise to depart.*]

K. HEN. I may perceive, [*Aside.*]  
These cardinals trifle with me: I abhor  
This dilatory sloth, and tricks of Rome.  
My learn'd and well-beloved servant, Cranmer,  
Prithee, return! with thy approach, I know,  
My comfort comes along. Break up the court:  
I say, set on. [*Exeunt in manner as they entered.*]

## ACT III.

SCENE I.—*Palace at Bridewell. A Room in the Queen's Apartment.*

*The QUEEN, and some of her Women, at work.*

Q. KATH. Take thy lute, wench: my soul grows sad with troubles:

Sing, and disperse them if thou canst: leave working.

## SONG.

Orpheus with his lute made trees,  
And the mountain-tops that freeze,  
Bow themselves, when he did sing:  
To his music, plants and flowers  
Ever sprung; as sun and showers  
There had made a lasting spring.

Everything that heard him play,  
Even the billows of the sea,  
Hung their heads, and then lay by.  
In sweet music is such art:  
Killing care and grief of heart  
Fall asleep, or, hearing, die.

*Enter a Gentleman.*

Q. KATH. How now?

GENT. An't please your grace, the two great cardinals  
Wait in the presence.

Q. KATH. Would they speak with me?

GENT. They will'd me say so, madam.

Q. KATH. Pray their graces  
To come near. [*Exit Gent.*] What can be their business  
With me, a poor weak woman, fallen from favour?  
I do not like their coming. Now I think on't,  
They should be good men; their affairs as righteous:  
But all hoods make not monks.

*Enter WOLSEY and CAMPEIUS.*

WOL. Peace to your highness!

Q. KATH. Your graces find me here part of a housewife;  
I would be all, against the worst may happen.  
What are your pleasures with me, reverend lords?

WOL. May it please you, noble madam, to withdraw  
Into your private chamber, we shall give you  
The full cause of our coming.

Q. KATH. Speak it here;  
There's nothing I have done yet, o' my conscience,  
Deserves a corner: 'Would all other women  
Could speak this with as free a soul as I do!  
My lords, I care not, (so much I am happy  
Above a number,) if my actions  
Were tried by every tongue, every eye saw them,  
Envy and base opinion set against them,  
I know my life so even: If your business  
Seek me out, and that way I am wife in,  
Out with it boldly: Truth loves open dealing.

WOL. *Tanta est erga te mentis integritas, regina serenissima,—*

Q. KATH. O good my lord, no Latin;  
I am not such a truant since my coming,  
As not to know the language I have liv'd in:  
A strange tongue makes my cause more strange, suspicious;  
Pray speak in English: here are some will thank you,  
If you speak truth, for their poor mistress' sake;  
Believe me she has had much wrong: Lord cardinal,  
The willing'st sin I ever yet committed  
May be absolv'd in English.

WOL. Noble lady,  
I am sorry my integrity should breed,  
And service to his majesty and you,  
So deep suspicion where all faith was meant.  
We come not by the way of accusation,  
To taint that honour every good tongue blesses;  
Nor to betray you any way to sorrow;  
You have too much, good lady: but to know  
How you stand minded in the weighty difference



Between the king and you; and to deliver,  
Like free and honest men, our just opinions,  
And comforts to your cause.

CAM. Most honour'd madam,  
My lord of York,—out of his noble nature,  
Zeal and obedience he still bore your grace;  
Forgetting, like a good man, your late censure  
Both of his truth and him, (which was too far,)—  
Offers, as I do, in a sign of peace,  
His service and his counsel.

Q. KATH. To betray me. [*Aside.*  
My lords, I thank you both for your good wills;  
Ye speak like honest men; pray God, ye prove so!  
But how to make ye suddenly an answer,  
In such a point of weight, so near mine honour,  
(More near my life, I fear,) with my weak wit,  
And to such men of gravity and learning,  
In truth, I know not. I was set at work  
Among my maids; full little, God knows, looking  
Either for such men, or such business.  
For her sake that I have been, (for I feel  
The last fit of my greatness,) good your graces,  
Let me have time, and counsel, for my cause;  
Alas! I am a woman, friendless, hopeless.

WOL. Madam, you wrong the king's love with these fears;  
Your hopes and friends are infinite.

Q. KATH. In England  
But little for my profit: Can you think, lords,  
That any Englishman dare give me counsel?  
Or be a known friend, 'gainst his highness' pleasure,  
(Though he be grown so desperate to be honest,)  
And live a subject? Nay, forsooth, my friends,  
They that must weigh out my afflictions,  
They that my trust must grow to, live not here:  
They are, as all my other comforts, far hence,  
In mine own country, lords.

CAM. I would your grace  
Would leave your griefs, and take my counsel.

Q. KATH. How, sir?

CAM. Put your main cause into the king's protection;

He 's loving, and most gracious; 't will be much  
Both for your honour better, and your cause;  
For, if the trial of the law o'ertake you,  
You 'll part away disgrac'd.

WOL. He tells you rightly.

Q. KATH. Ye tell me what ye wish for both, my ruin:  
Is this your Christian counsel? out upon ye!  
Heaven is above all yet; there sits a Judge  
That no king can corrupt.

CAM. Your rage mistakes us.

Q. KATH. The more shame for ye; holy men I thought ye,  
Upon my soul, two reverend cardinal virtues;  
But cardinal sins, and hollow hearts, I fear ye:  
Mend them, for shame, my lords. Is this your comfort?  
The cordial that ye bring a wretched lady?  
A woman lost among ye, laugh'd at, scorn'd?  
I will not wish ye half my miseries,  
I have more charity: But say, I warn'd ye;  
Take heed; for Heaven's sake, take heed, lest at once  
The burthen of my sorrows fall upon ye.

WOL. Madam, this is a mere distraction;  
You turn the good we offer into envy.

Q. KATH. Ye turn me into nothing: Woe upon ye,  
And all such false professors! Would ye have me  
(If you have any justice, any pity;  
If ye be anything but churchmen's habits)  
Put my sick cause into his hands that hates me?  
Alas! he has banish'd me his bed already;  
His love, too long ago: I am old, my lords,  
And all the fellowship I hold now with him  
Is only my obedience. What can happen  
To me above this wretchedness? all your studies  
Make me a curse like this.

CAM. Your fears are worse.

Q. KATH. Have I liv'd thus long—(let me speak myself,  
Since virtue finds no friends)—a wife, a true one?  
A woman (I dare say, without vainglory)  
Never yet branded with suspicion?  
Have I with all my full affections  
Still met the king? lov'd him next Heaven? obey'd him?

Been, out of fondness, superstitious to him?  
Almost forgot my prayers to content him?  
And am I thus rewarded? 't is not well, lords.  
Bring me a constant woman to her husband,  
One that ne'er dream'd a joy beyond his pleasure;  
And to that woman, when she has done most,  
Yet will I add an honour,—a great patience.

WOL. Madam, you wander from the good we aim at.

Q. KATH. My lord, I dare not make myself so guilty,  
To give up willingly that noble title  
Your master wed me to: nothing but death  
Shall e'er divorce my dignities.

WOL. Pray, hear me.

Q. KATH. Would I had never trod this English earth,  
Or felt the flatteries that grow upon it!  
Ye have angels' faces, but Heaven knows your hearts.  
What will become of me now, wretched lady?  
I am the most unhappy woman living.  
Alas! poor wenches, where are now your fortunes?

*[To her Women]*

Shipwrack'd upon a kingdom, where no pity,  
No friends, no hope; no kindred weep for me;  
Almost no grave allow'd me:—Like the lily,  
That once was mistress of the field and flourish'd,  
I 'll hang my head and perish.

WOL. If your grace

Could but be brought to know our ends are honest,  
You 'd feel more comfort; why should we, good lady,  
Upon what cause, wrong you? alas! our places,  
The way of our profession is against it;  
We are to cure such sorrows, not to sow them.  
For goodness' sake, consider what you do;  
How you may hurt yourself, ay, utterly  
Grow from the king's acquaintance, by this carriage.  
The hearts of princes kiss obedience,  
So much they love it; but to stubborn spirits  
They swell, and grow as terrible as storms.  
I know you have a gentle, noble temper,  
A soul as even as a calm: Pray, think us  
Those we profess, peacemakers, friends, and servants.

CAM. Madam, you 'll find it so. You wrong your virtues  
With these weak women's fears. A noble spirit,  
As yours was put into you, ever casts  
Such doubts, as false coin, from it. The king loves you;  
Beware you lose it not: For us, if you please  
To trust us in your business, we are ready  
To use our utmost studies in your service.

Q. KATH. Do what ye will, my lords: And, pray, forgive  
me,  
If I have us'd myself unmannerly;  
You know, I am a woman, lacking wit  
To make a seemly answer to such persons.  
Pray, do my service to his majesty:  
He has my heart yet; and shall have my prayers,  
• While I shall have my life. Come, reverend fathers,  
Bestow your counsels on me: she now begs,  
That little thought, when she set footing here,  
She should have bought her dignities so dear. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—*Antechamber to the King's Apartment.*

*Enter the DUKE OF NORFOLK, the DUKE OF SUFFOLK, the EARL  
OF SURREY, and the Lord Chamberlain.*

NOR. If you will now unite in your complaints  
And force them with a constancy, the cardinal  
Cannot stand under them: If you omit  
The offer of this time, I cannot promise  
But that you shall sustain more new disgraces,  
With these you bear already.

SUR. I am joyful  
To meet the least occasion that may give me  
Remembrance of my father-in-law, the duke,  
To be reveng'd on him.

SUF. Which of the peers  
Have uncontentn'd gone by him, or at least  
Strangely neglected? when did he regard  
The stamp of nobleness in any person,  
Out of himself?

CHAM. My lords, you speak your pleasures:  
What he deserves of you and me I know;.

What we can do to him, (though now the time  
Gives way to us,) I much fear. If you cannot  
Bar his access to the king, never attempt  
Anything on him; for he hath a witchcraft  
Over the king in his tongue.

NOR. O, fear him not;  
His spell in that is out; the king hath found  
Matter against him, that for ever mars  
The honey of his language. No, he 's settled,  
Not to come off, in his displeasure.

SUR. Sir,  
I should be glad to hear such news as this  
Once every hour.

NOR. Believe it, this is true:  
In the divorce, his contrary proceedings  
Are all unfolded; wherein he appears,  
As I would wish mine enemy.

SUR. How came  
His practices to light?

SUF. Most strangely.

SUR. O, how, how?

SUF. The cardinal's letter to the pope miscarried,  
And came to the eye o' the king: wherein was read,  
How that the cardinal did entreat his holiness  
To stay the judgment o' the divorce: For if  
It did take place, "I do," quoth he, "perceive,  
My king is tangled in affection to  
A creature of the queen's, lady Anne Bullen."

SUR. Has the king this?

SUF. Believe it.

SUR. Will this work?

CHAM. The king in this perceives him, how he coasts,  
And hedges, his own way. But in this point  
All his tricks founder, and he brings his physic  
After his patient's death; the king already  
Hath married the fair lady.

SUR. 'Would he had!

SUF. May you be happy in your wish, my lord!  
For, I profess, you have it.

SUR. Now all my joy

Trace the conjunction!

SUF. My amen to 't!

NOR. All men's!

SUF. There 's order given for her coronation:  
Marry, this is yet but young, and may be left  
To some ears unrecounted.—But, my lords,  
She is a gallant creature, and complete  
In mind and feature: I persuade me, from her  
Will fall some blessing to this land, which shall  
In it be memoris'd.

SUR. But, will the king  
Digest this letter of the cardinal's?  
The Lord forbid!

NOR. Marry, amen!

SUF. No, no;  
There be more wasps that buzz about his nose,  
Will make this sting the sooner. Cardinal Campeius  
Is stolen away to Rome; hath ta'en no leave;  
Has left the cause of the king unhandled; and  
Is posted, as the agent of our cardinal,  
To second all his plot. I do assure you,  
The king cried Ha! at this.

CHAM. Now, God incense him,  
And let him cry Ha! louder!

NOR. But, my lord,  
When returns Cranmer?

SUF. He is return'd, in his opinions; which  
Have satisfied the king for his divorce,  
Together with all famous colleges  
Almost in Christendom: shortly, I believe,  
His second marriage shall be publish'd, and  
Her coronation. Katharine no more  
Shall be call'd queen; but princess dowager,  
And widow to prince Arthur.

NOR. This same Cranmer 's  
A worthy fellow, and hath ta'en much pain  
In the king's business.

SUF. He has; and we shall see him,  
For it, an archbishop.

NOR. So I hear.

SUF. 'T is so.  
The cardinal—

*Enter WOLSEY and CROMWELL.*

NOR. Observe, observe, he 's moody.

WOL. The packet, Cromwell, gave it you the king?

CROM. To his own hand, in his bedchamber.

WOL. Look'd he o' the inside of the paper?

CROM. Presently

He did unseal them: and the first he view'd,

He did it with a serious mind; a heed

Was in his countenance: You, he bade

Attend him here this morning.

WOL. Is he ready

To come abroad?

CROM. I think, by this he is.

WOL. Leave me a while.—

*[Exit CROMWELL.]*

It shall be to the duchess of Alençon,

The French king's sister: he shall marry her.—

Anne Bullen! No; I 'll no Anne Bullens for him:

There is more in it than fair visage.—Bullen!

No, we 'll no Bullens.—Speedily I wish

To hear from Rome.—The marchioness of Pembroke!—

NOR. He's discontented.

SUF. May be, he hears the king

Does whet his anger to him.

SUR. Sharp enough,

Lord, for thy justice!

WOL. The late queen's gentlewoman; a knight's daughter,

To be her mistress' mistress! the queen's queen!—

This candle burns not clear; 't is I must snuff it;

Then, out it goes.—What though I know her virtuous,

And well-deserving? yet I know her for

A spleeny Lutheran; and not wholesome to

Our cause, that she should lie i' the bosom of

Our hard-rul'd king. Again, there is sprung up

An heretic, an arch one, Cranmer; one

Hath crawl'd into the favour of the king,

And is his oracle.

NOR. He is vex'd at something.

**SUF.** I would 't were something that would fret the string,  
The master-cord of his heart!

*Enter the KING, reading a schedule; and LOVELL.*

**Suf.**                               **The king, the king.**

**K. HEN.** What piles of wealth hath he accumulated  
To his own portion! and what expense by the hour  
Seems to flow from him! How, i' the name of thrift,  
Does he rake this together?—Now, my lords,  
Saw you the cardinal?

NOR.                      My lord, we have  
Stood here observing him: Some strange commotion  
Is in his brain: he bites his lip, and starts;  
Stops on a sudden, looks upon the ground;  
Then, lays his finger on his temple; straight,  
Springs out into fast gait; then, stops again,  
Strikes his breast hard; and anon, he casts  
His eye against the moon: in most strange postures  
We have seen him set himself.

K. HEN.                                        It may well be;  
There is a mutiny in his mind. This morning  
Papers of state he sent me to peruse,  
As I requir'd : And wot you what I found  
There ; on my conscience, put unwittingly ?  
Forsooth, an inventory, thus importing,—  
The several parcels of his plate, his treasure,  
Rich stuffs, and ornaments of household ; which  
I find at such proud rate, that it out-speaks  
Possession of a subject.

NOR.                      It's Heaven's will ;  
Some spirit put this paper in the packet  
To bless your eye withal.

K. HEN.                      If we did think  
His contemplation were above the earth,  
And fix'd on spiritual object, he should still  
Dwell in his musings: but, I am afraid,  
His thinkings are below the moon, not worth  
His serious considering.

[*He takes his seat, and whispers* **LOVELL** *who goes to* **WOLSEY**.]



WOL. Heaven forgive me?  
Ever God bless your highness!

K. HEN. Good my lord,  
You are full of heavenly stuff, and bear the inventory  
Of your best graces in your mind; the which  
You were now running o'er: you have scarce time  
To steal from spiritual leisure a brief span  
To keep your earthly audit: Sure, in that  
I deem you an ill husband: and am glad  
To have you therein my companion.

WOL. Sir,  
For holy offices I have a time; a time  
To think upon the part of business, which  
I bear i' the state; and Nature does require  
Her times of preservation, which, perforce,  
I her frail son, amongst my brethren mortal,  
Must give my tendance to.

K. HEN. You have said well.

WOL. And ever may your highness yoke together,  
As I will lend you cause, my doing well  
With my well-saying!

K. HEN. 'T is well said again;  
And 't is a kind of good deed to say well:  
And yet words are no deeds. My father lov'd you:  
He said he did; and with his deed did crown  
His word upon you. Since I had my office,  
I have kept you next my heart; have not alone  
Employ'd you where high profits might come home,  
But par'd my present havings, to bestow  
My bounties upon you.

WOL. What should this mean?

SUF. The Lord increase this business! [*Aside.*]

K. HEN. Have I not made you  
The prime man of the state? I pray you, tell me,  
If what I now pronounce, you have found true:  
And, if you may confess it, say withal,  
If you are bound to us, or no. What say you?

WOL. My sovereign, I confess, your royal graces,  
Shower'd on me daily, have been more than could  
My studied purposes requite; which went  
Beyond all man's endeavours:—my endeavours

Have ever come too short of my desires,  
Yet, fil'd with my abilities: Mine own ends  
Have been mine so, that evermore they pointed  
To the good of your most sacred person, and  
The profit of the state. For your great graces  
Heap'd upon me, poor undeserver, I  
Can nothing render but allegiant thanks;  
My prayers to Heaven for you; my loyalty,  
Which ever has, and ever shall be growing,  
Till death, that winter, kill it.

K. HEN. Fairly answer'd;  
A loyal and obedient subject is  
Therein illustrated: The honour of it  
Does pay the act of it; as, i' the contrary,  
The foulness is the punishment. I presume  
That, as my hand has open'd bounty to you,  
My heart dropp'd love, my power rain'd honour, more  
On you, than any; so your hand, and heart,  
Your brain, and every function of your power,  
Should, notwithstanding that your bond of duty,  
As 't were in love's particular, be more  
To me, your friend, than any.

WOL. I do profess  
That for your highness' good I ever labour'd  
More than mine own; that am, have, and will be.  
Though all the world should crack their duty to you,  
And throw it from their soul; though perils did  
Abound, as thick as thought could make them, and  
Appear in forms more horrid; yet my duty,  
As doth a rock against the chiding flood,  
Should the approach of this wild river break,  
And stand unshaken yours.

K. HEN. 'T is nobly spoken:  
Take notice, lords, he has a loyal breast,  
For you have seen him open 't.—Read o'er this;

[Giving him papers]  
And, after, this: and then to breakfast, with  
What appetite you have.

[Exit KING, frowning upon CARDINAL WOLSEY: the  
Nobles throng after him, smiling, and whispering]

WOL.

What should this mean?

What sudden anger 's this? how have I reap'd it?  
He parted frowning from me, as if ruin  
Leap'd from his eyes: So looks the chafed lion  
Upon the daring huntsman that has gall'd him;  
Then makes him nothing. I must read this paper:  
I fear, the story of his anger.—'T is so:  
This paper has undone me: 'T is the account  
Of all that world of wealth I have drawn together  
For mine own ends; indeed, to gain the popedom,  
And fee my friends in Rome. O negligence,  
Fit for a fool to fall by! What cross devil  
Made me put this main secret in the packet  
I sent the king? Is there no way to cure this?  
No new device to beat this from his brains?  
I know 't will stir him strongly: Yet I know  
A way, if it take right, in spite of fortune  
Will bring me off again. What 's this—"To the Pope"?  
The letter, as I live, with all the business  
I writ to his holiness. Nay then, farewell!  
I have touch'd the highest point of all my greatness:  
And, from that full meridian of my glory,  
I haste now to my setting. I shall fall  
Like a bright exhalation in the evening,  
And no man see me more.

*Re-enter the DUKES OF NORFOLK and SUFFOLK, the EARL  
OF SURREY, and the Lord Chamberlain.*

NOR. Hear the king's pleasure, cardinal: who commands  
you

To render up the great seal presently  
Into our hands; and to confine yourself  
To Asher-house, my lord of Winchester's,  
Till you hear further from his highness.

WOL.

Stay,

Where 's your commission, lords? words cannot carry  
Authority so weighty.

SUF.

Who dare cross them,

Bearing the king's will from his mouth expressly?

WOL. Till I find more than will, or words, to do it,  
(I mean, your malice,) know, officious lords,

I dare, and must deny it. Now I feel  
Of what coarse metal ye are moulded,—envy.  
How eagerly ye follow my disgraces,  
As if it fed ye! and how sleek and wanton  
Ye appear in everything may bring my ruin!  
Follow your envious courses, men of malice;  
You have Christian warrant for them, and, no doubt,  
In time will find their fit rewards. That seal  
You ask with such a violence, the king,  
(Mine, and your master,) with his own hand gave me:  
Bade me enjoy it, with the place and honours,  
During my life, and, to confirm his goodness,  
Tied it by letters patent: Now, who 'll take it?

SUR. The king, that gave it.

WOL. It must be himself then.

SUR. Thou art a proud traitor, priest.

WOL. Proud lord, thou liest;

Within these forty hours Surrey durst better  
Have burnt that tongue than said so.

SUR. Thy ambition,  
Thou scarlet sin, robb'd this bewailing land  
Of noble Buckingham, my father-in-law:  
The heads of all thy brother cardinals  
(With thee, and all thy best parts, bound together)  
Weigh'd not a hair of his. Plague of your policy!  
You sent me deputy for Ireland:  
Far from his succour, from the king, from all  
That might have mercy on the fault thou gav'st him;  
Whilst your great goodness, out of holy pity,  
Absolv'd him with an axe.

WOL. This, and all else  
This talking lord can lay upon my credit,  
I answer is most false. The duke by law  
Found his deserts: how innocent I was  
From any private malice in his end,  
His noble jury and foul cause can witness.  
If I lov'd many words, lord, I should tell you,  
You have as little honesty as honour,  
That in the way of loyalty and truth  
Toward the king, my ever royal master,

Dare mate a sounder man than Surrey can be,  
And all that love his follies.

SUR. By my soul,  
Your long coat, priest, protects you; thou shouldst feel  
My sword i' the life-blood of thee else.—My lords,  
Can ye endure to hear this arrogance?  
And from this fellow? If we live thus tamely  
To be thus jaded by a piece of scarlet,  
Farewell nobility; let his grace go forward,  
And dare us with his cap, like larks.

WOL. All goodness  
Is poison to thy stomach.

SUR. Yes, that goodness  
Of gleaning all the land's wealth into one,  
Into your own hands, cardinal, by extortion;  
The goodness of your intercepted packets,  
You writ to the pope, against the king: your goodness,  
Since you provoke me, shall be most notorious.  
My lord of Norfolk, as you are truly noble,  
As you respect the common good, the state  
Of our despis'd nobility, our issues,  
Who, if he live, will scarce be gentlemen,—  
Produce the grand sum of his sins, the articles  
Collected from his life:—I'll startle you  
Worse than the sacring bell, when the brown wench  
Lay kissing in your arms, lord cardinal.

WOL. How much, methinks, I could despise this man,  
But that I am bound in charity against it!

NOR. Those articles, my lord, are in the king's hand:  
But, thus much, they are foul ones.

WOL. So much fairer,  
And spotless, shall mine innocence arise,  
When the king knows my truth.

SUR. This cannot save you:  
I thank my memory, I yet remember  
Some of these articles: and out they shall.  
Now, if you can blush, and cry guilty, cardinal,  
You'll show a little honesty.

WOL. Speak on, sir;  
I dare your worst objections: if I blush,

It is, to see a nobleman want manners.

SUF. I'd rather want those than my head. Have at you. First, that, without the king's assent or knowledge, You wrought to be a legate; by which power You main'd the jurisdiction of all bishops.

NOR. Then, that, in all you writ to Rome, or else To foreign princes, *Ego et Rex meus* Was still inscrib'd; in which you brought the king To be your servant.

SUF. Then, that, without the knowledge Either of king or council, when you went Ambassador to the emperor, you made bold To carry into Flanders the great seal.

SUR. Item, you sent a large commission To Gregory de Cassalis, to conclude, Without the king's will, or the state's allowance, A league between his highness and Ferrara.

SUF. That, out of mere ambition, you have caus'd Your holy hat to be stamp'd on the king's coin.

SUR. Then, that you have sent innumerable substance, (By what means got, I leave to your own conscience,) To furnish Rome, and to prepare the ways You have for dignities; to the mere undoing Of all the kingdom. Many more there are; Which, since they are of you, and odious, I will not taint my mouth with.

CHAM. O my lord, Press not a falling man too far; 't is virtue: His faults lie open to the laws; let them, Not you, correct him. My heart weeps to see him So little of his great self.

SUR. I forgive him.

SUF. Lord cardinal, the king's further pleasure is,— Because all those things, you have done of late By your power legatine within this kingdom, Fall into the compass of a *præmunire*,— That therefore such a writ be sued against you; To forfeit all your goods, lands, tenements, Chattels, and whatsoever, and to be Out of the king's protection:—This is my charge.

NOR. And so we'll leave you to your meditations  
How to live better. For your stubborn answer,  
About the giving back the great seal to us,  
The king shall know it, and, no doubt, shall thank you.  
So fare you well, my little good lord cardinal.

*[Exeunt all but WOLSEY.]*

WOL. So farewell to the little good you bear me.  
Farewell, a long farewell, to all my greatness!  
This is the state of man: To-day he puts forth  
The tender leaves of hopes; to-morrow blossoms,  
And bears his blushing honours thick upon him:  
The third day comes a frost, a killing frost;  
And,—when he thinks, good easy man, full surely  
His greatness is a ripening,—nips his root,  
And then he falls, as I do. I have ventur'd,  
Like little wanton boys that swim on bladders,  
This many summers in a sea of glory;  
But far beyond my depth: my high-blown pride  
At length broke under me; and now has left me,  
Weary, and old with service, to the mercy  
Of a rude stream, that must for ever hide me.  
Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate ye;  
I feel my heart new open'd: O, how wretched  
Is that poor man that hangs on princes' favours!  
There is, betwixt that smile we would aspire to,  
That sweet aspect of princes, and their ruin,  
More pangs and fears than wars or women have;  
And when he falls, he falls like Lucifer,  
Never to hope again—

*Enter CROMWELL, amazedly.*

Why, how now, Cromwell?

CROM. I have no power to speak, sir.

WOL.

What, amaz'd

At my misfortunes? can thy spirit wonder

A great man should decline? Nay, an you weep,  
I am fallen indeed.

CROM.

How does your grace?

WOL.

Why, well;

Never so truly happy, my good Cromwell.

I know myself now ; and I feel within me  
A peace above all earthly dignities,  
A still and quiet conscience. The king has cur'd me,  
I humbly thank his grace ; and from these shoulders,  
These ruin'd pillars, out of pity, taken  
A load would sink a navy, too much honour :  
O, 't is a burthen, Cromwell, 't is a burthen,  
Too heavy for a man that hopes for heaven.

CROM. I am glad your grace has made that right use of it.

WOL. I hope I have : I am able now, methinks,  
(Out of a fortitude of soul I feel,)  
To endure more miseries, and greater far,  
Than my weak-hearted enemies dare offer.  
What news abroad ?

CROM. The heaviest, and the worst,  
Is your displeasure with the king.

WOL. God bless him !

CROM. The next is, that sir Thomas More is chosen  
Lord chancellor in your place.

WOL. That 's somewhat sudden :  
But he 's a learned man. May he continue  
Long in his highness' favour, and do justice  
For truth's sake, and his conscience ; that his bones,  
When he has run his course, and sleeps in blessings,  
May have a tomb of orphans' tears wept on 'em !  
What more ?

CROM. That Cranmer is return'd with welcome,  
Install'd lord archbishop of Canterbury.

WOL. That 's news indeed.

CROM. Last, that the lady Anne,  
Whom the king hath in secrecy long married,  
This day was view'd in open, as his queen,  
Going to chapel ; and the voice is now  
Only about her coronation.

WOL. There was the weight that pull'd me down. O

Cromwell,  
The king has gone beyond me ; all my glories  
In that one woman I have lost for ever :  
No sun shall ever usher forth mine honours,  
Or gild again the noble troops that waited



Upon my smiles. Go, get thee from me, Cromwell;  
I am a poor fallen man, unworthy now  
To be thy lord and master: Seek the king;  
That sun, I pray, may never set! I have told him  
What, and how true, thou art: he will advance thee;  
Some little memory of me will stir him,  
(I know his noble nature,) not to let  
Thy hopeful service perish too: Good Cromwell,  
Neglect him not; make use now, and provide  
For thine own future safety.

CROM. O, my lord,  
Must I then leave you? must I needs forego  
So good, so noble, and so true a master?  
Bear witness, all that have not hearts of iron,  
With what a sorrow Cromwell leaves his lord.—  
The king shall have my service; but my prayers  
For ever, and for ever, shall be yours.

WOL. Cromwell, I did not think to shed a tear  
In all my miseries; but thou hast forc'd me  
Out of thy honest truth to play the woman.  
Let's dry our eyes: and thus far hear me, Cromwell;  
And,—when I am forgotten, as I shall be;  
And sleep in dull cold marble, where no mention  
Of me more must be heard of,—say, I taught thee;  
Say, Wolsey,—that once trod the ways of glory,  
And sounded all the depths and shoals of honour,—  
Found thee a way, out of his wrack, to rise in;  
A sure and safe one, though thy master miss'd it.  
Mark but my fall, and that that ruin'd me.  
Cromwell, I charge thee, fling away ambition;  
By that sin fell the angels; how can man then,  
The image of his Maker, hope to win by it?  
Love thyself last: cherish those hearts that hate thee;  
Corruption wins not more than honesty.  
Still in thy right hand carry gentle peace,  
To silence envious tongues. Be just, and fear not:  
Let all the ends thou aim'st at be thy country's,  
Thy God's, and truth's; then if thou fall'st, O Cromwell,  
Thou fall'st a blessed martyr. Serve the king;  
And,—Prithee, lead me in:

There take an inventory of all I have,  
To the last penny; 't is the king's: my robe,  
And my integrity to Heaven, is all  
I dare now call mine own. O Cromwell, Cromwell,  
Had I but serv'd my God with half the zeal  
I serv'd my king, he would not in mine age  
Have left me naked to mine enemies.

CROM. Good sir, have patience.

WOL. So I have. Farewell  
The hopes of court! my hopes in heaven do dwell. [*Exeunt*]

---

## ACT IV.

### SCENE I.—*A Street in Westminster.*

*Enter two Gentlemen, meeting.*

1 GENT. You are well met once again.

2 GENT. So are you.

1 GENT. You come to take your stand here, and behold  
The lady Anne pass from her coronation?

2 GENT. 'T is all my business. At our last encounter,  
The duke of Buckingham came from his trial.

1 GENT. 'T is very true: but that time offer'd sorrow:  
This, general joy.

2 GENT. 'T is well: The citizens,  
I am sure, have shown at full their royal minds,  
(As, let them have their rights, they are ever forward,)  
In celebration of this day with shows,  
Pageants, and sights of honour.

1 GENT. Never greater,  
Nor, I'll assure you, better taken, sir.

2 GENT. May I be bold to ask what that contains,  
That paper in your hand?

1 GENT. Yes; 't is the list  
Of those that claim their offices this day,  
By custom of the coronation.

The duke of Suffolk is the first, and claims  
To be high-steward; next, the duke of Norfolk,  
He to be earl-marshal: you may read the rest.

2 GENT. I thank you, sir; had I not known those customs,  
I should have been beholding to your paper.  
But, I beseech you, what 's become of Katharine,  
The princess dowager? how goes her business?

1 GENT. That I can tell you too. The archbishop  
Of Canterbury, accompanied with other  
Learned and reverend fathers of his order,  
Held a late court at Dunstable, six miles off  
From Ampthill, where the princess lay; to which  
She was often cited by them, but appear'd not:  
And, to be short, for not appearance, and  
The king's late scruple, by the main assent  
Of all these learned men she was divorc'd,  
And the late marriage made of none effect:  
Since which, she was remov'd to Kimbolton,  
Where she remains now, sick.

2 GENT. Alas, good lady!— [*Trumpets.*  
The trumpets sound: stand close, the queen is coming.

#### THE ORDER OF THE PROCESSION.

*A lively flourish of trumpets: then enter*

1. *Two Judges.*
2. *Lord Chancellor, with the purse and mace before him.*
3. *Choristers singing.* [*Music.*]
4. *Mayor of London, bearing the mace. Then Garter in his coat of arms, and, on his head, a gilt copper crown.*
5. *Marquis Dorset, bearing a sceptre of gold, on his head a demi-coronal of gold. With him, the Earl of Surrey, bearing the rod of silver with the dove, crowned with an earl's coronet. Collars of SS.*
6. *Duke of Suffolk, in his robe of estate, his coronet on his head, bearing a long white wand, as high-steward. With him, the Duke of Norfolk, with the rod of marshalship, a coronet on his head. Collars of SS.*
7. *A canopy borne by four of the Cinque-ports; under it, the Queen in her robe; in her hair richly adorned with pearl,*

*crowned. On each side of her, the Bishops of London and Winchester.*

8. *The old Duchess of Norfolk, in a coronal of gold, wrought with flowers, bearing the Queen's train.*

9. *Certain Ladies or Countesses, with plain circlets of gold without flowers.*

2 GENT. A royal train, believe me.—These I know;—  
Who 's that that bears the sceptre?

1 GENT. Marquis Dorset:  
And that the earl of Surrey, with the rod.

2 GENT. A bold brave gentleman. That should be  
The duke of Suffolk.

1 GENT. 'T is the same; high-steward.

2 GENT. And that my lord of Norfolk?

1 GENT. Yes.

2 GENT. Heaven bless thee!

*[Looking on the QUEEN.]*

Thou hast the sweetest face I ever look'd on.—

Sir, as I have a soul, she is an angel;

Our king has all the Indies in his arms,

And more, and richer, when he strains that lady;

I cannot blame his conscience.

1 GENT. They that bear  
The cloth of honour over her, are four barons  
Of the Cinque-ports.

2 GENT. Those men are happy; and so are all, are near her.  
I take it, she that carries up the train  
Is that old noble lady, duchess of Norfolk.

1 GENT. It is; and all the rest are countesses.

2 GENT. Their coronets say so. These are stars, indeed;  
And, sometimes, falling ones.

1 GENT. No more of that.

*[Exit Procession, with a great flourish of trumpets.]*

*Enter a Third Gentleman.*

God save you, sir! Where have you been broiling?

3 GENT. Among the crowd i' the abbey; where a finger  
Could not be wedg'd in more; I am stifled  
With the mere rankness of their joy.

2 GENT. You saw the ceremony?

3 GENT. That I did.

1 GENT. How was it?

3 GENT. Well worth the seeing.

2 GENT. Good sir, speak it to us.

3 GENT. As well as I am able. The rich stream  
Of lords, and ladies, having brought the queen  
To a prepar'd place in the choir, fell off  
A distance from her; while her grace sat down  
To rest a while, some half an hour, or so,  
In a rich chair of state, opposing freely  
The beauty of her person to the people.  
Believe me, sir, she is the goodliest woman  
That ever lay by man: which when the people  
Had the full view of, such a noise arose  
As the shrouds make at sea in a stiff tempest,  
As loud, and to as many tunes: hats, cloaks,  
Doublets, I think, flew up; and had their faces  
Been loose, this day they had been lost. Such joy  
I never saw before. Great-bellied women  
That had not half a week to go, like rams  
In the old time of war, would shake the press,  
And make them reel before them. No man living  
Could say "This is my wife," there; all were woven  
So strangely in one piece.

2 GENT. But, what follow'd?

3 GENT. At length her grace rose, and with modest paces  
Came to the altar: where she kneel'd, and, saint-like,  
Cast her fair eyes to heaven, and pray'd devoutly.  
Then rose again, and bow'd her to the people:  
When by the archbishop of Canterbury  
She had all the royal makings of a queen;  
As holy oil, Edward Confessor's crown,  
The rod, and bird of peace, and all such emblems,  
Laid nobly on her; which perform'd, the choir,  
With all the choicest music of the kingdom,  
Together sung *Te Deum*. So she parted,  
And with the same full state pac'd back again  
To York-place, where the feast is held.

1 GENT.

Sir,

You must no more call it York-place, that is past:

For, since the cardinal fell, that title 's lost ;  
'T is now the king's, and call'd Whitehall.

3 GENT. I know it ;  
But 't is so lately alter'd, that the old name  
Is fresh about me.

2 GENT. What two reverend bishops  
Were those that went on each side of the queen ?

3 GENT. Stokesly and Gardiner ; the one, of Winchester,  
(Newly preferr'd from the king's secretary,)  
The other, London.

2 GENT. He of Winchester  
Is held no great good lover of the archbishop's,  
The virtuous Cranmer.

3 GENT. All the land knows that :  
However, yet there 's no great breach ; when it comes,  
Cranmer will find a friend will not shrink from him.

2 GENT. Who may that be, I pray you ?

3 GENT. Thomas Cromwell ;  
A man in much esteem with the king, and truly  
A worthy friend.—The king  
Has made him master o' the jewel-house,  
And one, already, of the privy-council.

2 GENT. He will deserve more.

3 GENT. Yes, without all doubt.  
Come, gentlemen, ye shall go my way, which  
Is to the court, and there ye shall be my guests ;  
Something I can command. As I walk thither,  
I 'll tell ye more.

BOTH. You may command us, sir.

[*Exeunt*]

## SCENE II.—Kimbolton.

*Enter* KATHARINE, Dowager, sick ; led between GRIFFITH  
and PATIENCE.

GRIFF. How does your grace ?

KATH. O, Griffith, sick to death :  
My legs, like loaden branches, bow to the earth,  
Willing to leave their burthen : reach a chair ;—  
So,—now, methinks, I feel a little ease.  
Didst thou not tell me, Griffith, as thou ledd'st me,

That the great child of honour, cardinal Wolsey,  
Was dead?

GRIF. Yes, madam; but I think your grace,  
Out of the pain you suffer'd, gave no ear to 't.

KATH. Prithee, good Griffith, tell me how he died:  
If well, he stepp'd before me, happily,  
For my example.

GRIF. Well, the voice goes, madam:  
For after the stout earl Northumberland  
Arrested him at York, and brought him forward  
(As a man sorely tainted) to his answer,  
He fell sick suddenly, and grew so ill,  
He could not sit his mule.

KATH. Alas, poor man!

GRIF. At last, with easy roads, he came to Leicester,  
Lodg'd in the abbey; where the reverend abbot,  
With all his convent, honourably receiv'd him;  
To whom he gave these words,—“O father abbot,  
An old man, broken with the storms of state,  
Is come to lay his weary bones among ye;  
Give him a little earth for charity!”  
So went to bed: where eagerly his sickness  
Pursued him still; and, three nights after this,  
About the hour of eight, (which he himself  
Foretold should be his last,) full of repentance,  
Continual meditations, tears, and sorrows,  
He gave his honours to the world again,  
His blessed part to Heaven, and slept in peace.

KATH. So may he rest; his faults lie gently on him!  
Yet thus far, Griffith, give me leave to speak him,  
And yet with charity:—He was a man  
Of an unbounded stomach, ever ranking  
Himself with princes; one, that by suggestion  
Tied all the kingdom: simony was fair play;  
His own opinion was his law: I' the presence  
He would say untruths; and be ever double,  
Both in his words and meaning: He was never,  
But where he meant to ruin, pitiful:  
His promises were, as he then was, mighty;  
But his performance, as he is now, nothing.

Of his own body he was ill, and gave  
The clergy ill example.

GRIF. Noble madam,  
Men's evil manners live in brass; their virtues  
We write in water. May it please your highness  
To hear me speak his good now?

KATH. Yes, good Griffith;  
I were malicious else.

GRIF. This cardinal,  
Though from an humble stock, undoubtedly  
Was fashion'd to much honour from his cradle.  
He was a scholar, and a ripe and good one;  
Exceeding wise, fair spoken, and persuading:  
Lofty, and sour, to them that lov'd him not;  
But, to those men that sought him, sweet as summer.  
And though he were unsatisfied in getting,  
(Which was a sin,) yet in bestowing, madam,  
He was most princely: Ever witness for him  
Those twins of learning, that he rais'd in you,  
Ipswich, and Oxford! one of which fell with him,  
Unwilling to outlive the good that did it;  
The other, though unfinish'd, yet so famous,  
So excellent in art, and still so rising,  
That Christendom shall ever speak his virtue.  
His overthrow heap'd happiness upon him;  
For then, and not till then, he felt himself,  
And found the blessedness of being little:  
And, to add greater honours to his age  
Than man could give him, he died fearing God.

KATH. After my death I wish no other herald,  
No other speaker of my living actions,  
To keep mine honour from corruption,  
But such an honest chronicler as Griffith.  
Whom I most hated living, thou hast made me,  
With thy religious truth, and modesty,  
Now in his ashes honour: Peace be with him!  
Patience, be near me still; and set me lower:  
I have not long to trouble thee.—Good Griffith,  
Cause the musicians play me that sad note  
I nam'd my knell, whilst I sit meditating



On that celestial harmony I go to.

*Sad and solemn music.*

GRIF. She is asleep: Good wench, let 's sit down quiet,  
For fear we wake her;—Softly, gentle Patience.

*The Vision. Enter, solemnly tripping, one after another, six Personages, clad in white robes, wearing on their heads garlands of bays, and golden vizards on their faces; branches of bays, or palm, in their hands. They first congee unto her, then dance; and at certain changes, the first two hold a spare garland over her head; at which, the other four make reverend curtsies; then the two that held the garland deliver the same to the other next two, who observe the same order in their changes, and holding the garland over her head: which done, they deliver the same garland to the last two, who likewise observe the same order: at which, (as it were by inspiration,) she makes in her sleep signs of rejoicing, and holdeth up her hands to heaven: and so in their dancing vanish, carrying the garland with them. The music continues.*

KATH. Spirits of peace, where are ye? Are ye all gone?  
And leave me here in wretchedness behind ye?

GRIF. Madam, we are here.

KATH. It is not you I call for:  
Saw ye none enter, since I slept?

GRIF. None, madam.

KATH. No? Saw you not, even now, a blessed troop  
Invite me to a banquet; whose bright faces  
Cast thousand beams upon me, like the sun?  
They promis'd me eternal happiness;  
And brought me garlands, Griffith, which I feel  
I am not worthy yet to wear: I shall,  
Assuredly.

GRIF. I am most joyful, madam, such good dreams  
Possess your fancy.

KATH. Bid the music leave,  
They are harsh and heavy to me. [*Music ceases.*]

PAT. Do you note,  
How much her grace is alter'd on the sudden?  
How long her face is drawn? How pale she looks,

And of an earthy cold? Mark her eyes!

GRIF. She is going, wench; pray, pray.

PAT. Heaven comfort her!

*Enter a Messenger.*

MESS. An't like your grace,—

KATH. You are a saucy fellow:

Deserve we no more reverence?

GRIF. You are to blame,

Knowing she will not lose her wonted greatness,  
To use so rude behaviour! go to, kneel.

MESS. I humbly do entreat your highness' pardon;  
My haste made me unmannerly: There is staying  
A gentleman, sent from the king, to see you.

KATH. Admit him entrance, Griffith: But this fellow  
Let me ne'er see again. [*Exeunt GRIFFITH and Messenger.*]

*Re-enter GRIFFITH with CAPUCIUS.*

If my sight fail not,  
You should be lord ambassador from the emperor,  
My royal nephew, and your name Capucius.

CAP. Madam, the same, your servant.

KATH. O my lord,  
The times, and titles, now are alter'd strangely  
With me, since first you knew me. But, I pray you,  
What is your pleasure with me?

CAP. Noble lady,  
First, mine own service to your grace; the next,  
The king's request that I would visit you;  
Who grieves much for your weakness, and by me  
Sends you his princely commendations,  
And heartily entreats you take good comfort.

KATH. O my good lord, that comfort comes too late;  
'T is like a pardon after execution:  
That gentle physic, given in time, had cur'd me;  
But now I am past all comforts here, but prayers.  
How does his highness?

CAP. Madam, in good health.

KATH. So may he ever do! and ever flourish,

When I shall dwell with worms, and my poor name  
Banish'd the kingdom!—Patience, is that letter  
I caus'd you write, yet sent away?

PAT. No, madam. [*Giving it to KATH.*]

KATH. Sir, I most humbly pray you to deliver  
This to my lord the king.

CAP. Most willing, madam.

KATH. In which I have commended to his goodness  
The model of our chaste loves, his young daughter:  
The dews of heaven fall thick in blessings on her!—  
Beseeching him to give her virtuous breeding;  
(She is young, and of a noble modest nature;  
I hope she will deserve well;) and a little  
To love her for her mother's sake, that lov'd him,  
Heaven knows how dearly. My next poor petition  
Is, that his noble grace would have some pity  
Upon my wretched women, that so long  
Have follow'd both my fortunes faithfully:  
Of which there is not one, I dare avow,  
(And now I should not lie,) but will deserve,  
For virtue, and true beauty of the soul,  
For honesty, and decent carriage,  
A right good husband, let him be a noble;  
And, sure, those men are happy that shall have them.  
The last is, for my men;—they are the poorest,  
But poverty could never draw them from me;—  
That they may have their wages duly paid them,  
And something over to remember me by;  
If Heaven had pleas'd to have given me longer life,  
And able means, we had not parted thus.  
These are the whole contents:—And, good my lord,  
By that you love the dearest in this world,  
As you wish Christian peace to souls departed,  
Stand these poor people's friend, and urge the king  
To do me this last right.

CAP. By Heaven, I will;  
Or let me lose the fashion of a man!

KATH. I thank you, honest lord. Remember me  
In all humility unto his highness:  
Say, his long trouble now is passing

Out of this world: tell him, in death I bless'd him,  
For so I will.—Mine eyes grow dim.—Farewell,  
My lord.—Griffith, farewell.—Nay, Patience,  
You must not leave me yet. I must to bed;  
Call in more women.—When I am dead, good wench,  
Let me be us'd with honour; strew me over  
With maiden flowers, that all the world may know.  
I was a chaste wife to my grave: embalm me,  
Then lay me forth: although unqueen'd, yet like  
A queen, and daughter to a king, inter me.  
I can no more. [*Exeunt, leading KATHARINE*

---

## ACT V.

### SCENE I.—*A Gallery in the Palace.*

*Enter GARDINER, Bishop of Winchester, a Page with a torch before him.*

GAR. It 's one o'clock, boy, is 't not?

BOY.

It hath struck.

GAR. These should be hours for necessities,  
Not for delights; times to repair our nature  
With comforting repose, and not for us  
To waste these times.—

*Enter SIR THOMAS LOVELL.*

Good hour of night, sir Thomas!

Whither so late?

LOV. Came you from the king, my lord?

GAR. I did, sir Thomas; and left him at primero  
With the duke of Suffolk.

LOV. I must to him too,  
Before he go to bed. I'll take my leave.

GAR. Not yet, sir Thomas Lovell. What's the matter?  
It seems you are in haste: an if there be  
No great offence belongs to 't, give your friend  
Some touch of your late business: Affairs that walk

(As, they say, spirits do) at midnight, have  
In them a wilder nature, than the business  
That seeks despatch by day.

LOV. My lord, I love you;  
And durst commend a secret to your ear  
Much weightier than this work. The queen's in labour,  
They say, in great extremity; and fear'd,  
She'll with the labour end.

GAR. The fruit she goes with,  
I pray for heartily; that it may find  
Good time, and live; but for the stock, sir Thomas,  
I wish it grubb'd up now.

LOV. Methinks, I could  
Cry the amen; and yet my conscience says  
She's a good creature, and, sweet lady, does  
Deserve our better wishes.

GAR. But, sir, sir,—  
Hear me, sir Thomas: You are a gentleman  
Of mine own way; I know you wise, religious;  
And, let me tell you, it will ne'er be well,—  
'T will not, sir Thomas Lovell, take 't of me,—  
Till Cranmer, Cromwell, her two hands, and she,  
Sleep in their graves.

LOV. Now, sir, you speak of two  
The most remark'd i' the kingdom. As for Cromwell,—  
Beside that of the jewel-house, he's made master  
O' the rolls, and the king's secretary; further, sir,  
Stands in the gap and trade of more preferments,  
With which the time will load him: The archbishop  
Is the king's hand and tongue: And who dare speak  
One syllable against him?

GAR. Yes, yes, sir Thomas,  
There are that dare; and I myself have ventur'd  
To speak my mind of him: and, indeed, this day,  
Sir, (I may tell it you,) I think I have  
Insens'd the lords o' the council, that he is  
(For so I know he is, they know he is)  
A most arch heretic, a pestilence  
That does infect the land: with which they, mov'd,  
Have broken with the king; who hath so far

Given ear to our complaint, (of his great grace  
And princely care, foreseeing those fell mischiefs  
Our reasons laid before him,) he hath commanded,  
To-morrow morning to the council-board  
He be convented. He's a rank weed, sir Thomas,  
And we must root him out. From your affairs  
I hinder you too long: good night, sir Thomas.

LOV. Many good nights, my lord; I rest your servant.

[*Exeunt* GARDINER and Page.

*As LOVELL is going out, enter the KING, and the DUKE  
OF SUFFOLK.*

K. HEN. Charles, I will play no more to-night;  
My mind's not on 't, you are too hard for me.

SUF. Sir, I did never win of you before.

K. HEN. But little, Charles;  
Nor shall not, when my fancy's on my play.—  
Now, Lovell, from the queen what is the news?

LOV. I could not personally deliver to her  
What you commanded me, but by her woman  
I sent your message; who return'd her thanks  
In the greatest humbleness, and desir'd your highness  
Most heartily to pray for her.

K. HEN. What say'st thou? ha!  
To pray for her? what, is she crying out?

LOV. So said her woman; and that her sufferance made  
Almost each pang a death.

K. HEN. Alas, good lady!

SUF. God safely quit her of her burthen, and  
With gentle travail, to the gladding of  
Your highness with an heir!

K. HEN. 'T is midnight, Charles,  
Prithee to bed; and in thy prayers remember  
The estate of my poor queen. Leave me alone;  
For I must think of that which company  
Will not be friendly to.

SUF. I wish your highness  
A quiet night, and my good mistress will  
Remember in my prayers.

K. HEN. Charles, good night. [*Exeunt* SUF.

*Enter* SIR ANTHONY DENNY.

Well, sir, what follows?

DEN. Sir, I have brought my lord the archbishop,  
As you commanded me.

K. HEN. Ha! Canterbury?

DEN. Ay, my good lord.

K. HEN. 'T is true: Where is he, Denny?

DEN. He attends your highness' pleasure.

K. HEN. Bring him to us. [*Exit* DENNY.]

LOV. This is about that which the bishop spake;  
I am happily come hither. [*Aside.*]

*Re-enter* DENNY, with CRANMER.

K. HEN. Avoid the gallery. [*LOVELL seems to stay.*]  
Ha!—I have said.—Be gone.

What!— [*Exeunt* LOVELL and DENNY.]

CRAN. I am fearful:—Wherefore frowns he thus?

'T is his aspect of terror. All's not well.

K. HEN. How now, my lord? You do desire to know  
Wherefore I sent for you.

CRAN. It is my duty  
To attend your highness' pleasure.

K. HEN. 'Pray you, arise,  
My good and gracious lord of Canterbury.  
Come, you and I must walk a turn together;  
I have news to tell you: Come, come, give me your hand.  
Ah, my good lord, I grieve at what I speak,  
And am right sorry to repeat what follows;  
I have, and most unwillingly, of late  
Heard many grievous, I do say, my lord,  
Grievous complaints of you; which, being considered,  
Have mov'd us and our council, that you shall  
This morning come before us; where, I know,  
You cannot with such freedom purge yourself,  
But that, till further trial in those charges  
Which will require your answer, you must take  
Your patience to you, and be well contented  
To make your house our Tower: You a brother of us,  
It fits we thus proceed, or else no witness

Would come against you.

CRAN. I humbly thank your highness;  
And am right glad to catch this good occasion  
Most thoroughly to be winnow'd, where my chaff  
And corn shall fly asunder: for, I know,  
There's none stands under more calumnious tongues  
Than I myself, poor man.

K. HEN. Stand up, good Canterbury;  
Thy truth, and thy integrity, is rooted  
In us thy friend: Give me thy hand, stand up;  
Prithee, let's walk. Now, by my holy-dame,  
What manner of man are you? My lord, I look'd  
You would have given me your petition, that  
I should have ta'en some pains to bring together  
Yourself and your accusers; and to have heard you  
Without indurance further.

CRAN. Most dread liege,  
The good I stand on is my truth and honesty;  
If they shall fail, I, with mine enemies,  
Will triumph o'er my person; which I weigh not,  
Being of those virtues vacant. I fear nothing  
What can be said against me.

K. HEN. Know you not  
How your state stands i' the world, with the whole world?  
Your enemies are many, and not small; their practices  
Must bear the same proportion; and not ever  
The justice and the truth o' the question carries  
The due o' the verdict with it: At what ease  
Might corrupt minds procure knaves as corrupt  
To swear against you? such things have been done.  
You are potently oppos'd; and with a malice  
Of as great size. Ween you of better luck,  
I mean, in perjur'd witness, than your Master,  
Whose minister you are, whiles here he liv'd  
Upon this naughty earth? Go to, go to;  
You take a precipice for no leap of danger,  
And woo your own destruction.

CRAN. God, and your majesty,  
Protect mine innocence, or I fall into  
The trap is laid for me!



K. HEN. Be of good cheer;  
They shall no more prevail, than we give way to.  
Keep comfort to you; and this morning see  
You do appear before them; if they shall chance,  
In charging you with matters, to commit you,  
The best persuasions to the contrary  
Fail not to use, and with what vehemency  
The occasion shall instruct you: if entreaties  
Will render you no remedy, this ring  
Deliver them, and your appeal to us  
There make before them.—Look, the good man weeps!  
He's honest, on mine honour. God's bless'd mother!  
I swear he is true-hearted; and a soul  
None better in my kingdom.—Get you gone,  
And do as I have bid you.—[*Exit CRANMER.*]—He has  
strangled  
His language in his tears.

*Enter an old Lady.*

GENT. [*Within.*] Come back. What mean you?

LADY. I'll not come back; the tidings that I bring  
Will make my boldness manners.—Now, good angels  
Fly o'er thy royal head, and shade thy person  
Under their blessed wings!

K. HEN. Now, by thy looks  
I guess thy message. Is the queen deliver'd?  
Say, ay; and of a boy.

LADY. Ay, ay, my liege;  
And of a lovely boy: The God of heaven  
Both now and ever bless her—'t is a girl,  
Promises boys hereafter. Sir, your queen  
Desires your visitation, and to be  
Acquainted with this stranger; 't is as like you  
As cherry is to cherry.

K. HEN. Lovell,—

*Enter LOVELL.*

LOV. Sir.

K. HEN. Give her an hundred marks. I'll to the queen.  
[*Exit KING*]

LADY. An hundred marks! By this light, I'll have more.  
An ordinary groom is for such payment.  
I will have more, or scold it out of him.  
Said I for this the girl is like to him?  
I will have more, or else unsay 't; and now,  
While it is hot, I'll put it to the issue. [*Exeunt.*

SCENE II.—*Lobby before the Council-Chamber.*

*Enter* CRANMER; Servants, Door-Keeper, &c., *attending.*

CRAN. I hope I am not too late; and yet the gentleman,  
That was sent to me from the council, pray'd me  
To make great haste. All fast? what means this?—Hos!  
Who waits there?—Sure, you know me?

D. KEEP. Yes, my lord;  
But yet I cannot help you.

CRAN. Why?

D. KEEP. Your grace must wait till you be call'd for.

*Enter* DOCTOR BUTTS.

CRAN. So.

BUTTS. This is a piece of malice. I am glad  
I came this way so happily: The king  
Shall understand it presently.

[*Exit* BUTTS.]

CRAN. [*Aside.*] 'Tis Butts,  
The king's physician; as he pass'd along,  
How earnestly he cast his eyes upon me!  
Pray Heaven, he sound not my disgrace! For certain,  
This is of purpose laid by some that hate me,  
(God turn their hearts! I never sought their malice,)  
To quench mine honour: they would shame to make me  
Wait else at door; a fellow-counsellor,  
Among boys, grooms, and lackeys. But their pleasures  
Must be fulfill'd, and I attend with patience.

*Enter, at a window above, the* KING *and* BUTTS.

BUTTS. I'll show your grace the strangest sight,—

K. HEN. What's that, Butts!

BUTTS. I think your highness saw this many a day.

K. HEN. Body o' me, where is it?

**BUTTS.**

**There, my lord:**

The high promotion of his grace of Canterbury;  
Who holds his state at door, 'mongst pursuivants,  
Pages, and footboys.

K. HEN.

**Ha! 'T is he, indeed:**

Is this the honour they do one another?

'T is well there 's one above them yet. I had thought

They had parted so much honesty among them,

(At least, good manners,) as not thus to suffer

A man of his place, and so near our favour,

To dance attendance on their lordships' pleasures,

**And at the door too, like a post with packets.**

**By holy Mary, Butts, there 's knavery:**

Let them alone, and draw the curtains close;

**We shall hear more anon.**

**[Exeunt.]**

### *The Council-Chamber.*

*Enter the Lord Chancellor, the DUKE OF SUFFOLK, EARL OF SURREY, Lord Chamberlain, GARDINER, and CROMWELL.*

*The Chancellor places himself at the upper end of the table*

*on the left hand; a seat being left void above him, as for*

*the* ARCHBISHOP OF CANTERBURY. *The rest seat themselves*

*in order on each side. CROMWELL at the lower end, as*

**secretary.**

**CHAN.** Speak to the business, master secretary:

## Why are we met in council?

**CROM.**

Please your honours,

**The chief cause concerns his grace of Canterbury.**

GAR. Has he had knowledge of it?

**CROM.**

**Yes.**

**NOR.**

## Who waits there?

**D. KEEP.** Without, my noble lords?

GAR.

**Yes.**

**D. KEEP.**

**My lord archbishop;**

And has done half an hour, to know your pleasures.

CHAN. Let him come in.

**D. KEEP.**

**Your grace may enter now.**

√CRANMER *approaches the council-table.*

**CHAN** My good lord archbishop, I am very sorry

To sit here at this present, and behold  
That chair stand empty: But we all are men,  
In our natures frail, and capable  
Of our flesh; few are angels: out of which frailty,  
And want of wisdom, you, that best should teach us,  
Have misdemean'd yourself, and not a little,  
Toward the king first, then his laws, in filling  
The whole realm, by your teaching and your chaplains,  
(For so we are inform'd,) with new opinions,  
Divers and dangerous; which are heresies,  
And, not reform'd, may prove pernicious.

GAR. Which reformation must be sudden too,  
My noble lords: for those that tame wild horses  
Pace them not in their hands to make them gentle;  
But stop their mouths with stubborn bits, and spar them  
Till they obey the manage. If we suffer  
(Out of our easiness, and childish pity  
To one man's honour) this contagious sickness,  
Farewell, all physic; and what follows then?  
Commotions, uproars, with a general taint  
Of the whole state: as, of late days, our neighbours,  
The upper Germany, can dearly witness,  
Yet freshly pitied in our memories.

CRAN. My good lords, hitherto, in all the progress,  
Both of my life and office, I have labour'd,  
And with no little study, that my teaching,  
And the strong course of my authority,  
Might go one way, and safely; and the end  
Was ever to do well: nor is there living  
(I speak it with a single heart, my lords)  
A man that more detests, more stirs against,  
Both in his private conscience and his place,  
Defacers of a public peace, than I do.  
'Pray Heaven the king may never find a heart  
With less allegiance in it! Men, that make  
Envy, and crooked malice, nourishment,  
Dare bite the best. I do beseech your lordships,  
That, in this case of justice, my accusers,  
Be what they will, may stand forth face to face,  
And freely urge against me.

SUF. Nay, my lord,

That cannot be; you are a counsellor,  
And, by that virtue, no man dare accuse you.

GAR. My lord, because we have business of more moment,  
We will be short with you. 'T is his highness' pleasure,  
And our consent, for better trial of you,  
From hence you be committed to the Tower,  
Where, being but a private man again,  
You shall know many dare accuse you boldly,  
More than, I fear, you are provided for.

CRAN. Ah, my good lord of Winchester, I thank you,  
You are always my good friend; if your will pass,  
I shall both find your lordship judge and juror,  
You are so merciful: I see your end,  
'T is my undoing: Love and meekness, my lord,  
Become a churchman better than ambition;  
Win straying souls with modesty again,  
Cast none away. That I shall clear myself,  
Lay all the weight you can upon my patience,  
I make as little doubt, as you do conscience,  
In doing daily wrongs. I could say more,  
But reverence to your calling makes me modest.

GAR. My lord, my lord, you are a sectary,  
That 's the plain truth; your painted gloss discovers,  
To men that understand you, words and weakness.

CROM. My lord of Winchester, you are a little,  
By your good favour, too sharp; men so noble,  
However faulty, yet should find respect  
For what they have been: 't is a cruelty,  
To load a falling man.

GAR. Good master secretary,  
I cry your honour mercy; you may, worst  
Of all this table, say so.

CROM. Why, my lord?

GAR. Do not I know you for a favourer  
Of this new sect? ye are not sound.

CROM. Not sound?

GAR. Not sound, I say.

CROM. 'Would you were half so honest!  
Men's prayers then would seek you, not their fears.

GAR. I shall remember this bold language.

CROM.

Do.

Remember your bold life too.

CHAN.

This is too much;

Forbear, for shame, my lords.

GAR.

I have done.

CROM.

And I.

CHAN. Then thus for you, my lord,—It stands agreed,  
I take it, by all voices, that forthwith  
You be conveyed to the Tower a prisoner;  
There to remain, till the king's further pleasure  
Be known unto us: Are you all agreed, lords?

ALL. We are.

CRAN. Is there no other way of mercy,  
But I must needs to the Tower, my lords?

GAR.

What other

Would you expect? You are strangely troublesome;  
Let some o' the guard be ready there.

*Enter Guard.*

CRAN.

For me?

Must I go like a traitor thither?

GAR.

Receive him,

And see him safe i' the Tower.

CRAN.

Stay, good my lords;

I have a little yet to say. Look there, my lords;  
By virtue of that ring, I take my cause  
Out of the gripes of cruel men, and give it  
To a most noble judge, the king my master.

CHAM. This is the king's ring.

SUR.

'T is no counterfeit.

SUF. 'T is the right ring, by Heaven: I told ye all,  
When we first put this dangerous stone a rolling,  
'T would fall upon ourselves.

NOR.

Do you think, my lords,

The king will suffer but the little finger  
Of this man to be vex'd?

CHAM.

'T is now too certain:

How much more is his life in value with him?  
'Would I were fairly out on 't.

CROM. My mind gave me,  
In seeking tales and informations  
Against this man, (whose honesty the devil  
And his disciples only envy at,)  
Ye blew the fire that burns ye: Now have at ye.

*Enter KING, frowning on them; takes his seat.*

GAR. Dread sovereign, how much are we bound to Heaven  
In daily thanks, that gave us such a prince;  
Not only good and wise, but most religious:  
One that, in all obedience, makes the church  
The chief aim of his honour; and, to strengthen  
That holy duty, out of dear respect,  
His royal self in judgment comes to hear  
The cause betwixt her and this great offender.

K. HEN. You were ever good at sudden commendations,  
Bishop of Winchester. But know, I come not  
To hear such flattery now; and in my presence,  
They are too thin and base to hide offences.  
To me you cannot reach; you play the spaniel,  
And think with wagging of your tongue to win me;  
But, whatsoe'er thou tak'st me for, I am sure,  
Thou hast a cruel nature, and a bloody.  
Good man [*to CRANMER*], sit down. Now let me see the  
proudest

He, that dares most, but wag his finger at thee:  
By all that 's holy, he had better starve,  
Than but once think this place becomes thee not.

SUR. May it please your grace,—

K. HEN. No, sir, it does not please me.

I had thought I had had men of some understanding  
And wisdom, of my council; but I find none.  
Was it discretion, lords, to let this man,  
This good man, (few of you deserve that title,)  
This honest man, wait like a lousy footboy  
At chamber-door? and one as great as you are?  
Why, what a shame was this! Did my commission  
Bid ye so far forget yourselves? I gave ye  
Power as he was a counsellor to try him,

Not as a groom; There 's some of ye, I see.  
More out of malice than integrity,  
Would try him to the utmost, 'had ye mean;  
Which ye shall never have, while I live.

CHAN. Thus far,  
My most dread sovereign, may it like your grace  
To let my tongue excuse all. What was purpos'd,  
Concerning his imprisonment, was rather  
(If there be faith in men) meant for his trial,  
And fair purgation to the world, than malice;  
I am sure, in me.

K. HEN. Well, well, my lords, respect him;  
Take him, and use him well, he 's worthy of it.  
I will say thus much for him, if a prince  
May be beholden to a subject, I  
Am, for his love and service, so to him.  
Make me no more ado, but all embrace him;  
Be friends, for shame, my lords.—My lord of Canterbury,  
I have a suit which you must not deny me;  
That is, a fair young maid that yet wants baptism,  
You must be godfather, and answer for her.

CRAN. The greatest monarch now alive may glory  
In such an honour: How may I deserve it,  
That am a poor and humble subject to you?

K. HEN. Come, come, my lord, you'd spare your spoons  
you shall have  
Two noble partners with you; the old Duchess of Norfolk,  
And lady marquis Dorset: Will these please you?  
Once more, my lord of Winchester, I charge you,  
Embrace, and love this man.

GAR. With a true heart,  
And brother-love, I do it.

CRAN. And let Heaven  
Witness, how dear I hold this confirmation.

K. HEN. Good man, those joyful tears show thy true heart.  
The common voice, I see, is verified  
Of thee, which says thus, "Do my lord of Canterbury  
A shrewd turn, and he is your friend for ever."—  
Come, lords, we trifle time away; I long  
To have this young one made a Christian.



As I have made ye one, lords, one remain ;  
So I grow stronger, you more honour gain. [*Exeunt.*]

SCENE III.—*The Palace Yard.*

*Noise and tumult within. Enter Porter and his Man.*

PORT. You 'll leave your noise anon, ye rascals: Do you take the court for Paris-garden? ye rude slaves, leave your gaping.

[*Within.*] Good master porter, I belong to the larder.

PORT. Belong to the gallows, and be hanged, you rogue: Is this a place to roar in?—Fetch me a dozen crab-tree staves, and strong ones; these are but switches to them.—I 'll scratch your heads: You must be seeing christenings? Do you look for ale and cakes here, you rude rascals?

MAN. Pray, sir, be patient; 't is as much impossible  
(Unless we sweep them from the door with cannons)  
To scatter them, as 't is to make them sleep  
On May-day morning; which will never be:  
We may as well push against Paul's, as stir them.

PORT. How got they in, and be hang'd?

MAN. Alas, I know not: How gets the tide in?  
As much as one sound cudgel of four foot  
(You see the poor remainder) could distribute,  
I made no spare, sir.

PORT. You did nothing, sir.

MAN. I am not Samson, nor sir Guy, nor Colbrand,  
To mow them down before me: but if I spared any  
That had a head to hit, either young or old,  
He or she, cuckold or cuckold-maker,  
Let me ne'er hope to see a chine again;  
And that I would not for a cow, God save her.

[*Within.*] Do you hear, master porter?

PORT. I shall be with you presently, good master puppy.  
Keep the door close, sirrah.

MAN. What would you have me do?

PORT. What should you do, but knock them down by the  
lozens? Is this Moorfields to muster in? or have we some  
strange Indian with the great tool come to court, the women

so besiege us? Bless me, what a fry of fornication is at door! On my Christian conscience, this onc christening will beget a thousand; here will be father, godfather, and all together.

MAN. The spoons will be the bigger, sir. There is a fellow somewhat near the door, he should be a brazier by his face, for, o' my conscience, twenty of the dog-days now reign in 's nose; all that stand about him are under the line, they need no other penance: That fire-drake did I hit three times on the head, and three times was his nose discharged against me; he stands there, like a mortar piece, to blow us. There was a haberdasher's wife of small wit near him, that railed upon me till her pink'd porringer fell off her head, for kindling such a combustion in the state. I missed the meteor once, and hit that woman, who cried out, *Clubs!* when I might see from far some forty truncheoneers draw to her succour, which were the hope of the Strand, where she was quartered. They fell on; I made good my place; at length they came to the broomstaff to me; I defied them still; when suddenly a file of boys behind them, loose shot, delivered such a shower of pebbles, that I was fain to draw mine honour in, and let them win the work: The devil was amongst them, I think, surely.

PORT. These are the youths that thunder at a playhouse, and fight for bitten apples; that no audience, but the tribulation of Tower-hill, or the limbs of Limehouse, their dear brothers, are able to endure. I have some of them in *Limbo Patrum*, and there they are like to dance these three days; besides the running banquet of two beadles, that is to come.

*Enter the Lord Chamberlain.*

CHAM. Mercy o' me, what a multitude are here! They grow still too, from all parts they are coming, As if we kept a fair here! Where are these porters, These lazy knaves?—Ye have made a fine hand, fellows. There 's a trim rabble let in: Are all these Your faithful friends o' the suburbs? We shall have Great store of room, no doubt, left for the ladies, When they pass back from the christening.

PORT. An 't please your honour,  
We are but men; and what so many may do,  
Not being torn a pieces, we have done:  
An army cannot rule them.

CHAM. As I live,  
If the king blame me for 't, I'll lay ye all  
By the heels, and suddenly; and on your heads  
Clap round fines, for neglect: You are lazy knaves;  
And here ye lie baiting of bumbards, when  
Ye should do service. Hark, the trumpets sound;  
They are come already from the christening:  
Go, break among the press, and find a way out  
To let the troop pass fairly; or I'll find  
A Marshalsea, shall hold you play these two months.

PORT. Make way there for the princess.

MAN. You great fellow, stand close up, or I'll make your  
head ache.

PORT. You i' the camblet, get up o' the rail; I'll pick you  
o'er the pates else. [Exeunt.]

SCENE IV.—*The Palace.*

*Enter trumpets, sounding; then two Aldermen, Lord Mayor, Garter, CRANMER, DUKE OF NORFOLK, with his marshal's staff, DUKE OF SUFFOLK, Two Noblemen bearing great standing bowls for the christening gifts; then Four Noblemen bearing a canopy, under which the DUCHESS OF NORFOLK, godmother, bearing the child richly habited in a mantle, &c. Train borne by a Lady: then follows the MARCHIONESS OF DORSET, the other godmother, and Ladies. The troop pass once about the stage, and Garter speaks.*

GART. Heaven, from thy endless goodness, send prosperous  
life, long, and ever happy, to the high and mighty princess  
of England, Elizabeth!

*Flourish. Enter KING and Train.*

CRAN. [*Kneeling.*] And to your royal grace, and the good  
queen,  
My noble partners, and myself, thus pray;—

All comfort, joy, in this most gracious lady,  
Heaven ever laid up to make parents happy,  
May hourly fall upon ye!

K. HEN. Thank you, good lord archbishop:  
What is her name?

CRAN. Elizabeth.

K. HEN.

Stand up, lord.—

[*The KING kisses the child.*]

With this kiss take my blessing: God protect thee!  
Into whose hands I give thy life.

CRAN.

Amen.

K. HEN. My noble gossips, ye have been too prodigal:  
I thank ye heartily; so shall this lady,  
When she has so much English.

CRAN.

Let me speak, sir,

For Heaven now bids me; and the words I utter  
Let none think flattery, for they'll find them truth.  
This royal infant, (Heaven still move about her!)  
Though in her cradle, yet now promises  
Upon this land a thousand thousand blessings,  
Which time shall bring to ripeness: She shall be  
(But few now living can behold that goodness)  
A pattern to all princes living with her,  
And all that shall succeed: Saba was never  
More covetous of wisdom, and fair virtue,  
Than this pure soul shall be: all princely graces,  
That mould up such a mighty piece as this is,  
With all the virtues that attend the good,  
Shall still be doubled on her: truth shall nurse her,  
Holy and heavenly thoughts still counsel her:  
She shall be lov'd, and fear'd: Her own shall bless her:  
Her foes shake like a field of beaten corn,  
And hang their heads with sorrow: Good grows with her:  
In her days every man shall eat in safety,  
Under his own vine, what he plants; and sing  
The merry songs of peace to all his neighbours:  
God shall be truly known; and those about her  
From her shall read the perfect ways of honour,  
And by those claim their greatness, not by blood.  
Nor shall this peace sleep with her: But as when

The bird of wonder dies, the maiden phoenix,  
Her ashes new create another heir,  
As great in admiration as herself ;  
So shall she leave her blessedness to one,  
(When Heaven shall call her from this cloud of darkness,)  
Who, from the sacred ashes of her honour,  
Shall star-like rise, as great in fame as she was,  
And so stand fix'd: Peace, plenty, love, truth, terror,  
That were the servants to this chosen infant,  
Shall then be his, and like a vine grow to him ;  
Wherever the bright sun of heaven shall shine,  
His honour, and the greatness of his name,  
Shall be, and make new nations: He shall flourish,  
And, like a mountain cedar, reach his branches  
To all the plains about him:—Our children's children  
Shall see this, and bless Heaven.

**K. HEN.**                      Thou speakest wonders.

CRAN. She shall be, to the happiness of England,  
An aged princess; many days shall see her,  
And yet no day without a deed to crown it.  
Would I had known no more! but she must die—  
She must, the saints must have her—yet a virgin,  
A most unspotted lily shall she pass  
To the ground, and all the world shall mourn her.

K. HEN. O lord archbishop,  
Thou hast made me now a man; never, before  
This happy child, did I get anything:  
This oracle of comfort has so pleas'd me,  
That, when I am in heaven, I shall desire  
To see what this child does, and praise my Maker.  
I thank ye all,—to you, my good lord mayor,  
And you, good brethren, I am much beholding;  
I have receiv'd much honour by your presence,  
And ye shall find me thankful. Lead the way, lords;  
Ye must all see the queen, and she must thank ye,  
She will be sick else. This day, no man think  
He has business at his house; for all shall stay;  
This little one shall make it holiday.

[*Exeunt.*

## EPILOGUE

'Tis ten to one, this play can never please  
All that are here; Some come to take their ease,  
And sleep an act or two; but those, we fear,  
We have frighted with our trumpets; so, 't is clear,  
They 'll say 't is naught: others, to hear the city  
Abus'd extremely, and to cry,—“That 's witty!”  
Which we have not done neither: that, I fear,  
All the expected good we are like to hear,  
For this play at this time, is only in  
The merciful construction of good women;  
For such a one we show'd them: If they smile,  
And say, 't will do, I know, within a while  
All the best men are ours; for 't is ill hap,  
If they hold, when their ladies bid them clap.

## VARIOUS READINGS.

---

" You have, by fortune, and his highness' favours,  
Gone slightly o'er low steps ; and now are mounted  
Where powers are your retainers : and your *wards*,  
Domestics to you, serve your will." Act II., Sc. 4.

The original has "your *words*."  
The alteration to *wards* was proposed by Tyrwhitt. He holds that the Queen "paints the powers of government depending upon Wolsey, under three images—as his retainers, his wards, his domestic servants."

Tyrwhitt has certainly taken a prosaic view of this passage. What an image is presented of an able but unscrupulous statesman, to say, that his *powers*, or persons in power under him, are used as the mere agents of his pleasure—his personal "retainers;" and that his *words*, without regard to the general obligation of truth, are "domestics," who serve but his will.

" You have scarce time,  
To steal from spiritual *labour* a brief span  
To keep your earthly audit." Act III., Sc. 2.

The folio Corrector has *labour*, instead of the original *leisure*.

Surely the meaning is—"You have scarce time to keep your earthly audit in a brief span stolen from spiritual leisure."

" A man that more detests, more *strives* against  
Defacers of a public peace." Act V., Sc. 2.

The original has *stirs*. The change is made by the folio Corrector.

A man that *stirs* against offenders is doing a more definite service than he that only *strives* against them.

" We are all men,  
In our *own* natures frail, incapable  
Of our flesh ; few are angels."

Act V., Sc. 2. MALONE.

" In our own natures frail, and *culpable*  
Of our flesh." M, MASON, and MS. Corrector.

"We are all men ;  
In our natures frail and culpable.  
Of our flesh few are angels."

R. G. WHITE.

The original has "capable."

We think Mr. White's change is  
the better.

"Let me ne'er hope to see a *queen* again,  
And that I would not for a *crown*." ACT V., SC. 3.

The original has *chine* and *cow*.  
The above is the MS. Corrector's  
reading.

The original is stark nonsense.  
Is the correction much better?

## GLOSSARY.

ABHOR. Act II., Sc. 4.

"I utterly abhor, yea, from my soul  
Refuse you for my judge."

It has been observed by Sir W. Blackstone that *abhor* and *refuse* are technical terms of the canon law—*detestor* and *recuso*—used in similar processes. The queen has used *challenge* in a technical sense previously.

AGAINST. Act II., Sc. 4.

"Against your sacred person."

This is one of the many elliptical phrases so numerous in this play. The construction requires that *ought*, used in the preceding sentence, should be understood also before *against*.

ANDREN. Act I., Sc. 1.

"Met in the vale of Andren."

The original folio, as well as the Chroniclers, have *Andren*, but in most modern editions it is printed *Arde*. *Arde*, or *Ardres*, which is the name of the town, occurs in the following line as *Arde*; but *Andren* or *Ardren* is the name of the village near the place of meeting.

BEHOLDING. Act IV., Sc. 1.

"I should have been beholding to your paper."

*Beholding* is not a corruption, but is more than once used by Shakspeare, and constantly by the writers of his time. It occurs in Greene's 'Groat's Worth of Wit.'



**BEVY.** Act I., Sc. 4.

“In all this noble bevy.”

*Bevy* is a company or assembly of females. Spenser uses it thus in the ‘Shepherd’s Calendar’—

“A lovely bevy of fair ladies sat.”

**BORES.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“He bores me with some trick.”

To *bore* is to wound, to thrust at. In ‘The Winter’s Tale’ (Act III., Sc. 3), we have—“Now the ship boring the moon with her mainmast.”

**BROKEN WITH.** Act V., Sc. 1.

“Have broken with the king.”

*Broken with* is communicated to; as in ‘The Two Gentlemen of Verona’ (Act I., Sc. 3, and Act III., Sc. 1). The phrase was a common one.

**BUMBARDS.** Act V., Sc. 3.

“And here ye lie baiting of bumbards.”

*Bumbards* were vessels or barrels for holding ale or beer.

**CENSURE.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“Durst wag his tongue in censure.”

*Censure* is here not used as dispraise, but as comparative judgment.

**CHEVERIL.** Act II., Sc. 3.

“Of your soft cheveril conscience.”

*Cheveril* was prepared flexible kid-skin, used for gloves; Shakspeare uses the word in ‘Romeo and Juliet’ (Act II., Sc. 4), and Shirley and Chapman, in ‘Chabot, Admiral of France,’ (Act I., Sc. 1), have—

“No tough hides limiting our cheveril minds.”

**CLINQUANT.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“All clinquant, all in gold.”

*Clinquant* is bright, glittering, with glingling ornaments. It is from the same root as *clink*.

**CONVENTED.** Act V., Sc. 1.

“To the council board

He be convented.”

*Convented* is a Latinism for summoned.

**ELEMENT.** Act I., Sc. 1.

“One, certes, that promises no element.”

*Element* is here used for constituent quality of mind, qualification. Malvolio, in ‘Twelfth Night’ (Act III., Sc. 4), says,

"You are idle, shallow things: I am not of your element  
—I am not constituted like you.

**EMPLOYMENT.** Act II., Sc. 1.

"The cardinal instantly will find employment."

*For* is to be understood after *employment*. There are many similar instances of this construction in Shakspeare; in the 'Merchant of Venice' (Act III., Sc. 4) is one—

"How good a gentleman you sent relief" (to).

**FIRE-DRAKE.** Act V., Sc. 3.

"That fire-drake did I hit three times."

The *fire-drake* was the *ignis fatuus*, "sometimes flying in the night like a fiery dragon," says Phillips in his 'World of Words.' The name was also applied to any artificial fire work.

**FORCE.** Act III., Sc. 2.

"And force them with a constancy."

*Force* is here employed as *enforce*; as in 'Measure for Measure' (Act III., Sc. 1)—

"Has he affections in him,  
That thus can make him bite the law by the nose,  
When he would force it?"

**GAPING.** Act V., Sc. 3.

"Ye rude slaves, leave your gaping."

Gaping used for shouting. The "gaping pig" of Shylock probably means the roaring or yelling pig.

**KEECH.** Act I., Sc. 1.

"That such a keech can with his very bulk."

*Keech* or *ketch*, from the French *caisse*, is a cask. Falstaff is called by Prince Henry in 'Henry IV., Part I.' (Act II., Sc. 4), "a greasy tallow keech;" and in the north a fat man is called a *keech-belly*.

**LEAVE.** Act II., Sc. 3.

"The which to leave a thousand-fold more bitter."

The verb *is* is to be understood after *leave*.

**MERE.** Act III., Sc. 2.

"To the mere undoing."

*Mere* is absolute, utter.

**MYSTERIES.** Act I., Sc. 3.

"Is 't possible the spells of France should juggle  
Men into such strange mysteries?"

*Mysteries* is used sarcastically for artificial fashions.